Operation Manual

Embroidery and Sewing Machine

Product Code: 882-W04/W05

Please visit us at **http://solutions.brother.com** where you can get product support and answers to frequently asked questions (FAQs).

Trademarks

FlashFX® is a registered trademark of Datalight, Inc.
FlashFX® Copyright 1998-2007 Datalight, Inc.
U.S.Patent Office 5,860,082/6,260,156
FlashFX® Pro™ is a trademark of Datalight, Inc.
Datalight® is a registered trademark of Datalight, Inc.
Copyright 1989-2007 Datalight, Inc., All Rights Reserved
Video powered by Mobiclip™ encoding and playback technology.

IMPORTANT:

READ BEFORE DOWNLOADING, COPYING, INSTALLING OR USING.
By downloading, copying, installing or using the software you agree to this license. If you do not agree to this license, do not download, install, copy or use the software.

Intel License Agreement For Open Source Computer Vision Library

Copyright © 2000, Intel Corporation, all rights reserved. Third party copyrights are property of their respective owners.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- Redistribution's of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- Redistribution's in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- The name of Intel Corporation may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

This software is provided by the copyright holders and contributors "as is" and any express or implied warranties, including, but not limited to, the implied warranties of merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose are disclaimed. In no event shall Intel or contributors be liable for any direct, indirect, incidental, special, exemplary, or consequential damages (including, but not limited to, procurement of substitute goods or services; loss of use, data, or profits; or business interruption) however caused and on any theory of liability, whether in contract, strict liability, or tort (including negligence or otherwise) arising in any way out of the use of this software, even if advised of the possibility of such damage.

All information provided related to future Intel products and plans is preliminary and subject to change at any time, without notice.

Secure Digital (SD) Card is a registered trademark or a trademark of SD Card Association.
CompactFlash is a registered trademark or a trademark of Sandisk Corporation.
Memory Stick is a registered trademark or a trademark of Sony Corporation.
SmartMedia is a registered trademark or a trademark of Toshiba Corporation.
MultiMediaCard (MMC) is a registered trademark or a trademark of Infineon Technologies AG.
xD-Picture Card is a registered trademark or a trademark of Fuji Photo Film Co. Ltd.
IBM is a registered trademark or a trademark of International Business Machines Corporation.
Microsoft, Windows and Windows Vista are registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.
"Adobe" and "Adobe Reader" are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.

Each company whose software title is mentioned in this manual has a Software License Agreement specific to its proprietary programs.

All other brands and product names mentioned in this manual are registered trademarks of their respective companies. However, the explanations for markings such as ® and ™ are not clearly described within the text.

INTRODUCTION

Thank you for purchasing this embroidery and sewing machine. Before using this machine, carefully read the "IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS", and then study this manual for the correct operation of the various functions.
In addition, after you have finished reading this manual, store it where it can quickly be accessed for future reference.

IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS

Please read these safety instructions before attempting to use the machine.

DANGER - To reduce the risk of electric shock

1 **Always** unplug the machine from the electrical outlet immediately after using, when cleaning, when making any user servicing adjustments mentioned in this manual, or if you are leaving the machine unattended.

WARNING - To reduce the risk of burns, fire, electric shock, or injury to persons.

2 **Always** unplug the machine from the electrical outlet when removing covers, or when making any adjustments mentioned in the instruction manual.

- To unplug the machine, switch the machine to the symbol "O" position to turn it off, then grasp the plug and pull it out of the electrical outlet. **Do not** pull on the cord.
- Plug the machine directly into the electrical outlet. Do not use an extension cord.
- **Always** unplug your machine if the power is cut.

3 **Never** operate this machine if it has a damaged cord or plug, if it is not working properly, if it has been dropped or damaged, or water is spilled on the unit. Return the machine to the nearest authorized dealer for examination, repair, electrical or mechanical adjustment.

- While the machine is stored or in use if you notice anything unusual, such as an odor, heat, discoloration or deformation, stop using the machine immediately and unplug the power cord.
- When transporting the sewing machine, be sure to carry it by its handle. Lifting the sewing machine by any other part may damage the machine or result in the machine falling, which could cause injuries.
- When lifting the sewing machine, be careful not to make any sudden or careless movements, otherwise you may injure your back or knees.

4 **Always** keep your work area clear:

- **Never** operate the machine with any air openings blocked. Keep ventilation openings of the sewing machine and foot control free from the build up of lint, dust, and loose cloth.
- **Do not** store objects on the foot controller.
- **Do not** use extension cords. Plug the machine directly into the electrical outlet.
- **Never** drop or insert **any** object into **any** opening.
- **Do not** operate where aerosol (spray) products are being used or where oxygen is being administered.
- **Do not** use the machine near a heat source, such as a stove or iron; otherwise, the machine, power cord or garment being sewn may ignite, resulting in fire or an electric shock.
- **Do not** place this sewing machine on an unstable surface, such as an unsteady or slanted table, otherwise the sewing machine may fall, resulting in injuries.

5 Special care is required when sewing:

- **Always** pay close attention to the needle. Do not use bent or damaged needles.
- Keep fingers away from **all** moving parts. Special care is required around the machine needle.
- Switch the sewing machine to the symbol "O" position to turn it off when making any adjustments in the needle area.
- **Do not** use a damaged or incorrect needle plate, as it could cause the needle to break.
- **Do not** push or pull the fabric when sewing, and follow careful instruction when free motion stitching so that you do not deflect the needle and cause it to break.

6 This machine is **not** a toy:

- Your close attention is necessary when the machine is used by or near children.
- The plastic bag that this sewing machine was supplied in should be kept out of the reach of children or disposed of. Never allow children to play with the bag due to the danger of suffocation.
- Do not use outdoors.

7 **For a longer service life:**

- When storing this machine, avoid direct sunlight and high humidity locations. Do not use or store the machine near a space heater, iron, halogen lamp, or other hot objects.
- Use only neutral soaps or detergents to clean the case. Benzene, thinner, and scouring powders can damage the case and machine, and should never be used.
- Always consult the operation manual when replacing or installing any assemblies, the presser feet, needle, or other parts to assure correct installation.

8 **For repair or adjustment:**

- If the light unit is damaged, it must be replaced by an authorized dealer.
- In the event a malfunction occurs or adjustment is required, first follow the troubleshooting table in the back of the operation manual to inspect and adjust the machine yourself. If the problem persists, please consult your local authorized Brother dealer.

Use this machine only for its intended use as described in the manual.

Use accessories recommended by the manufacturer as contained in this manual.

Use only the interface cable (USB cable) included with this machine.

Use only the USB mouse included with this machine.

Use only the pen tablet included with this machine.

The contents of this manual and specifications of this product are subject to change without notice.

For additional product information and updates, visit our website at www.brother.com

SAVE THESE INSTRUCTIONS
This machine is intended for household use.

This appliance is not intended for use by persons (including children) with reduced physical, sensory or mental capabilities, or lack of experience and knowledge, unless they have been given supervision or instruction concerning use of the appliance by a person responsible for their safety. Children should be supervised to ensure that they do not play with the appliance.

FOR USERS IN THE UK, EIRE, MALTA AND CYPRUS ONLY

IMPORTANT

- In the event of replacing the plug fuse, use a fuse approved by ASTA to BS 1362, i.e. carrying the ASTA mark, rating as marked on plug.
- Always replace the fuse cover. Never use plugs with the fuse cover omitted.
- If the available electrical outlet is not suitable for the plug supplied with this equipment, you should contact your authorized dealer to obtain the correct lead.

Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Declaration of Conformity (For USA Only)

Responsible Party: Brother International Corporation
100 Somerset Corporate Boulevard
Bridgewater, NJ 08807-0911 USA
TEL : (908) 704-1700

declares that the product

Product Name: Brother Sewing Machine
Model Number: NV6700D

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

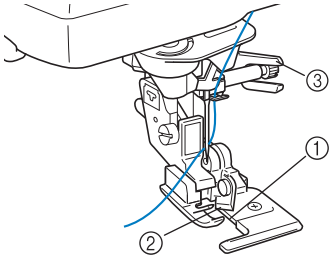
- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.
- The included interface cable should be used in order to ensure compliance with the limits for a Class B digital device.
- Changes or modifications not expressly approved by Brother Industries, Ltd. could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

WARNING LABEL

The following warning label is on the included side cutter. Be sure to observe the precaution.

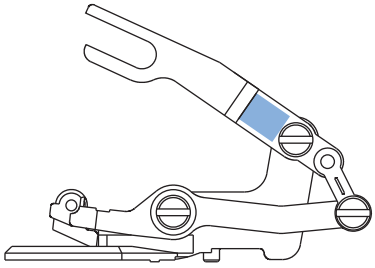
⚠ CAUTION

- **When using the side cutter, sew between low and mid-speed and do not touch the knives or operation lever of the side cutter while sewing to avoid equipment damage or injury.**



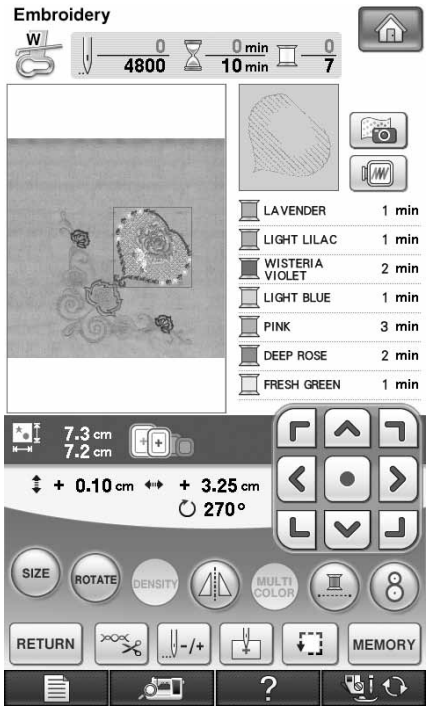
① Guide plate (lower knife)
② Upper knife
③ Operation lever

Label location



OUTSTANDING FEATURES

Display the Fabric While Aligning the Embroidering Position



The fabric hooped in the embroidery frame can be displayed on the LCD so that the embroidery position can be easily aligned.

This feature allows you to easily combine patterns while checking the final image.
See “Display the Fabric While Aligning the Embroidering Position” on page 211.

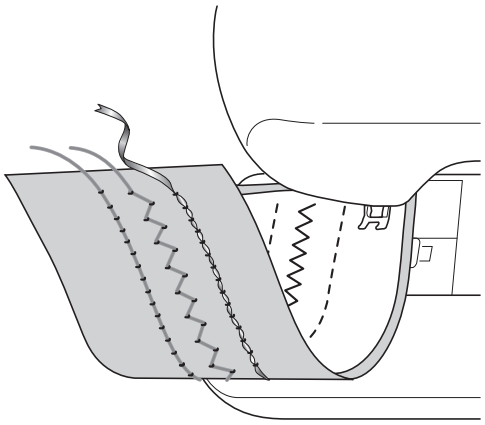
Change the Pattern Size While Maintaining the Desired Thread Density (Stitch Recalculator)

In the embroidery edit screen, the size of the pattern can be changed while the desired thread density is maintained.

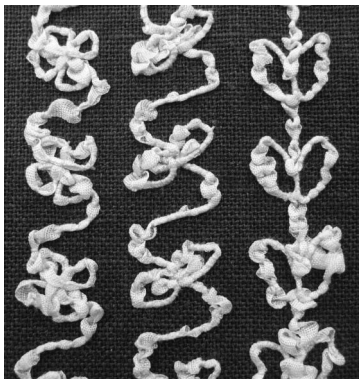
With this function, the pattern will be enlarged or reduced at a larger ratio than with normal pattern resizing.

See “Changing the Pattern Size While Maintaining the Desired Thread Density (Stitch Recalculator)” on page 270.

Expand Your Creativity With Bobbin Work



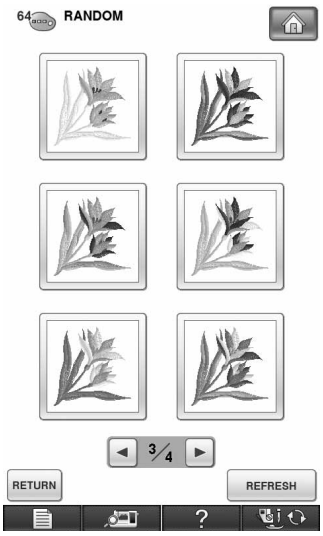
Example with decorative stitches



You can create bobbin work, which gives a three-dimensional appearance to the surface of the fabric, by winding the bobbin with heavy weight thread or ribbon too thick to be fed through the sewing machine needle and sewing on the wrong side of the fabric.

Bobbin work is sewn using the special bobbin case (gray) included with this machine.
See “How to Create Bobbin Work” on page 307.

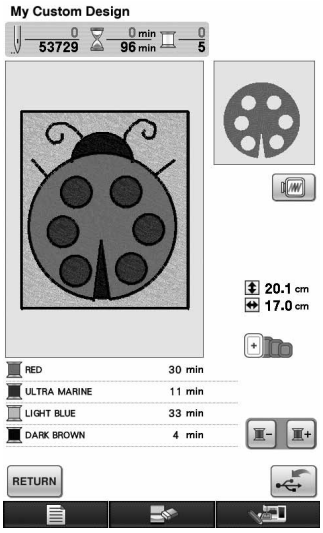
Find New Color Schemes With the Color Shuffling Function



With the color shuffling function, the machine suggests new color schemes for the embroidery pattern that you have selected. After you select the desired effect from one of the four available color schemes (“RANDOM”, “VIVID”, “GRADIENT” and “SOFT”) the sample for the selected effect is displayed.

See “Find New Color Schemes With the Color Shuffling Function” on page 283.

Create Patterns With My Custom Design

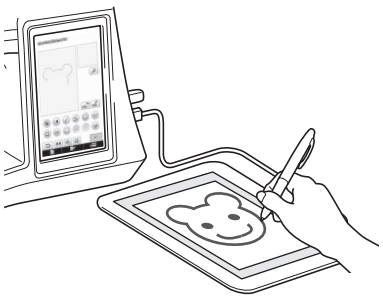


Any image that you draw in the LCD screen area of your machine can immediately become an embroidery pattern. Specify colors and sewing settings as you desire.

Compose embroidery from children’s drawings or of your signature to add to your original artwork. This is a function that everyone will enjoy using. The included pen tablet makes this function even easier to use.

Refer to the instruction manual (PDF format) stored in the My Custom Design CD.

Easily Perform My Custom Design Operations With the Included Pen Tablet



The included pen tablet can be used to perform My Custom Design operations effectively, along with normal screen operations. Since the range of operation with the pen tablet is wider than the machine’s LCD screen, you can easily perform intricate procedures.

See “Using the Pen Tablet” on page 23 and “Using the Pen Tablet” on page 34.

WHAT YOU CAN DO WITH THIS MACHINE

Getting Ready

To learn the operation of the principal parts and the screens

Chapter 1
Page 25

Sewing Basics

To learn how to prepare for sewing and basic sewing operations

Chapter 2
Page 71

Utility Stitches

Pre-programmed with more than 100 frequently used stitches

Chapter 3
Page 89

Character/Decorative Stitches

The variety of stitches widen your creativity

Chapter 4
Page 155

Embroidery

Maximum 30 cm × 20 cm (approx. 12 × 8 inches) for large embroidery designs

Chapter 5
Page 185

Embroidery Edit

Designs can be combined, rotated or enlarged

Chapter 6
Page 263

How to Create Bobbin Work

To learn how to create bobbin work

Chapter 7
Page 307

My Custom Stitch

Create original decorative stitches

Chapter 8
Page 325

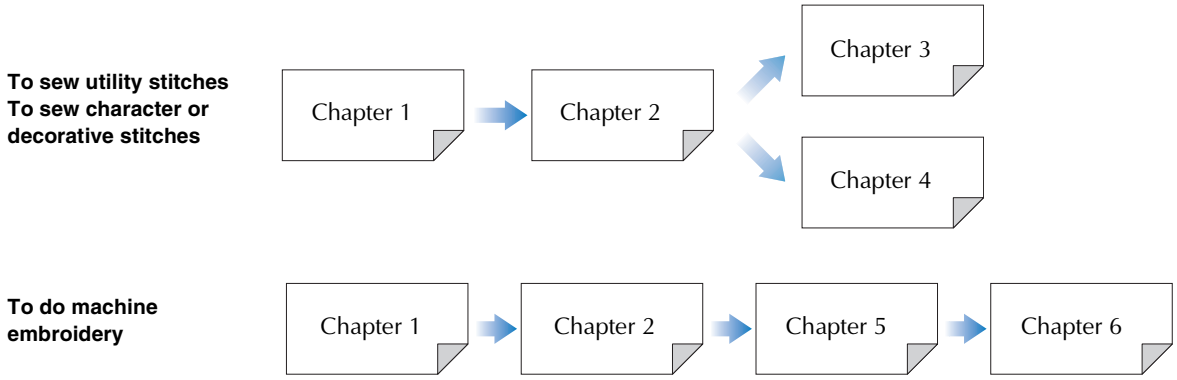
Appendix

Caring for your machine and dealing with errors and malfunctions

Chapter 9
Page 337

HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL

Chapter 1 and Chapter 2 explain your sewing machine's basic operation procedures for someone who is using the sewing machine for the first time. If you want to sew utility stitches or character/ decorative stitches, read Chapter 1 and Chapter 2, then go on to Chapter 3 (Utility Stitches) or Chapter 4 (Character/ Decorative Stitches).
When you are ready to begin using the embroidery function after reading Chapter 1 and Chapter 2, proceed to Chapter 5 (Embroidery). Once you understand the steps explained in Chapter 5, go on to Chapter 6 (Embroidery Edit) for an explanation about the embroidery edit functions.
In the screens appearing in the step-by-step instructions, the parts referred to in the operations are marked with [ ]. Compare the screen in the directions with the actual screen, and carry out the operation.
If, while using the machine, you experience something you do not understand, or there is a function you would like to know more about, refer to the index at the back of the operation manual in conjunction with the table of contents to find the section of the manual you should refer to.



CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION 1
IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS 1
OUTSTANDING FEATURES 6
WHAT YOU CAN DO WITH THIS MACHINE 8
HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL 9
NAMES OF MACHINE PARTS AND THEIR FUNCTIONS 13
Machine 13
Needle and Presser Foot Section 14
Embroidery Unit 15
Operation Buttons 15
Using the Flat Bed Attachment 16
Using the Accessory Case 16
Storing Bobbin Clips 17
Using the Embroidery Unit Carrying Case 17
Included Accessories 17
Options 20
Using the Spool Stand 21
Using the Pen Tablet 23

Chapter 1 Getting Ready 25

TURNING THE MACHINE ON/OFF 26
LCD SCREEN 28
USB Connectivity 32
Using the Machine Setting Mode Key 35
Using the Sewing Machine Help Key 44
Using the Operation Guide Function 45
Using the Sewing Guide Function 46
Using the Pattern Explanation Function 47
LOWER THREADING 48
Winding the Bobbin 48
Setting the Bobbin 54
Pulling Up the Bobbin Thread 55
UPPER THREADING 57
Upper Threading 57
Using the Twin Needle Mode 60
Using the Spool Stand 63
Using Threads that Unwind Quickly 64
CHANGING THE PRESSER FOOT 65
Removing the Presser Foot 65
Attaching the Presser Foot 65
Attaching the Walking Foot 66
CHANGING THE NEEDLE 67
About the Needle 69
Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations 69

Chapter 2 Sewing Basics 71

SEWING 72
Sewing a Stitch 72
Sewing Reinforcement Stitches 74
Sewing Curves 74
Changing Sewing Direction 75
Sewing Heavyweight Fabrics 75
Sewing Hook-and-Loop Fastener 76
Sewing Lightweight Fabrics 76
Sewing Stretch Fabrics 77
STITCH SETTINGS 78
Setting the Stitch Width 78
Setting the Stitch Length 79
Setting the Thread Tension 79
USEFUL FUNCTIONS 81
Automatic Reinforcement Stitching 81
Automatic Thread Cutting 82
Using the Knee Lifter 83
Pivoting 84
Automatic Fabric Sensor System (Automatic Presser Foot Pressure) 85
Needle Position – Stitch Placement 86
Locking the Screen 86
Checking the Needle Location in the Screen 87

Chapter 3 Utility Stitches 89

SELECTING UTILITY STITCHES 90
Selecting a Stitch 91
Saving Your Stitch Settings 92
SEWING THE STITCHES 94
Straight Stitches 94
Dart Seam 99
Gathering 99
Flat Fell Seam 100
Pintuck 101
Zigzag Stitches 102
Elastic Zigzag Stitches 104
Overcasting 105
Quilting 110
Blind Hem Stitches 122
Appliqué 125
Shelltuck Stitches 126
Scallop Stitches 127
Crazy Quilting 127
Smocking Stitches 128
Fagoting 128
Tape or Elastic Attaching 129
Heirloom 130
One-step Buttonholes 132
Four-step Buttonholes 136
Bar Tacks 140
Button Sewing 142
Eyelet 144
Multi-directional Sewing (Straight Stitch and Zigzag Stitch) 145
Zipper Insertion 146
Edge Sewing 148

Chapter 4 Character/Decorative Stitches 155

SELECTING STITCH PATTERNS 156
Selecting Decorative Stitch Patterns/7mm Decorative Stitch Patterns/Satin Stitch Patterns/7mm Satin Stitch Patterns/Cross Stitch/Utility Decorative Stitch Patterns 158
Alphabet Characters 158
SEWING STITCH PATTERNS 161
Sewing Attractive Finishes 161
Basic Sewing 161
Making Adjustments 162
EDITING STITCH PATTERNS 164
Changing the Size 166
Changing the Length (for 7mm Satin Stitch Patterns Only) 166
Creating a Vertical Mirror Image 166
Creating a Horizontal Mirror Image 167
Sewing a Pattern Continuously 167
Changing Thread Density (for Satin Stitch Patterns Only) 167
Returning to the Beginning of the Pattern 168
Checking the Image 168
COMBINING STITCH PATTERNS 170
Before Combining 170
Combining Various Stitch Patterns 170
Combining Large and Small Stitch Patterns 171
Combining Horizontal Mirror Image Stitch Patterns 172
Combining Stitch Patterns of Different Length 173
Making Step Stitch Patterns (for 7mm Satin Stitch Patterns Only) 174
USING THE MEMORY FUNCTION 176
Stitch Data Precautions 176
Saving Stitch Patterns in the Machine's Memory 177

Saving Stitch Patterns to USB Media 178
Saving Stitch Patterns in the Computer 179
Retrieving Stitch Patterns from the Machine's Memory 180
Recalling from USB Media 181
Recalling from the Computer 182

Chapter 5 Embroidery 185

BEFORE EMBROIDERING 186
Embroidery Step by Step 186
Attaching Embroidery Foot "W" 187
Attaching the Embroidery Unit 188
SELECTING PATTERNS 190
Selecting Embroidery Patterns/Brother "Exclusives"/Greek Alphabet Patterns/Floral Alphabet Patterns/Utility Embroidery Patterns 193
Selecting Alphabet Character Patterns 194
Selecting Frame Patterns 196
Selecting Patterns from Embroidery Cards 197
Selecting Patterns from USB Media/Computer 197
VIEWING THE SEWING SCREEN 198
PREPARING THE FABRIC 200
Attaching Iron-on Stabilizers (Backing) to the Fabric 200
Hooping the Fabric in the Embroidery Frame 202
Embroidering Small Fabrics or Fabric Edges 205
ATTACHING THE EMBROIDERY FRAME 206
CONFIRMING THE PATTERN POSITION 208
Aligning the Embroidering Position Using the Built-In Camera 208
Display the Fabric While Aligning the Embroidering Position 211
Using the Built-In Camera to Align the Embroidering Position 213
Checking the Pattern Position 216
Previewing the Completed Pattern 217
SEWING AN EMBROIDERY PATTERN 218
Sewing Attractive Finishes 218
Sewing Embroidery Patterns 219
Sewing Embroidery Patterns Which Use Appliqué 221
PRINT AND STITCH (COMBINING EMBROIDERY PATTERNS AND PRINTED DESIGNS) 223
Selecting a Pattern 224
Outputting the Background Image and Positioning Image 225
Printing the Background and Embroidery Position Sheet 226
Sewing Embroidery Patterns 227
ADJUSTMENTS DURING THE EMBROIDERY PROCESS 229
If the Bobbin Runs Out of Thread 229
If the Thread Breaks During Sewing 230
Restarting from the Beginning 231
Resuming Embroidery After Turning Off the Power 231
MAKING EMBROIDERY ADJUSTMENTS 233
Adjusting Thread Tension 233
Adjusting the Alternate Bobbin Case (with No Color on the Screw) 234
Using the Automatic Thread Cutting Function (END COLOR TRIM) 235
Using the Thread Trimming Function (JUMP STITCH TRIM) 236
Adjusting the Embroidery Speed 237
Changing the Thread Color Display 237
Changing the Embroidery Frame Display 238
REVISING THE PATTERN 240
Moving the Pattern 240
Aligning the Pattern and the Needle 240
Changing the Size of the Pattern 241
Rotating the Pattern 242
Creating a Horizontal Mirror Image 243
Changing the Density (Alphabet Character and Frame Patterns Only) 244
Changing the Colors of Alphabet Character Patterns 245
Embroidering Linked Characters 245
Uninterrupted Embroidering (Using a Single Color) 248
USING THE MEMORY FUNCTION 249
Embroidery Data Precautions 249
Saving Embroidery Patterns in the Machine's Memory 251
Saving Embroidery Patterns to USB Media 252
Saving Embroidery Patterns in the Computer 253
Retrieving Patterns from the Machine's Memory 254
Recalling from USB Media 255
Recalling from the Computer 256
EMBROIDERY APPLICATIONS 258
Using a Frame Pattern to Make an Appliqué (1) 258
Using a Frame Pattern to Make an Appliqué (2) 259
Sewing Split Embroidery Patterns 261

Chapter 6 Embroidery Edit 263

EXPLANATION OF FUNCTIONS 264
SELECTING PATTERNS TO EDIT 265
Selecting Embroidery Patterns/Brother "Exclusives"/Greek Alphabet Patterns/Floral Alphabet Patterns/Utility Embroidery Patterns/Frame Patterns 266
Selecting Alphabet Character Patterns 266
EDITING PATTERNS 268
Moving the Pattern 270
Rotating the Pattern 270
Changing the Size of the Pattern 270
Changing the Pattern Size While Maintaining the Desired Thread Density (Stitch Recalculator) 270
Deleting the Pattern 272
Displaying Patterns in the Screen Magnified by 200% 272
Changing the Configuration of Alphabet Character Patterns 273
Changing Alphabet Character Spacing 273
Reducing Character Spacing 274
Separating Combined Character Patterns 275
Changing the Color of Each Alphabet Character in a Pattern 276
Embroidering Linked Characters 277
Changing the Thread Color 277
Creating a Custom Thread Table 278
Choosing a Color from the Custom Thread Table 282
Find New Color Schemes With the Color Shuffling Function 283
Designing Repeated Patterns 285
Embroidering the Pattern Repeatedly 291
Duplicating a Pattern 293
After Editing 294
COMBINING PATTERNS 295
Editing Combined Patterns 295
Sewing Combined Patterns 298
VARIOUS EMBROIDERING FUNCTIONS 299
Uninterrupted Embroidering (Using a Single Color) 299
Basting Embroidery 299
Creating an Appliqué Piece 300
USING THE MEMORY FUNCTION 306
PRINT AND STITCH (COMBINING EMBROIDERY PATTERNS AND PRINTED DESIGNS) 306

Chapter 7 How to Create Bobbin Work 307

ABOUT BOBBIN WORK 308
PREPARING FOR BOBBIN WORK 309
Required Materials 309
Upper Threading 310
Preparing the Bobbin Thread 310
CREATING BOBBIN WORK (SEWING) 314
Positioning the Fabric and Sewing 314
Bobbin Work Free Motion Sewing 317
CREATING BOBBIN WORK (EMBROIDERY) 318
Selecting the Pattern 318
Start Embroidering 320
ADJUSTING THE THREAD TENSION 322
TROUBLESHOOTING 323

Chapter 8 MY CUSTOM STITCH 325

DESIGNING A STITCH....326
ENTERING STITCH DATA....328
USING STORED CUSTOM STITCHES....334
Storing Custom Stitches in Your List....334
Retrieving Stored Stitches....335

Chapter 9 Appendix 337

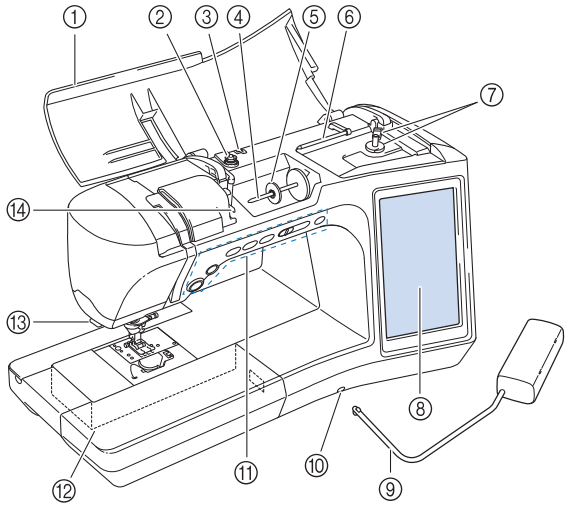
CARE AND MAINTENANCE....338
Restrictions on oiling....338
Precautions on storing the machine....338
Cleaning the LCD Screen....338
Cleaning the Machine Casing....338
Cleaning the Race....338
Cleaning the Cutter in the Bobbin Case Area....340
About the Maintenance Message....341
ADJUSTING THE SCREEN....342
Adjusting the Brightness of the Screen Display....342
Touch Panel is Malfunctioning....342
TROUBLESHOOTING....343
ERROR MESSAGES....348
SPECIFICATIONS....356
UPGRADING YOUR MACHINE'S SOFTWARE....357
Upgrade Procedure Using USB Media....357
Upgrade Procedure Using Computer....358
STITCH SETTING CHART....359
INDEX....368

NAMES OF MACHINE PARTS AND THEIR FUNCTIONS

The names of the various parts of the sewing machine and their functions are described below. Before using the sewing machine, carefully read these descriptions to learn the names of the machine parts.

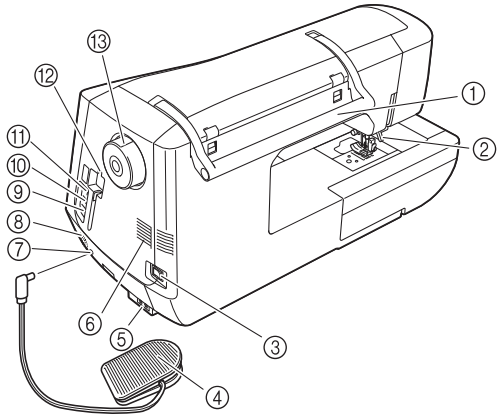
Machine

■ Front View



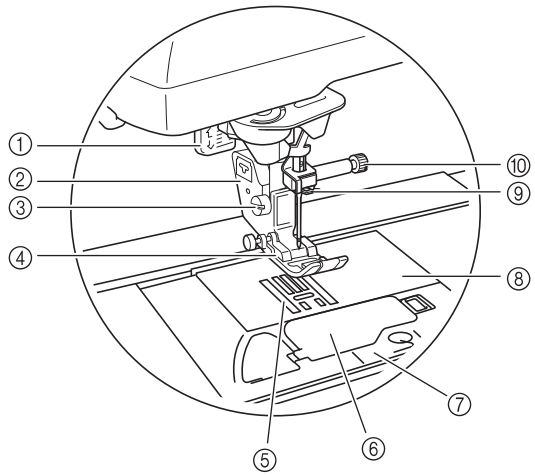
① **Top cover**
Open the top cover to thread the machine and wind the bobbin.
② **Pre-tension disk**
Pass the thread around the pre-tension disk when winding the bobbin thread. (page 48)
③ **Thread guide for bobbin winding**
Pass the thread through this thread guide when winding the bobbin thread. (page 48)
④ **Spool pin**
Place a spool of thread on the spool pin. (page 57)
⑤ **Spool cap**
Use the spool cap to hold the spool of thread in place. (page 57)
⑥ **Supplemental spool pin**
Use this spool pin to wind the bobbin thread, or to sew with the twin needle. (page 48, 60)
⑦ **Bobbin winder**
Use the bobbin winder when winding the bobbin. (page 48)
⑧ **LCD (liquid crystal display)**
Settings for the selected stitch and error messages appear in the LCD. (page 28)
⑨ **Knee lifter**
Use the knee lifter to raise and lower the presser foot. (page 83)
⑩ **Knee lifter slot**
Insert the knee lifter into the slot. (page 83)
⑪ **Operation buttons (6 buttons) and sewing speed controller**
Use these buttons and the slide to operate the sewing machine. (page 15)
⑫ **Flat bed attachment with accessory compartment**
Store presser feet and bobbins in the accessory compartment of the flat bed attachment. When sewing cylindrical pieces, remove the flat bed attachment. (page 16)
⑬ **Thread cutter**
Pass the threads through the thread cutter to cut them. (page 59)
⑭ **Thread guide plate**
Pass the thread around the thread guide plate when threading upper thread. (page 57)

■ Right-side/Rear View



① **Handle**
Carry the sewing machine by its handle when transporting the machine.
② **Presser foot lever**
Raise and lower the presser foot lever to raise and lower the presser foot. (page 65)
③ **Main power switch**
Use the main power switch to turn the sewing machine ON and OFF. (page 26)
④ **Foot controller with retractable cord**
Depress the foot controller to control the speed of the machine. (page 73)
⑤ **Power cord receptacle**
Insert the power cord into the machine receptacle. (page 26)
⑥ **Air vent**
The air vent allows the air surrounding the motor to circulate. Do not cover the air vent while the sewing machine is being used.
⑦ **Foot controller jack**
Insert the foot controller plug into its jack on the machine. (page 73)
⑧ **Speaker**
⑨ **USB port for computer**
In order to import/export patterns between a computer and the machine, plug the USB cable into the USB port. (page 32, 179, 253)
⑩ **USB port for mouse (page 32)**
⑪ **Primary (top) USB port for media**
In order to send patterns from/to USB media, plug the USB media directly into the USB port. (page 178, 252)
⑫ **Touch pen holder**
Use the touch pen holder to hold the touch pen when not in use.
⑬ **Handwheel**
Rotate the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) to raise and lower the needle. The wheel should be turned toward the front of the machine.

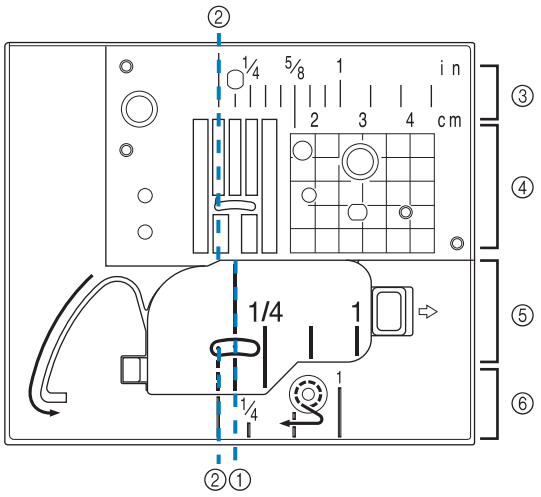
Needle and Presser Foot Section



① **Buttonhole lever**
The buttonhole lever is used with the one-step buttonhole foot to create buttonholes. (page 132)
② **Presser foot holder**
The presser foot is attached to the presser foot holder. (page 65)
③ **Presser foot holder screw**
Use the presser foot holder screw to hold the presser foot in place. (page 66)
④ **Presser foot**
The presser foot consistently applies pressure to the fabric as sewing takes place. Attach the appropriate presser foot for the selected stitch. (page 65)
⑤ **Feed dogs**
The feed dogs feed the fabric in the sewing direction.
⑥ **Bobbin cover**
Open the bobbin cover to set the bobbin. (page 54, 103)
⑦ **Needle plate cover**
Remove the needle plate cover to clean the race. (page 97, 219)
⑧ **Needle plate**
The needle plate is marked with guides to help sew straight seams. (page 96)
⑨ **Needle bar thread guide**
Pass the upper thread through the needle bar thread guide. (page 57)
⑩ **Needle clamp screw**
Use the needle clamp screw to hold the needle in place. (page 66)

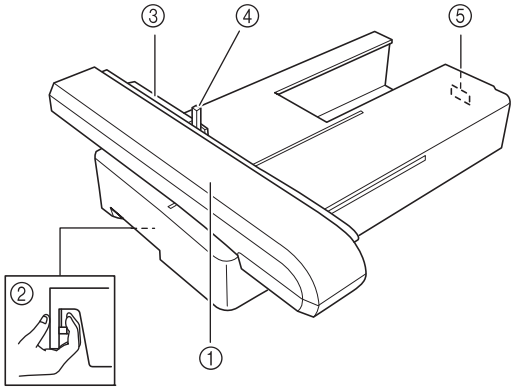
Measurements on the needle plate, bobbin cover (with mark) and needle plate cover

The measurements on the bobbin cover are references for patterns with a middle (center) needle position. The measurements on the needle plate and the needle plate cover are references for stitches with a left needle position.



① **For stitches with a middle (center) needle position**
② **For stitches with a left needle position**
③ **Left needle position on the needle plate <inch>**
④ **Left needle position on the needle plate <cm>**
⑤ **Middle (center) needle position on the bobbin cover (with mark) <inch>**
⑥ **Left needle position on the needle plate cover <inch>**

Embroidery Unit



① **Carriage**
The carriage moves the embroidery frame automatically when embroidering. (page 188)

② **Release button (located under the embroidery unit)**
Press the release button to remove the embroidery unit. (page 189)

③ **Embroidery frame holder**
Insert the embroidery frame into the embroidery frame holder to hold the frame in place. (page 206)

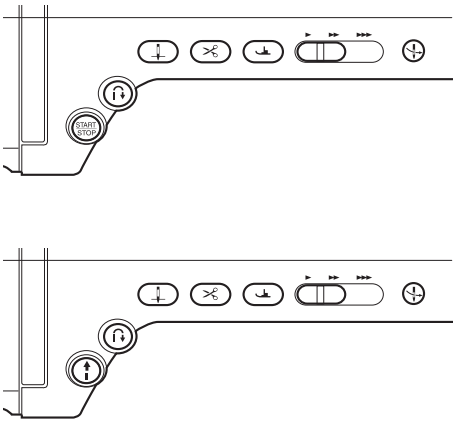
④ **Frame-securing lever**
Press the frame-securing lever down to secure the embroidery frame. (page 206)

⑤ **Embroidery unit connection**
Insert the embroidery unit connection into the connection port when attaching the embroidery unit. (page 188)

⚠ CAUTION

- **After the embroidery frame is set in the frame holder, be sure the frame-securing lever is correctly lowered.**

Operation Buttons



① **"Start/Stop" button** (START/STOP)

Press this button and the machine will sew a few stitches at a slow speed and then begin sewing at the speed set by the sewing speed controller. Press the button again to stop the machine. Hold the button in to sew at the machine's slowest speed. The button changes color according to the machine's operation mode.

Green:	The machine is ready to sew or is sewing.
Red:	The machine cannot sew.

② **"Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button**

Use this button to sew reinforcement stitches at the beginning and end of sewing. Press this button, and the machine sews 3 stitches in the same spot and stops automatically. For straight and zigzag stitch patterns that take reverse stitches, the machine will sew reverse stitches at low speed only while holding down the "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button (the stitches are sewn in the opposite direction).

③ **"Needle Position" button**

Use this button when changing sewing direction or for detailed sewing in small areas. Press this button to raise or lower the needle position. With this button, you can lower and raise the needle to sew a single stitch.

④ **"Thread Cutter" button**

Press this button after sewing to automatically trim the excess thread.

⑤ **"Presser Foot Lifter" button**

Press this button to lower the presser foot and apply pressure to the fabric. Press this button again to raise the presser foot.

⑥ **Sewing Speed controller**

Use this controller to adjust the sewing speed. Move the slide to the left to sew at slower speeds. Move the slide to the right to sew at higher speeds. Beginners should sew at a slow speed.

⑦ **"Automatic Threading" button**

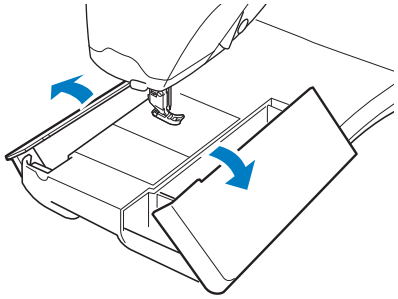
Use this button to automatically thread the needle.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not press the thread cutter button after the threads have been cut. The needle may break and threads may become tangled, or damage to the machine may occur.**

Using the Flat Bed Attachment

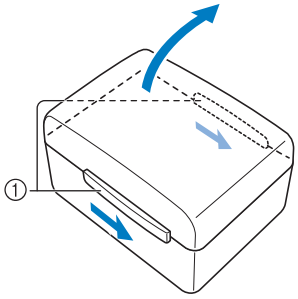
Pull the top of the flat bed attachment to open the accessory compartment.



Using the Accessory Case

■ Opening the Accessory Case

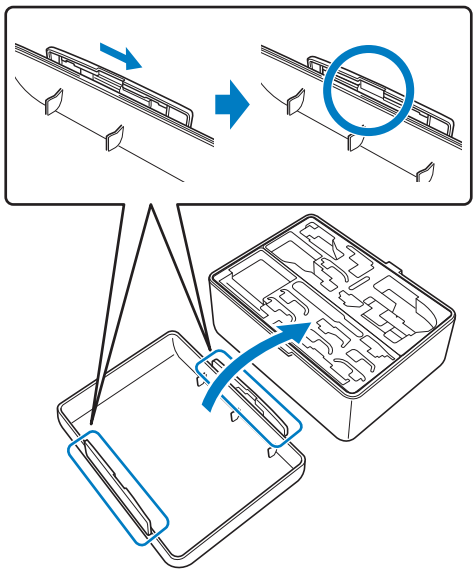
Fully slide the bar on each side of the accessory case, and then lift off the lid to open the case.
The case can only be opened or locked correctly if both bars are slid in the same direction.



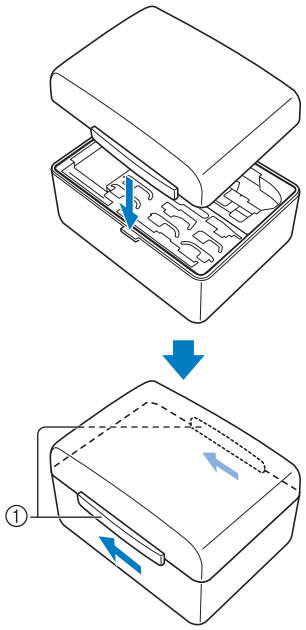
① Bars

■ Closing the Accessory Case

1 Fully slide the bar on each side of the accessory case lid to align the notches in the lid with the notches in the bars.



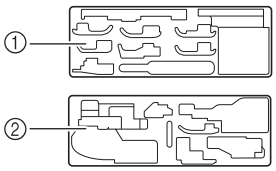
2 Place the lid on top of the case so that the notches in the lid align with the tabs on the case, and then slide the bar on each side back to the center of the accessory case.



① Bars

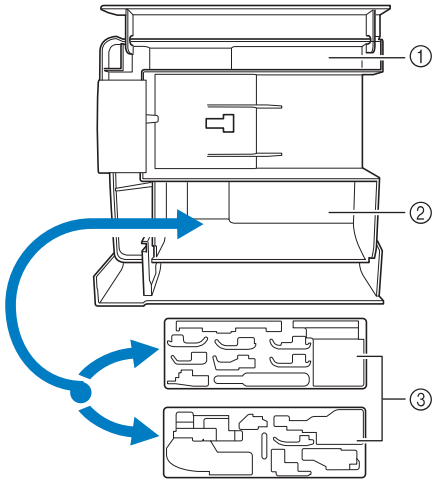
■ Using the Accessory Trays

Two presser foot storage trays are stored in the included accessory case. One is for presser feet for utility sewing, and the other is for presser feet for embroidery and machine quilting.



① For presser feet for utility sewing
② For presser feet for embroidery and machine quilting

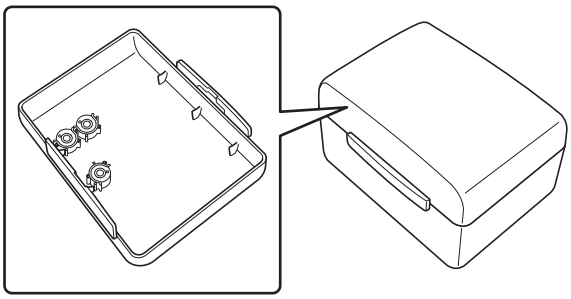
For your convenience, a presser foot storage tray can be stored in the accessory compartment of the flat bed attachment.



① Storage space of the flat bed attachment
② Presser foot storage space of the flat bed attachment
③ Presser foot storage trays

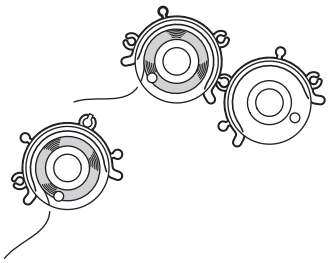
Storing Bobbin Clips

Bobbin clips can be stored inside of the accessory case cover.



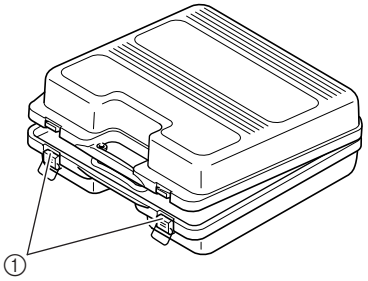
Memo

- Placing bobbin clips on bobbins helps prevent the thread from unwinding from the bobbin. In addition, snapping bobbin clips together allows the bobbins to be conveniently stored and prevents them from rolling around if they are dropped.



Using the Embroidery Unit Carrying Case

Included accessories 44-47 are contained in the embroidery unit carrying case. To open the embroidery unit carrying case, raise each lock and move the latches out of position. To re-hook the latches and securely close the case, position the latch on the catch of the unit lid and lower the lock till it snaps.



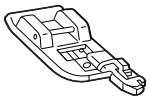
① Latches

Included Accessories

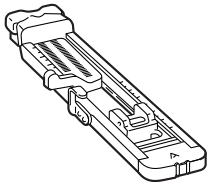
See table on the next page about included accessories.

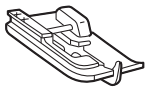
1

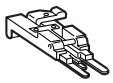
2

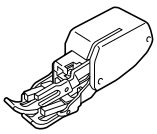
3 

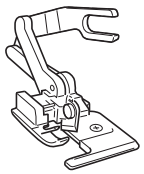
4

5 

6 

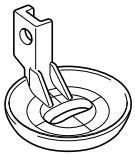
7 

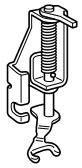
8 

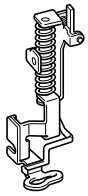
9 

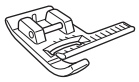
10

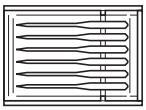
11

12 

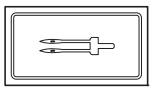
13 

14 

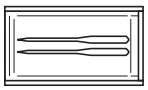
15 

16 

75/11 2 needles
90/14 2 needles
90/14 2 needles:
Ball point needle (gold colored)

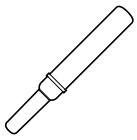
17 

2.0/11 needle

18 

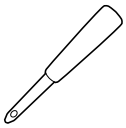
75/11
2 needles

19

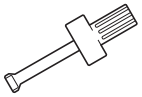
20 

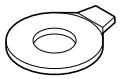
21

22

23 

24

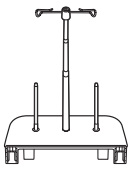
25 

26 

27

28

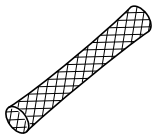
29

30 

31

32

33

34 

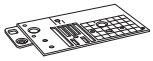
35

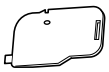
36

37

38

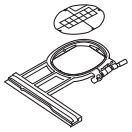
39

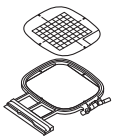
40 

41 

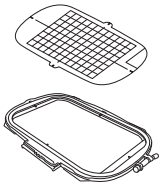
42

43

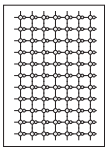
44* 

45* 

46*

47* 

48

49 

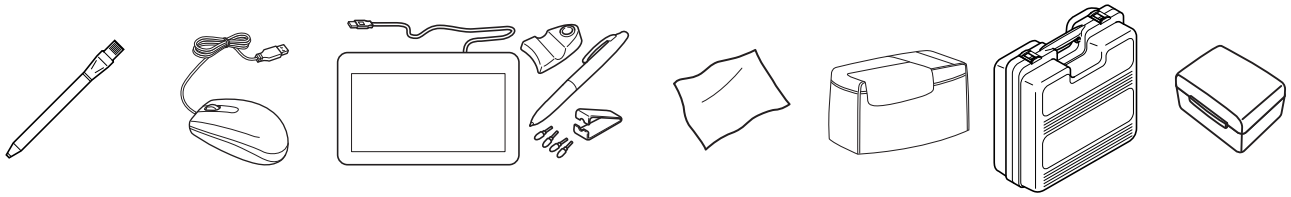
50

51

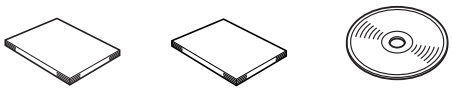
52

*Included Accessories 44-47 are contained in the embroidery unit carrying case.

53 54 55 56 57** 58 59



60 61 62



**In some countries or regions, this is not included in the enclosed accessories; however, it is available as an option.

No.	Part Name	Part Code	
		Americas	Others
1	Zigzag foot “J” (on machine)	XC3021-051	
2	Monogramming foot “N”	X53840-351	
3	Overcasting foot “G”	XC3098-051	
4	Zipper foot “I”	X59370-051	
5	Buttonhole foot “A”	X57789-151	
6	Blind stitch foot “R”	X56409-051	
7	Button fitting foot “M”	130489-001	
8	Walking foot	SA140	F033N: XC2214-002
9	Side cutter foot	SA177	F054: XC3879-102
10	Straight stitch foot	SA167	F042N: XC1973-052
11	Free motion quilting foot “C”	XE0765-101	
12	Free motion echo quilting foot “E”	XE0766-001	
13	Free motion open toe quilting foot “O”	SA187	F061: XE1097-001
14	Embroidery foot “W”	XC8156-651	
15	Vertical stitch alignment foot “V”	SA189	F063: XE5224-001
16	Needle set	XE4962-001	
17	Twin needle	XE4963-001	
18	Ball point needle set	XD0705-051	
19	Bobbin × 10 (One is on machine.)	SA156	SFB: XA5539-151
20	Seam ripper	X54243-051	
21	Scissors	XC1807-121	
22	Cleaning brush	X59476-051	
23	Eyelet punch	135793-001	
24	Screwdriver (small)	X55468-051	
25	Screwdriver (large)	XC4237-021	
26	Disc-shaped screwdriver	XC1074-051	
27	Spool cap (small)	130013-154	
28	Spool cap (medium) × 2 (One is on machine.)	X55260-153	
29	Spool cap (large)	130012-054	
30	Spool stand	See page 21	
31	Bobbin clip × 10	XE3060-001	
32	Spool felt	X57045-051	
33	Spool net × 2	XA5523-050	
34	Embroidery needle plate cover	XE5131-001	
35	Touch pen (stylus)	XA9940-051	

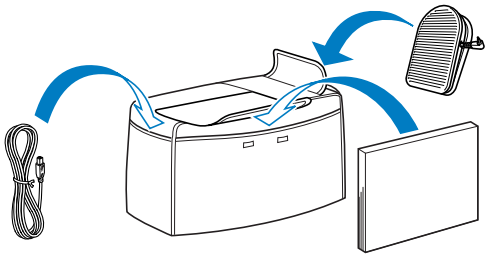
No.	Part Name	Part Code	
		Americas	Others
36	Knee lifter	SA599	KL1: XE5902-001
37	USB cable	XD0745-051	
38	Alternate bobbin case (no color on the screw)	XC8167-551	
39	Bobbin case (gray, for bobbin work)	XE8298-001	
40	Straight stitch needle plate	XE4908-301	
41	Cord guide bobbin cover (with single hole)	XE8991-001	
42	Bobbin cover (with mark)	XF0750-001	
43	Foot controller	XD0500-151 (EU area) XC8028-051 (other area)	
44	Embroidery frame set (small) H 2 cm × W 6 cm (H 1 inch × W 2-1/2 inches)	SA437	EF73: XC8479-152
45	Embroidery frame set (medium) H 10 cm × W 10 cm (H 4 inches × W 4 inches)	SA438	EF74: XC8480-152
46	Embroidery frame set (quilt) H 20 cm × W 20 cm (H 8 inches × W 8 inches)	SA446	EF91: XE5068-101
47	Embroidery frame set (extra large) H 30 cm × W 20 cm (H 12 inches × W 8 inches)	SA447	EF92: XE5071-001
48	Embroidery bobbin thread	SA-EBT	XC6283-001
49	Embroidery positioning sticker sheets	SAEPS2	EPS2: XF0763-001
50	Edge sewing sheet × 6	SAESS1	ESS1: XE5094-001
51	Stabilizer material	SA519	BM3: XE0806-001
52	Grid sheet set	SA507	GS3: X81277-151
53	Chalk pencil	XE8568-001	
54	USB mouse	XE5334-101	
55	Pen tablet	See page 23	
56	LCD cleaning cloth	XE4913-001	
57	Soft cover	XE5111-001 (882-W04) XE5163-001 (882-W05)	
58	Embroidery unit carrying case	XE3791-001	
59	Accessory case	XF0337-001 (882-W04) XF0333-001 (882-W05)	
60	Operation manual	This manual	
61	Quick reference guide	XF0230-001	
62	My Custom Design CD	XF0186-001	

Memo

- Foot controller: Model S
  This foot controller can be used on the machine with product code 882-W04/W05. The product code is mentioned on the machine rating plate.

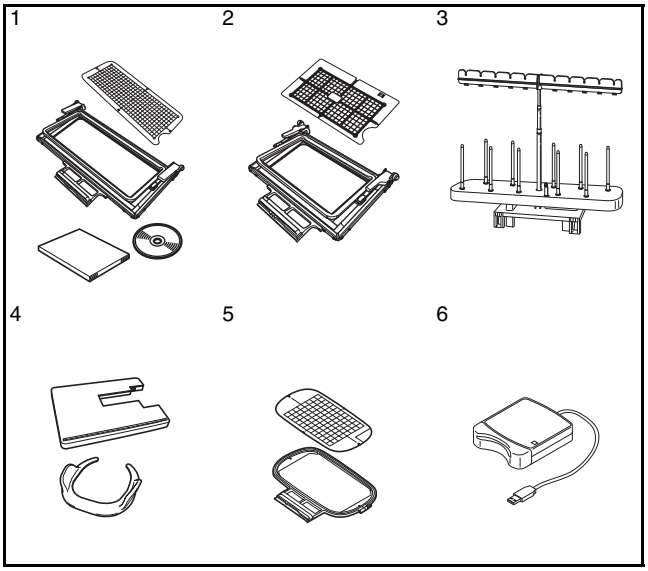
Memo

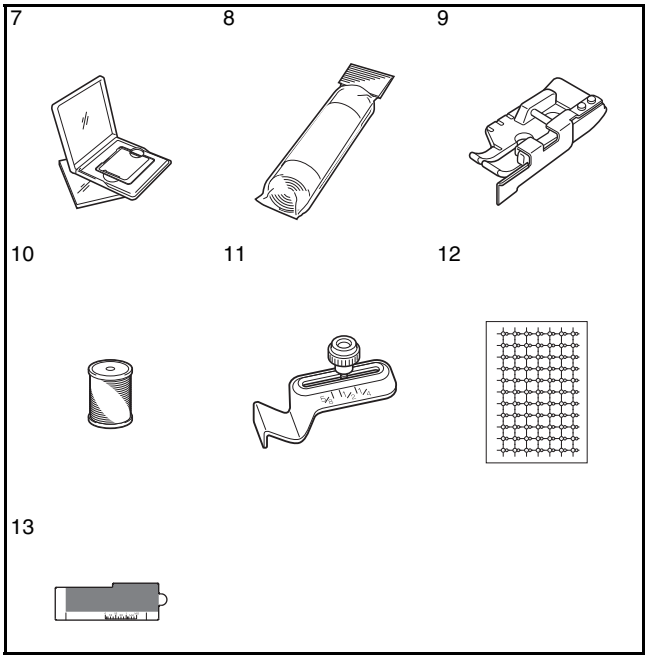
- Always use accessories recommended for this machine.
- The screw for the presser foot holder is available through your authorized dealer (Part code XA4813-051).
- Included accessories 37, 43, 60 and 61 can be stored in the machine's soft cover case. (In some countries or regions, the soft cover case is not included in the enclosed accessories; however, it is available as an option.)



Options

The following are available as optional accessories to be purchased separately from your authorized Brother dealer.





No.	Part Name	Part Code	
		Americas	Others
1	Border embroidery frame H 30 cm × W 10 cm (H 12 inches × W 4 inches) with Kit 3 upgrade	SABF6000D2	NV1UGK3
2	Border embroidery frame set H 18 cm × W 10 cm (H 7 inches × W 4 inches)	SABF6000D	BF2: XE5059-001
3	10 spool stand	SA560	TS4: XE5065-101
4	Wide table and free motion grip	SATFM6000D	TFM-3: XE5062-001
5	Embroidery frame set (large) H 18 cm × W 13 cm (H 7 inches × W 5 inches)	SA439	EF75: XC8481-152
6	Embroidery card Reader	SAECRI	
7	Embroidery card	–	
8	Stabilizer material	SA519	BM3: XE0806-001
	Water soluble stabilizer	SA520	BM5: XE0615-001
9	1/4 quilting foot with guide	SA185	F057: XC7416-252
10	Embroidery bobbin thread (white)	SAEBT	EBT-CEN: X81164-001
	Embroidery bobbin thread (black)	SAEBT999	EBT-CEBN: XC5520-001
11	Seam guide	SA538	SG1: XC8483-052
12	Embroidery positioning sticker sheets	SAEPS2	EPS2: XF0763-001
13	Edge sewing sheet × 5	SAESS1	ESS1: XE5094-001

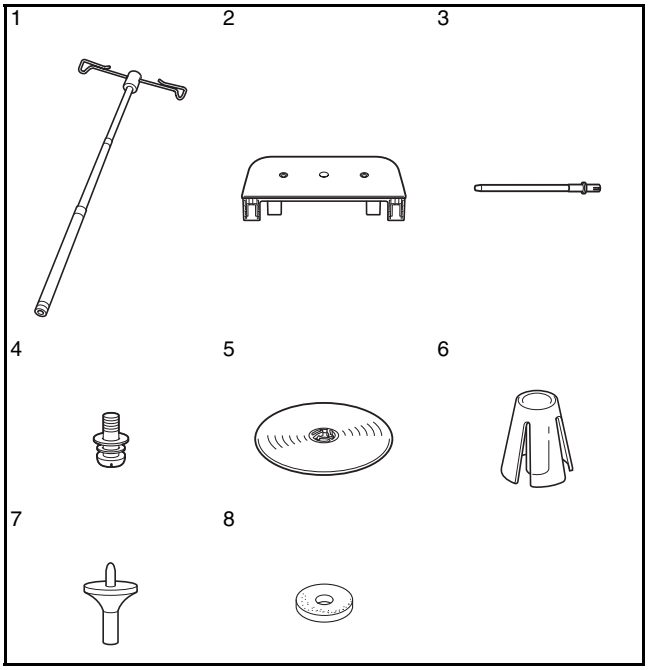
Memo

- All specifications are correct at the time of printing. Please be aware that some specifications may change without notice.

Note
- Embroidery cards purchased in foreign countries may not work with your machine.
- Visit your nearest authorized Brother dealer for a complete listing of optional accessories and embroidery cards available for your machine.

Using the Spool Stand

The included spool stand is useful when using thread spools with a large diameter (cross-wound thread). The spool stand can hold two spools of thread.

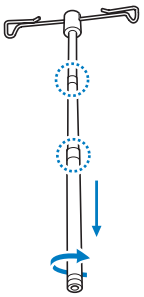


No.	Part Name	Part Code
1	Telescopic thread guide	XE0776-001
2	Spool support	XE4637-001
3	Spool pin × 2	XA6313-051
4	Screw and washer	XC7568-051
5	Spool cap (XL) × 2	XE0779-001
6	Spool holder × 2	XA0679-050
7	Spool cap base × 2	XE0780-001
8	Spool felt × 2	XC7134-051

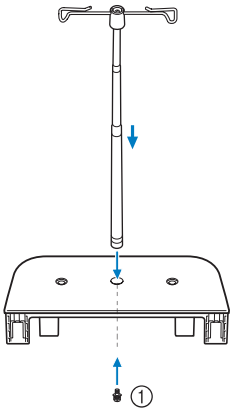
⚠ CAUTION
- **Do not lift the handle of the machine while the spool stand is installed.**
- **Do not push or pull the telescopic thread guide or spool pins with extreme force, otherwise damage may result.**
- **Do not place any object other than spools of thread on the spool support.**
- **Do not try to wind thread on the bobbin while sewing using the spool stand.**

■ How to assemble the spool stand

1 **Fully extend the telescopic thread guide shaft, and then rotate the shaft until the two internal stoppers click into place.**

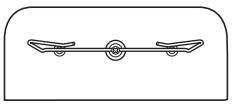


2 **Insert the telescopic thread guide into the round hole at the center of the spool support, and then use a screwdriver to securely tighten the screw (①) from the reverse side.**

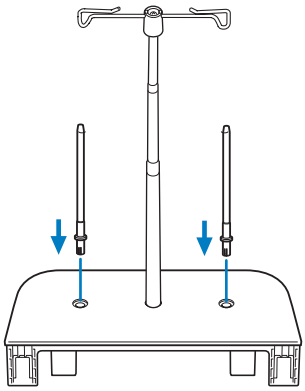


① Screw

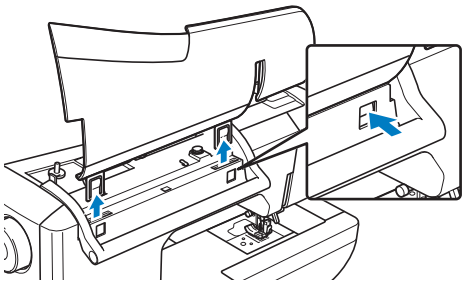
Note
- Make sure that the stoppers on the telescopic thread guide shaft are firmly in place and that the top of the thread guide is directly above the spool pins. In addition, check that the shaft is securely tightened in the spool support.



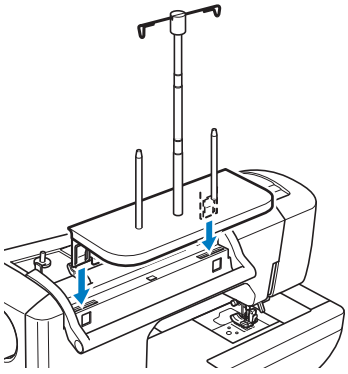
3 **Firmly insert the two spool pins into the two holes in the spool support.**



4 **Open the upper cover of the machine. From the back of the machine, press in the upper cover latches (one on each side), and then pull the upper cover up to remove it from the machine.**

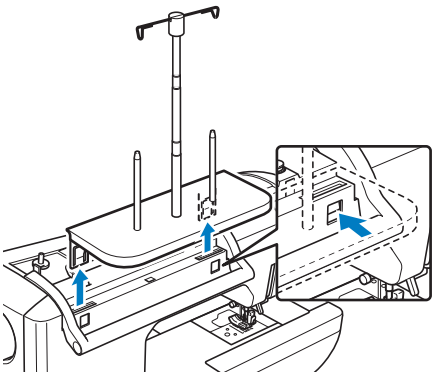


5 **Insert the spool stand onto the notches of the machine.**

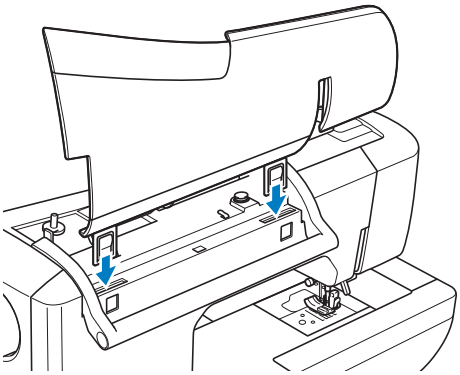


■ How to remove

1 **From the back of the machine, press in the spool stand latches (one on each side), and then pull the spool stand up to remove it from the machine.**



2 **Attach the upper cover to the machine.**

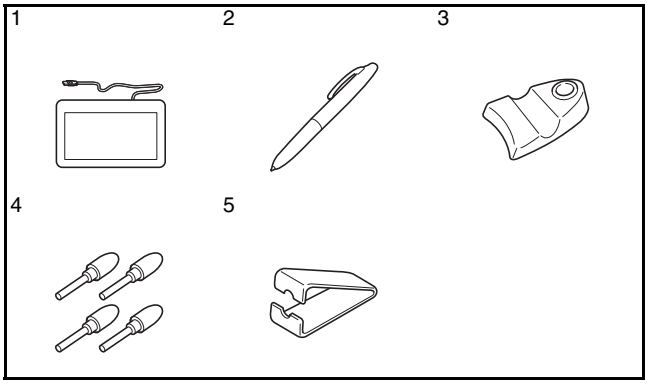


Memo

- See page 52 about the bobbin winding using the spool stand.
- See page 63 about the upper threading using the spool stand.

Using the Pen Tablet

Memo
- See page 34 about connecting the pen tablet with the sewing machine.



No.	Part Name	Part Code
1	Pen tablet	XF0178-001
2	Tablet pen	XF0182-001
3	Tablet pen holder	XF0185-001
4	Extra pen tips (4)	XF0183-001
5	Pen tip clip	XF0184-001

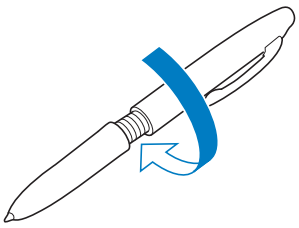
■ Installing a battery in the tablet pen

A battery for the tablet pen is not included with your machine. Use a new AAA alkaline battery (LR03).

⚠ WARNING
- **Do not disassemble or modify the tablet pen/battery.**
- **Do not use metallic objects, such as tweezers or a metallic pen, when changing the battery.**
- **Do not throw the battery into fire or expose to heat.**
- **Remove battery immediately and stop using the machine if you notice abnormal odor, heat, discoloration, deformation or anything unusual while using or storing it.**

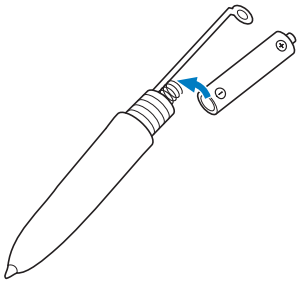
⚠ CAUTION
- **Remove the battery if you do not intend to use tablet pen for an extended period of time.**
- **Do not set the positive and negative ends of the battery in the wrong direction.**

1 **Unscrew the upper barrel of the tablet pen.**

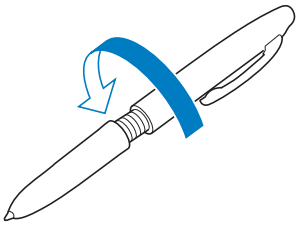


Note
- Unscrew the upper barrel slowly, so that the tablet pen will not be damaged.

2 **Install a new AAA alkaline battery (LR03) in the tablet pen with the positive end (+) pointing up.**



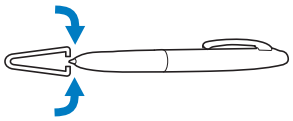
3 **Screw the upper barrel to the tablet pen.**



■ Replacing the pen tip

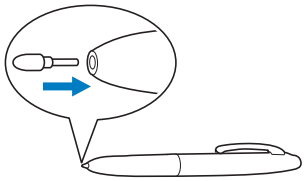
When the pen tip is worn out, replace with a new one included with your pen tablet.

1 **Grasp the old pen tip firmly with the included pen tip clip.**



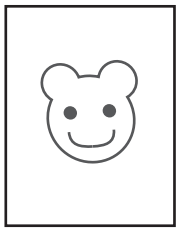
2 **Gently pull the pen tip straight out.**

3 **Push in the new pen tip until it is flush with the tablet pen.**

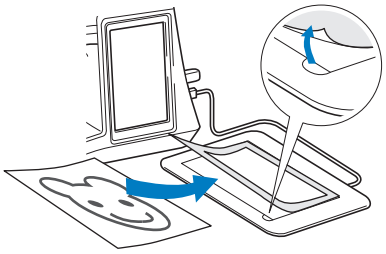


■ Using with My Custom Design

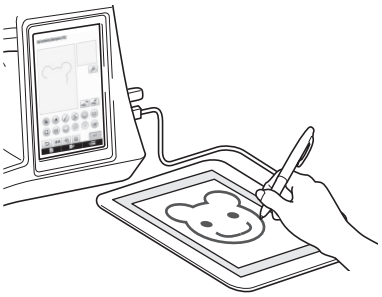
1 **Select a favorite picture for creating embroidery pattern.**



2 **Insert the picture under the tablet sheet.**



3 **Activate My Custom Design, then trace the picture with the tablet pen.**



For detailed instructions about operating My Custom Design, refer to the Operation Manual (PDF format) stored on the My Custom Design CD.

Note

- When you create the embroidery pattern by tracing the picture using the pen tablet, the actual size of the pattern will be bigger than the tracing picture. Check the size of the pattern before embroidering, then change the size of the pattern if needed.
- The pen tablet cannot be used as the USB mouse while tracing the picture. Operate with your finger or touch pen (stylus) while tracing.

Chapter 1
Getting Ready

TURNING THE MACHINE ON/OFF 26

LCD SCREEN 28

- Home Page Screen 28
- Utility Stitch LCD Screen 29
- Key Functions 30

USB Connectivity 32

- Using USB Media or Embroidery Card Reader/ USB Card Writer Module* 32
- Connecting the Machine to the Computer 33
- Using a USB Mouse 33
- Clicking a Key 33
- Changing Pages 33
- Using the Pen Tablet 34

Using the Machine Setting Mode Key 35

- Saving a Settings Screen Image to USB Media 39
- Changing the Pointer Shape When a USB Mouse Is Used 39
- Changing the Screen Saver Image 40
- Selecting the Initial Screen Display 41
- Choosing the Display Language 41
- Changing the Background Colors of the Embroidery Patterns 42
- Specifying the Size of Pattern Thumbnails 43

Using the Sewing Machine Help Key 44

Using the Operation Guide Function 45

Using the Sewing Guide Function 46

Using the Pattern Explanation Function 47

LOWER THREADING 48

Winding the Bobbin 48

- Using the Supplemental Spool Pin 48
- Using the Spool Pin 51
- Using the Spool Stand 52
- Untangling Thread from Beneath the Bobbin Winder Seat 53

Setting the Bobbin 54

Pulling Up the Bobbin Thread 55

UPPER THREADING 57

Upper Threading 57

Using the Twin Needle Mode 60

Using the Spool Stand 63

- Using the Spool Stand 63

Using Threads that Unwind Quickly 64

- Using the Spool Net 64

CHANGING THE PRESSER FOOT 65

Removing the Presser Foot 65

Attaching the Presser Foot 65

Attaching the Walking Foot 66

CHANGING THE NEEDLE 67

About the Needle 69

Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations 69

TURNING THE MACHINE ON/OFF

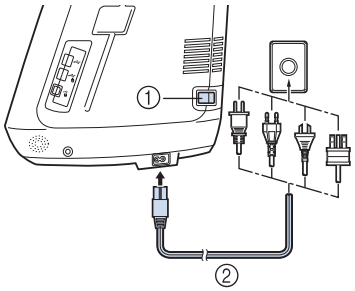
⚠ WARNING

- **Use only regular household electricity for the power source. Using other power sources may result in fire, electric shock, or damage to the machine.**
- **Make sure that the plugs on the power cord are firmly inserted into the electrical outlet and the power cord receptacle on the machine.**
- **Do not insert the plug on the power cord into an electrical outlet that is in poor condition.**
- **Turn the main power to OFF and remove the plug in the following circumstances:**
  When you are away from the machine
  After using the machine
  When the power fails during use
  When the machine does not operate correctly due to a bad connection or a disconnection
  During electrical storms

⚠ CAUTION

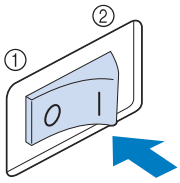
- **Use only the power cord included with this machine.**
- **Do not use extension cords or multi-plug adapters with many other appliances plugged in to them. Fire or electric shock may result.**
- **Do not touch the plug with wet hands. Electric shock may result.**
- **When unplugging the machine, always turn the main power to OFF first. Always grasp the plug to remove it from the outlet. Pulling on the cord may damage the cord, or lead to fire or electric shock.**
- **Do not allow the power cord to be cut, damaged, modified, forcefully bent, pulled, twisted, or bundled. Do not place heavy objects on the cord. Do not subject the cord to heat. These things may damage the cord, or cause fire or electric shock. If the cord or plug is damaged, take the machine to your authorized dealer for repairs before continuing use.**
- **Unplug the power cord if the machine is not to be used for a long period of time. Otherwise, a fire may result.**
- **When leaving the machine unattended, either the main switch of the machine should be turned to OFF or the plug must be removed from the socket-outlet.**
- **When servicing the machine or when removing covers, the machine must be unplugged.**
- **For U.S.A only**
  This appliance has a polarized plug (one blade wider than the other). To reduce the risk of electrical shock, this plug is intended to fit in a polarized outlet only one way.
  If the plug does not fit fully in the outlet, reverse the plug. If it still does not fit, contact a qualified electrician to install the proper outlet. Do not modify the plug in any way.

1 **Insert the power supply cord into the power cord receptacle, then insert the plug into a wall outlet.**



① Main power switch
② Power supply cord

2 **Turn the main power switch to "I" to turn on the machine.**



① OFF
② ON

Memo

- When the machine is turned on, the needle and the feed dogs will make sound when they move; this is not a malfunction.

3 **Turn the main power switch to "O" to turn off the machine.**

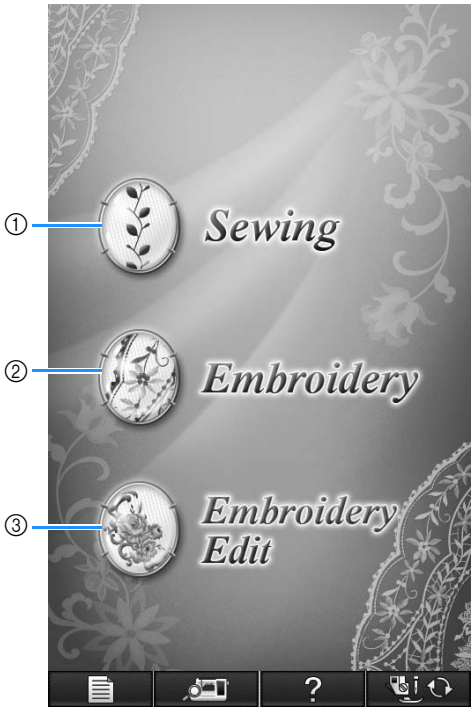
LCD SCREEN

When the machine is turned on, the opening movie is played. Touch anywhere on the screen for the home page screen to be displayed. Touch the LCD screen or a key with your finger or the included touch pen to select a machine function.

Note
- When the straight stitch needle plate is on the machine, the needle will automatically move to the middle position.

Memo
- Only touch the screen with your finger or the included touch pen. Do not use a sharp pencil, screwdriver, or other hard or sharp object. It is not necessary to press hard on the screen. Pressing too hard or using a sharp object may damage the screen.

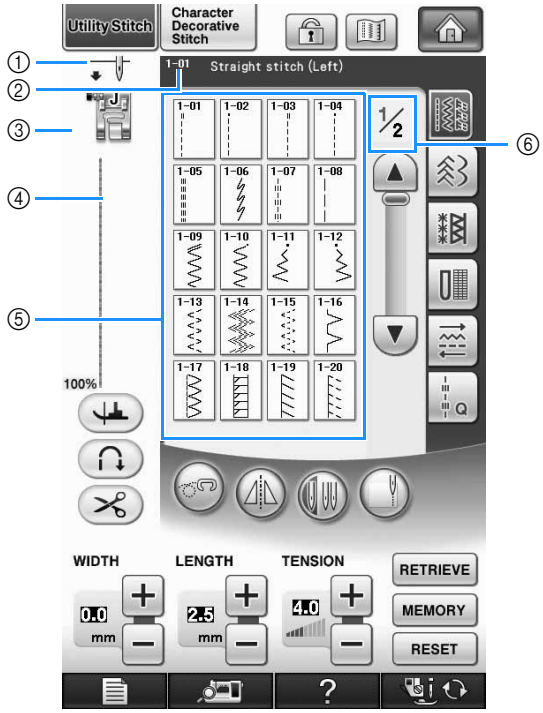
■ Home Page Screen



No.	Display	Key Name	Explanation	Page
①		Sewing key	Press this key to sew utility stitches or character or decorative stitch patterns.	See the “Key Functions” table. 30
②		Embroidery key	Attach the embroidery unit and press this key to embroider patterns.	186
③		Embroidery Edit key	Press this key to combine embroidery patterns. With the embroidery edit functions, you can also create original embroidery patterns or frame patterns.	264

■ Utility Stitch LCD Screen

Press a key with your finger to select the stitch pattern, to select a machine function, or to select an operation indicated on the key.



① Shows single or twin needle mode setting, and the needle stop position.

Single needle/down position

Single needle/up position

Twin needle/down position

Twin needle/up position

② Shows the name and code number of the selected stitch.

③ Shows the presser foot code. Attach the presser foot indicated in this display before sewing.

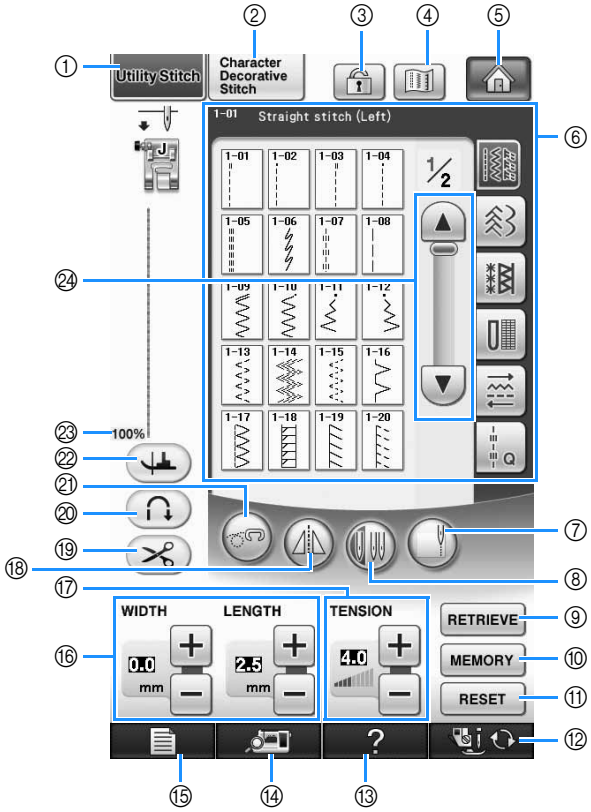
④ Shows a preview of the selected stitch.
When shown at 100%, the stitch appears in the screen at nearly its actual size.

⑤ Shows the stitch patterns.

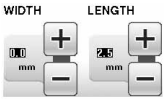
⑥ Shows additional pages that can be displayed (Illustration shows page 1 of 2.).

* All key functions of the LCD are explained in the “Key Functions” table on the following page.

■ Key Functions

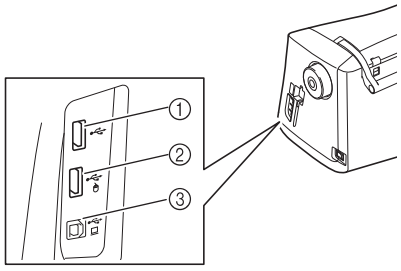


No.	Display	Key Name	Explanation	Page
①	Utility Stitch	Utility stitch key	Press this key to select a straight stitch, zigzag stitch, buttonhole, blind hem stitch, or other stitches commonly used in garment construction.	91
②	Character Decorative Stitch	Character/Decorative stitch key	Press this key to select character or decorative stitch patterns.	156
③		Screen lock key	Press this key to lock the screen.When the screen is locked, the various settings, such as the stitch width and stitch length, are locked and cannot be changed. Press this key again to unlock the settings.	86
④		Image key	Press this key to display an enlarged image of the selected stitch pattern.	92
⑤		Home page screen key	Press this key anytime it is displayed to return to the home page screen and select a different category - “Sewing”, “Embroidery” or “Embroidery edit”.	28
⑥		Stitch selection display	Press the key for the pattern you want to sew. Use to change to different stitch groups.	91
⑦		Edge sewing key	Using the built-in camera, press this key to measure the width of the area from the edge of the fabric to the stitch and set the camera for edge sewing.	148
⑧		Needle mode selection key (single/ double)	Press this key to select twin needle sewing mode. The sewing mode changes between single needle mode and twin needle mode each time you press the key. If the key display is light gray, the selected stitch pattern cannot be sewn in the twin needle mode.	60
⑨	RETRIEVE	Retrieve key	Press this key to retrieve a saved pattern.	93
⑩	MEMORY	Manual memory key	Change the stitch pattern settings (zigzag width and stitch length, thread tension, automatic thread cutting or automatic reinforcement stitching, etc.), then save them by pressing this key. Five sets of settings can be saved for a single stitch pattern.	92
⑪	RESET	Reset key	Press this key to return the selected stitch pattern saved settings to the default settings.	78-79

No.	Display	Key Name	Explanation	Page
⑫		Presser foot/Needle exchange key	Press this key before changing the needle, the presser foot, etc. This key locks all key and button functions to prevent operation of the machine.	65-68
⑬		Sewing machine help key	Press this key to see explanations on how to use the machine.	44
⑭		Camera view key	Touch this key to check the needle location as it is shown on the screen through the built in camera.	87
⑮		Machine setting mode key	Press this key to change the needle stop position, change the volume of operation beep, adjust the pattern or screen, and change other machine settings.	35
⑯		Stitch width and stitch length key	Shows the zigzag width and stitch length settings of the currently selected stitch pattern. You can use the plus and minus keys to adjust the zigzag width and stitch length settings.	78
⑰		Thread tension key	Shows the automatic thread tension setting of the currently selected stitch pattern. You can use the plus and minus keys to change the thread tension settings.	79
⑱		Mirror image key	Press this key to create a mirror image of the selected stitch pattern. If the key display is light gray, a mirror image of the selected stitch pattern cannot be sewn.	91
⑲		Automatic thread cutting key	Press this key to set the automatic thread cutting function. Set the automatic thread cutting function before sewing to have the machine automatically sew reinforcement stitches at the beginning and end of sewing (depending on the pattern, the machine may sew reverse stitches) and trim the threads after sewing.	82
⑳		Automatic reinforcement stitch key	Press this key to use the automatic reinforcement stitching (reverse stitching) setting. If you select this setting before sewing, the machine will automatically sew reinforcement stitches at the beginning and end of sewing (depending on the pattern, the machine may sew reverse stitches).	81
㉑		Free motion mode key	Press this key to enter free motion sewing mode. The presser foot is raised to an appropriate height and the feed dog is lowered for free motion quilting.	116
㉒		Pivot key	Press this key to select the pivot setting. When the pivot setting is selected, stopping the machine lowers the needle and slightly raises the presser foot automatically. In addition, when sewing is restarted, the presser foot is automatically lowered. • If this key appears as , the pivot function cannot be used. • Be sure the needle position on page 36 of Machine Settings is set to the down position.	84
㉓	100%	Pattern display size	Shows the approximate size of the pattern selected. 100% : Nearly the same size as the sewn pattern 50% : 1/2 the size of the sewn pattern 25% : 1/4 the size of the sewn pattern * The actual size of the sewn pattern may differ depending on the type of fabric and thread that is used.	91
㉔		Scroll key	Press or , to move one page at a time, or touch anywhere on the bar to jump ahead for additional pages of stitches.	

USB Connectivity

You can perform many functions using the USB ports on the machine. Connect the appropriate devices according to the feature of each ports.



① Primary (top) USB port for media or card Reader/ USB card writer module* (USB2.0)

* If you have purchased the PE-DESIGN Ver5 or later, PE-DESIGN Lite or PED-BASIC, you can plug the included USB card writer module into the machine as an embroidery card reader, and recall patterns.

② USB port for mouse (USB1.1)

③ USB port for computer

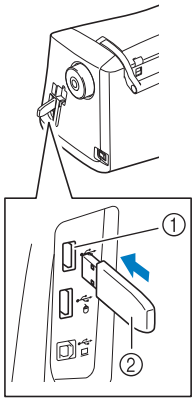
Note

- The processing speed may vary by port selection and quantity of data.
- Do not insert anything other than USB media into the USB media port. Otherwise, the USB media drive may be damaged.

■ Using USB Media or Embroidery Card Reader/USB Card Writer Module*

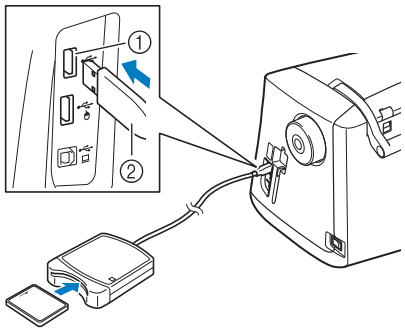
When sending or reading patterns using the USB media or the embroidery card Reader/USB card writer module*, connect the device to the primary (top) USB port.
The primary (top) USB port processes the data faster than the other ports.

* If you have purchased the PE-DESIGN Ver5 or later, PE-DESIGN Lite or PED-BASIC, you can plug the included USB card writer module into the machine as an embroidery card reader, and recall patterns.



① Primary (top) USB port

② USB media



① Primary (top) USB port

② Embroidery card Reader/USB card writer module*

Note

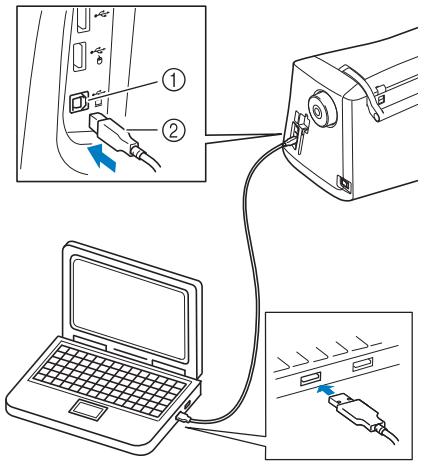
- Two USB media cannot be used with this machine at the same time. If two USB media are inserted, only the USB media inserted first is detected.
- Use only an embroidery card reader designed for this machine. Using an unauthorized embroidery card reader may cause your machine to operate incorrectly.
- Embroidery patterns cannot be saved from the machine to an embroidery card inserted into a connected USB card writer module.

Memo

- USB media is widely used, however some USB media may not be usable with this machine. Please visit our website for more details.
- Depending on the type of USB media being used, either directly plug the USB device into the machine's USB port or plug the USB media Reader/Writer into the machine's USB port.
- You can plug the optional embroidery card Reader/USB card writer module* into the primary (top) or center port, when the mouse or the pen tablet is not connected.
- You can plug a USB media into the center port, but the primary (top) USB port processes the data faster. It is recommended to use the primary (top) USB port.

■ Connecting the Machine to the Computer

Using the included USB cable, the sewing machine can be connected to your computer.



① USB port for computer
② USB cable connector

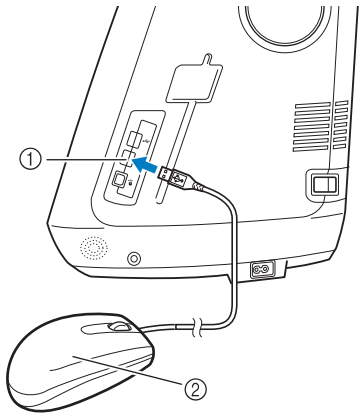
Note

- The connectors on the USB cable can only be inserted into a port in one direction. If it is difficult to insert the connector, do not insert it with force. Check the orientation of the connector.
- For details on the position of the USB port on the computer (or USB hub), refer to the instruction manual for the corresponding equipment.

■ Using a USB Mouse

The USB mouse, connected to the sewing machine, can be used to perform a variety of operations in the screens.

Connect a USB mouse to the USB 1.1 port marked with . You can also connect a USB mouse to the other USB port (USB 2.0).



① USB port for mouse
② USB mouse

Note

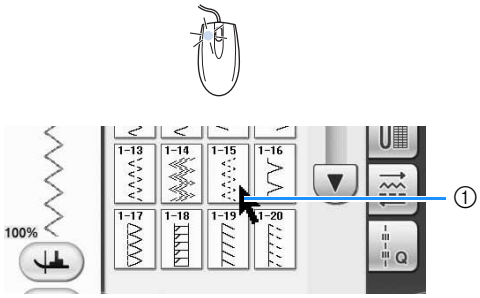
- Do not perform operations with the mouse at the same time that you are touching the screen with your finger or the included touch pen.
- A USB mouse can be connected or disconnected at any time.
- Only the left mouse button and its wheel can be used to perform operations. No other buttons can be used.
- The mouse pointer does not appear in the camera view window, the screen saver or the home page screen.

■ Clicking a Key

When the mouse is connected, the pointer appears on the screen. Move the mouse to position the pointer over the desired key, and then click the left mouse button.

Memo

- Double-clicking has no effect.



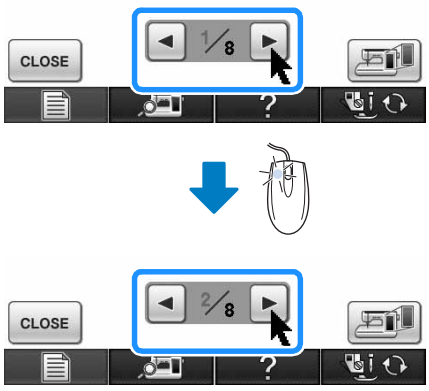
① Pointer

■ Changing Pages

Rotate the mouse wheel to switch through the tabs of the pattern selection screens.

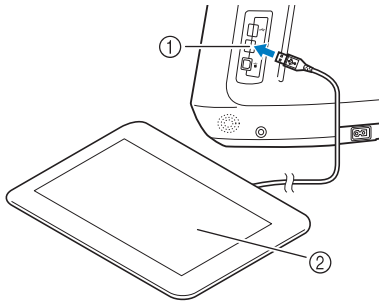
Memo

- If page numbers and a vertical scroll bar for additional pages are displayed, rotate the mouse wheel or click the left mouse button with the pointer on ◄/► or ▲/▼ to display the previous or next page.



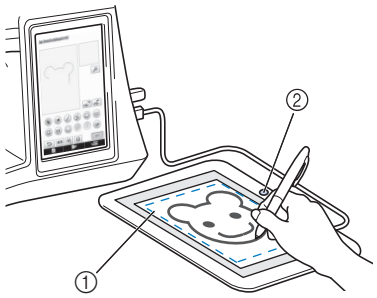
■ Using the Pen Tablet

The included pen tablet, connected to the sewing machine, can be used when creating your original embroidery pattern with My Custom Design. Also, you can use the pen tablet as a USB mouse when operating your sewing machine. Connect the pen tablet to the USB 1.1 port marked with . You can also connect the pen tablet to the other USB port (USB 2.0) when not using the My Custom Design program.



① USB port for mouse
② Pen tablet

After connecting the pen tablet to the sewing machine, it is activated when the pointer appears on the screen.
The blue LED light on the tablet is the main indicator for hardware operation. The LED normally stays off, and will turn on when you touch the surface of the pen tablet with the tablet pen.



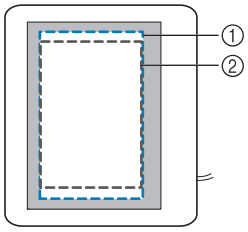
① Working area of the pen tablet
② Blue LED light

Note

- The pen tablet can be connected or disconnected at any time.
- Do not perform any operations with the pen tablet at the same time that you are touching the machine's LCD screen with your finger or the included touch pen (stylus).

Memo

- Working area of the pen tablet differs depending on performing functions of the sewing machine.



① Working area for normal machine operation
② Working area when drawing with the pen tablet using the My Custom Design program

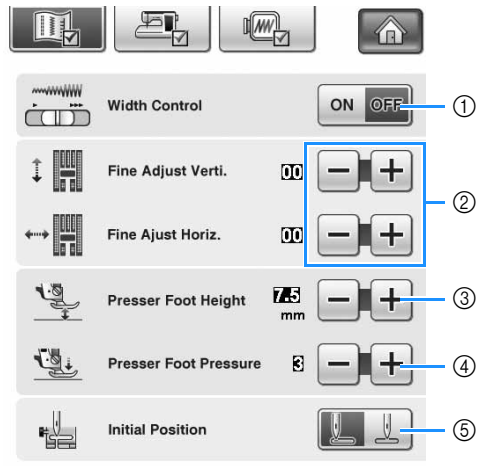
Using the Machine Setting Mode Key

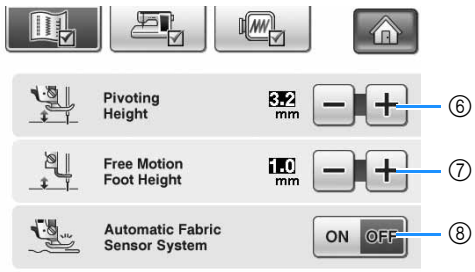
Press [ ] to change the default machine settings (needle stop position, embroidery speed, opening display, etc.). To display the different settings screens, press [ ] for “Sewing settings”, [ ] for “General settings” or [ ] for “Embroidery settings”.

Memo

- Press [◄] or [►] to display a different settings screen.

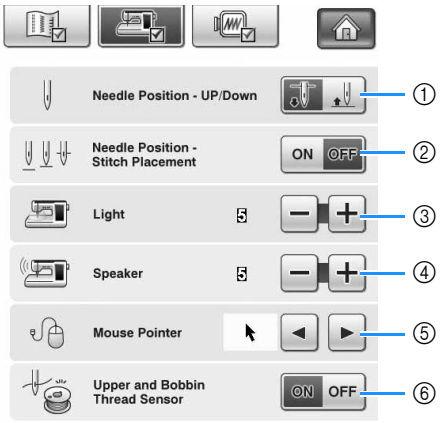
Sewing settings

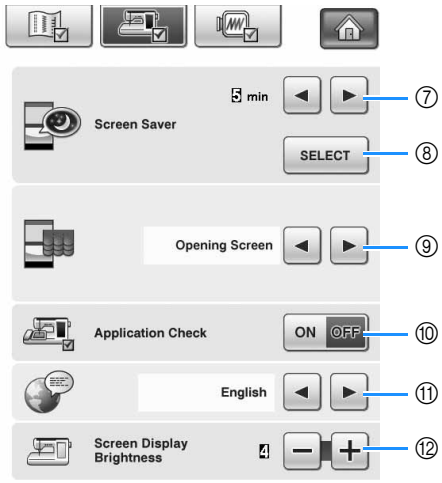




① Select whether to use the sewing speed controller to determine the zigzag width (see page 115).
② Make adjustments to character or decorative stitch patterns (see page 162).
③ Adjust the presser foot height. (Select the height of the presser foot when the presser foot is raised.)
④ Adjust the presser foot pressure. (The higher the number, the greater the pressure will be. Set the pressure at “3” for normal sewing.)
⑤ Select whether “1-01 Straight stitch (Left)” or “1-03 Straight stitch (Middle)” is the utility stitch that is automatically selected when the machine is turned on.
⑥ Change the height of the presser foot when sewing is stopped when the pivot setting is selected (see page 84). Adjust the presser foot to one of the three heights (3.2 mm, 5.0 mm and 7.5 mm).
⑦ Change the height of the presser foot when the machine is set to free motion sewing mode (see page 116).
⑧ When set to “ON”, the thickness of the fabric is automatically detected by an internal sensor while sewing. This enables the fabric to be fed smoothly (see pages 76 and 85).
⑨ Press to save a settings screen image to USB media (see page 39).

General settings





⚠ CAUTION

- **If "Upper and Bobbin Thread Sensor" is set to "OFF", remove the upper thread. If the machine is used with the upper thread threaded, the machine will not be able to detect if the thread has become tangled. Continuing to use the machine with tangled thread may cause damage.**

① Select the needle stop position (the needle position when the machine is not operating) to be up or down. Select the down position when using the pivot key.

② Select the operation of the "Needle Position - Stitch Placement" button from the following two sequences (see page 86).
Each press of the "Needle Position - Stitch Placement" button:
"ON" – raises the needle, stops it at a nearly lowered position, then lowers it
"OFF" – raises the needle, then lowers it

③ Change the brightness of the Needle Area and Work Area Lights.

④ Change the speaker volume.

⑤ Change the shape of the pointer when a USB mouse is used (see page 39).

⑥ Turn both the upper and bobbin thread sensor "ON" or "OFF". If it is turned "OFF", the machine can be used without thread.

⑦ Select the length of time until the screen saver appears. A setting between "OFF" (0) and "60" minutes can be set in 1-minute increments.

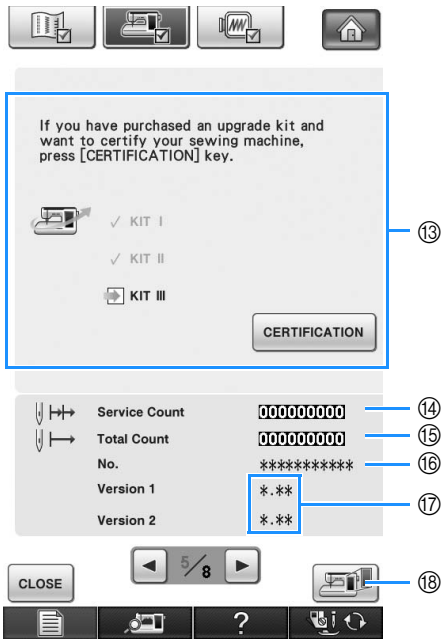
⑧ Change the image of the screen saver (see page 40).

⑨ Select the initial screen that is displayed when the machine is turned on (see page 41).

⑩ Press "ON" when using the embroidery data creation software My Custom Design. Refer to the instruction manual (PDF format) stored in the My Custom Design CD included in this machine.

⑪ Change the display language (see page 41).

⑫ Change the screen display brightness (see page 342).



⑬ Use to certify your sewing machine when you purchase one of the upgrade kits.

⑭ Display the service count which is a reminder to take your machine in for regular servicing. (Contact your authorized dealer for details.)

⑮ Display the total number of stitches sewn on this machine.

⑯ The “No.” is the internal machine number for the embroidery and sewing machine.

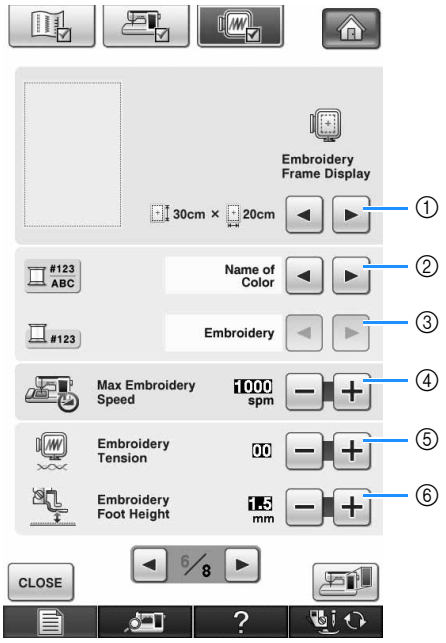
⑰ Display the program version. “Version 1” shows the program version of the LCD panel, “Version 2” shows the program version of the machine.

⑱ Press to save a settings screen image to USB media (see page 39).

Memo

- The latest version of software is installed in your machine. Check with your local authorized Brother dealer or at “ http://solutions.brother.com ” for available updates (see page 357).

Embroidery settings



① Select from among 14 embroidery frame displays (see page 238).

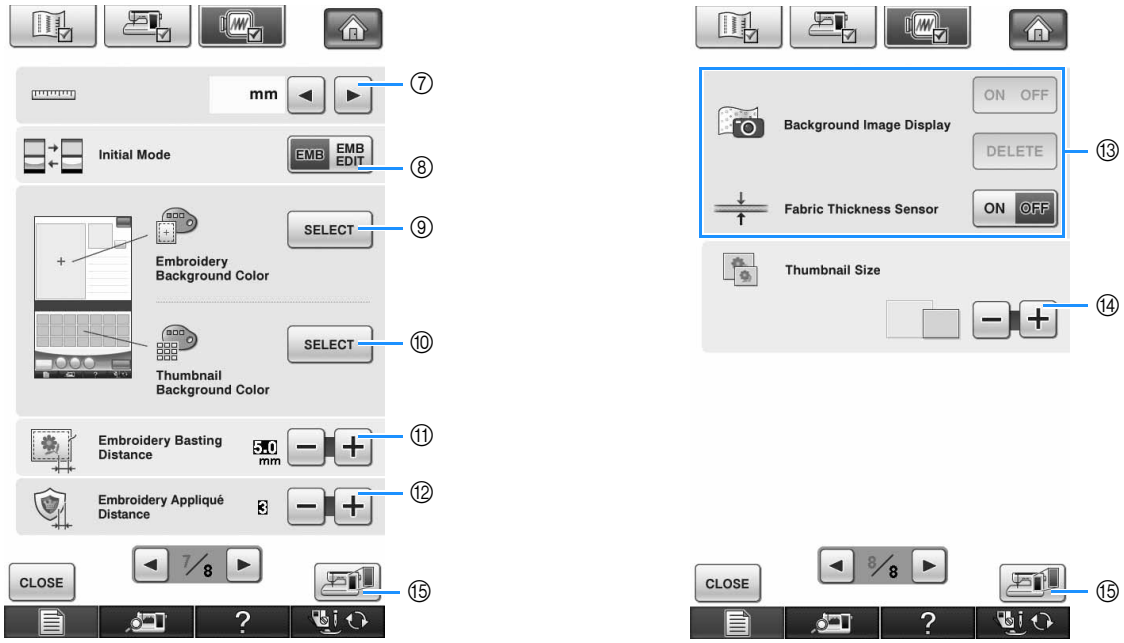
② Change the thread color display on the embroidery screen; thread number, color name (see page 237).

③ When the thread number “#123” is selected, select from six thread brands (see page 237).

④ Adjust the maximum embroidery speed setting (see page 237).

⑤ Adjust the upper thread tension for embroidering (see page 233).

⑥ Select the height of the embroidery foot “W” during embroidering (see page 200).

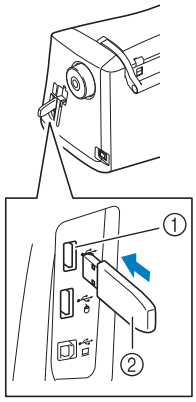


⑦ Change the display units (mm/inch).
⑧ Change the initial mode of the display (embroidery/embroidery edit).
⑨ Change the color of the background for the embroidery display area (see page 42).
⑩ Change the color of the background for the thumbnail area (see page 42).
⑪ Adjust the distance between the pattern and the basting stitching (see page 299).
⑫ Adjust the distance between the appliqué pattern and the outline (see page 300).
⑬ Use to display the fabric while aligning the embroidery position (see page 211).
⑭ Press to specify the size of pattern thumbnails (see page 43).
⑮ Press to save a settings screen image to USB media (see page 39).

■ Saving a Settings Screen Image to USB Media

An image of the settings screen can be saved as a BMP file.
A maximum of 100 images can be saved on a single USB media at one time.

1 Insert the USB media into the primary (top) USB port on the right side of the machine.



① Primary (top) USB port
② USB media

2 Press [ ].

→ The Sewing settings screen appears. Select the settings screen page that you want to save the screen image of.

3 Press [ ].

→ The image file will be saved to the USB media.

4 Remove the USB media, and then check the saved image using a computer.

The files for Settings screen images are saved with the name "S**.BMP".

* "**" in the name "S**.BMP" will automatically be replaced with a number between 00 and 99.

Note

- If 100 image files have already been saved on the USB media, the following message appears. In this case, delete a file from the USB media or use different USB media.

■ Changing the Pointer Shape When a USB Mouse Is Used

In the settings screen, the shape can be selected for the pointer that appears when a USB mouse is connected. Depending upon the background color, select the desired shape from the three that are available.

Memo

- For details on changing the background color, refer to "Changing the Background Colors of the Embroidery Patterns" on page 42.

1 Press [ ].

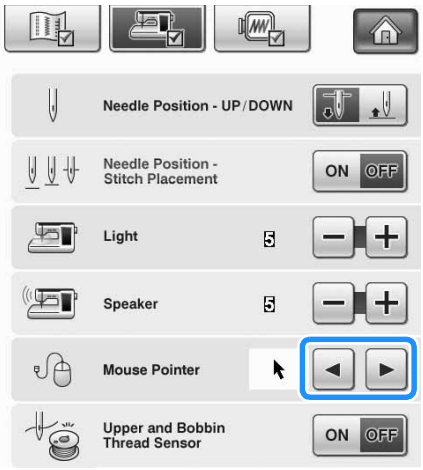
→ The Sewing settings screen appears.

2 Press [ ].

→ The General settings screen appears.

3 Display 3/8 (page 3 of 8) of the General settings screen.

4 Use [◄] and [►] to choose the pointer shape from the three settings available (, and).



5 Press [CLOSE] to return to the original screen.

Memo

- The setting remains selected even if the machine is turned off.

■ Changing the Screen Saver Image

Instead of the default image, you can select your own personal images for the screen saver of your machine.
Before changing the screen saver image, prepare the image on your computer or USB media.

Compatible image files

Format	JPEG format (.jpg)
File size	Max. 150 KB for each image
File dimension	480 × 800 pixels or less, (If the width is more than 480 pixels, the image imported will be reduced to a width of 480 pixels.)
Number allowed	5 or less

Note

- When using USB media, make sure that it contains only your own personal images to be selected for the screen saver.
- Folders are recognized. Open the folder that holds your personal images.

1 **Press** [ ].

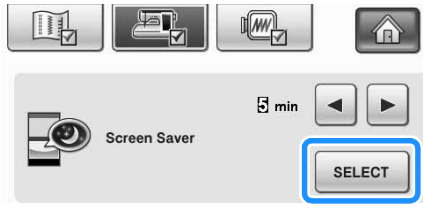
→ The Sewing settings screen appears.

2 **Press** [ ].

→ The General settings screen appears.

3 **Display 4/8 (page 4 of 8) of the General settings screen.**

4 **Press** [SELECT].

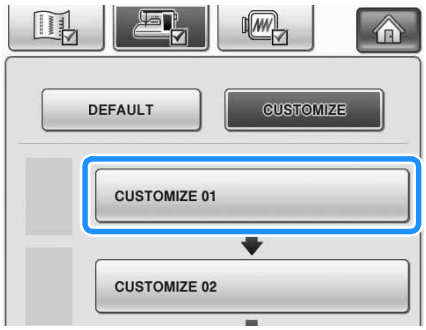


5 **Press** [CUSTOMIZE].

6 **Connect the USB media or the computer (using a USB cable) that contains your personal image to the USB port of the machine.**

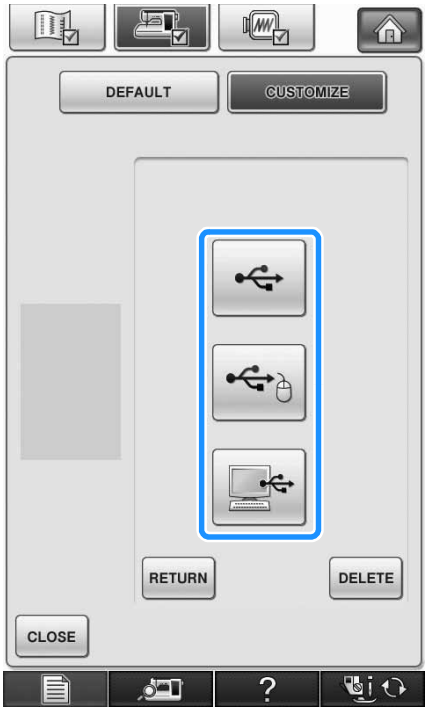
* See page 32 about USB connectivity.

7 **Press** [CUSTOMIZE 01] **to select the first image.**



* The images will appear in a list in this screen. Select the desired number to specify the image.

8 **Select the device that is connected.**



* Press [ ] when connecting USB media to the primary (top) USB port.

* Press [ ] when connecting USB media to the center USB port.

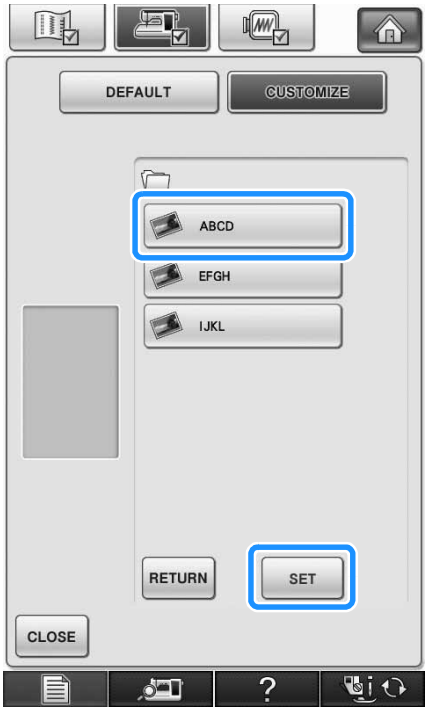
* Press [ ] when connecting a computer using a USB cable, and then copy your personal images into "Removable Disk", which appears on the desktop of the computer.

→ A list of your personal images appear on the screen.

* Press DELETE to delete the selected image.

* Press RETURN to view the previous page.

9 Press a file name to select image and then press SET.



→ The selected image is stored on your machine.

* Press RETURN to view the previous page.

10 Repeat the procedure from step 7 to select the remaining images.

11 Press CLOSE to return to the original screen.

■ Selecting the Initial Screen Display

The Initial screen that appears on the machine can be changed.

1 Press .

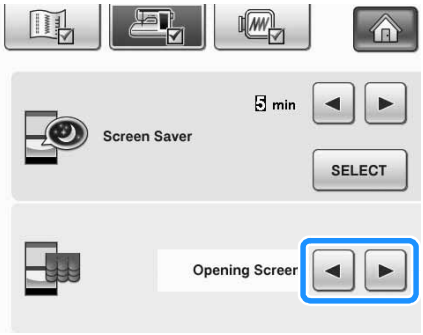
→ The Sewing settings screen appears.

2 Press .

→ The General settings screen appears.

3 Display 4/8 (page 4 of 8) of the General settings screen.

4 Use ◄ and ► to select the setting for the initial screen display.



* **Opening Screen**: When the machine is turned on, the home page screen appears after the opening movie screen is touched.

* **Home Page**: When the machine is turned on, the home page screen appears.

* **Sewing/Embroidery Screen**: When the machine is turned on, the Embroidery screen appears if the embroidery unit is attached to the machine, or the sewing screen appears if the embroidery unit is not attached to the machine.

5 Press CLOSE to return to the original screen.

■ Choosing the Display Language

1 Press .

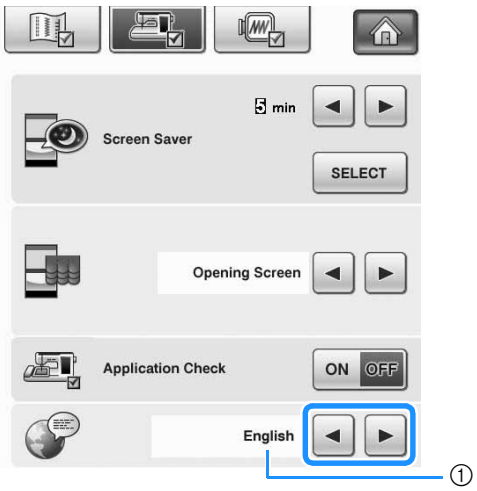
→ The Sewing settings screen appears.

2 Press .

→ The General settings screen appears.

3 Display 4/8 (page 4 of 8) of the General settings screen.

4 Use ◄ and ► to choose the display language.



① Display language

5 **Press** CLOSE **to return to the original screen.**

■ Changing the Background Colors of the Embroidery Patterns

In the settings screen, the background colors can be changed for the embroidery pattern and pattern thumbnails. Depending on the pattern color, select the desired background color from the 66 settings available. Different background colors can be selected for the embroidery pattern and pattern thumbnails.

1 **Press** .

→ The Sewing settings screen appears.

2 **Press** .

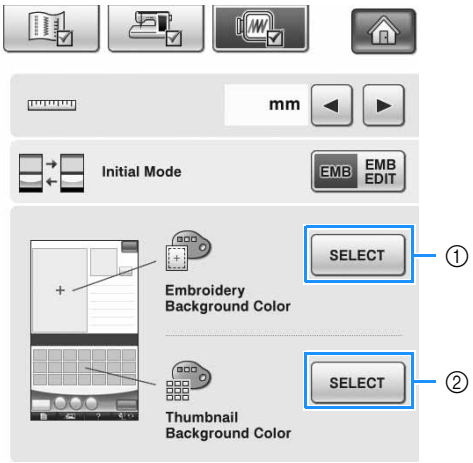
→ The Embroidery settings screen appears.

Memo

- When using the Embroidery or Embroidery Edit, touch to directly access the Embroidery settings screen.

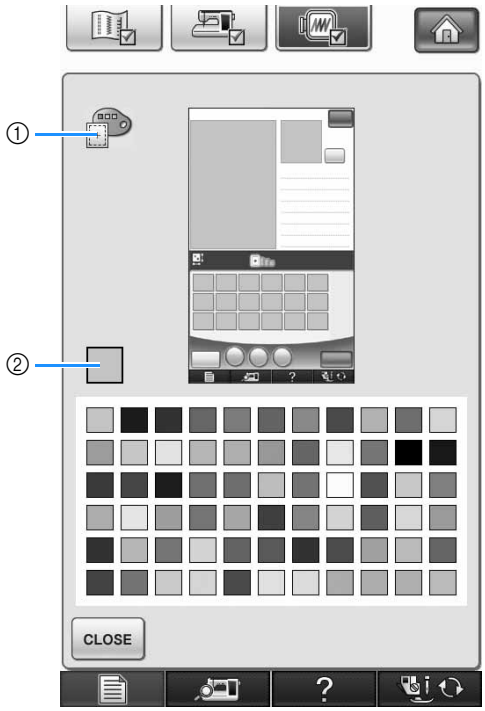
3 **Display 7/8 (page 7 of 8) of the Embroidery settings screen.**

4 **Press** SELECT.

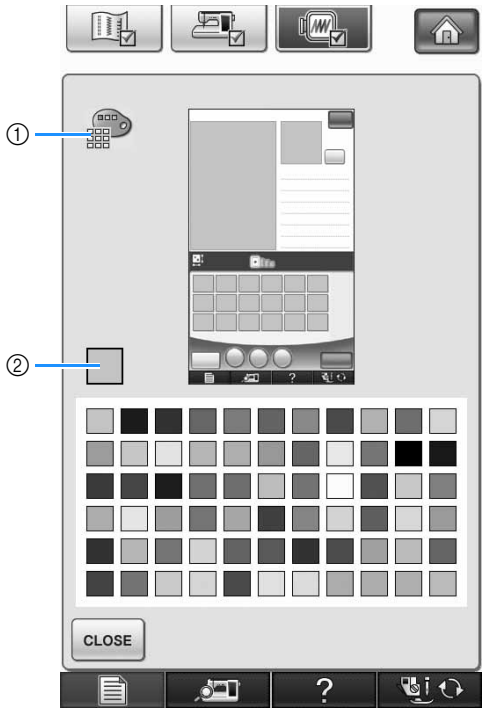


① Embroidery pattern background
② Pattern thumbnails background

5 **Select the background color from the 66 settings available.**



① Embroidery pattern background
② Selected color



① Pattern thumbnails background
② Selected color

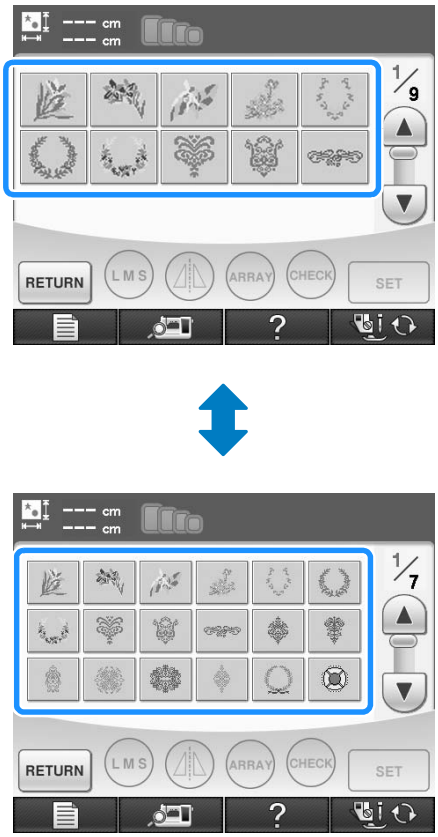
6 **Press** CLOSE **to return to the original screen.**

Memo

- The setting remains selected even if the machine is turned off.

■ Specifying the Size of Pattern Thumbnails

The thumbnails for selecting an embroidery pattern can be set to be displayed at the normal size or a larger size. The larger size is 1.5 times the normal size.



1 **Press** [ ]**.**

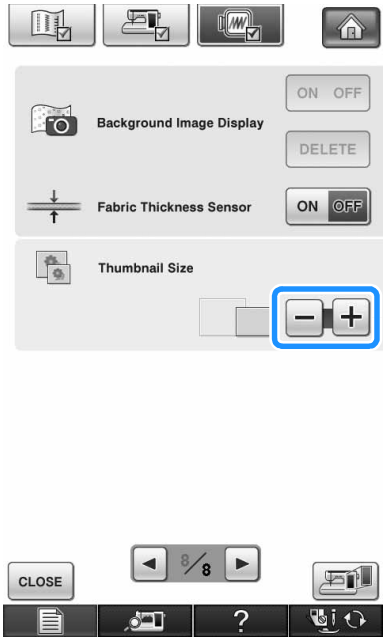
→ The Sewing settings screen appears.

2 **Press** [ ]**.**

→ The Embroidery settings screen appears.

3 **Display 8/8 (page 8 of 8) of the Embroidery settings screen.**

4 **Press** [−] **or** [+] **to select the desired thumbnail size.**

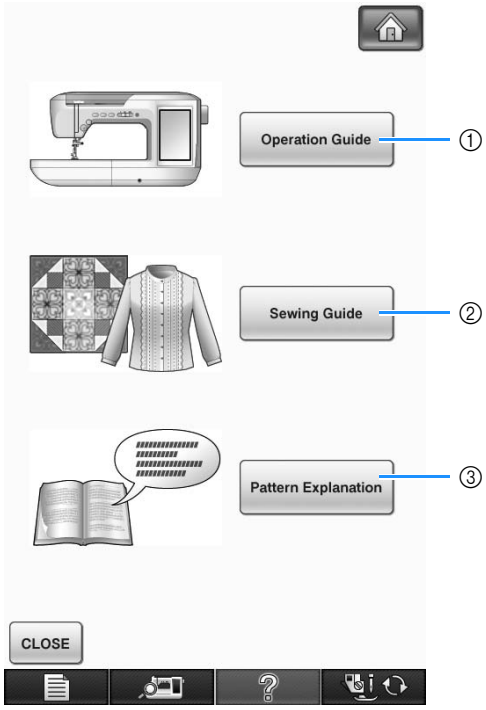


Note

- When thumbnail size setting has been changed the pattern selection screen will not immediately reflect the chosen size. To view the patterns with the new thumbnail size, return to the category selection screen, and then select the pattern category again.

Using the Sewing Machine Help Key ?

Press ? to open the sewing machine help screen. Three functions are available from the screen shown below.



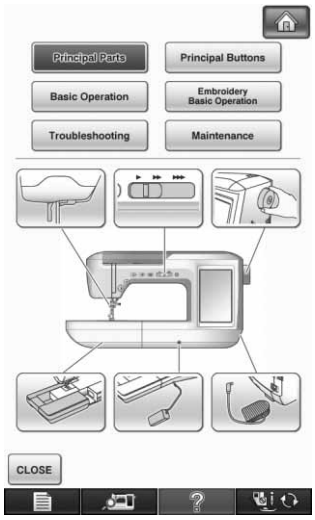
① Press this key to see explanation for upper threading, winding the bobbin, changing the presser foot, preparing to embroider a pattern, and how to use the machine (see page 47).

② Press this key to select utility stitches when you are not sure which stitch to use or how to sew the stitch (see page 45).

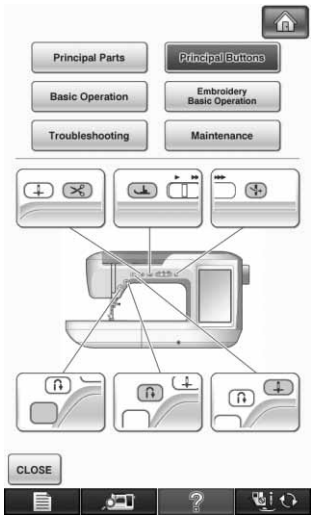
③ Press this key to see an explanation of the stitch selected (see page 46).

Using the Operation Guide Function

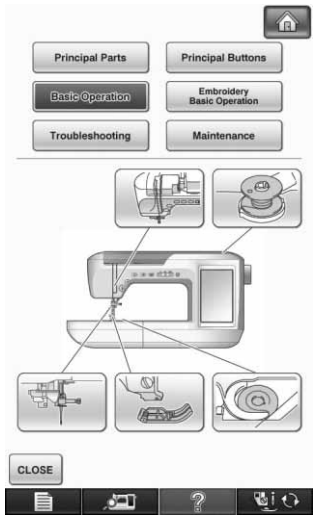
Press [Operation Guide] to open the screen shown below. Six categories are displayed at the top of the screen. Press a key to see more information about that category.



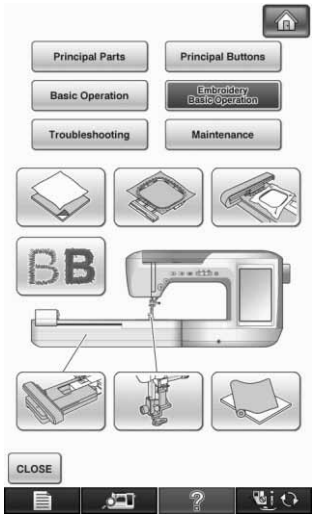
[Principal Parts] displays information about the main parts of the machine and their functions. This is the first screen displayed when you press [Operation Guide].



[Principal Buttons] displays information about the operation buttons.



[Basic Operation] displays information about threading the machine, changing presser feet, etc. Some of the functions are described in the movies. Watch these movies for a better understanding of the functions.



[Embroidery Basic Operation] displays information about attaching the embroidery unit, preparing fabric for embroidering, etc.
Some of the functions are described in the movies. Watch these movies for a better understanding of the functions.

[Troubleshooting] displays troubleshooting information.

[Maintenance] displays information about cleaning the machine, etc.
Some of the functions are described in the movies. Watch these movies for a better understanding of the functions.

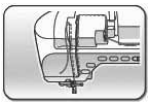
Example: Displaying information about upper threading

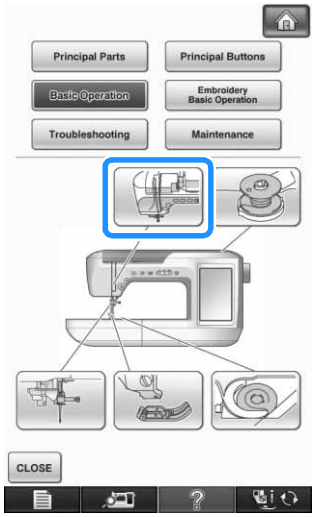
1 **Press** [?].

2 **Press** [Operation Guide].

3 **Press** [Basic Operation].

→ The lower half of the screen will change.

4 **Press**  **(upper threading).**



→ The screen shows instructions for threading the machine.

5 **Read the instructions.**

* Press [▶] to see a video of the displayed instructions.
Press [|◀◀] under movie to go back to the beginning. Press [II] to pause. Press [▶] to restart after pause. Press [CLOSE] to close out the movie.

* Press [▶] to view the next page.

* Press [◀] to view the previous page.

6 **Press** [CLOSE] **to return to the original screen.**

Using the Sewing Guide Function

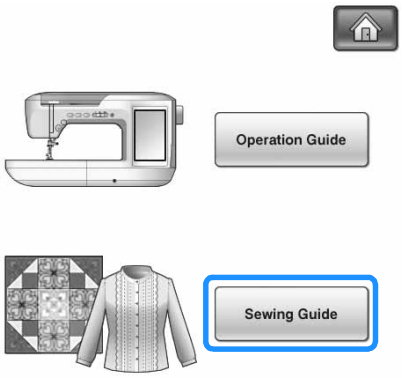
The sewing guide function can be used to select patterns from the Utility Stitch screen.
Use this function when you are not sure which stitch to use for your application, or to get advice about sewing particular stitches. For example, if you want to sew overcasting, but you do not know which stitch to use or how to sew the stitch, you can use this screen to get advice. We recommend that beginners use this method to select stitches.

1 **Enter Utility Stitch category from the home page.**

2 **Press** [?].

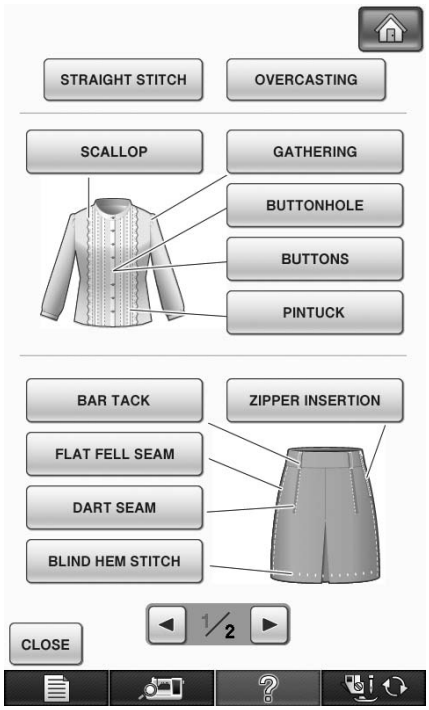
3 **Press** [Sewing Guide].

→ The advice screen is displayed.



4 **Press the key of the category whose sewing instructions you wish to view.**

* Press CLOSE to return to the original screen.



5 **Read the explanations and select the appropriate stitch.**

→ The screen displays directions for sewing the selected stitch. Follow the directions to sew the stitch.

Using the Pattern Explanation Function

If you want to know more about the uses of a stitch pattern, select the pattern and press ? and then Pattern Explanation to see an explanation of the stitch selection.

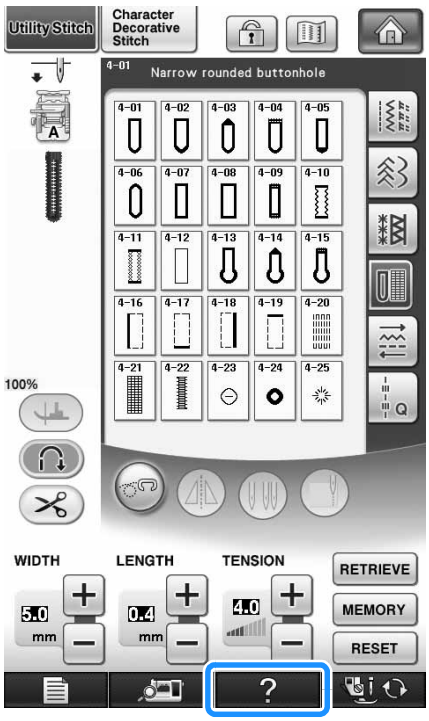
Note

- With the pattern explanation function, descriptions can be displayed for the patterns available on the Utility Stitch and Character/Decorative Stitch screens.
- Descriptions are displayed for each pattern in the Utility Stitch screen. Description for the Character/Decorative Stitch category is also displayed.
- If the Pattern Explanation key appears in gray, the pattern explanation function cannot be used.

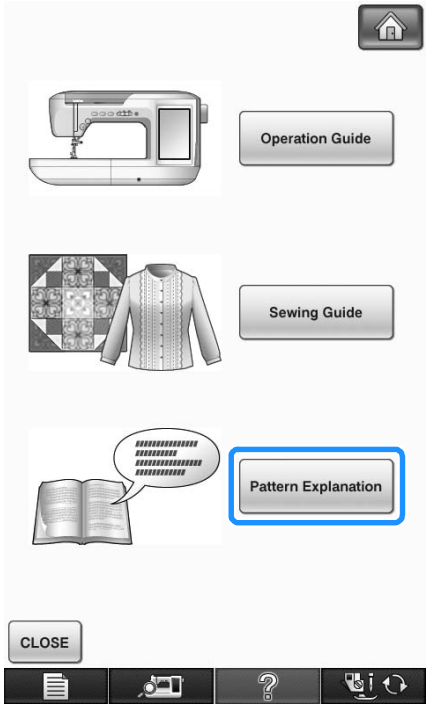
Example: Displaying information about 4-01

1 **Press** 4-01 .

2 **Press** ? .



3 **Press** Pattern Explanation .



→ The screen shows information.

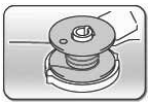
4 **Press** CLOSE **to return to the original screen.**

Memo

- The settings remain displayed to allow you to fine tune the stitch.

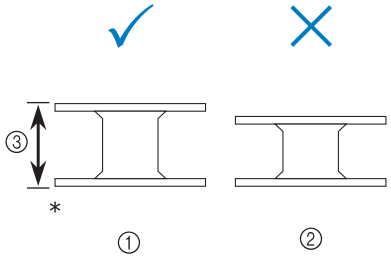
LOWER THREADING

Winding the Bobbin

Press ? → Operation Guide → Basic Operation →  → in this order to display a video example of bobbin winding on the LCD (see page 46). Follow the steps explained below to complete the operation.

⚠ CAUTION

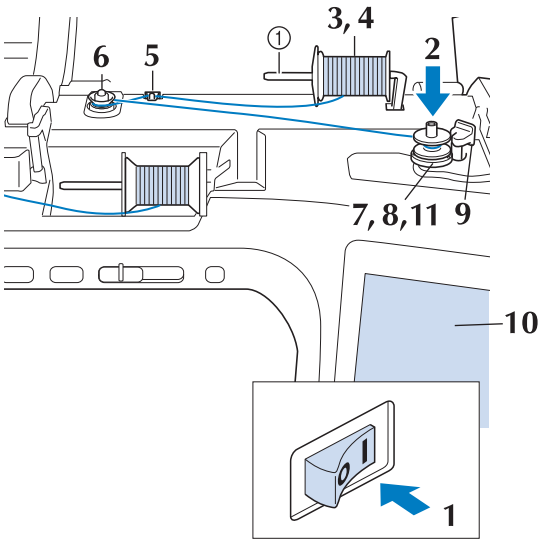
- **The included bobbin was designed specifically for this sewing machine. If bobbins from other models are used, the machine will not operate correctly. Use only the included bobbin or bobbins of the same type (part code: SA156, (SFB: XA5539-151)).**



* Actual size
① This model
② Other models
③ 11.5 mm (approx. 7/16 inch)

■ Using the Supplemental Spool Pin

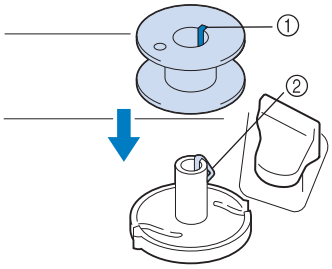
With this machine, you can wind the bobbin during sewing. While using the main spool pin to sew embroidery, you can conveniently wind the bobbin using the supplemental spool pin.



① Supplemental spool pin

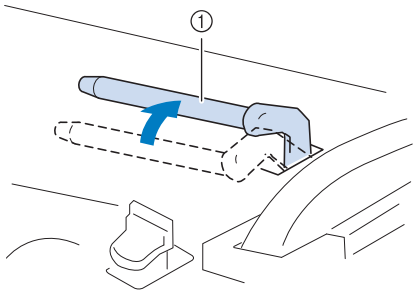
1 Turn the main power to ON and open the top cover.

2 Align the groove in the bobbin with the spring on the bobbin winder shaft, and set the bobbin on the shaft.



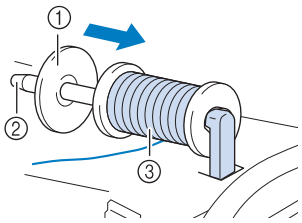
① Groove in the bobbin
② Spring on the shaft

3 **Set the supplemental spool pin in the "up" position.**



① Supplemental spool pin

4 **Place the spool of thread on the supplemental spool pin, so that thread unrolls from the front. Push the spool cap onto the spool pin as far as possible to secure the thread spool.**



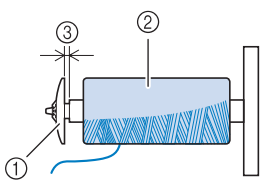
① Spool cap
② Spool pin
③ Thread spool

⚠ CAUTION

- **If the thread spool and/or spool cap are set incorrectly, the thread may tangle on the spool pin and cause the needle to break.**
- **Use the spool cap (large, medium, or small) that is closest in size to the thread spool. If a spool cap smaller than the thread spool is used, the thread may become caught in the slit on the end of the spool and cause the needle to break.**

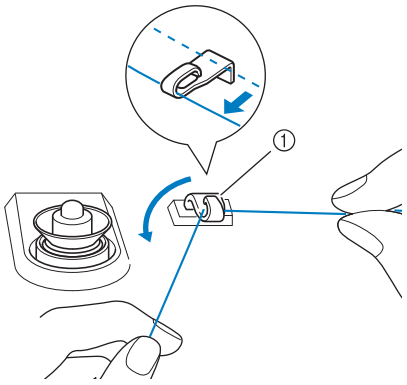
Memo

- When sewing with fine, cross-wound thread, use the small spool cap, and leave a small space between the cap and the thread spool.



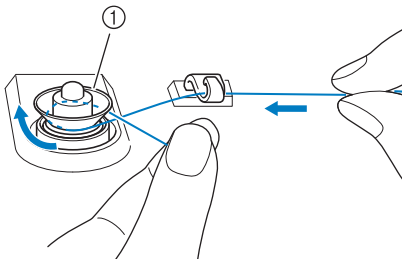
① Spool cap (small)
② Thread spool (cross-wound thread)
③ Space

5 **With your right hand, hold the thread near the thread spool. With your left hand, hold the end of the thread, and use both hands to pass the thread through the thread guide.**

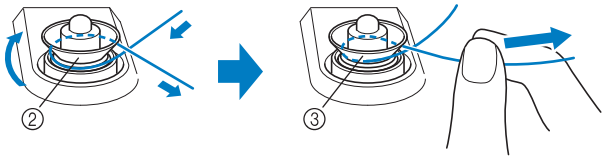


① Thread guide

6 **Pass the thread around the pre-tension disk making sure that the thread is under the pre-tension disk.**

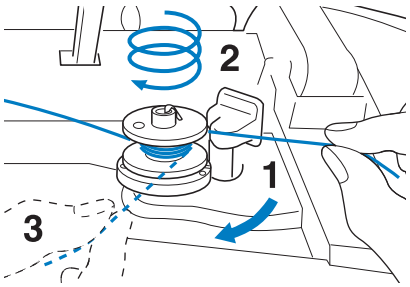


① Pre-tension disk
→ Make sure that the thread passes under the pre-tension disk.

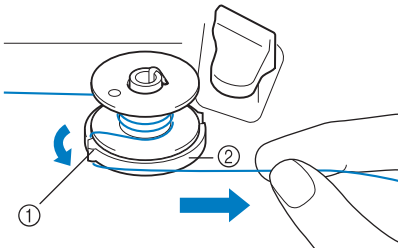


② Pre-tension disk
③ Pull it in as far as possible.
→ Check to make sure thread is securely set between pre-tension disks.

7 **Wind the thread clockwise around the bobbin 5-6 times.**



8 **Pass the end of the thread through the guide slit in the bobbin winder seat, and pull the thread to the right to cut the thread with the cutter.**

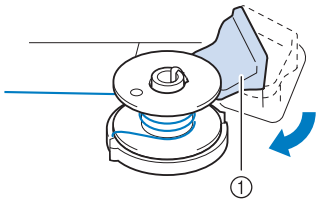


① Guide slit (with built-in cutter)
② Bobbin winder seat

⚠ CAUTION

- **Be sure to follow the process described. If the thread is not cut with the cutter, and the bobbin is wound, when the thread runs low it may tangle around the bobbin and cause the needle to break.**

9 **Set the bobbin winding switch to the left, until it clicks into place.**



① Bobbin winding switch

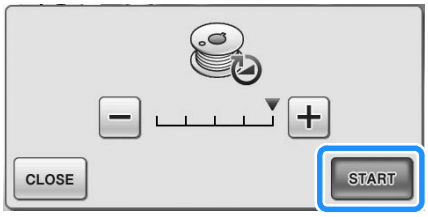
Memo

- Sliding the bobbin winding switch to the left switches the machine into bobbin winding mode.

→ The bobbin winding window appears.

10 **Press START .**

→ Bobbin winding starts automatically. The bobbin stops rotating when bobbin winding is completed. The bobbin winding switch will automatically return to its original position.

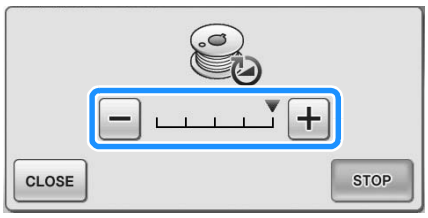


Note

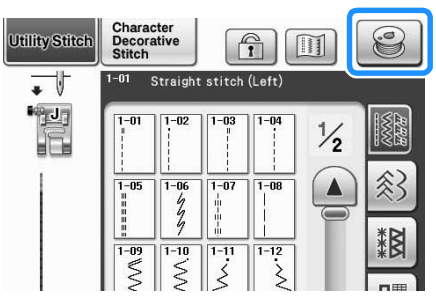
- START changes to STOP while the bobbin is winding.
- Stay near the machine while winding the bobbin to make sure the bobbin thread is being wound correctly. If the bobbin thread is wound incorrectly, press STOP immediately to stop the bobbin winding.
- The sound of winding the bobbin with stiff thread, such as nylon thread for quilting, may be different from the one produced when winding normal thread; however, this is not a sign of a malfunction.

Memo

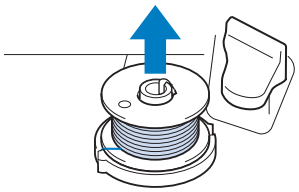
- You can change the winding speed by pressing − (to decrease) or + (to increase) in the bobbin winding window.



- Press CLOSE to minimize the bobbin winding window. Then, you can perform other operations, such as selecting a stitch or adjusting the thread tension, while the bobbin is being wound.
- Press (in top right of the LCD screen) to display the bobbin winding window again.



11 **Cut the thread with cutter and remove the bobbin.**

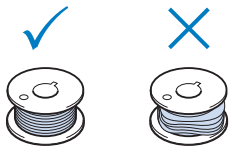


Memo

- When removing the bobbin, do not pull on the bobbin winder seat. Doing so could loosen or remove the bobbin winder seat, and could result in damage to the machine.

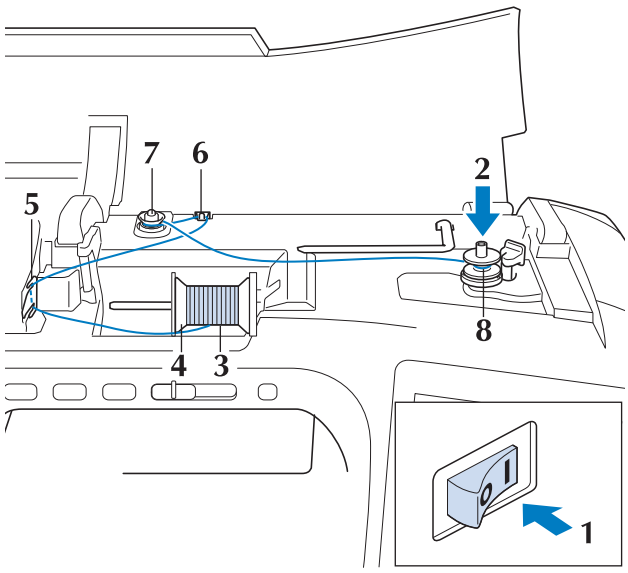
⚠ CAUTION

- **Setting the bobbin improperly may cause the thread tension to loosen, breaking the needle and possibly resulting in injury.**



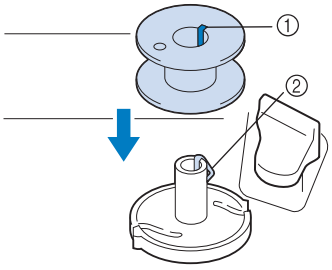
■ Using the Spool Pin

You can use the main spool pin to wind the bobbin before sewing. You cannot use this spool pin to wind the bobbin while sewing.



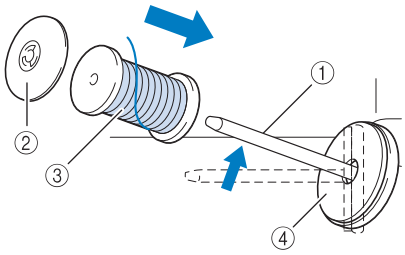
1 **Turn the main power to ON and open the top cover.**

2 **Align the groove in the bobbin with the spring on the bobbin winder shaft, and set the bobbin on the shaft.**



① Groove in the bobbin
② Spring on the shaft

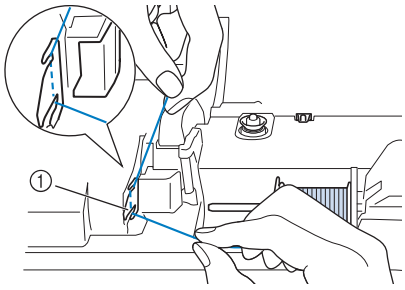
3 **Pivot the spool pin so that it angles upward. Set the thread spool on the spool pin so that the thread unwinds from the front of the spool.**



① Spool pin
② Spool cap
③ Thread spool
④ Spool felt

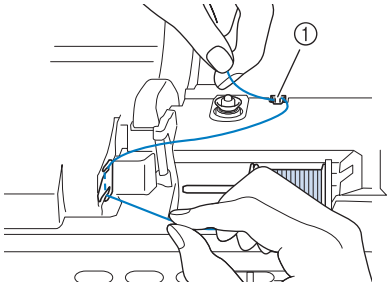
4 **Push the spool cap onto the spool pin as far as possible, then return the spool pin to its original position.**

5 **While holding the thread with both hands, pull the thread up from under the thread guide plate.**



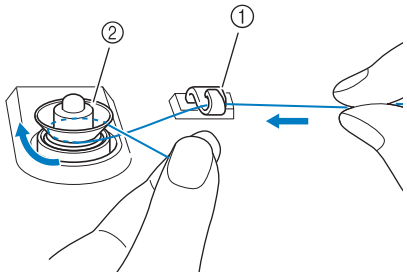
① Thread guide plate

6 **Pass the thread through the thread guide.**



① Thread guide

7 **Pass the thread around the pre-tension disk making sure that the thread is under the pre-tension disk.**

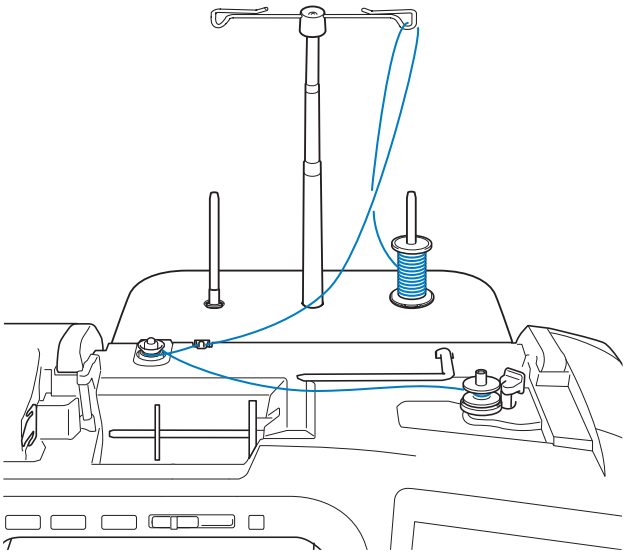


① Thread guide
② Pre-tension disk

8 **Follow steps 7 through 11 on page 50 through 51.**

■ Using the Spool Stand

To wind thread on the bobbin while the spool stand is installed, pass the thread from the spool through the thread guide on the telescopic thread guide, and then wind the bobbin according to steps 5 through 11 of "Using the Supplemental Spool Pin"on page 49 to page 51.



Memo

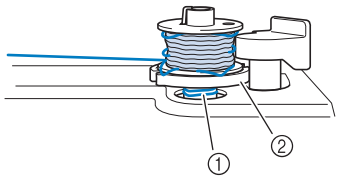
- See page 21 to assemble the spool stand.
- See page 63 to thread the machine using the spool stand.

⚠ CAUTION

- **When winding thread on the bobbin, do not cross the bobbin winding thread with the upper thread in the thread guides.**

■ Untangling Thread from Beneath the Bobbin Winder Seat

If the bobbin winding starts when the thread is not passed through the pre-tension disk correctly, the thread may become tangled beneath the bobbin winder seat.
Wind off the thread according to the following procedure.

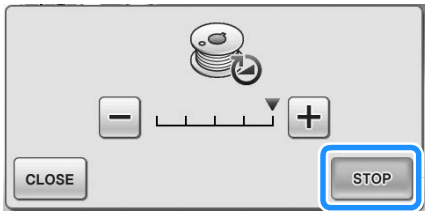


① Thread
② Bobbin winder seat

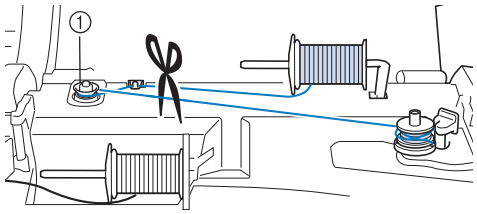
⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not remove the bobbin winder seat even if the thread becomes tangled under the bobbin winder seat. It may result in injuries.**

1 **If the thread becomes tangled under the bobbin winder seat, press STOP once to stop the bobbin winding.**

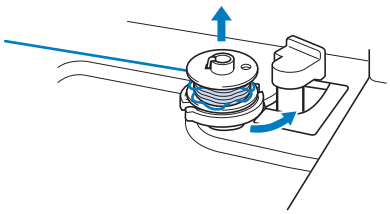


2 **Cut the thread with scissors near the pre-tension disk.**

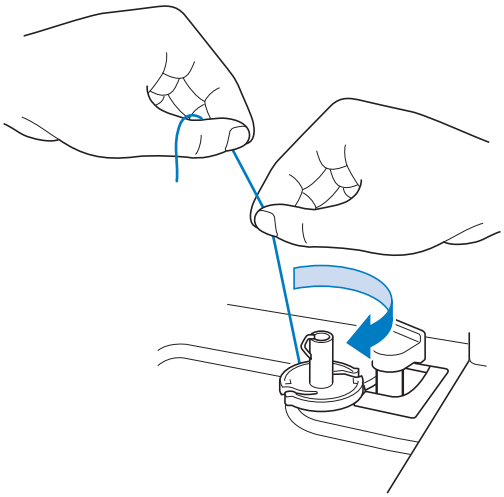


① Pre-tension disk

3 **Push the bobbin winder switch to the right, and then raise the bobbin at least 10 cm (4 inches) from the shaft.**



4 **Cut the thread near the bobbin and hold the thread end with your left hand. Unwind the thread clockwise near the bobbin winder seat with your right hand as shown below.**



5 **Wind the bobbin again.**

Note

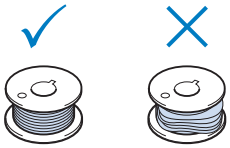
- Make sure that the thread passes through the pre-tension disk correctly (page 49).

Setting the Bobbin

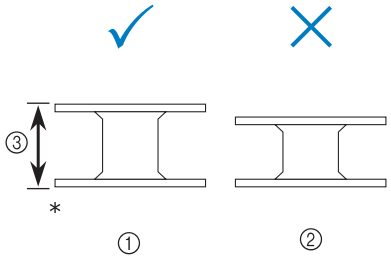
Press ? → Operation Guide → Basic Operation → → in this order to display a video example of the operation on the LCD (see page 46). Follow the steps explained below to complete the operation.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Use a bobbin thread that has been correctly wound. Otherwise, the needle may break or the thread tension will be incorrect.**



- **The included bobbin was designed specifically for this sewing machine. If bobbins from other models are used, the machine will not operate correctly. Use only the included bobbin or bobbins of the same type (part code: SA156, (SFB: XA5539-151)).**

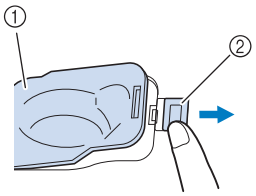


* Actual size
① This model
② Other models
③ 11.5 mm (approx. 7/16 inch)

- **Before inserting or changing the bobbin, be sure to press in the LCD, otherwise injuries may occur if the "Start/Stop" button or any other button is pressed and the machine starts sewing.**

1 **Press .**

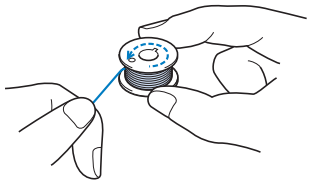
2 **Slide the bobbin cover latch to the right.**



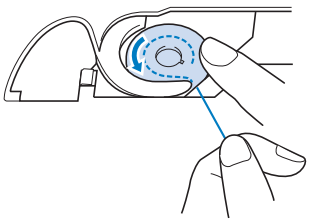
① Bobbin cover
② Latch
→ The bobbin cover opens.

3 **Remove the bobbin cover.**

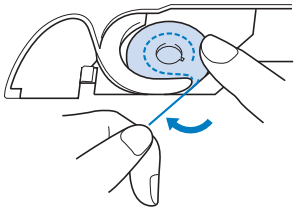
4 **Hold the bobbin with your right hand and hold the end of the thread with your left hand.**



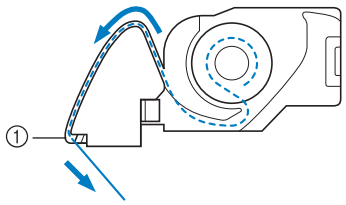
5 **Set the bobbin in the bobbin case so that the thread unwinds to the left.**



6 **Hold the bobbin lightly with your right hand, and then guide the thread with your left hand.**

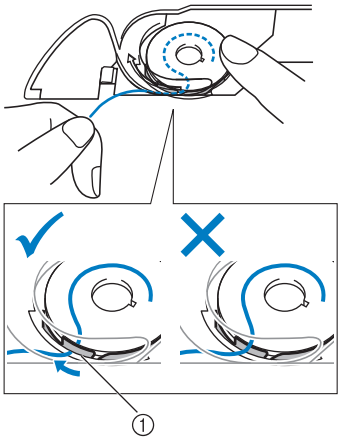


7 **Pass the thread through the guide, and then pull the thread out toward the front.**



① Cutter
→ The cutter cuts the thread.

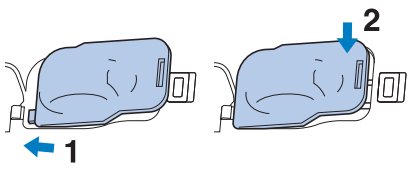
Note
- If the thread is not correctly inserted through the tension spring of the bobbin case, it may cause incorrect thread tension. (see page 79)



① Tension spring

⚠ CAUTION
- **Be sure to hold down the bobbin with your finger and unwind the bobbin thread correctly. Otherwise, the thread may break or the thread tension will be incorrect.**

8 **Insert the tab in the lower-left corner of the bobbin cover (1), and then lightly press down on the right side to close the cover (2).**



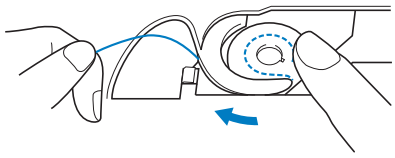
Pulling Up the Bobbin Thread

There may be some sewing applications where you want to pull up the bobbin thread; for example, when making gathers, darts, or doing free motion quilting or embroidery.

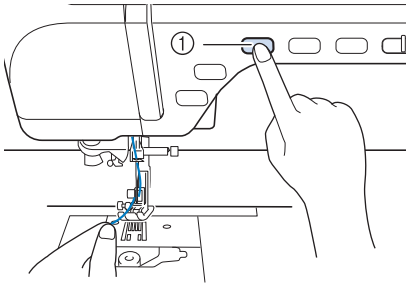
Memo
- You can pull up the bobbin thread after threading the upper thread (“UPPER THREADING” on page 57).

1 **Guide the bobbin thread through the groove, following the arrow in the illustration.**

* Do not cut the thread with the cutter.
* Do not replace the bobbin cover.



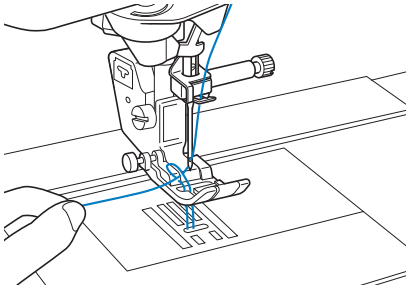
2 **While holding the upper thread, press the “Needle Position” button to lower the needle.**



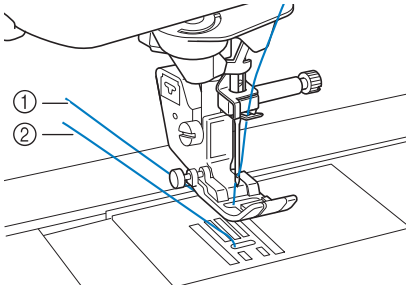
① “Needle Position” button

3 **Press the “Needle Position” button to raise the needle.**

4 **Gently pull the upper thread. A loop of the bobbin thread will come out of the hole in the needle plate.**

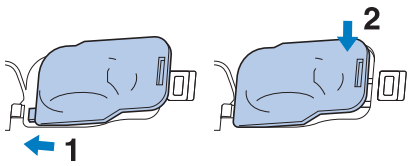


5 **Pull up the bobbin thread, pass it under the presser foot and pull it about 100 mm (approx. 3-4 inches) toward the back of the machine, making it even with the upper thread.**



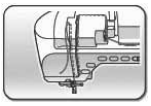
① Upper thread
② Bobbin thread

6 **Replace the bobbin cover.**



UPPER THREADING

Upper Threading

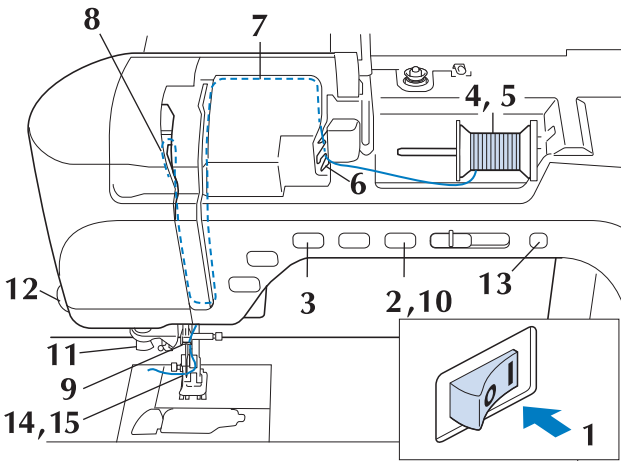
Press ? → Operation Guide → Basic Operation →  → 🎥 in this order to display a video example of the operation on the LCD (see page 46). Follow the steps explained below to complete the operation.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Be sure to thread the machine properly. Improper threading can cause the thread to tangle and break the needle, leading to injury.**
- **When using the walking foot, the side cutter or accessories not included with this machine, attach the accessory to the machine after threading the machine.**

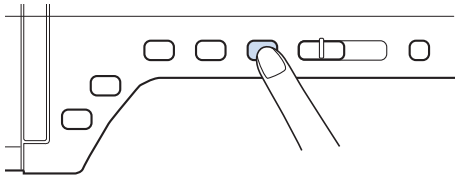
Memo

- The automatic threading function can be used with sewing machine needle sizes 75/11 through 100/16.
- Thread such as transparent nylon monofilament thread and thread with a thickness of 130/20 or thicker cannot be used with the automatic threading function.
- The automatic threading function cannot be used with the wing needle or the twin needle.

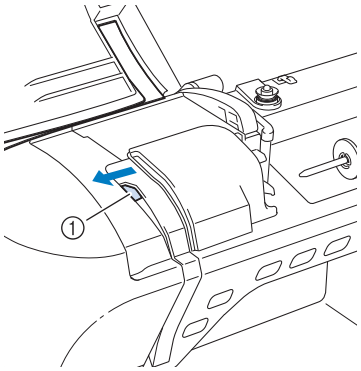


1 Turn the main power to ON.

2 Press the "Presser Foot Lifter" button to raise the presser foot.



→ The upper thread shutter opens so the machine can be threaded.

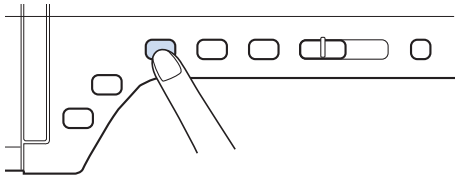


① Upper thread shutter

Memo

- This machine is equipped with an upper thread shutter, allowing you to check that the upper threading is performed correctly.

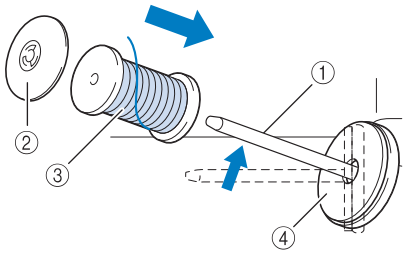
3 Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle.



Note

- If you try to thread the needle automatically without raising the needle, the thread may not thread correctly.

4 **Pivot the spool pin so that it angles upward. Set the thread spool on the spool pin so that the thread unwinds from the front of the spool.**



① Spool pin
② Spool cap
③ Thread spool
④ Spool felt

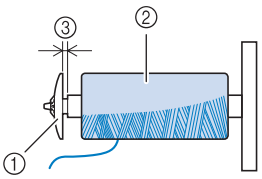
5 **Push the spool cap onto the spool pin as far as possible, then return the spool pin to its original position.**

⚠ CAUTION

- **If the thread spool and/or spool cap are set incorrectly, the thread may tangle on the spool pin and cause the needle to break.**
- **Use the spool cap (large, medium, or small) that is closest in size to the thread spool. If a spool cap smaller than the thread spool is used, the thread may become caught in the slit on the end of the spool and cause the needle to break.**

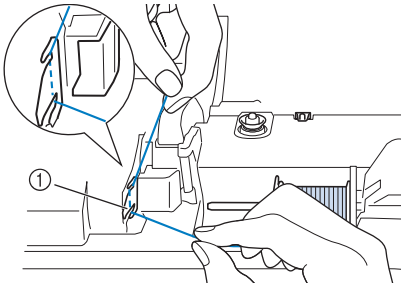
Memo

- When sewing with fine, cross-wound thread, use the small spool cap, and leave a small space between the cap and the thread spool.



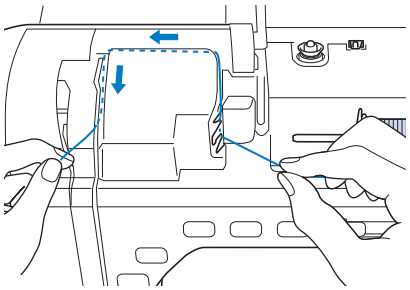
① Spool cap (small)
② Thread spool (cross-wound thread)
③ Space

6 **While holding the thread with both hands, pull the thread up from under the thread guide plate.**

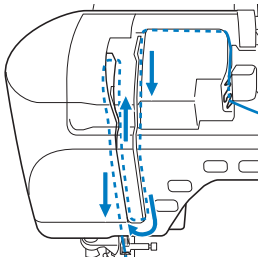


① Thread guide plate

7 **While holding the thread in your right hand, pass the thread through the thread guide in the direction indicated.**

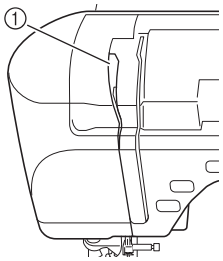


8 **Guide the thread down, up, then down through the groove, as shown in the illustration.**



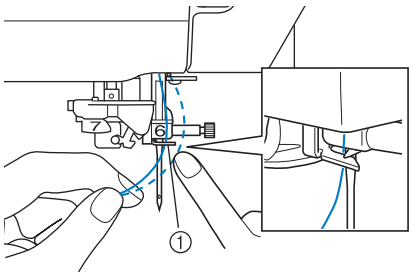
Memo

- Look in the upper groove area to check if the thread catches on the take-up lever visible inside the upper groove area.



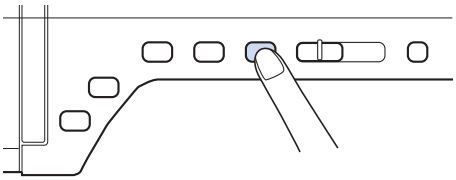
① Look in the upper groove area

9 **Pass the thread through the needle bar thread guide (marked “6”) by holding the thread with both hands and guiding it as shown in the illustration.**

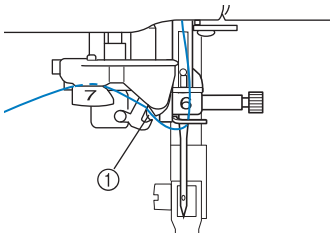


① Needle bar thread guide

10 **Press the “Presser Foot Lifter” button to lower presser foot.**

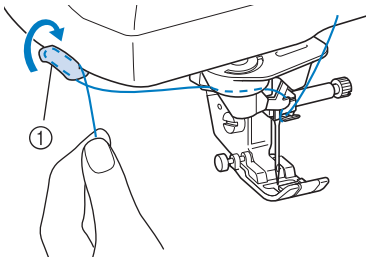


11 **Pass the thread through the thread guide disks (marked “7”). Make sure that the thread passes through the groove in the thread guide.**



① Groove in thread guide

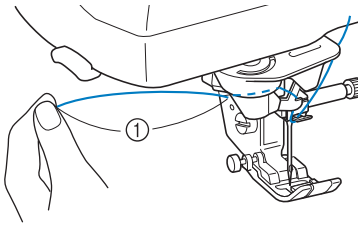
12 **Pull the thread up through the thread cutter to cut the thread, as shown in the illustration.**



① Thread cutter

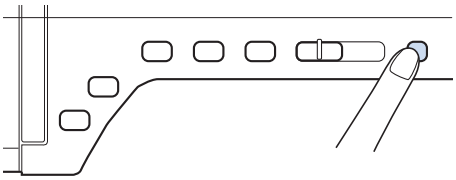
Note

- When using thread that quickly winds off the spool, such as metallic thread, it may be difficult to thread the needle if the thread is cut. Therefore, instead of using the thread cutter, pull out about 80 mm (approx. 3 inches) of thread after passing it through the thread guide disks (marked “7”).



① 80 mm (approx. 3 inches) or more

13 **Press the “Automatic Threading” button to have the machine automatically thread the needle.**



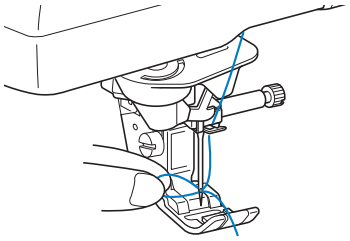
→ The thread passes through the eye of the needle.

Memo

- When the “Automatic Threading” button is pressed, the presser foot will be automatically lowered. After threading is finished, the presser foot moves back to the position before the “Automatic Threading” button was pressed.

14 **Carefully pull the end of the thread that was passed through the eye of the needle.**

* If a loop was formed in the thread passed through the eye of the needle, carefully pull on the loop of thread through to the back of the needle.

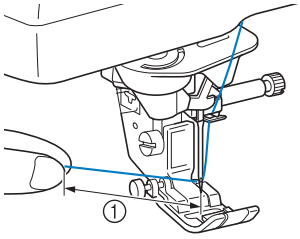


Note

- Pulling the loop of thread gently will avoid needle breakage.

15 **Pull out about 10-15 cm (approx. 4-6 inches) of the thread, and then pass it under the presser foot toward the rear of the machine.**

→ Raise the presser foot lever if the presser foot is lowered.



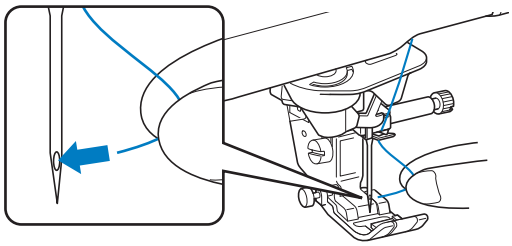
① About 10-15 cm (approx. 4-6 inches)

Memo

- If the needle could not be threaded or the thread was not passed through the needle bar thread guides, perform the procedure again starting from step 3.
  Then, pass the thread through the eye of the needle after step 9.

Note

- Some needles cannot be threaded with the needle threader. In this case, instead of using the needle threader after passing the thread through the needle bar thread guide (marked “6”), manually pass the thread through the eye of the needle from the front.



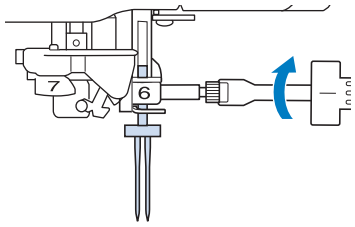
Using the Twin Needle Mode

The twin needle can only be used for patterns that show after being selected. Before you select a stitch pattern, make sure the stitch can be sewn in the twin needle mode (refer to the “STITCH SETTING CHART” at the end of this manual).

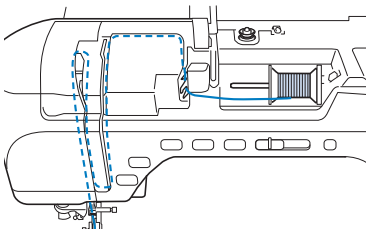
CAUTION

- **Twin needle (part code XE4963-001) is recommended for this machine. Contact your authorized dealer for replacement needles (size 2.0/11 is recommended).**
- **Be sure to set the twin needle mode when using the twin needle. Using the twin needle while the machine is in single needle mode could cause the needle to break, resulting in damage.**
- **Do not sew with bent needles. The needle could break and cause injury.**
- **When using the twin needle, it is recommended to use presser foot “J”.**
- **When the twin needle is used, bunched stitches may occur depending on the types of fabric and thread that are used.**
  Use monogramming foot “N” for decorative stitches.
- **Before changing the needle or threading the machine, be sure to press on the LCD Screen, otherwise injuries may occur if the “Start/Stop” button or any other button is pressed and the machine starts sewing.**

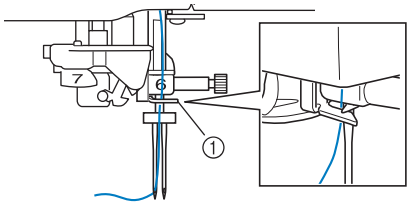
1 **Press [ ] and install the twin needle (“CHANGING THE NEEDLE” on page 67).**



2 **Thread the machine for the first needle according to the procedure for threading a single needle (“Upper Threading” on page 57).**



3 **Pass the thread through the needle bar thread guides on the needle bar, then thread the needle on the left side manually.**

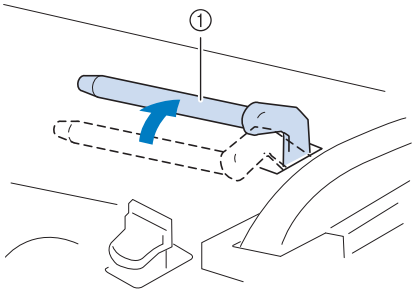


① Needle bar thread guide

Note

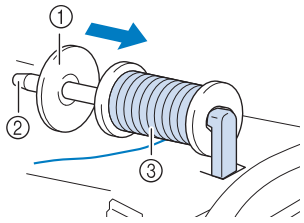
- The “Automatic Threading” button cannot be used. Manually thread the twin needle from front to back. Using the “Automatic Threading” button may result in damage to the machine.

4 **Pull up the supplemental spool pin and set it in the up position.**



① Supplemental spool pin

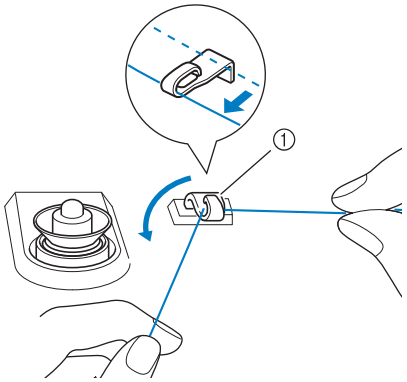
5 **Place the additional spool of thread on the supplemental spool pin, so that the thread unwinds from the front. Push the spool cap onto the spool pin as far as possible to secure the thread spool.**



① Spool cap
② Spool pin
③ Thread spool

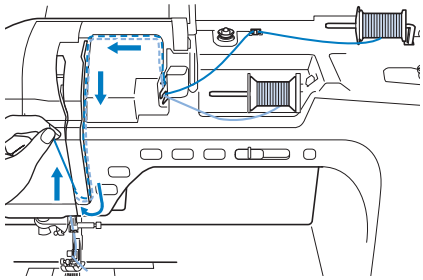
6 **Hold the thread from the spool with both hands, and place the thread in the thread guide.**

* Do not place the thread in the pre-tension disks.

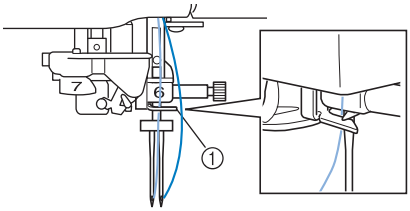


① Thread guide

7 **While holding the thread from the spool, pull the thread through the lower notch in the thread guide plate, then through the upper notch. Hold the end of the thread with your left hand, and then guide the thread through the groove, following the arrows in the illustration.**



8 **Continue threading however do not pass the thread in the needle bar thread guide "6" on the needle bar. Thread the needle on the right side.**



① Needle bar thread guide

9 **Press** **.**

10 **Select a stitch pattern. (Example:** **)**

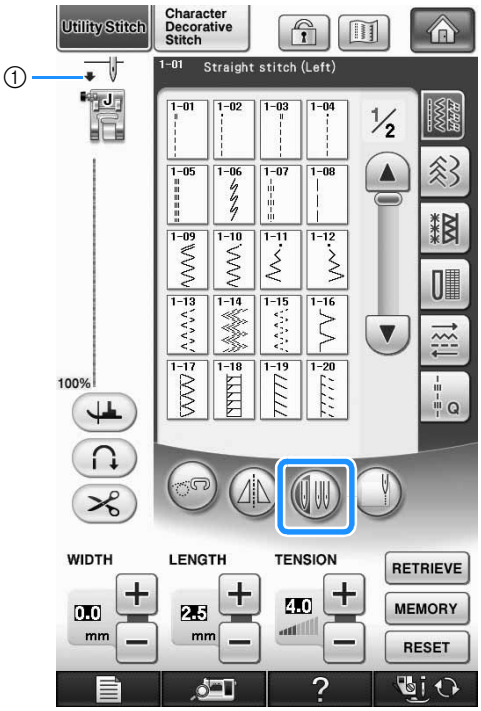
* Refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" at the end of this manual for the proper stitch to use with presser foot "J".

→ The selected stitch is displayed.

Note

- If the key is light gray after selecting the stitch, the selected stitch cannot be sewn in the twin needle mode.

11 **Press** **to select the twin needle mode.**



① Single needle/twin needle setting

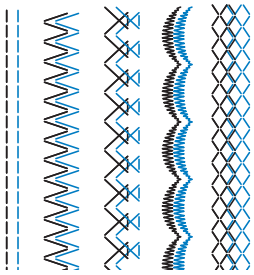
→ appears.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Be sure to set the twin needle mode when using the twin needle. Using the twin needle while the machine is in single needle mode could cause the needle to break, resulting in damage.**

12 **Start sewing.**

Sample of Twin Needle Sewing



Memo

- To change direction when sewing with the twin needle, raise the needle from the fabric, raise the presser foot lever, and then turn the fabric.

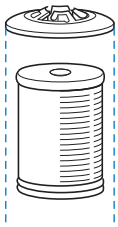
Using the Spool Stand

The included spool stand is useful when using thread on spools with a large diameter (cross-wound thread). This spool stand can hold two spools of thread.

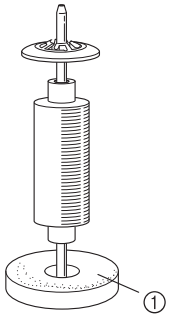
Memo
- See page 21 to assemble the spool stand.
- See page 52 to wind the bobbin when using the spool stand.

■ Using the Spool Stand

- Be sure to use a spool cap that is slightly larger than the spool.
  If the spool cap that is used is smaller or much larger than the spool, the thread may catch and sewing performance may suffer.

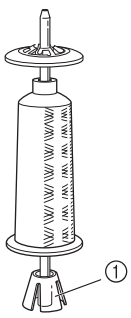


- When using thread on a thin spool, place the included spool felt on the spool pin, place the thread spool on the spool pin so that the center of the spool is aligned with the hole at the center of the spool felt, and then insert the spool cap onto the spool pin.



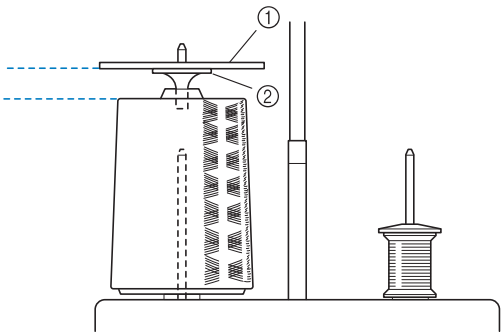
① Spool felt

- When using thread on a cone spool, use the spool holder.



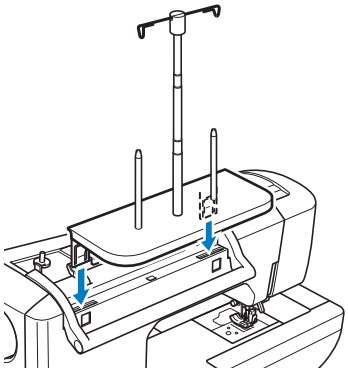
① Spool holder

- Depending on the size of spool or the amount of thread remaining, choose the appropriate sized spool cap (large or medium). Spool cap (small) cannot be used with the spool cap base.

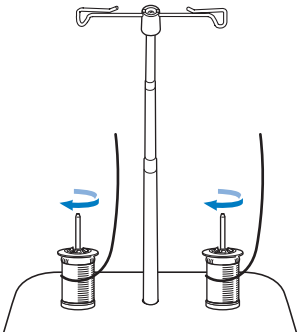


① Spool cap
② Spool cap base

1 Attach the spool stand to the machine. (see page 21.)



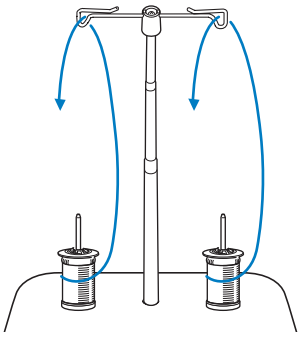
2 Place the spool of thread on the spool pin so that the thread feeds off the spool clockwise. Firmly insert the spool cap onto the spool pin.



Note

- When using 2 spools of thread, make sure that both spools are feeding in the same direction.
- Make sure that the spools do not touch each other, otherwise the thread will not feed off smoothly, the needle may break, or the thread may break or become tangled. In addition, make sure that the spools do not touch the telescopic thread guide at the center.
- Make sure that the thread is not caught under the spool.

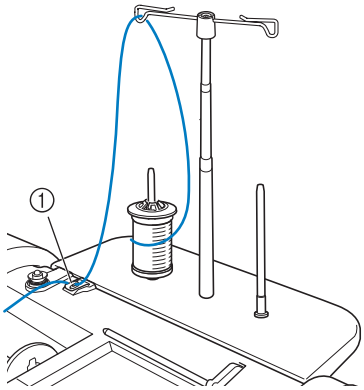
3 Pull the thread off the spool. Pass the thread from the back to the front through the thread guides at the top.



Note

- Guide the thread so that it does not become entangled with the other thread.
- After feeding the thread as instructed, wind any excess thread back onto the spool, otherwise the excess thread will become tangled.

4 Pass the thread through the machine's thread guide from the right to the left.



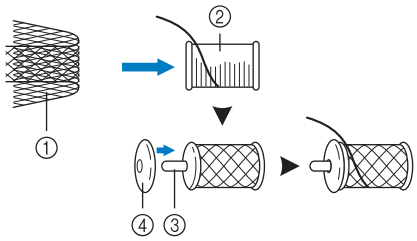
① Thread guide

5 Thread the machine according to the steps 6 to 15 of "Upper Threading" on page 57.

Using Threads that Unwind Quickly

■ Using the Spool Net

If using transparent nylon monofilament thread, metallic thread, or other strong thread, place the included spool net over the spool before using it. When using specialty threads, threading must be done manually.
If the spool net is too long, fold it once to match it to the spool size before placing it over the spool.



① Spool net
② Thread spool
③ Spool pin
④ Spool cap

Memo

- When threading the spool with the spool net on, make sure that 5-6 cm (approx. 2 - 2-1/2 inches) of thread are pulled out.
- It may be necessary to adjust the thread tension when using the spool net.

CHANGING THE PRESSER FOOT

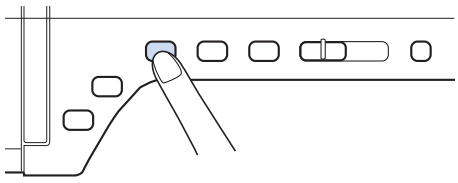
⚠ CAUTION

- **Always press [i] on the screen before changing the presser foot. If [i] is not pressed and the "Start/Stop" button or another button is pressed, the machine will start and may cause injury.**
- **Always use the correct presser foot for the selected stitch pattern. If the wrong presser foot is used, the needle may strike the presser foot and bend or break, and may cause injury.**
- **Only use presser feet made for this machine. Using other presser feet may lead to accident or injury.**

Removing the Presser Foot

Press [?] → [Operation Guide] → [Basic Operation] → → [📹] in this order to display a video example of the operation on the LCD (see page 46). Follow the steps explained below to complete the operation.

1 Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle.

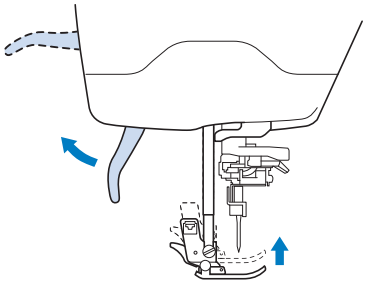


2 Press [i].

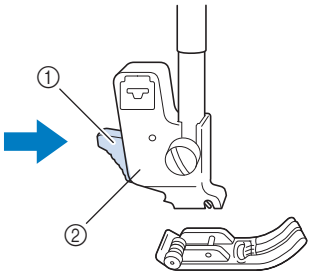
* If the message "OK to automatically lower the presser foot?" appears on the LCD screen, press OK to continue.

→ The entire screen becomes white, and all keys and operation buttons are locked.

3 Raise the presser foot lever.



4 Press the black button on the presser foot holder and remove the presser foot.



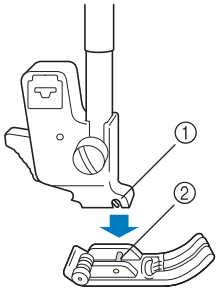
① Black button
② Presser foot holder

Attaching the Presser Foot

⚠ CAUTION

- **Make sure that the presser foot is installed in the correct direction, otherwise the needle may strike the presser foot, breaking the needle and causing injuries.**

1 Place the new presser foot under the holder, aligning the foot pin with the notch in the holder. Lower the presser foot lever so that the presser foot pin snaps into the notch in the holder.



① Notch
② Pin

2 **Press** **to unlock all keys and buttons.**

3 **Raise the presser foot lever.**

Attaching the Walking Foot

The walking foot holds the fabric between the presser foot and the feed dogs to feed the fabric. This enables you to have better fabric control when sewing difficult fabrics (such as quilted fabrics or velvet) or fabrics that slip easily (such as vinyl, leather, or synthetic leather).

Note

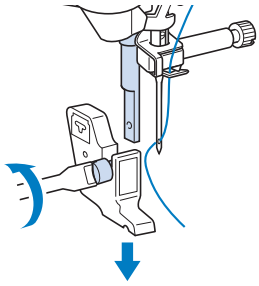
- Thread the needle manually when using the walking foot, or only attach the walking foot after threading the needle using the "Automatic Threading" button.
- When sewing with the walking foot, sew at medium to low speeds.

Memo

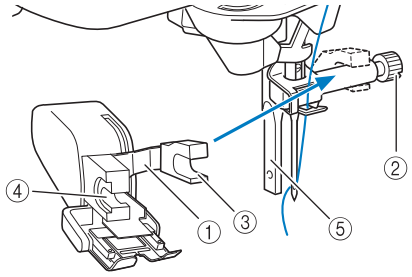
- The walking foot can only be used with straight or zigzag stitch patterns. Reverse stitches cannot be sewn with the walking foot. Only select straight or zigzag stitch patterns with reinforcement stitches. (see page 74.)

1 **Follow the steps in "Removing the Presser Foot" on the previous page.**

2 **Loosen the screw of the presser foot holder to remove the presser foot holder.**

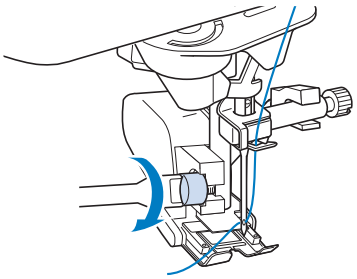


3 **Set the operation lever of the walking foot so that the needle clamp screw is set between the fork. Position the shank of the walking foot on the presser foot bar.**



① Operation lever
② Needle clamp screw
③ Fork
④ Walking foot shank
⑤ Presser foot bar

4 **Lower the presser foot lever. Insert the screw, and tighten the screw securely with the screwdriver.**



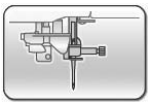
CAUTION

- **Use the included screwdriver to tighten the screw securely. If the screw is loose, the needle may strike the presser foot and cause injury.**
- **Be sure to rotate the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) to check that the needle does not strike the presser foot. If the needle strikes the presser foot, injury may result.**

CHANGING THE NEEDLE

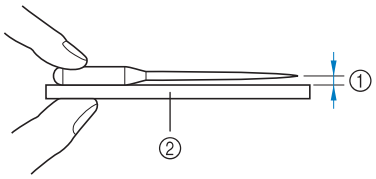
⚠ CAUTION

- **Always press [i] on the screen before changing the needle. If [i] is not pressed and the Start/Stop button or another operation button is pressed accidentally, the machine will start and injury may result.**
- **Use only sewing machine needles made for home use. Other needles may bend or break and may cause injury.**
- **Never sew with a bent needle. A bent needle will easily break and may cause injury.**

Press [?] → [Operation Guide] → [Basic Operation] →  → [video] in this order to display a video example of the operation on the LCD (see page 46). Follow the steps explained below to complete the operation.

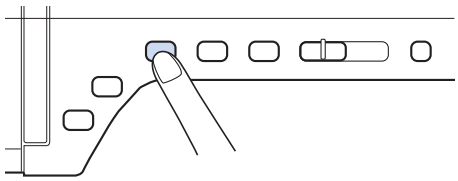
Memo

- To check the needle correctly, place the flat side of the needle on a flat surface. Check the needle from the top and the sides. Throw away any bent needles.



① Parallel space
② Level surface (bobbin cover, glass, etc.)

1 Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle.



2 Press [i].

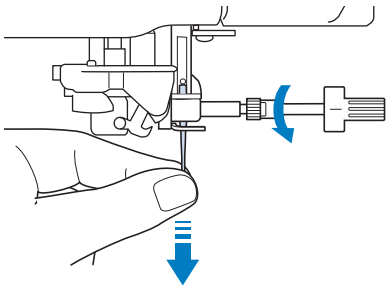
* If the message "OK to automatically lower the presser foot?" appears on the LCD screen, press OK to continue.

→ The entire screen becomes white, and all keys and operation buttons are locked.

Note

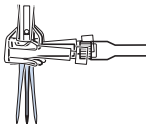
- Before replacing the needle, cover the hole in the needle plate with fabric or paper to prevent the needle from falling into the machine.

3 Use the screwdriver to turn the screw toward the front of the machine and loosen the screw. Remove the needle.

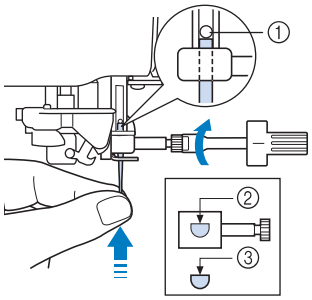


Note

- Do not apply pressure to the needle clamp screw. Doing so may damage the needle or machine.



4 **With the flat side of the needle facing the back, insert the new needle all the way to the top of the needle stopper (viewing window) in the needle clamp. Use a screwdriver to securely tighten the needle clamp screw.**



① Needle stopper
② Hole for setting the needle
③ Flat side of needle

⚠ CAUTION

- **Be sure to push in the needle until it touches the stopper, and securely tighten the needle clamp screw with a screwdriver. If the needle is not completely inserted or the needle clamp screw is loose, the needle may break or the machine may be damaged.**

5 **Press** **to unlock all keys and buttons.**

About the Needle

The sewing machine needle is probably the most important part of the sewing machine. Choosing the proper needle for your sewing project will result in a beautiful finish and fewer problems. Below are some things to keep in mind about needles.

- The smaller the needle number, the finer the needle. As the numbers increase, the needles get thicker.
- Use fine needles with lightweight fabrics, and thicker needles with heavyweight fabrics.
- To avoid skipped stitches, use ball point needle (golden colored) 90/14 with stretch fabrics.
- To avoid skipped stitches, use ball point needle (golden colored) 90/14 when sewing character or decorative stitches.
- Use needle 75/11 for embroidery. Use ball point needle 75/11 for embroidering patterns with short jump stitches such as alphabet characters when the thread trimming function is turned on.
- Ball point needles (golden colored) 90/14 are not recommended for embroidery, as they may bend or break, causing injury.
- It is recommended that a 90/14 needle should be used when embroidering on heavyweight fabrics or stabilizing products (for example, denim, puffy foam, etc.). A 75/11 needle may bend or break, which could result in injury.
- A home sewing machine needle 75/11 is inserted in the sewing machine.

Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations

The following table provides information concerning the appropriate thread and needle for various fabrics. Please refer to this table when selecting a thread and needle for the fabric you wish to use.

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2" rowspan="2">Fabric type/Application</th><th colspan="2">Thread</th><th rowspan="2">Size of needle</th></tr>
<tr><th>Type</th><th>Size</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">Medium weight fabrics</td><td>Broadcloth</td><td>Cotton thread</td><td rowspan="2">60 - 90</td><td rowspan="3">75/11 - 90/14</td></tr>
<tr><td>Taffeta</td><td>Synthetic thread</td></tr>
<tr><td>Flannel, Gabardine</td><td>Silk thread</td><td>50</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">Thin fabrics</td><td>Lawn</td><td>Cotton thread</td><td rowspan="2">60 - 90</td><td rowspan="3">65/9 - 75/11</td></tr>
<tr><td>Georgette</td><td>Synthetic thread</td></tr>
<tr><td>Challis, Satin</td><td>Silk thread</td><td>50</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">Thick fabrics</td><td rowspan="2">Denim</td><td rowspan="2">Cotton thread</td><td>30</td><td rowspan="4">90/14 - 100/16</td></tr>
<tr><td>50</td></tr>
<tr><td>Corduroy</td><td>Synthetic thread</td><td rowspan="2">50 - 60</td></tr>
<tr><td>Tweed</td><td>Silk thread</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Stretch fabrics</td><td>Jersey</td><td rowspan="2">Thread for knits</td><td rowspan="2">50 - 60</td><td rowspan="2">Ball point needle (gold colored) 75/11 - 90/14</td></tr>
<tr><td>Tricot</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2" rowspan="3">Easily frayed fabrics</td><td>Cotton thread</td><td rowspan="2">50 - 90</td><td rowspan="3">65/9 - 90/14</td></tr>
<tr><td>Synthetic thread</td></tr>
<tr><td>Silk thread</td><td>50</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2" rowspan="2">For top-stitching</td><td>Synthetic thread</td><td rowspan="2">50</td><td rowspan="2">90/14 - 100/16</td></tr>
<tr><td>Silk thread</td></tr>
</table>

Memo

- For transparent monofilament nylon thread, always use needle sizes 90/14 or 100/16. The same thread is usually used for the bobbin thread and upper thread.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Be sure to follow the needle, thread, and fabric combinations listed in the table. Using an improper combination, especially a heavyweight fabric (i.e., denim) with a small needle (i.e., 65/9 - 75/11), may cause the needle to bend or break, and lead to injury. Also, the seam may be uneven, the fabric may pucker, or the machine may skip stitches.**

Chapter 2
Sewing Basics

SEWING 72

Sewing a Stitch 72
■ Using the Foot Controller 73
Sewing Reinforcement Stitches 74
Sewing Curves 74
Changing Sewing Direction 75
■ Sewing a Seam Allowance of 0.5 cm or Less 75
Sewing Heavyweight Fabrics 75
■ If the Fabric does not Fit under the Presser Foot 75
■ If the Fabric does not Feed 76
Sewing Hook-and-Loop Fastener 76
Sewing Lightweight Fabrics 76
Sewing Stretch Fabrics 77

STITCH SETTINGS 78

Setting the Stitch Width 78
Setting the Stitch Length 79
Setting the Thread Tension 79
■ Proper Thread Tension 79
■ Upper Thread is Too Tight 80
■ Upper Thread is Too Loose 80

USEFUL FUNCTIONS 81

Automatic Reinforcement Stitching 81
Automatic Thread Cutting 82
Using the Knee Lifter 83
Pivoting 84
Automatic Fabric Sensor System (Automatic Presser Foot Pressure) 85
Needle Position – Stitch Placement 86
Locking the Screen 86
Checking the Needle Location in the Screen 87

SEWING

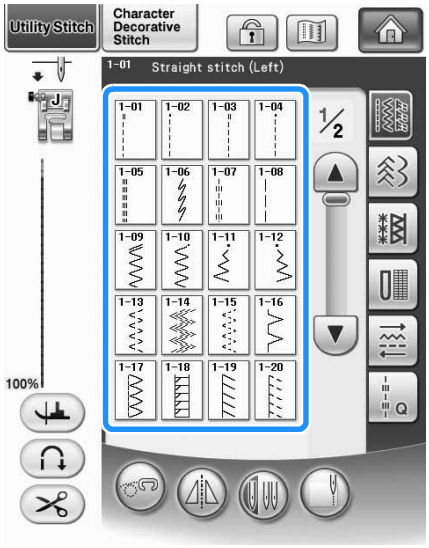
⚠ CAUTION

- **To avoid injury, pay special attention to the needle while the machine is in operation. Keep your hands away from moving parts while the machine is in operation.**
- **Do not stretch or pull the fabric during sewing. Doing so may lead to injury.**
- **Do not use bent or broken needles. Doing so may lead to injury.**
- **Do not attempt to sew over basting pins or other objects during sewing. Otherwise, the needle may break and cause injury.**
- **If stitches become bunched, lengthen the stitch length setting before continuing sewing. Otherwise, the needle may break and cause injury.**

Sewing a Stitch

1 Turn the main power to ON and press to display the utility stitches, and push the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle.

2 Press the key of the stitch you want to sew.



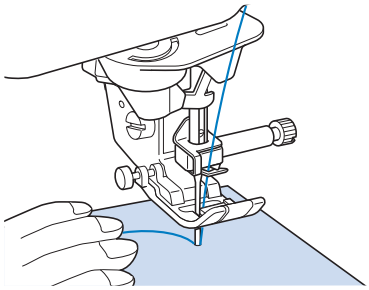
→ The symbol of the correct presser foot will be displayed in the upper left corner of the LCD screen.

3 Install the presser foot ("CHANGING THE PRESSER FOOT" on page 65).

⚠ CAUTION

- **Always use the correct presser foot. If the wrong presser foot is used, the needle may strike the presser foot and bend or break, possibly resulting in injury.**
  Refer to page 359 for presser foot recommendations.

4 Set the fabric under the presser foot. Hold the fabric and thread in your left hand, and rotate the handwheel to set the needle in the sewing start position.



Memo

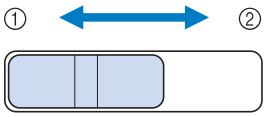
- The black button on the left side of presser foot "J" should be pressed only if the fabric does not feed or when sewing thick seams (see page 76). Normally, you can sew without pressing the black button.

5 Lower the presser foot.

* You do not have to pull up the bobbin thread.

6 Adjust the sewing speed with the speed control slide.

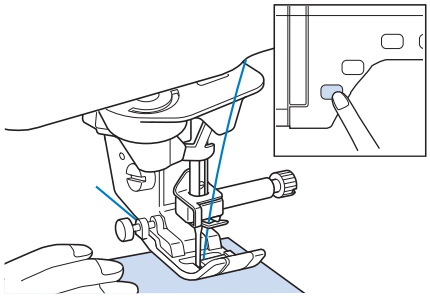
* You can use this slide to adjust sewing speed during sewing.



① Slow
② Fast

7 Press the “Start/Stop” button to start sewing.

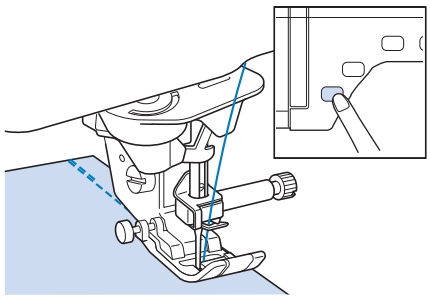
* Guide the fabric lightly by hand.



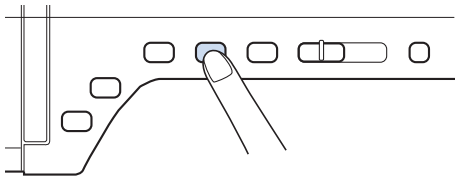
Memo

- When the foot controller is being used, you cannot start sewing by pressing the “Start/Stop” button.

8 Press the “Start/Stop” button again to stop sewing.



9 Press the “Thread Cutter” button to trim the upper and lower threads.



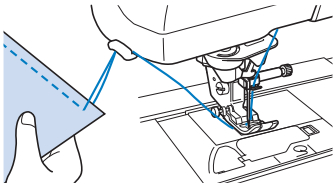
→ The needle will return to the up position automatically.

CAUTION

- **Do not press the “Thread Cutter” button after the threads have been cut. Doing so could tangle the thread or break the needle and damage the machine.**
- **Do not press the “Thread Cutter” button when there is no fabric set in the machine or during machine operation. The thread may tangle, possibly resulting in damage.**

Note

- When cutting thread thicker than #30, nylon monofilament thread, or other decorative threads, use the thread cutter on the side of the machine.



10 When the needle has stopped moving, raise the presser foot and remove the fabric.

Memo

- This machine is equipped with a bobbin thread sensor that warns you when the bobbin thread is almost empty. When the bobbin thread is nearly empty, the machine automatically stops. However, if the “Start/Stop” button is pressed, a few stitches can be sewn. When the warning displays, re-thread the machine immediately.

■ Using the Foot Controller

You can also use the foot controller to start and stop sewing.

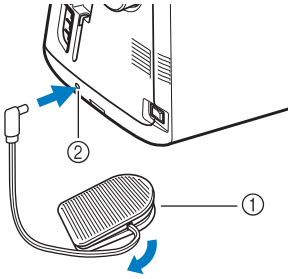
CAUTION

- **Do not allow fabric pieces and dust to collect in the foot controller. Doing so could cause a fire or an electric shock.**

Memo

- When the foot controller is being used, you cannot start sewing by pressing the “Start/Stop” button.
- The foot controller cannot be used when embroidering.
- The foot controller can be used for sewing utility and decorative stitches when the embroidery unit is attached.

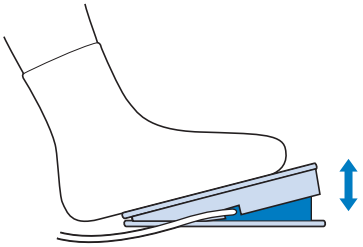
1 **Pull the retractable cord out from the foot controller to the desired length, and then insert the foot controller plug into its jack on the machine.**



① Foot controller
② Foot controller jack

Note
- Do not pull the retractable cord out beyond the red mark on the cord.

2 **Slowly depress the foot controller to start sewing.**



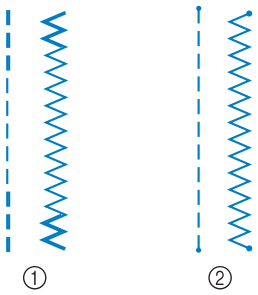
Memo
- The speed that is set using the sewing speed controller is the foot controller's maximum sewing speed.

3 **Release the foot controller to stop the machine.**

Sewing Reinforcement Stitches

Reverse/reinforcement stitches are generally necessary at the beginning and end of sewing. You can use the "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button to sew reverse/reinforcement stitches manually (see page 15).

If the automatic reinforcement stitch is selected on the screen, reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches) will be sewn automatically at the beginning of sewing when the "Start/Stop" button is pressed. Press the "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button to sew reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches) automatically at the end of sewing (see page 81).



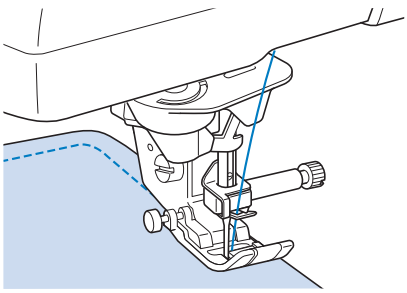
① Reverse stitch
② Reinforcement stitch

If the stitch which you select has a double mark "⏸" at the top of the key display, you can sew reverse stitches by holding the "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button.

If the stitch which you select has a dot mark "·" at the top of the key display, you can sew reinforcement stitches by holding the "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button.

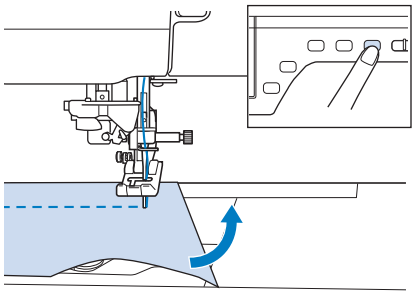
Sewing Curves

Sew slowly while keeping the seam parallel with the fabric edge as you guide the fabric around the curve.



Changing Sewing Direction

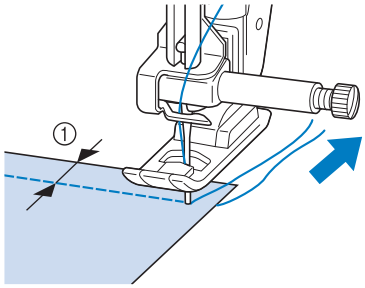
Stop the machine. Leave the needle in the fabric, and press the “Presser Foot Lifter” button to raise the presser foot. Using the needle as a pivot, turn the fabric so that you can sew in the new direction. Press the “Presser Foot Lifter” button to lower the presser foot and start sewing.



The pivot setting is useful when changing the sewing direction. When the machine is stopped at the corner of the fabric, the machine stops with the needle in the fabric and the presser foot is automatically raised so the fabric can easily be rotated (“Pivoting” on page 84).

■ Sewing a Seam Allowance of 0.5 cm or Less

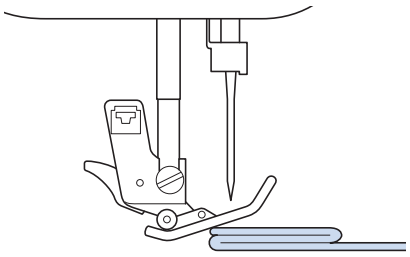
Baste the corner before sewing, and then, after changing the sewing direction at the corner, pull the basting thread toward the back while sewing.



① 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch)

Sewing Heavyweight Fabrics

The sewing machine can sew fabrics up to 6 mm (approx. 1/4 inch) thick. If the thickness of a seam causes sewing to occur at an angle, help guide the fabric by hand and sew on the downward slope.

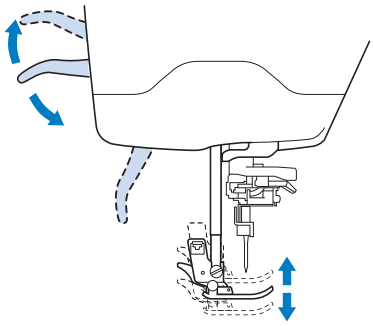


⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not forcefully push fabrics more than 6 mm (approx. 1/4 inch) thick through the sewing machine. This may cause the needle to break and cause injury.**
- **Thicker fabrics require a larger needle (“CHANGING THE NEEDLE” on page 67).**

■ If the Fabric does not Fit under the Presser Foot

If the presser foot is in the up position, and you are sewing heavyweight or multiple layers of fabric which do not fit easily under the presser foot, use the presser foot lever to raise the presser foot to its highest position. The fabric will now fit under the presser foot.



Memo

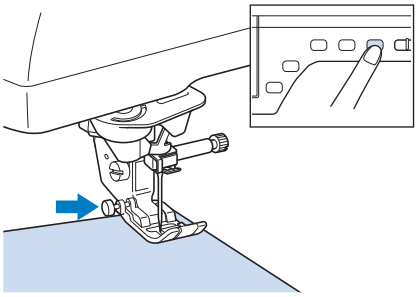
- You cannot use the presser foot lever after the presser foot has been raised using the “Presser Foot Lifter” button.

■ If the Fabric does not Feed

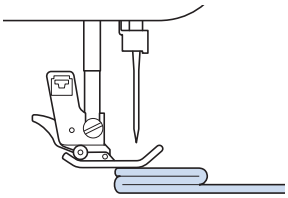
If the fabric does not feed when starting to sew or when sewing thick seams, press the black button on the left side of presser foot "J".

1. **Raise the presser foot.**

2. **While keeping the black button on the left side of presser foot "J" pressed in, press the "Presser Foot Lifter" button to lower the presser foot.**



3. **Release the black button.**



→ The presser foot remains level, enabling the fabric to be fed.

Memo

- Once the trouble spot has been passed, the foot will return to its normal position.
- When "Automatic Fabric Sensor System" (Automatic Presser Foot Pressure) in the machine settings screen is set to "ON", the thickness of the fabric is automatically detected by the internal sensor so the fabric can be fed smoothly for best sewing results. (see page 85 for details.)

Sewing Hook-and-Loop Fastener

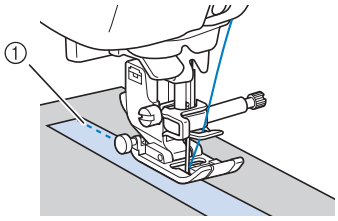
⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not use adhesive backed hook-and-loop fastener designed for sewing. If the adhesive sticks to the needle or the bobbin hook race, it may cause malfunction.**
- **If the hook-and-loop fastener is sewn with a fine needle (65/9-75/11), the needle may bend or break.**

Note

- Before starting to sew, baste the fabric and hook-and-loop fastener together.

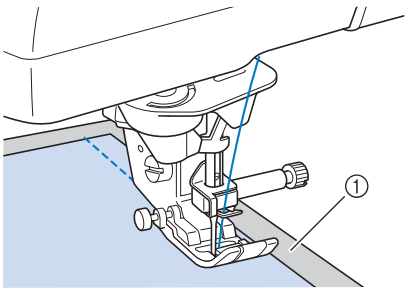
Make sure that the needle passes through the hook-and-loop fastener by rotating the handwheel and lower the needle into the hook-and-loop fastener before sewing. Sew the edge of the hook-and-loop fastener at a slow speed.
If the needle does not pass through the hook-and-loop fastener, replace the needle with the needle for thick fabrics (page 69).



① Edge of the hook-and-loop fastener

Sewing Lightweight Fabrics

Place thin paper or tear away embroidery stabilizer under thin fabrics to make sewing easier. Gently tear off the paper or the stabilizer after sewing.



① Thin paper

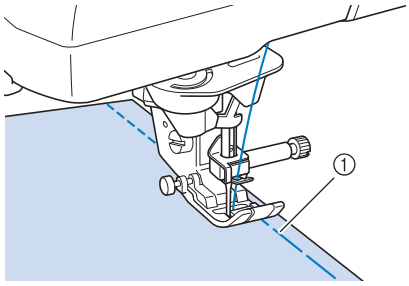
Sewing Stretch Fabrics

First, baste together the pieces of fabric, and then sew without stretching the fabric.

In addition, a better result can be achieved by using thread for knits or a stretch stitch.

Memo

- For best results when sewing stretch fabrics, decrease the pressure of the presser foot (“Using the Machine Setting Mode Key” on page 35).



① Basting stitching

STITCH SETTINGS

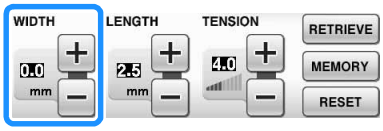
When you select a stitch, your machine automatically selects the appropriate stitch width, stitch length, and upper thread tension. However, if needed, you can change any of the individual settings.

Note

- Settings for some stitches cannot be changed (refer to the “STITCH SETTING CHART” at the end of this manual).
- If you turn off the machine or select another stitch without saving stitch setting changes (“Saving Your Stitch Settings” on page 92), the stitch settings will return to their default settings.

Setting the Stitch Width

Follow the steps below when you want to change the zigzag stitch pattern width.

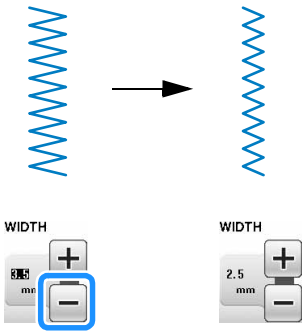


Memo

- For an alternate method of changing the stitch width using the speed controller, see page 115.

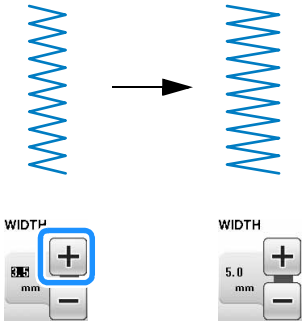
Example:

Press [−] to narrow the zigzag stitch pattern width.



→ The value in the display gets smaller.

Press [+] to widen the zigzag stitch pattern width.



→ The value in the display gets bigger.

Memo

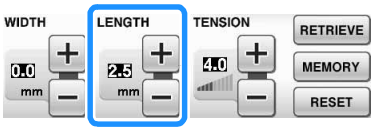
- Press RESET to return the stitch width to the original setting.

Note

- After adjusting the stitch width, slowly rotate the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) and check that the needle does not touch the presser foot. If the needle hits the presser foot, the needle may bend or break.

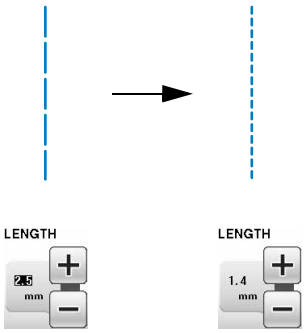
Setting the Stitch Length

Follow the steps below when you want to change the stitch pattern length.



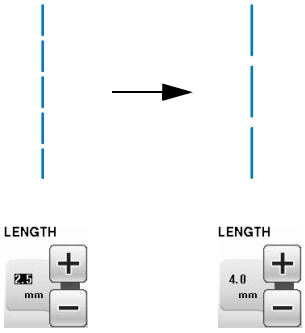
Example:

Press [−] to shorten the stitch length.



→ The value in the display gets smaller.

Press [+] to lengthen the stitch length.



→ The value in the display gets bigger.

Memo

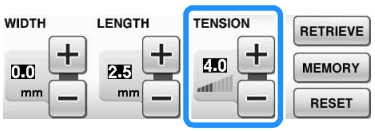
- Press [ ] to check changes made to the stitch.
- Press [RESET] to return the stitch length to the original setting.

⚠ CAUTION

- **If the stitches get bunched together, lengthen the stitch length and continue sewing. Do not continue sewing without lengthening the stitch length. Otherwise, the needle may break and cause injury.**

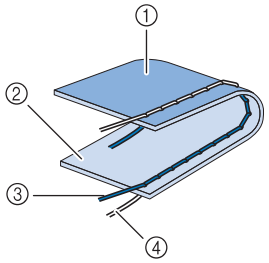
Setting the Thread Tension

You may need to change the thread tension, depending on the fabric and thread being used. Follow the steps below to make any necessary changes.



■ Proper Thread Tension

The upper thread and the bobbin thread should cross near the center of the fabric. Only the upper thread should be visible from the right side of the fabric, and only the bobbin thread should be visible from the wrong side of the fabric.



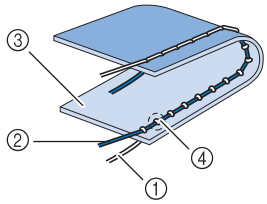
① Wrong side
② Surface
③ Upper thread
④ Bobbin thread

■ Upper Thread is Too Tight

If the bobbin thread is visible from the right side of the fabric, the upper thread is too tight.

Note

- If the bobbin thread was incorrectly threaded, the upper thread may be too tight. In this case, refer to “Setting the Bobbin” (page 54) and rethread the bobbin thread.

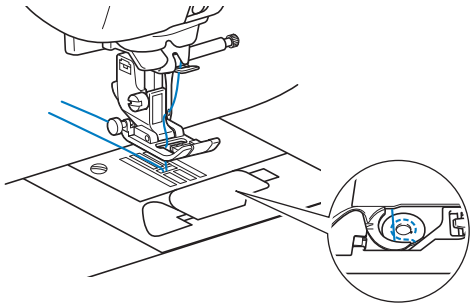


① Bobbin thread
② Upper thread
③ Surface
④ Locks appear on surface of fabric

Press [−], to loosen the upper thread.

Memo

- When you finish sewing, remove the bobbin cover and then make sure that the thread is shown as below. If the thread is not shown as below, the thread is not inserted through the tension-adjusting spring of the bobbin case correctly. Reinsert the thread correctly. For details, refer to page 54.

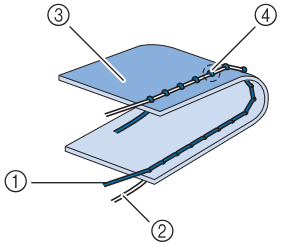


■ Upper Thread is Too Loose

If the upper thread is visible from the wrong side of the fabric, the upper thread is too loose.

Note

- If the upper thread was incorrectly threaded, the upper thread may be too loose. In this case, refer to “Upper Threading” (page 57) and rethread the upper thread.



① Upper thread
② Bobbin thread
③ Wrong side
④ Locks appear on wrong side of fabric

Press [+], to tighten the upper thread.

Memo

- Press [RESET] to return the thread tension to the original setting.

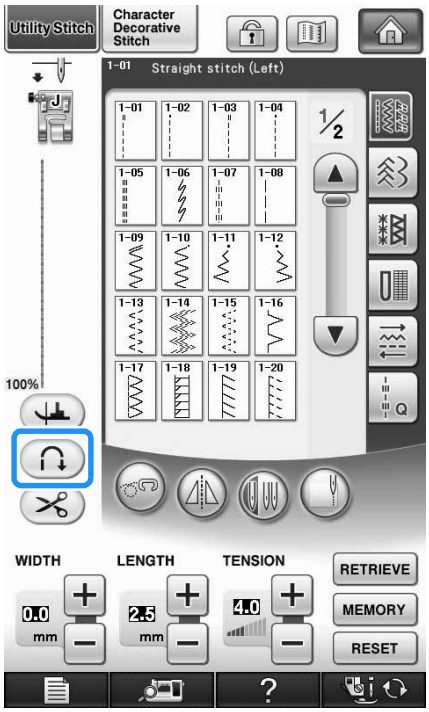
USEFUL FUNCTIONS

Automatic Reinforcement Stitching

After selecting a stitch pattern, turn on the automatic reinforcement stitching function before sewing, and the machine will automatically sew reinforcement stitches (or reverse stitches, depending on the stitch pattern) at the beginning and end of sewing.

1 Select a stitch pattern.

2 Press to set the automatic reinforcement stitching function.

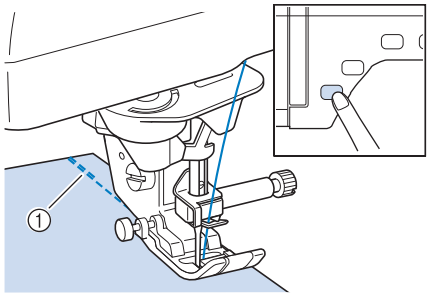


→ The key will display as .

Memo

- Some stitches, such as buttonholes and bar tacks, require reinforcement stitches at the beginning of sewing. If you select one of these stitches, the machine will automatically turn on this function (the key appears as when the stitch is selected).

3 Set the fabric in the start position and start sewing.



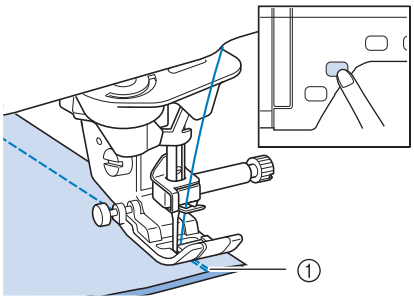
① Reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches)

→ The machine will automatically sew reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches) and then continue sewing.

Memo

- If you press the “Start/Stop” button to pause sewing, press it again to continue. The machine will not sew reverse/reinforcement stitches again.

4 Press the “Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch” button.



① Reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches)

→ The machine will sew reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches) and stop.

Memo

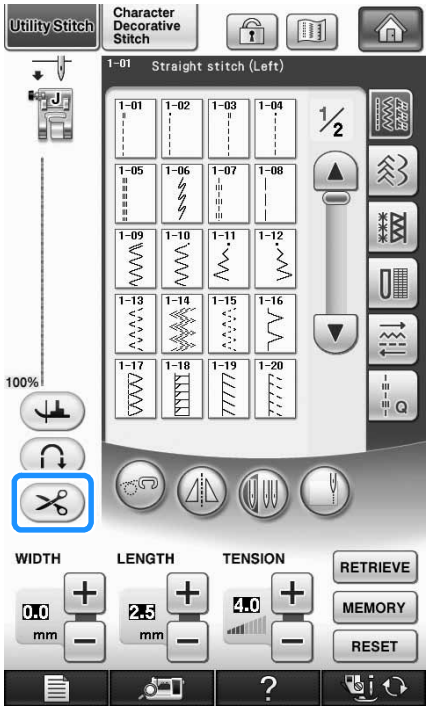
- To turn off the automatic reinforcement stitching function, press again, so it appears as .

Automatic Thread Cutting

After selecting a stitch pattern, turn on the automatic thread cutting function before sewing, and the machine will automatically sew reinforcement stitches (or reverse stitches, depending on the stitch pattern) at the beginning and end of sewing, and trim the threads at the end of sewing. This function is useful when sewing buttonholes and bar tacks.

1 Select a stitch pattern.

2 Press to set the automatic thread cutting function.

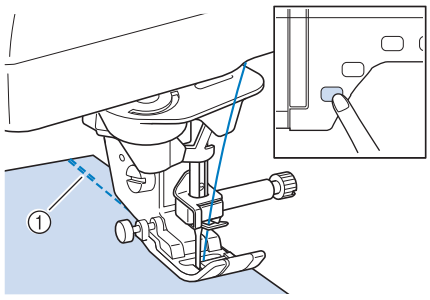


→ The key will display as .

Memo

- This function is set automatically when sewing embroidery.

3 Set the fabric in the start position and start sewing.



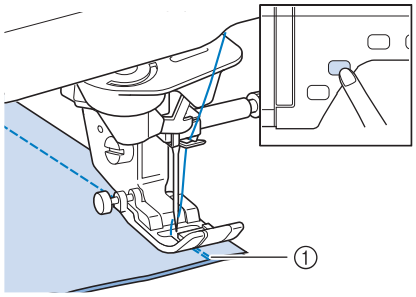
① Reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches)

→ The machine will automatically sew reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches) and then continue sewing.

Memo

- If you press the “Start/Stop” button to pause sewing, press the same button again to continue. The beginning reverse/reinforcement stitches will not be sewn again.

4 Press the “Reverse/Reinforcement Stitching” button.



① Reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches)

→ The machine will sew reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches), then trim the thread.

Memo

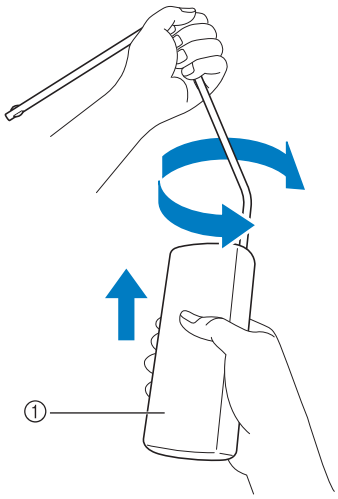
- To turn off the automatic thread cutting function, press again, so it appears as .

Using the Knee Lifter

Using the knee lifter, you can raise and lower the presser foot with your knee, leaving both hands free to handle the fabric.

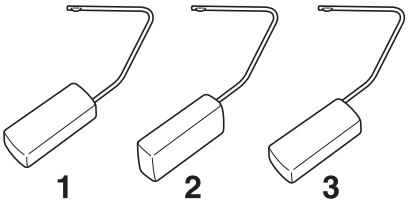
1 **Change the operating position of the knee lifter handle before inserting into the machine.**
Slide up the knee lifter handle slightly and rotate it while releasing pressure so handle will click into position.

* The knee lifter can be adjusted to three different angles.

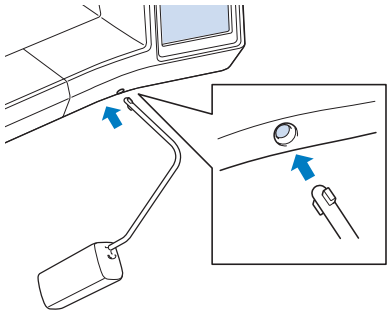


① Knee lifter handle

→ Rotate knee lifter handle till it clicks into the selected position that is most comfortable for you.



2 **Align the tabs on the knee lifter with the notches in the knee lifter slot on the front of the machine. Insert the knee lifter bar as far as possible.**



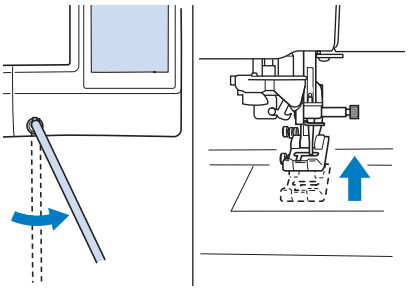
⚠ CAUTION

- **Only change position of the knee lifter handle when knee lifter is not on the machine, otherwise the knee lifter may damage the mounting slot on front of the machine.**

Note

- If the knee lifter bar is not pushed into the mounting slot as far as possible, it may come out during use.

3 **Use your knee to move the knee lifter bar to the right in order to raise the presser foot. Release the knee lifter to lower the presser foot.**



⚠ CAUTION

- **Be sure to keep your knee away from the knee lifter during sewing. If the knee lifter is pushed during machine operation, the needle may break or the thread tension may loosen.**

Memo

- When the presser foot is in the up position, move the knee lifter to the far right and then release to return the presser foot to the down position.

Pivoting

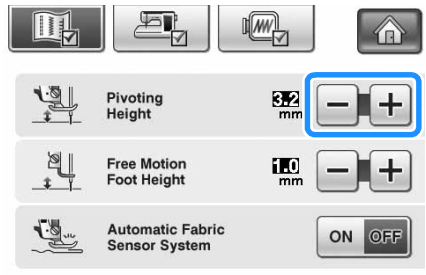
If the pivot setting is selected, the machine stops with the needle lowered (in the fabric) and the presser foot is automatically raised to an appropriate height when the “Start/Stop” button is pressed. When the “Start/Stop” button is pressed again, the presser foot is automatically lowered and sewing continues. This function is useful for stopping the machine to rotate the fabric.

⚠ CAUTION

- **When the pivot setting is selected, the machine starts when the “Start/Stop” button is pressed or the foot controller is pressed down even if the presser foot has been raised. Be sure to keep your hands and other items away from the needle, otherwise injuries may occur.**

Memo

- When the pivot setting is selected, the height of the presser foot when sewing is stopped can be changed according to the type of fabric being sewn. Press [ ] to display “Pivoting Height” on 2/8 of the settings screen. Press [−] or [+] to select one of the three heights (3.2 mm, 5.0 mm or 7.5 mm). To raise the presser foot further, increase the setting. (Normally, 3.2 mm is set.)

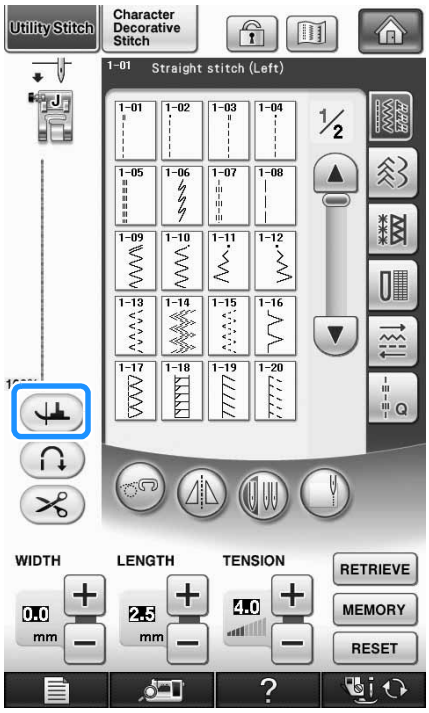


Note

- The “Needle Position – UP/DOWN” (3/8 of the settings screen) must be set in the down position [ ] for the pivot function to be used. When “Needle Position – UP/DOWN” is set in the raised position, [ ] appears as light gray and cannot be used.
- The pivot function can only be used with stitches where presser foot J or N is indicated in the upper-left corner of the screen. If any other stitch is selected, [ ] appears as light gray and is not available.
- Use the “Presser Foot Lifter” button to make sure the presser foot is lowered, and then press the “Start/Stop” button to continue sewing.
- If the pivot setting is selected, [−] and [+] beside “Presser Foot Height” in the settings screen are not available and the setting cannot be changed.

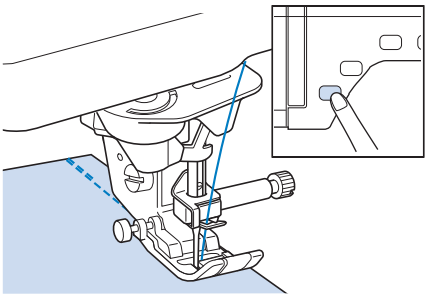
1 Select a stitch.

2 Press [ ] to select the pivot setting.



→ The key appears as [ ].

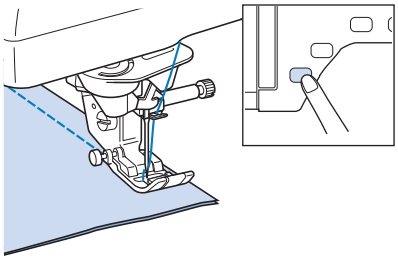
3 **Place the fabric under the presser foot with the needle at the starting point of the stitching, and then press the “Start/Stop” button. The machine will begin sewing.**



Memo

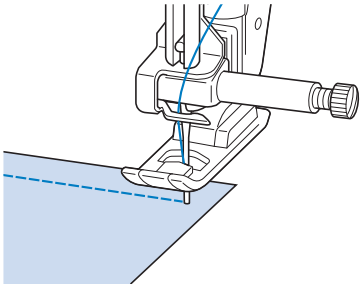
- If you press the “Start/Stop” button to pause sewing, press it again to continue, reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches) will not be sewn.

4 **Press the “Start/Stop” button to stop the machine at the point where the sewing direction changes.**



→ The machine stops with the needle in the fabric, and the presser foot is raised.

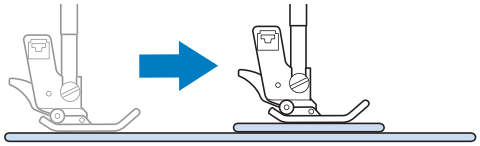
5 **Rotate the fabric, and then press the “Start/Stop” button.**

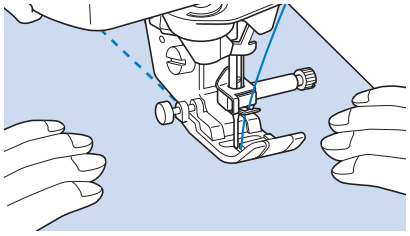


→ The presser foot is automatically lowered, and sewing continues.

Automatic Fabric Sensor System (Automatic Presser Foot Pressure)

The thickness of the fabric is automatically detected and the presser foot pressure is automatically adjusted with an internal sensor while sewing, to insure that your fabric is fed smoothly. The fabric sensor system works continuously while sewing. This function is useful for sewing over thick seams (see page 75), or quilting (see page 113).

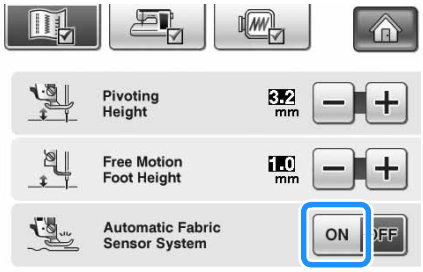




1 **Press** [ ].

→ The settings screen appears.

2 **Set “Automatic Fabric Sensor System” to “ON”.**



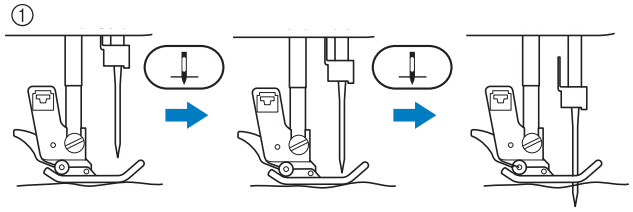
3 **Press** [CLOSE] **to return to the original screen.**

Needle Position – Stitch Placement

When the "Needle Position – Stitch Placement" is on, the needle will be partially lowered for precise stitch placement and then press the "Needle Position" button to lower the needle completely. Each press of the "Needle Position" button changes the needle to the next position. When the "Needle Position – Stitch Placement" is turned off, each press of the "Needle Position" button simply raises and then lowers the needle.

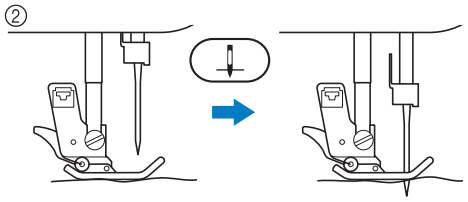
① Pointing needle mode is ON
② Pointing needle mode is OFF

①



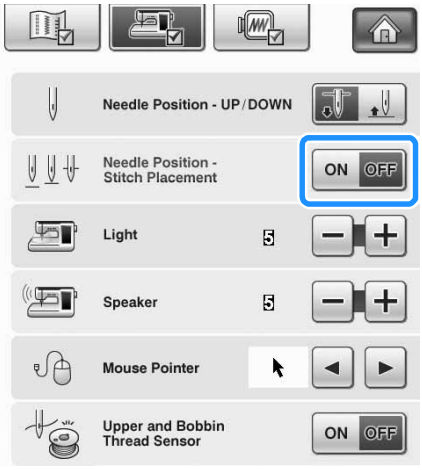
* When the needle is nearly lowered by pressing the "Needle Position" button, the feed dogs are lowered. At this time, the fabric can be shifted to finely adjust the needle drop position.

②



1 Press .

2 Set "Needle Position – Stitch Placement" to "ON" or "OFF".



3 Press CLOSE to return to the original screen.

Locking the Screen

If the screen is locked before starting to sew, the various settings such as the stitch width and stitch length are locked and cannot be changed. This prevents screen settings from accidentally being changed or the machine from being stopped while large pieces of fabric or projects are being sewn. The screen can be locked when sewing utility stitches and character decorative stitches.

1 Select a stitch pattern.

2 If necessary, adjust any settings such as the stitch width and stitch length.

3 Press to lock the screen settings.

→ The key appears as .

4 Sew your project.

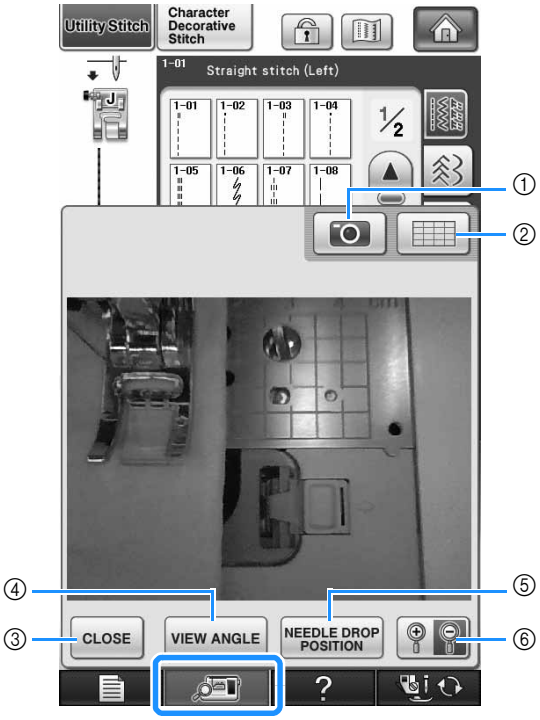
5 When you are finished sewing, press again to unlock the screen settings.

⚠ CAUTION

- **If the screen is locked ( ), unlock the screen by pressing . While the screen is locked, no other key can be operated.**
- **The settings are unlocked when the machine is turned off and on.**

Checking the Needle Location in the Screen

Press to use the built-in camera to view the sewing area in the LCD screen. View the location of the needle from 2 different angles and the needle drop position, even if the needle has not actually been lowered.



→ The camera view window appears.

① CAMERA IMAGE
② GRID VIEW
③ CLOSE
④ VIEW ANGLE
⑤ NEEDLE DROP POSITION
⑥ ZOOM

CAMERA IMAGE

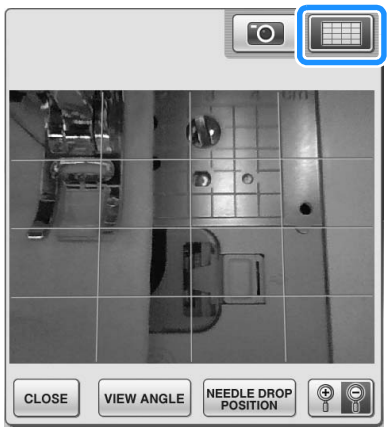
Press this key to save a camera image to the USB media.

Insert the USB media to the machine to save a camera image (Refer to "Saving a Settings Screen Image to USB Media" on page 39). The files for camera images are saved with the name "C**.BMP". A maximum of 100 camera images can be saved in one USB media.

* "**" in the name "C**.BMP" will automatically be replaced with a number between 00 and 99.

GRID VIEW

Press this key to display a grid.



CLOSE

Press this key to close the screen.

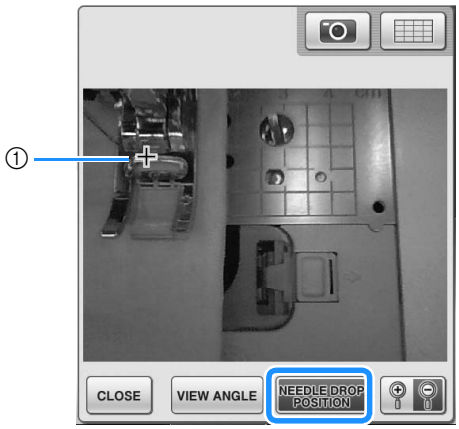
VIEW ANGLE

Each press of switches the built-in camera between a front view and an angled top view.

NEEDLE DROP POSITION

Press to show the needle drop position in the screen as "+".

Lower the presser foot before pressing . Once the needle drop position appears on the screen, you can raise the presser foot and change the needle drop position by moving the fabric.



① Needle drop position

ZOOM

Press to enlarge the image in the screen.

Press again to return the image to its original display size.

Note

- The camera view window disappears when you start sewing.
- When sewing thick fabrics, the needle drop position indicated in the screen may differ from the actual position.

Chapter 3
Utility Stitches

SELECTING UTILITY STITCHES 90

- Stitch Selection Screens 90

Selecting a Stitch 91
- Using the Mirror Image Key 91
- Using the Image Key 92

Saving Your Stitch Settings 92
- Saving Settings 92
- Retrieving Saved Settings 93

SEWING THE STITCHES 94

Straight Stitches 94
- Changing the Needle Position (Left or Middle Needle Position Stitches Only) 96
- Aligning the Fabric with a Mark on the Needle Plate or Bobbin Cover (with Mark) 96
- Aligning the Fabric with the Vertical Stitch Alignment "V" Foot 97
- Using the Straight Stitch Needle Plate and the Straight Stitch Foot 97
- Basting 98

Dart Seam 99

Gathering 99

Flat Fell Seam 100

Pintuck 101

Zigzag Stitches 102
- Overcasting (Using a Zigzag Stitch) 102
- Appliqué (Using a Zigzag Stitch) 102
- Patchwork (for Crazy Quilt) 103
- Sewing Curves (Using a Zigzag Stitch) 103
- Cord Guide Bobbin Cover (Using a Zigzag Stitch) 103

Elastic Zigzag Stitches 104
- Tape Attaching 104
- Overcasting 104

Overcasting 105
- Overcasting Using Presser Foot "G" 105
- Overcasting Using Presser Foot "J" 106
- Overcasting Using the Side Cutter 107
- When Sewing Straight Stitches While Using the Side Cutter 109

Quilting 110
- Piecing 113
- Quilting 113
- Appliqué 114
- Quilting with Satin Stitches 115
- Free Motion Quilting 116
- Echo Quilting Using the Free Motion Echo Quilting Foot "E" 119

Blind Hem Stitches 122
- If the Needle Catches Too Much of the Hem Fold 124
- If the Needle does not Catch the Hem Fold 124

Appliqué 125
- Appliqué Sharp Curves 125
- Appliqué Corners 125

Shelltuck Stitches 126

Scallop Stitches 127

Crazy Quilting 127

Smocking Stitches 128

Fagoting 128

Tape or Elastic Attaching 129

Heirloom 130
- Hemstitching (1) (Daisy Stitch) 130
- Hemstitching (2) (Drawn Work (1)) 130
- Hemstitching (3) (Drawn Work (2)) 131

One-step Buttonholes 132
- Sewing Stretch Fabrics 135
- Odd Shaped Buttons/Buttons that do Not Fit into the Button Holder Plate 135

Four-step Buttonholes 136
- Darning 138

Bar Tacks 140
- Bar Tacks on Thick Fabrics 141

Button Sewing 142
- Attaching 4 Hole Buttons 143
- Attaching a Shank to the Button 143

Eyelet 144

Multi-directional Sewing (Straight Stitch and Zigzag Stitch) 145

Zipper Insertion 146
- Centered Zipper 146
- Inserting a Side Zipper 147

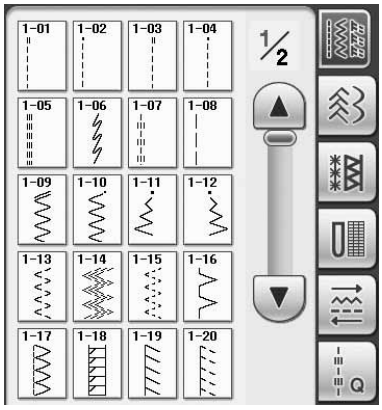
Edge Sewing 148

SELECTING UTILITY STITCHES

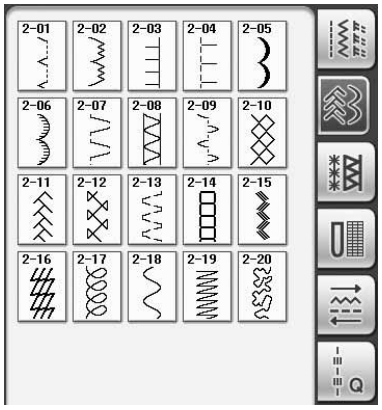
■ Stitch Selection Screens

There are 6 categories of Utility Stitches. If a page number such as 1/2 appears, there is more than one stitch selection screen for that category.

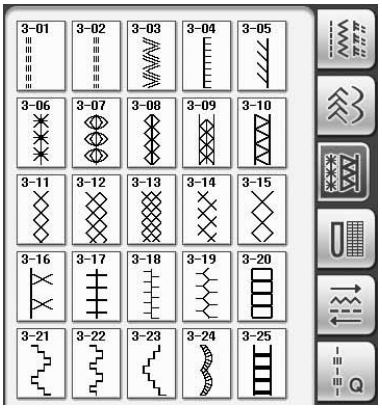
Straight/Overcasting



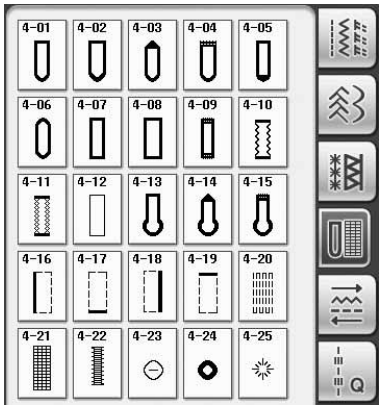
Decorative Stitches



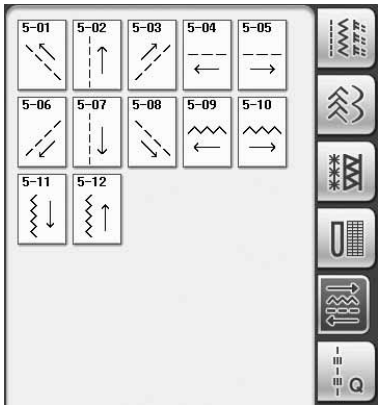
Heirloom Stitches



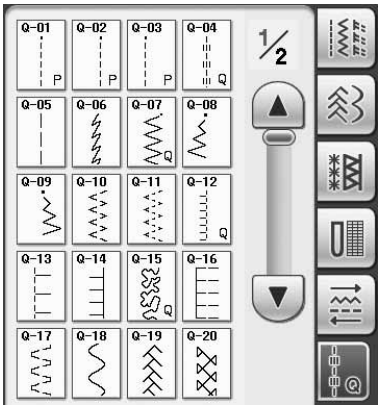
Buttonholes/Bar tacks



Multi-directional Sewing



Quilting Stitches



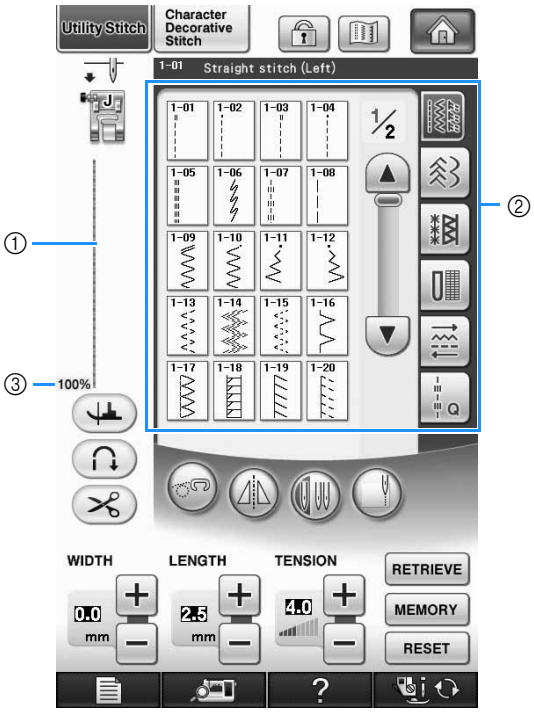
Selecting a Stitch

1 **Turn the main power to ON and press to display the utility stitches.**

→ Either "1-01 Straight stitch (Left)" or "1-03 Straight stitch (Middle)" is selected, depending on the setting selected in the setting screen.

2 **Use to select the category you want.**

* Press to view the next page.
* Press to view previous page.



① Preview of the selected stitch
② Stitch selection screen
③ Percentage size of view

3 **Press the key of the stitch you want to sew.**

Memo
- For details on each stitch, refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" at the end of this manual.

■ Using the Mirror Image Key

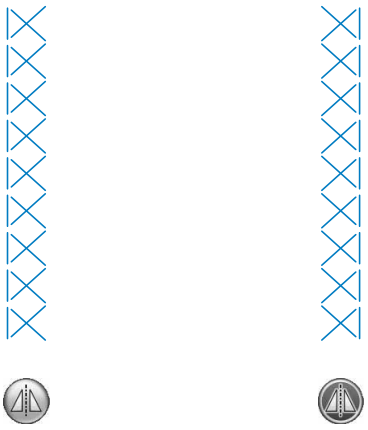
Depending on the type of utility stitch you select, you may be able to sew a horizontal mirror image of the stitch.

If is lit when you select a stitch, it will be possible to make a mirror image of the stitch.

Note
- If is light gray after you select a stitch, you cannot create a horizontal mirror image of the selected stitch due to the type of stitch or type of presser foot recommended (this is true of buttonholes, multi-directional sewing, and others).

Press to create a horizontal mirror image of the selected stitch.

The key will display as .



■ Using the Image Key

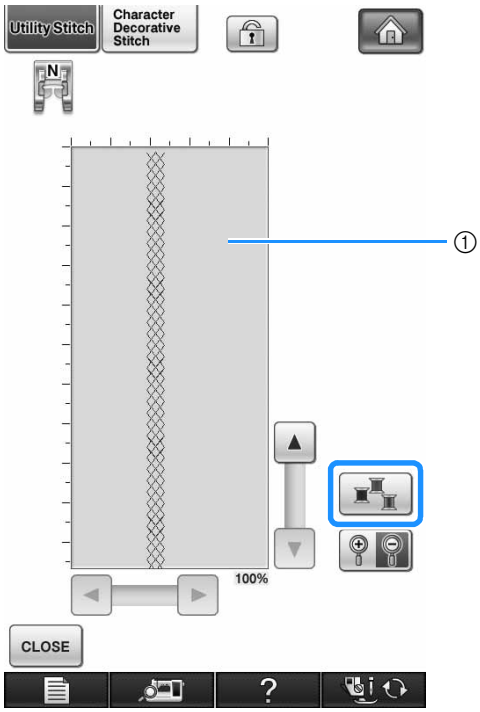
You can display an image of the selected stitch. You can check and change the colors of the image of the screen.

1 **Press** .

→ An image of the selected stitch is displayed.

2 **Press to change the thread color of the stitch on the screen.**

* Press to display an enlarged image of the stitch.



① Stitch screen

Memo

- The color changes every time you press .

Note

- If stitches are wider or larger than display, press darkened arrows to move the stitch pattern for better visibility.

3 **Press CLOSE to go back to the original screen.**

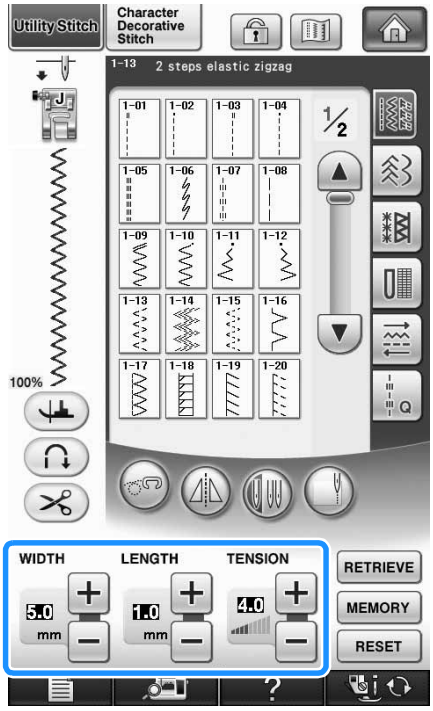
Saving Your Stitch Settings

The settings for the zigzag stitch width, stitch length, thread tension, automatic thread cutting, automatic reinforcement stitching, etc., are preset in the machine for each stitch. However, if you have specific settings that you wish to reuse later for a stitch, you can change the settings so that they can be saved for that stitch. Five sets of settings can be saved for a single stitch.

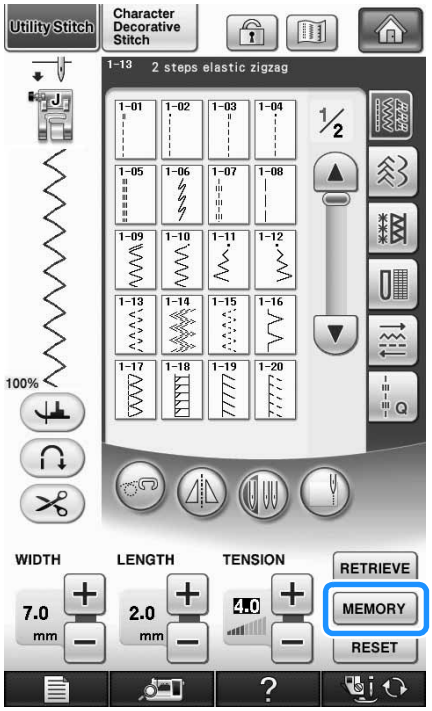
■ Saving Settings

1 **Select a stitch. (Example:)**

2 **Specify your preferred settings.**



3 **Press** MEMORY.



→ The settings are saved and the original screen automatically appears.

Memo

- If you try to save settings when there are already 5 sets of settings saved for a stitch, the message “The pockets are full. Delete a pattern” will appear. Close the message and delete a setting referring to page 93.

■ Retrieving Saved Settings

1 **Select a stitch.**

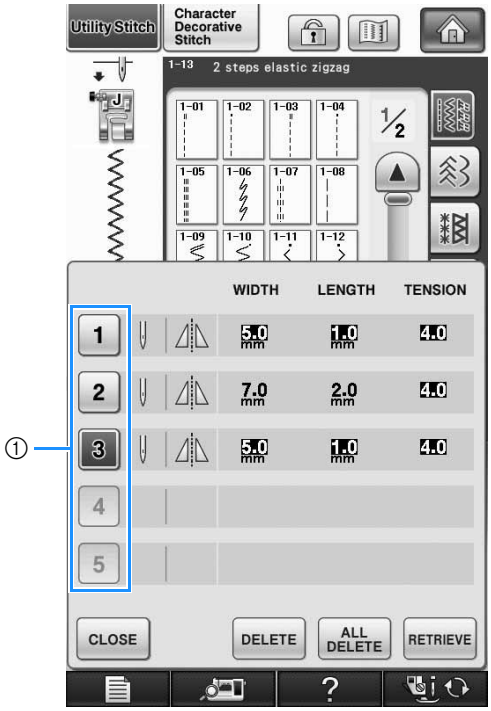
Memo

- When a stitch is selected, the last settings retrieved are displayed. The last settings retrieved are retained even if the machine was turned off or a different stitch was selected.

2 **Press** RETRIEVE.

3 **Press the numbered key of the settings to be retrieved.**

* Press CLOSE to return to the original screen without retrieving settings.



① Numbered keys

4 **Press** RETRIEVE.

→ The selected settings are retrieved, and the original screen automatically appears.

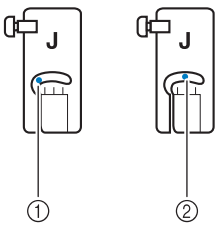
Memo

- To save new settings when there are already 5 sets of settings saved for a stitch, press RETRIEVE. Press the numbered key of the setting to be deleted. Press DELETE, press CLOSE and then MEMORY. The new setting will be saved in place of the recently deleted setting.
- You can delete all the saved settings by pressing ALL DELETE.

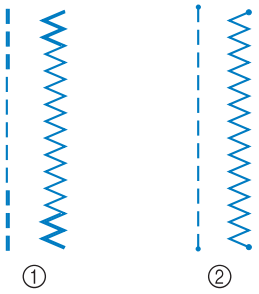
SEWING THE STITCHES

Straight Stitches

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot	Applications	Stitch width [mm (inch)]		Stitch length [mm (inch)]		Twin needle
				Auto	Manual	Auto	Manual	
	Straight stitch (Left)		General sewing, gather, pintuck, etc. Reverse stitch is sewn while pressing “Reverse/ Reinforcement Stitch” button.	**0.0 (0)**	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	**2.5 (3/32)**	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	OK (J)
	Straight stitch (Left)		General sewing, gather, pintuck, etc. Reinforcement stitch is sewn while pressing “Reverse/ Reinforcement Stitch” button.	**0.0 (0)**	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	**2.5 (3/32)**	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	OK (J)
	Straight stitch (Middle)		General sewing, gather, pintuck, etc. Reverse stitch is sewn while pressing “Reverse/ Reinforcement Stitch” button.	**3.5 (1/8)**	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	**2.5 (3/32)**	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	OK (J)
	Straight stitch (Middle)		General sewing, gather, pintuck, etc. Reinforcement stitch is sewn while pressing “Reverse/ Reinforcement Stitch” button.	**3.5 (1/8)**	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	**2.5 (3/32)**	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	OK (J)
	Triple stretch stitch		General sewing for reinforcement and decorative topstitching	**0.0 (0)**	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	**2.5 (3/32)**	1.5 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
	Stem stitch		Reinforced stitching, sewing and decorative applications	**1.0 (1/16)**	1.0 - 3.0 (1/16 - 1/8)	**2.5 (3/32)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
	Decorative stitch		Decorative stitching, top stitching	**0.0 (0)**	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	**2.5 (3/32)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
	Basting stitch		Basting	**0.0 (0)**	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	**20 (3/4)**	5 - 30 (3/16 - 1-3/16)	NO



① Left needle position
② Middle needle position

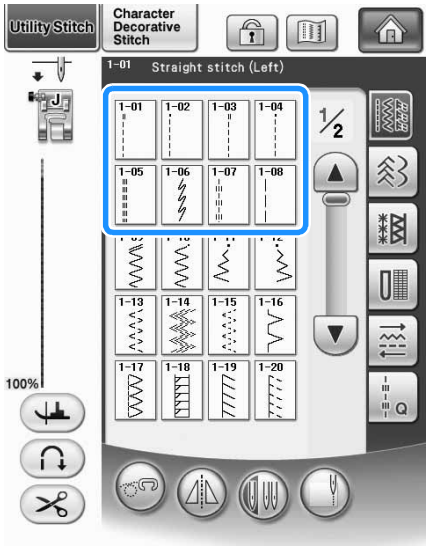


① Reverse stitch
② Reinforcement stitch

Memo

- If the selected stitch has a double mark “ ⫴ ” at the top of the key display, you can sew reverse stitches holding the “Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch” button.
- If the selected stitch has a dot mark “ ⋅ ” at the top of the key display, you can sew reinforcement stitches holding the “Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch” button (see page 74).

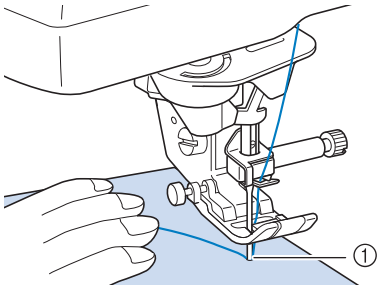
1 **Select a stitch.**



2 **Attach presser foot "J".**

* Attach presser foot "N" when you select .

3 **Hold the thread tail and fabric with your left hand, and rotate the handwheel with your right hand to insert the needle into the fabric.**

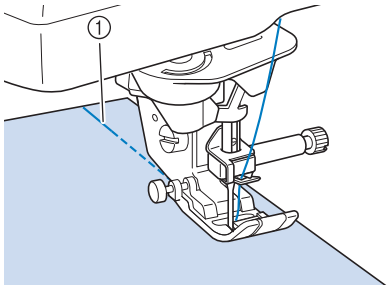


① Sewing start position

4 **Lower the presser foot, and hold the "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button to sew 3-4 stitches.**

→ The machine sews reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches).

5 **Press the "Start/Stop" button to sew forward.**



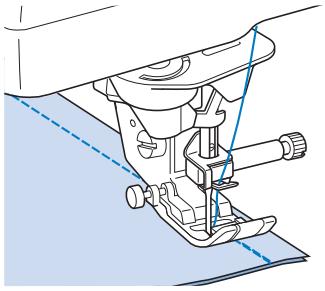
① Reverse stitches

→ The machine will begin sewing slowly.

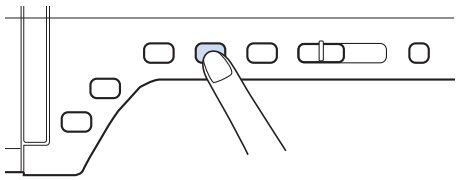
⚠ CAUTION

- **Be sure the needle does not strike a basting pin, or any other objects, during sewing. The thread could tangle or the needle could break, causing injury.**

6 **When sewing is completed, hold the "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button to sew 3-4 reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches) at the end of the seam.**



7 **After sewing, press the "Thread Cutter" button to trim the threads.**

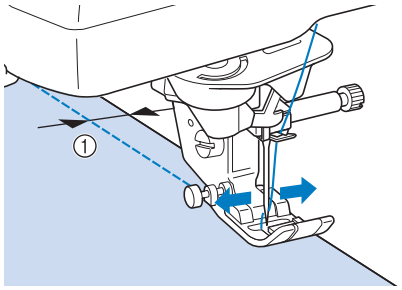


Memo

- When the automatic thread cutting and automatic reinforcement stitch keys on the screen are selected, reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches) will be sewn automatically at the beginning of sewing when the "Start/Stop" button is pressed. Press the "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button to sew reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches) and trim the thread automatically at the end of sewing.

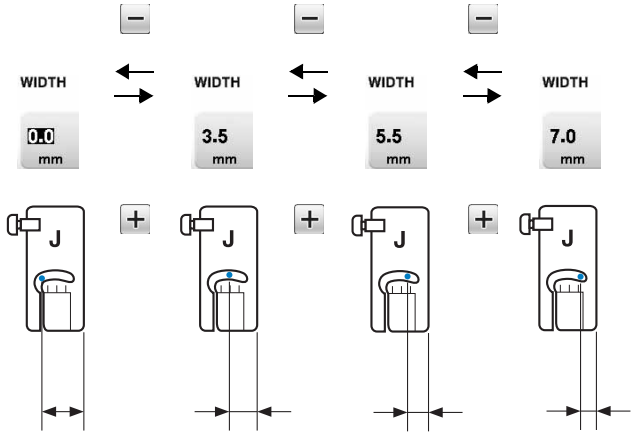
■ Changing the Needle Position (Left or Middle Needle Position Stitches Only)

When you select left or middle needle position stitches, you can use − and + in the stitch width display to change the position of the needle. Match the distance from the right edge of the presser foot to the needle with the stitch width, then align the edge of the presser foot with the edge of the fabric during sewing for an attractive finish.



① Stitch width

Example: Left/Middle needle position stitches

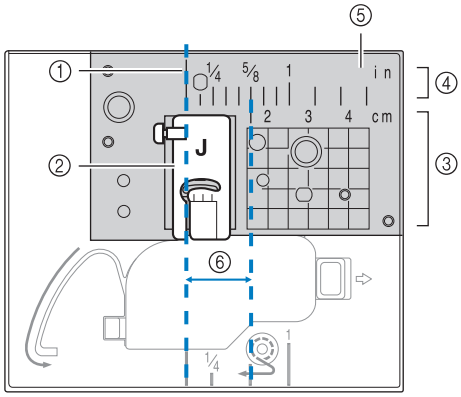


12.0 mm (approx. 1/2 inch) | 8.5 mm (approx. 11/32 inch) | 6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch) | 5.0 mm (approx. 3/16 inch)

■ Aligning the Fabric with a Mark on the Needle Plate or Bobbin Cover (with Mark)

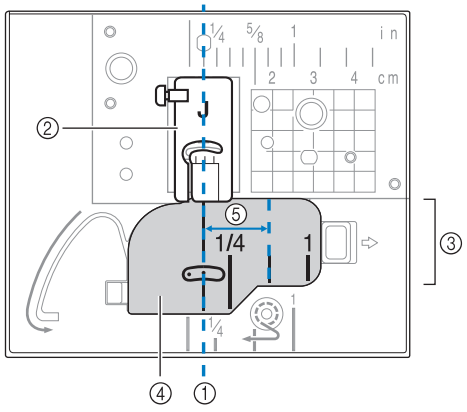
While sewing, align the edge of the fabric with the 16 mm (approx. 5/8 inch) mark on the needle plate or bobbin cover (with mark) depending on the needle position (left or middle (center) needle position stitches only).

For stitches with a left needle position (Stitch width: 0.0 mm)



① Seam
② Presser foot
③ Centimeters
④ Inches
⑤ Needle plate
⑥ 16 mm (5/8 inch)

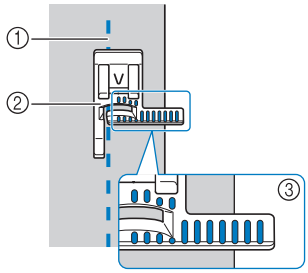
For stitches with a middle (center) needle position (Stitch width: 3.5 mm)



① Seam
② Presser foot
③ Inches
④ Bobbin cover (with mark)
⑤ 16 mm (5/8 inch)

■ Aligning the Fabric with the Vertical Stitch Alignment “V” Foot

Sew while keeping the right edge of the fabric aligned with a desired position of markings on the vertical stitch alignment “V” foot.
You can also use the vertical stitch alignment “V” foot for setting a stitch width using the built-in camera (see page 148).



① Seam
② Vertical stitch alignment “V” foot
③ Markings

■ Using the Straight Stitch Needle Plate and the Straight Stitch Foot

The straight stitch needle plate and the straight stitch foot can only be used for straight stitches (middle needle position stitches). Use the straight stitch needle plate and the straight stitch foot when sewing thin fabrics or when sewing small pieces which tend to sink into the hole of the regular needle plate during sewing. The straight stitch foot is perfect to reduce puckering on lightweight fabrics. The small opening on the foot provides support for the fabric as the needle travels through the fabric.

⚠ CAUTION

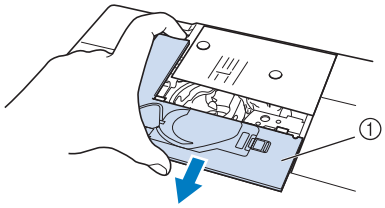
- **Always use the straight stitch foot in combination with the straight stitch needle plate.**

1 **Press the “Needle Position” button to raise the needle and turn the main power to OFF or press .**

2 **Remove the needle and the presser foot holder (see page 66 through 67).**

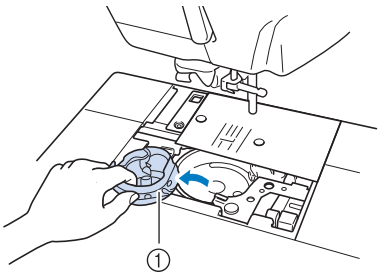
3 **Remove the flat bed attachment or the embroidery unit if either are attached.**

4 **Grasp both sides of the needle plate cover, and then slide it toward you.**



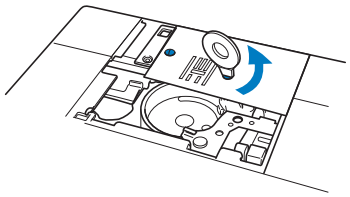
① Needle plate cover

5 **Grasp the bobbin case, and then pull it out.**

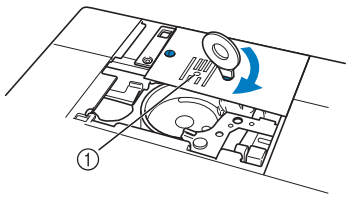


① Bobbin case

6 **Use the disc-shaped screw driver included with the machine to unscrew and remove the regular needle plate.**



7 **Set the straight stitch needle plate in place and use the disc-shaped screw driver to tighten the plate.**



① Round hole

Note

- Align the two screw holes on the needle plate with the two holes on the machine. Use the disc-shaped screw driver included with the machine to secure the screws in the needle plate.

8 **Insert the bobbin case in its original position, and then attach the needle plate cover.**

9 **After reinstalling the needle plate cover, select any of the straight stitches.**

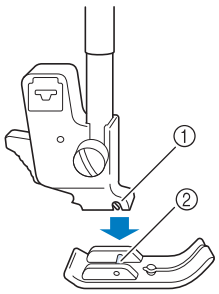
Memo

- When using the straight stitch needle plate, all straight stitches become middle needle position stitches. You cannot change the needle position using the width display.
- Always secure the needle plate before inserting the bobbin case into its original position.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Selecting other stitches will cause an error message to be displayed.**
- **Slowly rotate the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) before sewing and make sure that the needle is not contacting the straight stitch foot and straight stitch needle plate.**

10 **Insert needle and attach the straight stitch foot.**



① Notch
② Pin

11 **Start sewing.**

* After sewing, make sure to remove the straight stitch needle plate and the straight stitch foot, and reinstall the regular needle plate, the needle plate cover and the presser foot "J".

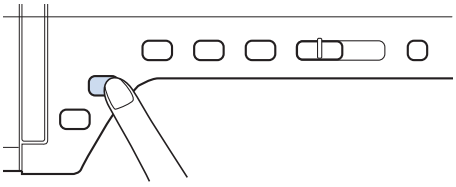
Memo

- To prevent puckering on fine fabrics, use a fine needle, size 75/11, and a short stitch length. For heavier fabrics, use a heavier needle, size 90/14, and longer stitches.

■ Basting

1 **Select** **and attach presser foot "J".**

2 **Press the "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button to sew reinforcement stitches, then continue sewing.**

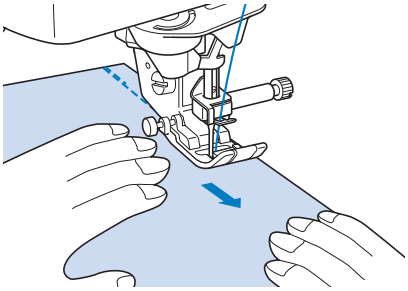


Memo

- When you use the basting stitch for gathering, do not use a reinforcement stitch at the beginning; you should lift the presser foot, rotate the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise), pull up the bobbin thread and pull a length of top and bobbin thread out from the rear of the machine.
- You can set the stitch length between 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch) and 30 mm (approx. 1-3/16 inches)

① Between 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch) and 30 mm (approx. 1-3/16 inches)

3 **Sew while keeping the fabric straight.**



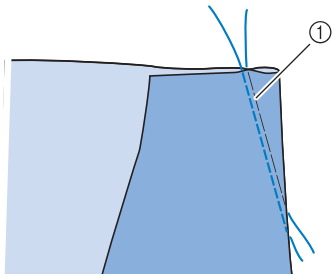
4 **End the basting with reinforcement stitches.**

Dart Seam

1 **Select** **and attach presser foot "J".**

2 **Sew a reverse stitch at the beginning of the dart and then sew from the wide end to the other end without stretching the fabric.**

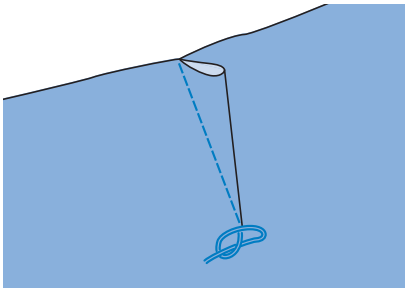
* If automatic reinforcement stitching is preset, a reinforcement stitch will automatically be sewn at the beginning of sewing.



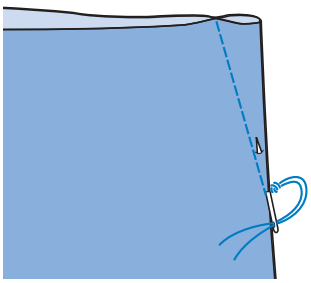
① Basting

3 **Cut the thread at the end leaving 50 mm (approx. 1-15/16 inches), and then tie both ends together.**

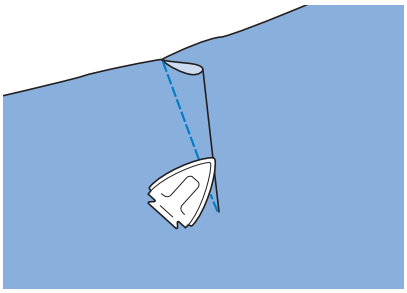
* Do not sew a reverse stitch at the end.



4 **Insert the ends of the thread into the dart with a hand sewing needle.**



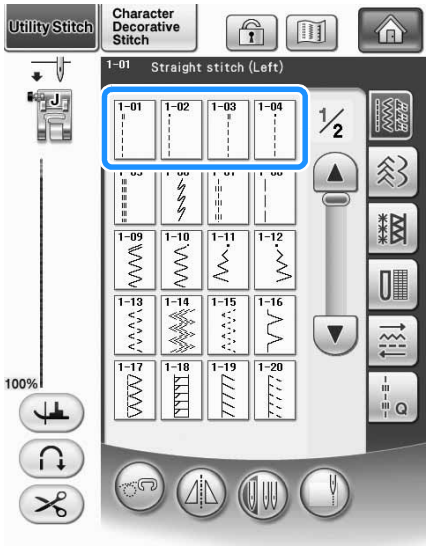
5 **Iron the dart to one side so that it is flat.**



Gathering

Use on waists of skirts, sleeves of shirts, etc.

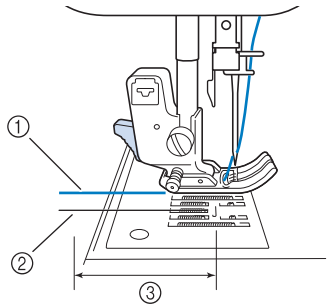
1 **Select a straight stitch and attach presser foot "J".**



2 **Set the stitch length to 4.0 mm (approx. 3/16 inch) and the thread tension to approximately 2.0 (weaker tension).**

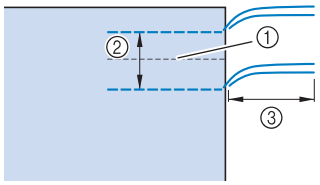
* If you press GATHERING after pressing ? and then Sewing Guide, the stitch length will be set automatically to 4.0 mm (approx. 3/16 inch) and the thread tension will be automatically set to 2.0.

3 **Pull the bobbin and upper threads out by 50 mm (approx. 1-15/16 inches) (see page 55).**



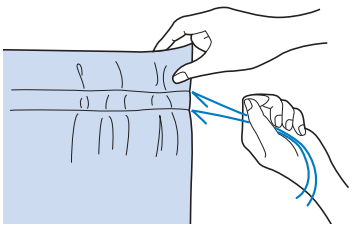
① Upper thread
② Bobbin thread
③ About 50 mm (approx. 1-15/16 inches)

4 **Sew two rows of straight stitches parallel to the seam line, then trim excess thread leaving 50 mm (approx. 1-15/16 inches).**

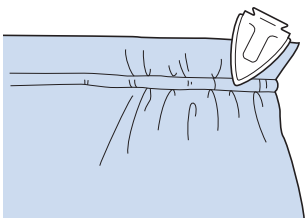


① Seam line
② 10 to 15 mm (approx. 3/8 inch to 9/16 inch)
③ About 50 mm (approx. 1-15/16 inches)

5 **Pull the bobbin threads to obtain the desired amount of gather, then tie the threads.**



6 **Smooth the gathers by ironing them.**



7 **Sew on the seam line and remove the basting stitch.**

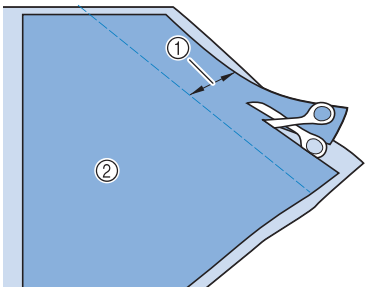
Flat Fell Seam

Use for reinforcing seams and finishing edges neatly.

1 **Select** **and attach presser foot "J".**

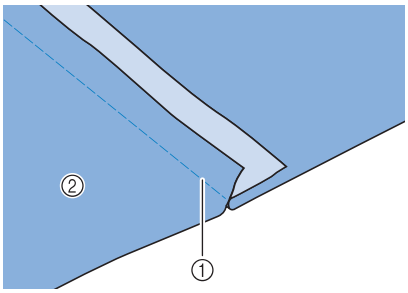
2 **Sew the finish line, then cut half of the seam allowance from the side on which the flat fell seam will lie.**

* When the automatic thread cutting and automatic reinforcement stitching are preset, reinforcement stitches will be sewn automatically at the beginning of sewing. Press the "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button to sew a reinforcement stitch and trim the thread automatically at the end of sewing.



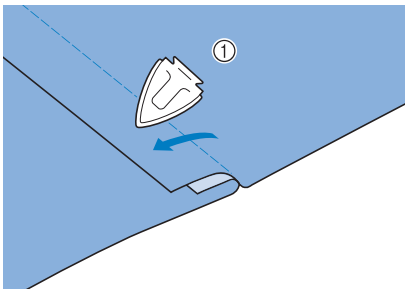
① About 12 mm (approx. 1/2 inch)
② Wrong side

3 **Spread the fabric out along the finish line.**



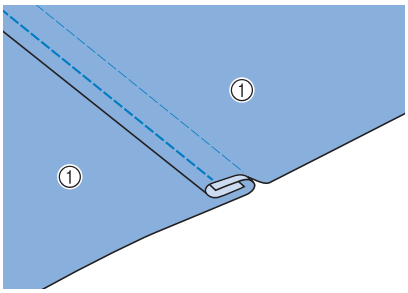
① Finish line
② Wrong side

4 **Lay both seam allowances on the side of the shorter seam (cut seam) and iron them.**



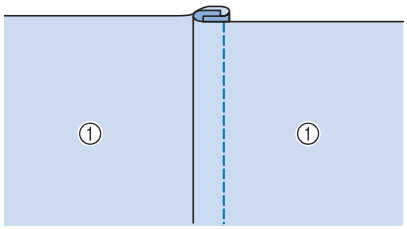
① Wrong side

5 **Fold the longer seam allowance around the shorter one, and sew the edge of the fold.**



① Wrong side

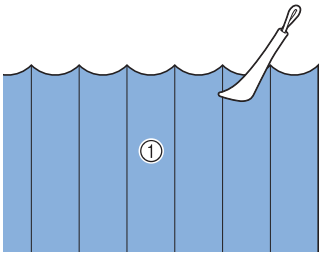
Finished flat fell seam



① Surface

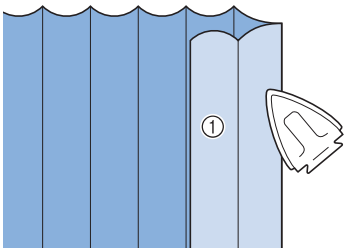
Pintuck

1 **Mark along the folds on the wrong side of the fabric.**



① Wrong side

2 **Turn the fabric and iron the folded parts only.**

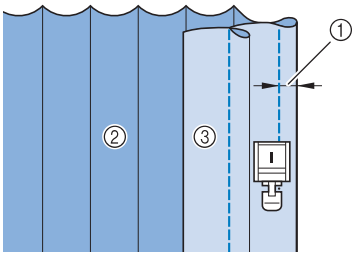


① Surface

3 **Select** **and attach presser foot "I".**

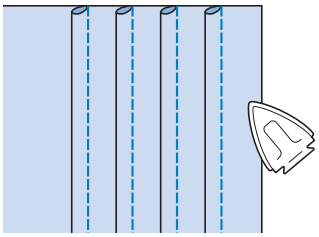
4 **Sew a straight stitch along the fold.**

* When the automatic thread cutting and automatic reinforcement stitching are preset, reinforcement stitches will be sewn automatically at the beginning of sewing. Press the "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button to sew a reinforcement stitch and trim the thread automatically at the end of sewing.



① Width for pintuck
② Wrong side
③ Surface

5 **Iron the folds in the same direction.**



Zigzag Stitches

Zigzag stitches are useful for overcasting, appliqué, patchwork, and many other applications.

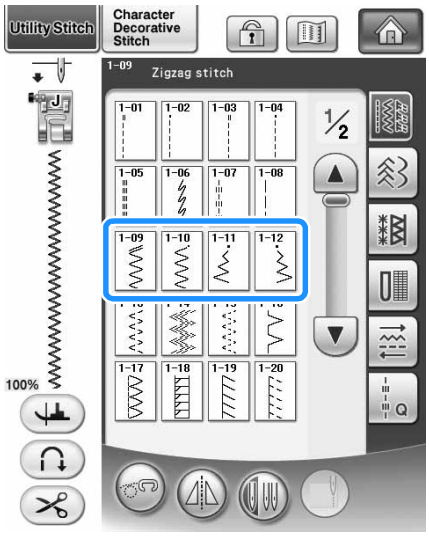
Select a stitch, and attach presser foot “J”.

If the stitch which you select has a double mark “ ⦀ ” at the top of the key display, you can sew reverse stitches by holding the “Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch” button.

If the stitch which you select has a dot mark “ · ” at the top of the key display, you can sew reinforcement stitches by holding the “Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch” button (see page 74).

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot	Applications	Stitch width [mm (inch)]		Stitch length [mm (inch)]		Twin needle
				Auto	Manual	Auto	Manual	
	Zigzag stitch		For overcasting, mending. Reverse stitch is sewn while pressing “Reverse/ Reinforcement Stitch” button.	**3.5 (1/8)**	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	**1.4 (1/16)**	0.0 - 4.0 (0 - 3/16)	OK (J)
	Zigzag stitch		For overcasting, mending. Reinforcement stitch is sewn while pressing “Reverse/ Reinforcement Stitch” button.	**3.5 (1/8)**	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	**1.4 (1/16)**	0.0 - 4.0 (0 - 3/16)	OK (J)
	Zigzag stitch (right)		Start from right needle position, zigzag sew at left.	**3.5 (1/8)**	2.5 - 5.0 (3/32 - 3/16)	**1.4 (1/16)**	0.3 - 4.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	OK (J)
	Zigzag stitch (left)		Start from left needle position, zigzag sew at right.	**3.5 (1/8)**	2.5 - 5.0 (3/32 - 3/16)	**1.4 (1/16)**	0.3 - 4.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	OK (J)

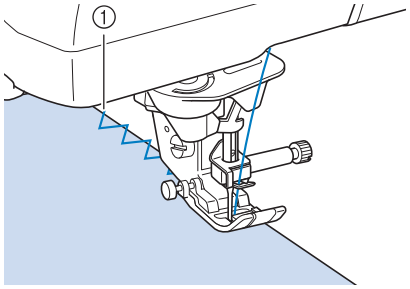
1 **Select a stitch.**



2 **Attach presser foot “J”.**

■ Overcasting (Using a Zigzag Stitch)

Sew the overcasting along the edge of the fabric while positioning the right-hand side needle drop point just outside the edge of the fabric.

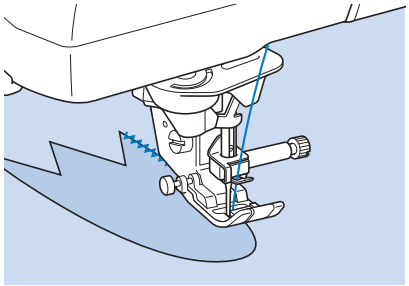


① Needle drop position

■ Appliqué (Using a Zigzag Stitch)

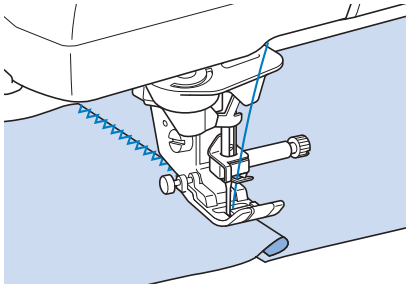
Attach the appliqué material using a temporary spray adhesive or basting, and then sew it.

* Sew a zigzag stitch while positioning the right-hand side needle drop point just outside the edge of the fabric.



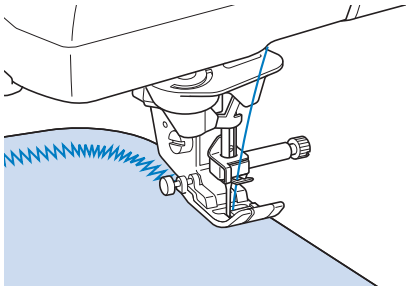
■ Patchwork (for Crazy Quilt)

Turn back the desired width of fabric and position it over the lower fabric, then sew so that the stitch bridges both pieces of fabric.



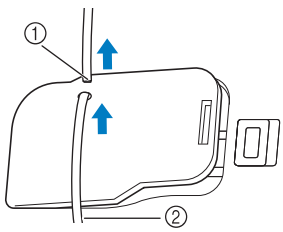
■ Sewing Curves (Using a Zigzag Stitch)

Shorten the stitch length setting to obtain a fine stitch. Sew slowly, keeping the seams parallel with the fabric edge as you guide the fabric around the curve.



■ Cord Guide Bobbin Cover (Using a Zigzag Stitch)

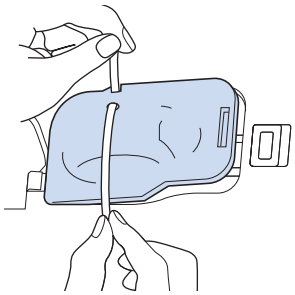
1. **Remove the bobbin cover from the machine (see page 54).**
2. **Thread the gimp thread through the hole in the cord guide bobbin cover from top to bottom. Position the thread in the notch at the back of the cord guide bobbin cover.**



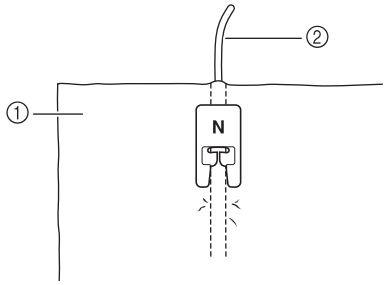
① Notch
② Gimp thread

3. **Snap the cord guide bobbin cover into place, making sure that the gimp thread can be fed freely.**

* Make sure there are no restrictions when feeding the thread.

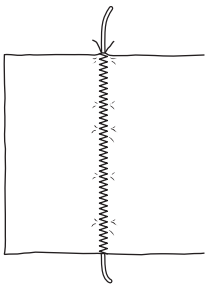


4. **Set the zigzag width from 2.0-2.5 mm (approx. 1/16 - 3/32 inch).**
5. **Attach presser foot "N".**
6. **Position the fabric right side up on top of the cord and place the cord to the rear of the machine under the presser foot.**



① Fabric (right side)
② Gimp thread

7. **Lower the presser foot and start sewing to make a decorative finish.**

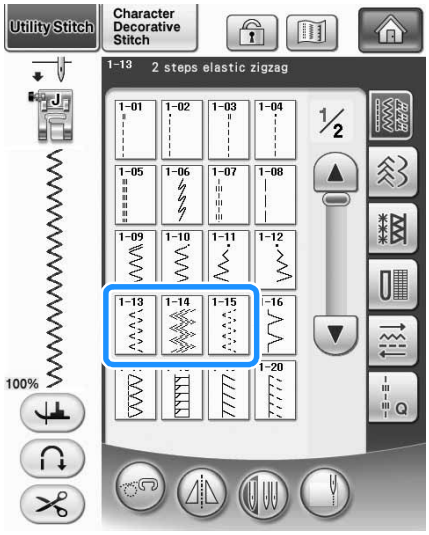


Elastic Zigzag Stitches

Use elastic zigzag stitches for tape attaching, overcasting, darning, or a wide variety of other uses.

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot	Applications	Stitch width [mm (inch)]		Stitch length [mm (inch)]		Twin needle
				Auto	Manual	Auto	Manual	
1-13	**2 steps elastic zigzag**	J	Overcasting (medium weight and stretch fabrics), tape and elastic	**5.0 (3/16)**	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	**1.0 (1/16)**	0.2 - 4.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	OK (J)
1-14	**2 steps elastic zigzag**	J	Overcasting (medium weight and stretch fabrics), tape and elastic	**5.0 (3/16)**	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	**1.0 (1/16)**	0.2 - 4.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	OK (J)
1-15	**3 steps elastic zigzag**	J	Overcasting (medium, heavyweight and stretch fabrics), tape and elastic	**5.0 (3/16)**	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	**1.0 (1/16)**	0.2 - 4.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	OK (J)

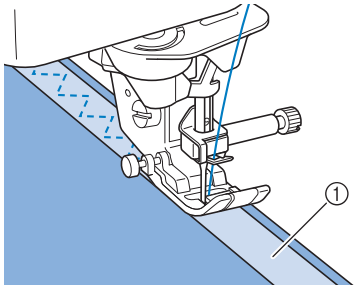
1 **Select a stitch.**



2 **Attach presser foot "J".**

■ Tape Attaching

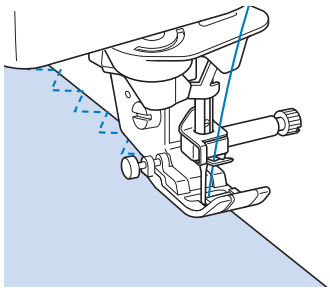
Stretch the tape flat. While stretching the tape flat, sew the tape to the fabric.



① Tape

■ Overcasting

Use this stitch to sew overcasting on the edge of stretch fabrics. Sew the overcasting along the edge of the fabric while positioning the right-hand side needle drop point just outside the edge of the fabric.



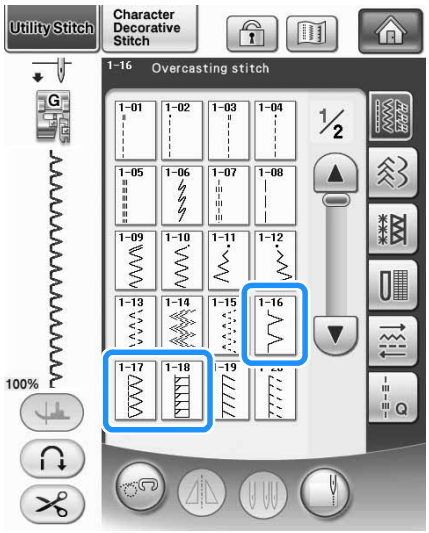
Overcasting

Use for the edge of seams in skirts or trousers, and the edge of all cuttings. Use presser foot “G”, presser foot “J”, or the side cutter attachment depending on the kind of overcasting stitch you select.

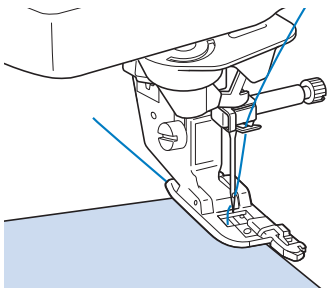
■ Overcasting Using Presser Foot “G”

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot	Applications	Stitch width [mm (inch)]		Stitch length [mm (inch)]		Twin needle
				Auto	Manual	Auto	Manual	
1-16	**Overcasting stitch**	G	Reinforcing of light and medium weight fabrics	**3.5 (1/8)**	2.5 - 5.0 (3/32 - 3/16)	**2.0 (1/16)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
1-17	**Overcasting stitch**	G	Reinforcing of heavyweight fabric	**5.0 (3/16)**	2.5 - 5.0 (3/32 - 3/16)	**2.5 (3/32)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
1-18	**Overcasting stitch**	G	Reinforcing of medium, heavyweight and easily friable fabrics or decorative stitching.	**5.0 (3/16)**	3.5 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	**2.5 (3/32)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO

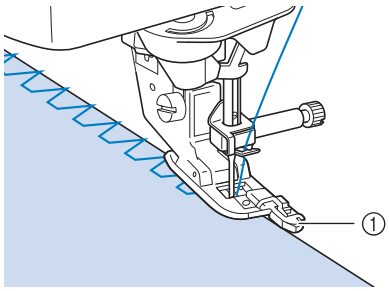
1 **Select a stitch and attach presser foot “G”.**



2 **Lower the presser foot so that the presser foot guide is set flush against the edge of the fabric.**



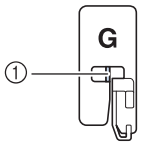
3 **Sew along the presser foot guide.**



① Guide

CAUTION

- **After the stitch width is adjusted, rotate the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise). Check that the needle does not touch the presser foot. If the needle hits the presser foot, the needle may break and cause injury.**



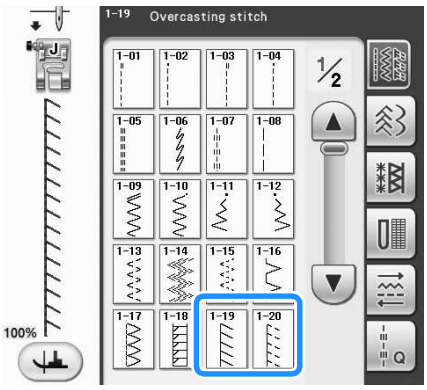
① The needle should not touch the center bar

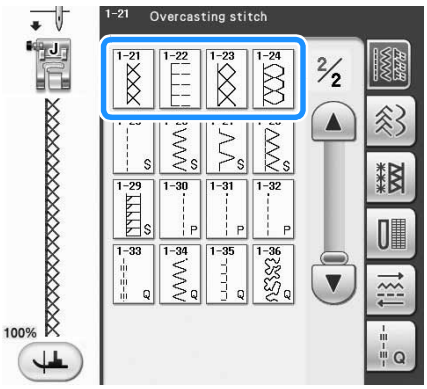
- **If the presser foot is raised to its highest level, the needle may strike the presser foot.**

■ Overcasting Using Presser Foot “J”

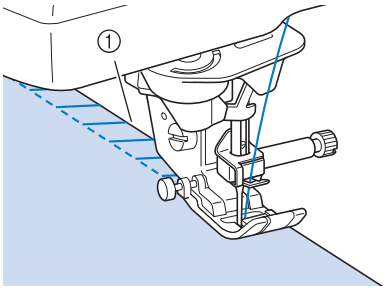
Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot	Applications	Stitch width [mm (inch)]		Stitch length [mm (inch)]		Twin needle
				Auto	Manual	Auto	Manual	
	Overcasting stitch		Reinforced seaming of stretch fabric	**5.0 (3/16)**	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 9/32)	**2.5 (3/32)**	0.5 - 4.0 (1/32 - 3/16)	OK (J)
	Overcasting stitch		Reinforcing of medium stretch fabric and heavyweight fabric, decorative stitching	**5.0 (3/16)**	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 9/32)	**2.5 (3/32)**	0.5 - 4.0 (1/32 - 3/16)	OK (J)
	Overcasting stitch		Reinforcement of stretch fabric or decorative stitching	**4.0 (3/16)**	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	**4.0 (3/16)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
	Overcasting stitch		Stretch knit seam	**5.0 (3/16)**	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	**4.0 (3/16)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	Single diamond overcast		Reinforcement and seaming stretch fabric	**6.0 (15/64)**	1.0 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	**3.0 (1/8)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
	Single diamond overcast		Reinforcement of stretch fabric	**6.0 (15/64)**	1.0 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	**1.8 (1/16)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)

1 Select a stitch and attach presser foot “J”.





2 Sew with the needle dropping slightly off the edge of the fabric.



① Needle drop position

■ Overcasting Using the Side Cutter

By using the side cutter, you can do overcasting while cutting the fabric.

⚠ CAUTION

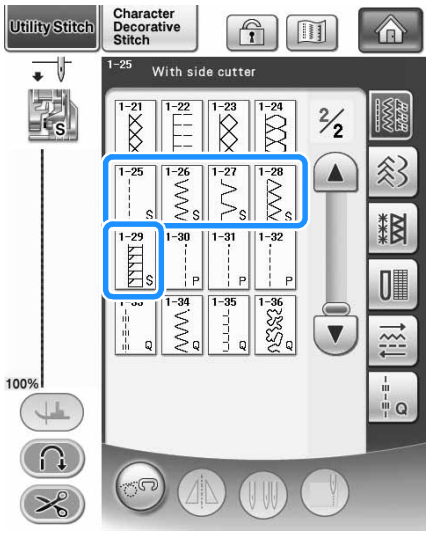
- **Recommended stitches are noted "S" in the lower right corner, therefore sure to only select one of these stitches listed below. Using another stitch may cause the needle to hit the presser foot and break, possibly causing injury.**

Note

- Thread the needle manually when using the side cutter, or only attach the side cutter after threading the needle using the "Automatic Threading" button.

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot	Applications	Stitch width [mm (inch)]		Stitch length [mm (inch)]		Twin needle
				Auto	Manual	Auto	Manual	
1-25 S	**With side cutter**	S	Straight stitch while cutting fabrics	**0.0 (0)**	0.0 - 2.5 (0 - 3/32)	**2.5 (3/32)**	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
1-26 S	**With side cutter**	S	Zigzag stitch while cutting fabrics	**3.5 (1/8)**	3.5 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	**1.4 (1/16)**	0.0 - 4.0 (0 - 3/16)	NO
1-27 S	**With side cutter**	S	Overcasting stitch while cutting fabrics	**3.5 (1/8)**	3.5 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	**2.0 (1/16)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
1-28 S	**With side cutter**	S	Overcasting stitch while cutting fabrics	**5.0 (3/16)**	3.5 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	**2.5 (3/32)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
1-29 S	**With side cutter**	S	Overcasting stitch while cutting fabrics	**5.0 (3/16)**	3.5 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	**2.5 (3/32)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO

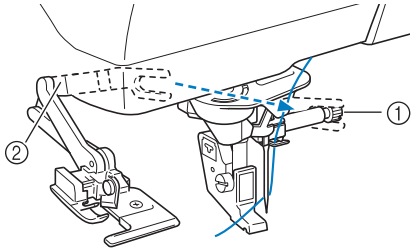
1 Select a stitch.



2 Follow the steps on page 65 to remove the presser foot.

3 Thread the needle (see page 57).

4 Position the fork on the side cutter's operating lever onto the needle clamp screw.

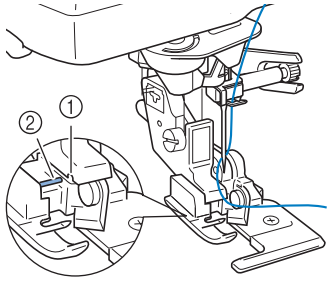


① Needle clamp screw
② Operating lever

Memo

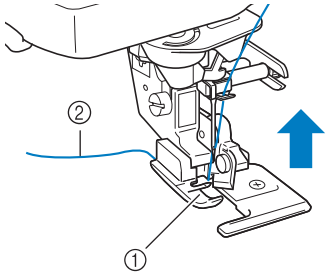
- Make sure that the fork of the operating lever is set onto the needle screw firmly.

5 **Position the side cutter so that the side cutter pin is aligned with the notch in the presser foot holder, and then lower the presser foot.**



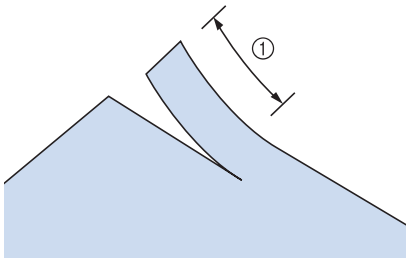
① Notch in presser foot holder
② Pin
→ The side cutter is attached.

6 **Raise the presser foot and pull out a long section of the upper thread. Pass it below the presser foot and pull it out in the fabric feed direction.**



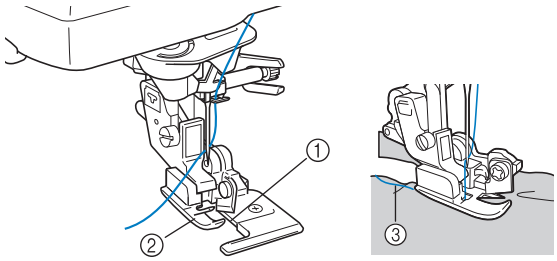
① Presser foot
② Upper thread

7 **Make a cut of approximately 20 mm (approx. 3/4 inch) in the fabric.**



① 20 mm (approx. 3/4 inch)

8 **Position the fabric so that the right side of the cut is on top of the guide plate and the left side of the cut is underneath the presser foot.**

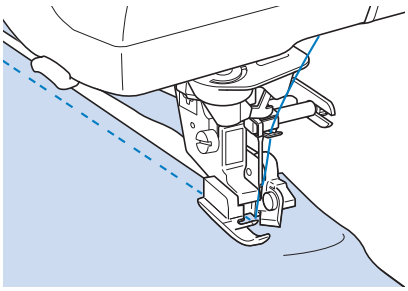


① Guide plate (lower knife)
② Presser foot
③ Upper thread

Memo

- If the fabric is not positioned correctly, the fabric will not be cut.

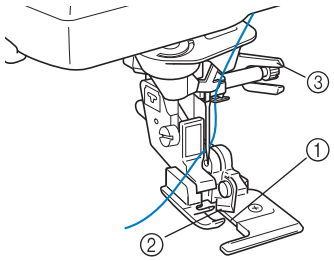
9 **Lower the presser foot and start.**



→ A seam allowance is cut while the stitching is sewn.

⚠ CAUTION

- **When using the side cutter, sew between low and mid-speed and do not touch the knives or operation lever of the side cutter while sewing to avoid equipment damage or injury.**



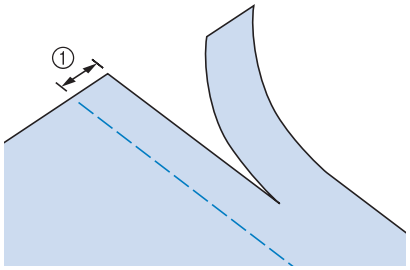
① Guide plate (lower knife)
② Upper knife
③ Operation lever

Note

- If the width has been adjusted, rotate the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise). Check that the needle does not touch the side cutter. If the needle touches the side cutter, it might cause the needle to break.

■ When Sewing Straight Stitches While Using the Side Cutter

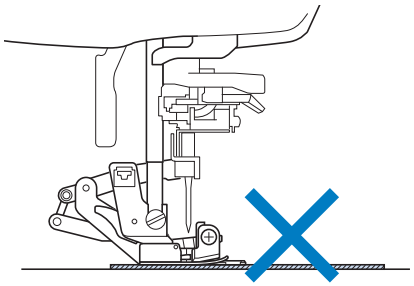
The seam margin should be approximately 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch).



① Seam margin

Memo

- The fabric will not be cut if the whole fabric is simply spread out underneath the presser foot guide plate. Set the fabric as explained in step 8 from the previous section, and then start sewing.



- One layer of 13 oz. denim can be cut.
- Clean the side cutter after use to avoid having dust and scraps of thread build up on it.
- Add a small amount of oil as required to the cutting edge of the cutter.

Quilting

You can make beautiful quilts quickly and easily with this machine. When making a quilt, you will find it convenient to use the knee lifter and foot controller to free your hands for other tasks (“Using the Foot Controller” on page 73 and /or “Using the Knee Lifter” on page 83).
The 30 quilting stitches Q-01 through Q-30 and the utility stitches with “P” or “Q” indicated on their key are useful for quilting.
The “P” or “Q” at the bottom of the key display indicates that these stitches are intended for (“Q”) quilting and (“P”) piecing.

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot		Applications	Stitch width [mm (inch)]		Stitch length [mm (inch)]		Twin needle
					Auto	Manual	Auto	Manual	
	Piecing stitch (Middle)			Piecework/patchwork	—	—	**2.0 (1/16)**	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
	Piecing stitch (Right)			Piecework/patchwork 6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch) right seam allowance	**5.50 (7/32)**	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	**2.0 (1/16)**	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
	Piecing stitch (Left)			Piecework/patchwork 6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch) left seam allowance	**1.50 (1/16)**	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	**2.0 (1/16)**	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
	Hand-look quilting (Middle)			Quilting stitch made to look like hand quilting stitch	**3.50**	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	**2.5 (3/32)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	Basting stitch (Middle)			Basting	**3.50**	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	**20 (3/4)**	5 - 30 (3/16 - 1-3/16)	NO
	Stem stitch			Reinforced stitching, sewing and decorative applications	**1.00 (1/16)**	1.00 - 3.00 (1/16 - 1/8)	**2.5 (3/32)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	Quilting appliqué zigzag stitch			Zigzag stitch for quilting and sewing on appliqué quilt pieces	**3.50 (1/8)**	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	**1.6**	0.0 - 4.0 (0 - 3/16)	NO
	Zigzag stitch (Right)			Start from right needle position, zigzag sew at left	**3.50 (1/8)**	2.50 - 5.00 (3/32 - 3/16)	**1.6**	0.3 - 4.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
	Zigzag stitch (Left)			Start from left needle position, zigzag sew at right	**3.50 (1/8)**	2.50 - 5.00 (3/32 - 3/16)	**1.6**	0.3 - 4.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
	2 steps elastic zigzag			Overcasting (medium weight and stretch fabrics), tape and elastic	**5.00 (3/16)**	1.50 - 7.00 (1/16 - 1/4)	**1.0 (1/16)**	0.2 - 4.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
	3 steps elastic zigzag			Overcasting (medium, heavyweight and stretch fabrics), tape and elastic	**5.00 (3/16)**	1.50 - 7.00 (1/16 - 1/4)	**1.0 (1/16)**	0.2 - 4.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
	Quilting appliqué stitch			Quilting stitch for invisible appliqué or attaching binding	**2.00**	0.50 - 5.00 (1/64 - 3/16)	**2.0**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	Shell tuck edge			Shell tuck edge finish on fabrics	**4.00 (3/16)**	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	**2.5 (3/32)**	0.2 - 4.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
	Blanket stitch			Appliqués, decorative blanket stitch	**3.50 (1/8)**	2.50 - 7.00 (3/32 - 1/4)	**2.5 (3/32)**	1.6 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot		Applications	Stitch width [mm (inch)]		Stitch length [mm (inch)]		Twin needle
					Auto	Manual	Auto	Manual	
	Quilting stippling			Background quilting	**7.00 (1/4)**	1.00 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	**1.6 (1/16)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	Overcasting stitch			Stretch knit seam	**5.00 (3/16)**	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	**4.0 (3/16)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	Tape attaching			Attaching tape to seam in stretch fabric	**5.50**	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	**1.4**	0.2 - 4.0 (1/61 - 3/16)	NO
	Serpentine stitch			Decorative stitching and attaching elastic	**5.00 (3/16)**	1.50 - 7.00 (1/16 - 1/4)	**2.0**	0.2 - 4.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
	Feather stitch			Fagoting, decorative stitching	**5.00 (3/16)**	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	**2.5 (3/32)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	Fagoting cross stitch			Fagoting, bridging and decorative stitching	**5.00 (3/16)**	2.50 - 7.00 (3/32 - 1/4)	**2.5 (3/32)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	Couching stitch			Decorative stitching, attaching cord and couching	**5.00 (3/16)**	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	**1.2 (1/16)**	0.2 - 4.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
	Patchwork double overlock stitch			Patchwork stitches, decorative stitching	**5.00 (3/16)**	2.50 - 7.00 (3/32 - 1/4)	**2.5 (3/32)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	Smocking stitch			Smocking, decorative stitching	**5.00 (3/16)**	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	**1.6 (1/16)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	Rick-rack stitch			Decorative top stitching	**4.00 (3/16)**	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	**2.5 (3/32)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	Decorative stitch			Decorative stitching and appliqué	**6.00 (15/64)**	1.00 - 7.00 (1/16 - 1/4)	**1.0 (1/16)**	0.2 - 4.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
	Decorative stitch			Decorative stitching	**5.50 (7/32)**	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	**1.6 (1/16)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	Hemstitching			Heirloom, decorative hems	**5.00 (3/16)**	1.50 - 7.00 (1/16 - 1/4)	**2.0 (1/16)**	1.5 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	Hemstitching			Decorative hems and bridging stitch	**6.00 (15/64)**	1.50 - 7.00 (1/16 - 1/4)	**2.0 (1/16)**	1.5 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	Single diamond overcast			Reinforcement and seaming stretch fabric	**6.00 (15/64)**	1.00 - 7.00 (1/16 - 1/4)	**3.0 (1/8)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	Overcasting stitch			Reinforcement of stretch fabric or decorative stitching	**4.00 (3/16)**	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	**4.0 (3/16)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	Piecing stitch (Right)			Piecework/patchwork 6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch) left seam allowance	**5.5 (7/32)**	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	**2.0 (1/16)**	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
	Piecing stitch (Middle)			Piecework/patchwork	—	—	**2.0 (1/16)**	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot		Applications	Stitch width [mm (inch)]		Stitch length [mm (inch)]		Twin needle
					Auto	Manual	Auto	Manual	
	Piecing stitch (Left)			Piecework/patchwork 6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch) left seam allowance	**1.5 (1/16)**	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	**2.0 (1/16)**	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
	Hand-look quilting			Quilting stitch made to look like hand quilting stitch	**0.0 (0)**	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	**2.5 (3/32)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	Quilting appliqué zigzag stitch			Zigzag stitch for quilting and sewing on appliqué quilt pieces	**3.5 (1/8)**	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	**1.4 (1/16)**	0.0 - 4.0 (0 - 3/16)	NO
	Quilting appliqué stitch			Quilting stitch for invisible appliqué or attaching binding	**1.5 (1/16)**	0.5 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	**1.8 (1/16)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	Quilting stippling			Background quilting	**7.0 (1/4)**	1.0 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	**1.6 (1/16)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO

Memo

- When a stitch pattern in the Quilting Stitches category (Q-02 through Q-30) is selected, a finer stitch width can be set than is available with stitch patterns in other categories. For example: Stitch Q-03 has 57 needle positions and stitch Q-19 has 29 width selections.

Note

- The width range of stitch setting is only available in the Quilting stitch “Q” quilting category.

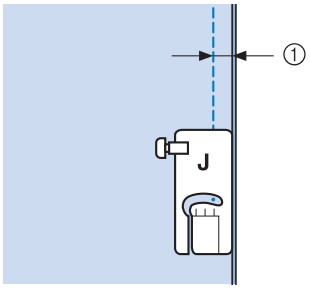
■ Piecing

Sewing two pieces of fabric together is called piecing. When cutting pieces for quilt blocks, make sure the seam allowance is 6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch).

1 Select Q-02 or Q-03 and attach presser foot "J".

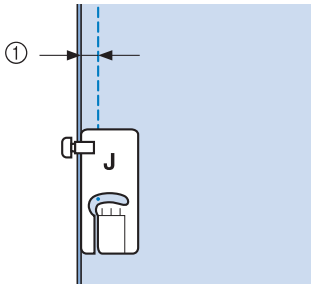
2 Align the edge of the fabric with the edge of the presser foot, and start sewing.

* To sew a 6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch) seam allowance along the left edge of the presser foot with Q-02 selected, the width should be set to 5.50 mm (approx. 7/32 inch).



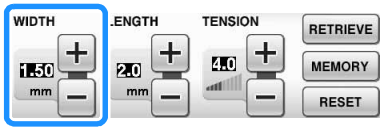
① 6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch)

* To sew a 6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch) seam allowance along the left edge of the presser foot with Q-03 selected, the width should be set to 1.50 mm (approx. 1/32 inch).



① 6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch)

* To change the needle position, use + or − in the width display.



Memo

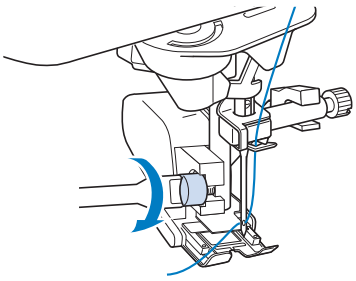
- Using a straight stitch (middle needle position) makes it easier to sew smoothly (see page 94).

■ Quilting

Sewing the quilt top, batting, and backing together is called quilting. You can sew the quilt with the walking foot to keep the quilt top, batting, and backing from sliding. The walking foot has a set of feed dogs that move together with the feed dogs in the needle plate during sewing.
For straight line quilting, use the walking foot and the straight stitch needle plate. Always select a straight stitch (middle needle position) when using the straight stitch needle plate.

1 Select Q-01, Q-03 or Q-07.

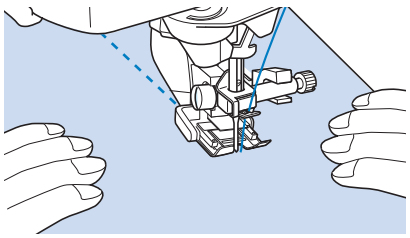
2 Attach the walking foot (see page 66).



Note

- Thread the needle manually when using the walking foot, or only attach the walking foot after threading the needle using the "Automatic Threading" button.

3 Place one hand on each side of the presser foot to hold the fabric secure while sewing.

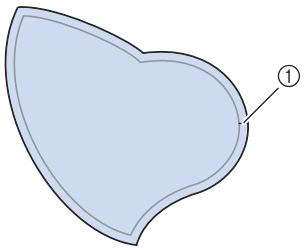


Memo

- Sew at slow to medium speed.
- Do not sew in reverse or use stitches that require side ways or reverse feeding. Always check to be sure that your quilting surface is securely basted before beginning to sew. Specialized machine quilt needles and threads are also available for machine quilting.

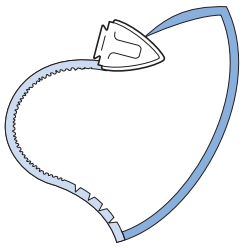
■ Appliqué

1 **Trace the pattern onto the appliqué fabric and then cut around it, leaving a 3 to 5 mm (approx. 1/8 to 3/16 inch) seam allowance.**

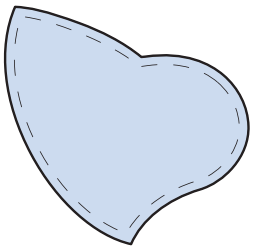


① Seam allowance: 3 to 5 mm (approx. 1/8 to 3/16 inch)

2 **Place a piece of stabilizer cut to the finished size of the appliqué design onto the fabric, and then fold over the seam margin using an iron. Clip curves when necessary.**

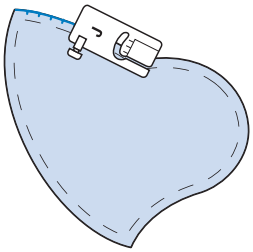


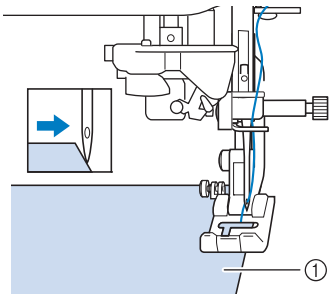
3 **Turn the appliqué over, and attach the stabilizer with basting pins or a basting stitch.**

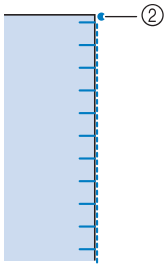


4 **Select** **and attach presser foot "J".**

5 **Use the quilting appliqué stitch to attach the appliqué. Sew around the edge while dropping the needle as close to the edge as possible.**





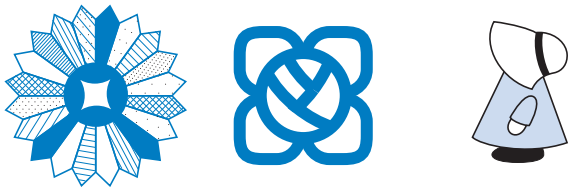


① Appliqué
② Needle drop position

⚠ CAUTION

- **Be careful that the needle does not strike a basting pin during sewing. Striking a pin can cause the needle to break, resulting in injury.**

You can use the appliqué technique to attach appliqué designs like the three pictured below.



① Dresden plate
② Stained glass
③ Sunbonnet sue

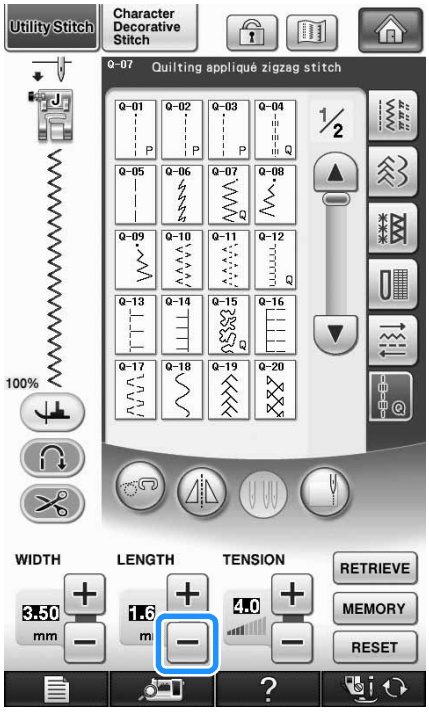
■ Quilting with Satin Stitches

For better fabric control, use the foot controller to sew with satin stitches. Set the speed control slide to control the stitch width to make subtle changes in the stitch width during sewing.

1 **Attach the foot controller (see page 73).**

2 **Select** **and attach presser foot "J".**

3 **Press** **in the length display to shorten the stitch length.**



Memo

- The setting will vary according to the kind of fabric and the thickness of the thread, but a length of 0.3 to 0.5 mm (approx. 1/64 to 1/32 inch) is best for satin stitches.

4 **Press** **to use the speed control slide to control the stitch width.**

5 **Set the width control to "ON".**

Memo

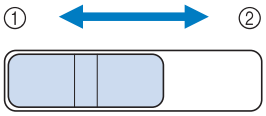
- You can use the speed control slide to adjust the stitch width. Use the foot controller to adjust the sewing speed.

6 **Press** CLOSE.

→ The display will return to the original screen.

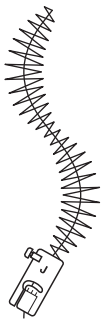
7 **Start sewing.**

* You can adjust the stitch width during sewing by moving the sewing speed controller. Slide the lever to the left, and the stitch width becomes narrower. Slide it to the right, the stitch width becomes wider. The size of the width changes equally on both sides of the middle needle position.



① narrower
② wider

Example: Changing the width



8 **When you are finished sewing, set the width control back to “OFF”.**

■ Free Motion Quilting

With free motion quilting, the feed dogs can be lowered by pressing , so that the fabric can be moved freely in any direction.
For free motion quilting, use free motion quilting foot “C” or free motion open toe quilting foot “O” depending on the stitch that is selected, and set the machine to free motion sewing mode. In this mode, the presser foot is raised to the necessary height for free motion sewing.
We recommend attaching the foot controller and sewing at a consistent speed. You can adjust the sewing speed with the speed control slide on the machine.

Using Free motion Quilting Foot “C”

Use the free motion quilting foot “C” with straight stitch needle plate for free motion sewing.

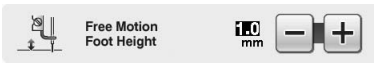
Free motion quilting foot “C”

⚠ CAUTION

- **With free motion quilting, control the feeding speed of the fabric to match the sewing speed. If the fabric is moved faster than the sewing speed, the needle may break or other damage may result.**
- **When using free motion quilting foot “C”, be sure to use the straight stitch needle plate and sew with the needle in middle (center) needle position. If the needle is moved to any position other than the middle (center) needle position, the needle may break, which may result in injuries.**

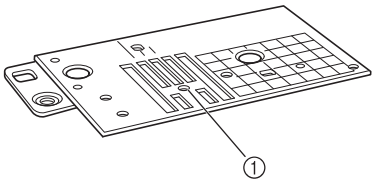
Memo

- When starting to sew, the internal sensor detects the thickness of the fabric, and the quilting foot is raised to the height specified in the machine settings screen. Press to display “Free Motion Foot Height” on 2/8 of the settings screen. Press or to select the height that the quilting foot is raised above the fabric.
  Increase the setting by pressing , for example, when sewing very stretchy fabric, so that it is easier to sew.



- In order to sew with a balanced tension, it may be necessary to adjust the upper thread tension. Test with a sample piece of fabric that is similar to your chosen fabric.

1 **Attach the straight stitch needle plate (see page 97).**



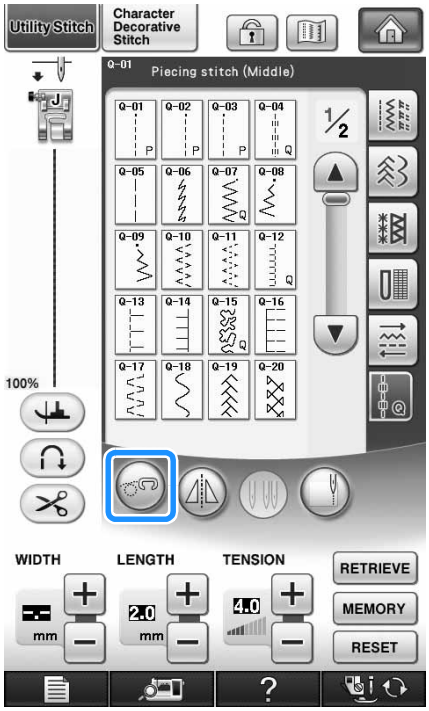
① Round hole

Memo

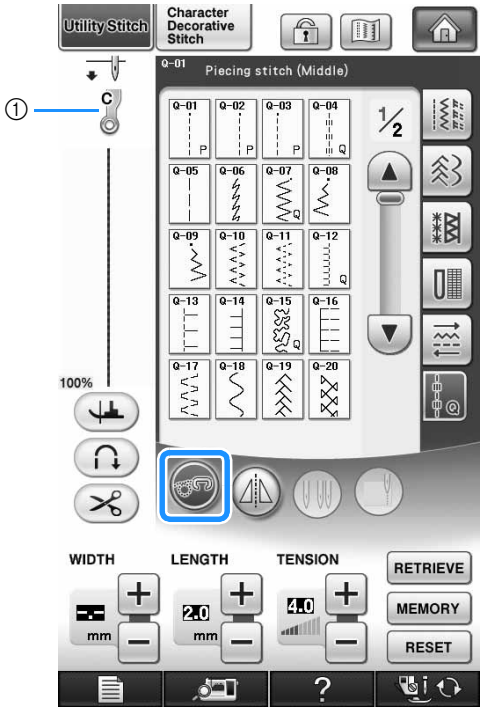
- Notice this needle plate has a round hole for the needle.

2 **Select** Q-01 P **or** 1-31 P **.**

3 **Press** **to set the machine to free motion sewing mode.**



→ The key appears as , the quilting foot is raised to the necessary height, and then the feed dogs are lowered for free motion sewing.

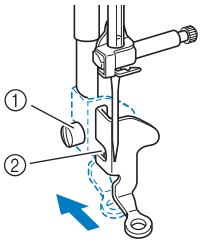


① Free motion quilting foot "C"

→ When stitch Q-01 or 1-31 is selected, free motion quilting foot "C" is indicated in the upper-left corner of the screen.

4 **Remove the presser foot holder (see page 66).**

5 **Attach free motion quilting foot "C" at the front with the presser foot holder screw aligned with the notch in the quilting foot.**

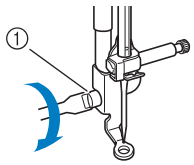


① Presser foot holder screw
② Notch

Note

- Make sure that the quilting foot is attached properly and not slanted.

6 **Hold the quilting foot in place with your right hand, and tighten the presser foot holder screw using the screwdriver with your left hand.**

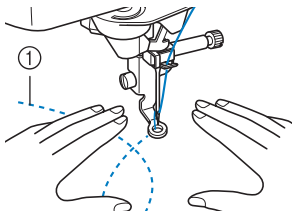


① Presser foot holder screw

CAUTION

- **Be sure to securely tighten the screws with the included screwdriver. Otherwise, the needle may touch the quilting foot, causing it to bend or break.**

7 **Use both hands to stretch the fabric taut, and then move the fabric at a consistent pace in order to sew uniform stitches roughly 2.0-2.5 mm (approx. 1/16 - 3/32 inch) in length.**



① Stitch

8 **Press to cancel the free motion sewing mode.**

→ Rotate the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) to raise the feed dogs.

9 **After sewing, make sure to remove the straight stitch needle plate and presser foot "C", and reinstall the regular needle plate and the needle plate cover.**

Note

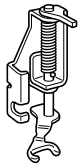
- Free motion open toe quilting foot "O" can also be used with the straight stitch needle plate. We recommend using free motion open toe quilting foot "O" with free motion sewing of fabrics of uneven thicknesses.
- When using the straight stitch needle plate, all straight stitches become middle needle position stitches. You cannot change the needle position using the width display.

Memo

- Normally, the feed dogs are raised for regular sewing.
- Do not be discouraged with your initial results. The technique requires practice.

Using free motion Open Toe Quilting Foot "O"

The free motion open toe quilting foot "O" is used for free motion quilting with zigzag or decorative stitches or for free motion quilting of straight lines on fabric with an uneven thickness. Various stitches can be sewn using free motion open toe quilting foot "O". For details on the stitches that can be used, refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" at the end of this manual.

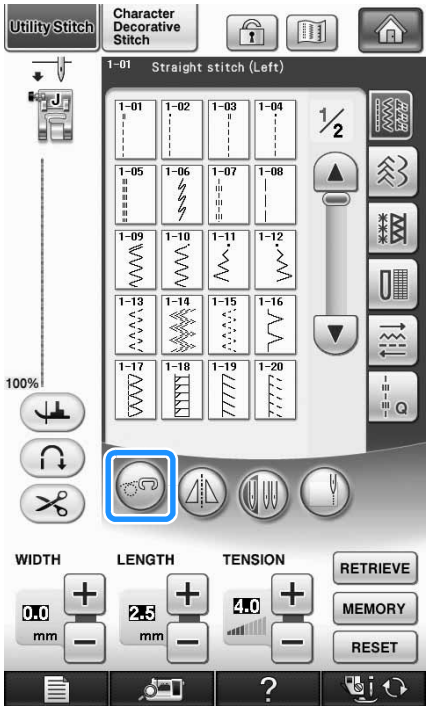


Free motion open toe quilting foot "O"

Memo

- In order to sew with a balanced tension, it may be necessary to adjust the upper thread tension (see page 79). Test with a sample piece of quilting fabric.

1 **Press to set the machine to free motion sewing mode.**



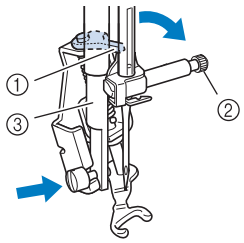
→ The key appears as , the quilting foot is raised to the necessary height, and then the feed dogs are lowered for free motion sewing.

2 **Select a stitch.**

Memo
- When stitch Q-01 or 1-31 is selected, free motion quilting foot “C” is indicated in the upper-left corner of the screen. When the other stitches are selected, free motion open toe quilting foot “O” is indicated in the screen.

3 **Remove the presser foot holder (see page 66).**

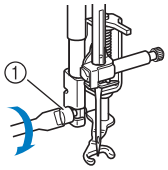
4 **Attach free motion open toe quilting foot “O” by positioning the pin of the quilting foot above the needle clamp screw and aligning the lower-left of the quilting foot and the presser bar.**



① Pin
② Needle clamp screw
③ Presser bar

Note
- Make sure that the quilting foot is not slanted.

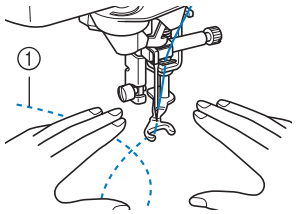
5 **Hold the quilting foot in place with your right hand, and tighten the presser foot holder screw using the screwdriver with your left hand.**



① Presser foot holder screw

CAUTION
- **Be sure to securely tighten the screws with the included screwdriver. Otherwise, the needle may touch the quilting foot, causing it to bend or break.**

6 **Use both hands to stretch the fabric taut, and then move the fabric at a consistent pace in order to sew uniform stitches roughly 2.0-2.5 mm (approx. 1/16 - 3/32 inch) in length.**



① Stitch

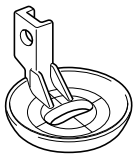
7 **Press** **to cancel the free motion sewing mode.**

→ Rotate the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) to raise the feed dogs.

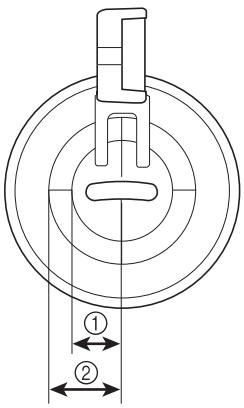
Memo
- Do not be discouraged with your initial results. The technique requires practice.

■ Echo Quilting Using the Free Motion Echo Quilting Foot “E”

Sewing quilting lines at equal distances around a motif is called echo quilting. The quilting lines, which appear as ripples echoing away from the motif, are the distinguishing characteristic of this quilting style. Use the free motion echo quilting foot “E” for echo quilting. Using the measurement on the presser foot as a guide, sew around the motif at a fixed interval. We recommend attaching the foot controller and sewing at a consistent speed.



Free motion echo quilting foot “E” measurement



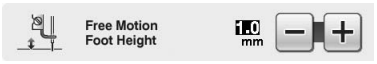
① 6.4 mm (approx. 1/4 inch)
② 9.5 mm (approx. 3/8 inch)

⚠ CAUTION

- **With free motion quilting, control the feeding speed of the fabric to match the sewing speed. If the fabric is moved faster than the sewing speed, the needle may break or other damage may result.**

Memo

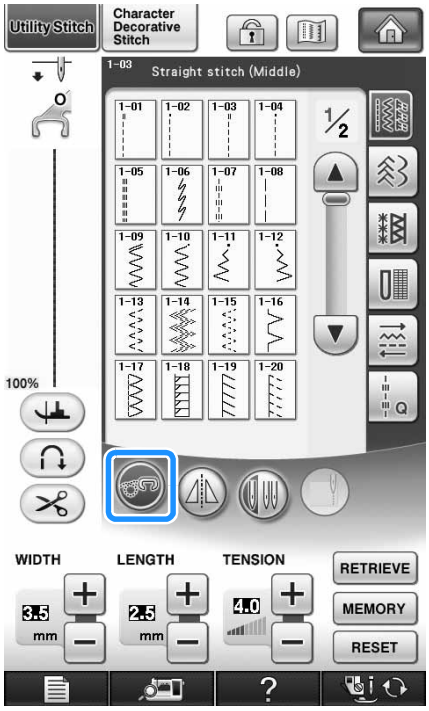
- When starting to sew, the internal sensor detects the thickness of the fabric, and the quilting foot is raised to the height specified in the machine settings screen. Press [ ] to display "Free Motion Foot Height" on 2/8 of the settings screen (see page 35). Press [−] or [+] to select the height that the quilting foot is raised above the fabric. Increase the setting by pressing [+], for example, when sewing very soft fabric, so that it is easier to sew.



- In order to sew with a balanced tension, it may be necessary to adjust the upper thread tension (see page 79). Test with a sample piece of quilting fabric.

1 **Select** [1-03].

2 **Press** [ ] **to set the machine to free motion sewing mode.**

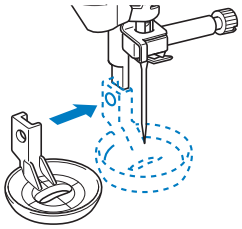


→ The key appears as [ ], the quilting foot is raised to the necessary height, then the feed dogs are lowered for free motion sewing.

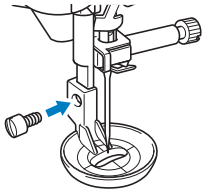
3 **Follow the steps on page 65 "Removing the Presser Foot" to remove the presser foot.**

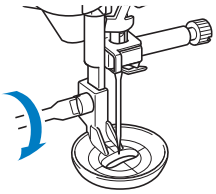
4 **Remove the presser foot holder (see page 66) and the screw.**

5 **Position the free motion echo quilting foot "E" on the left side of the presser bar with the holes in the quilting foot and presser bar aligned.**



6 **Tighten the screw with the included screwdriver.**

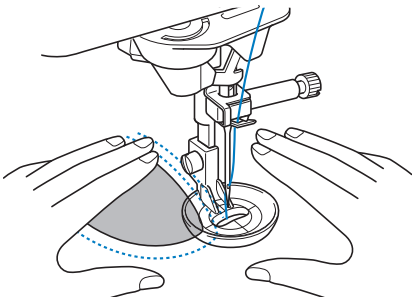


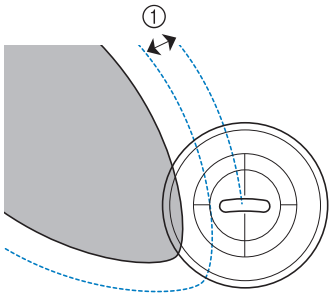


⚠ CAUTION

- **Be sure to securely tighten the screws with the included screwdriver. Otherwise, the needle may touch the quilting foot, causing it to bend or break.**

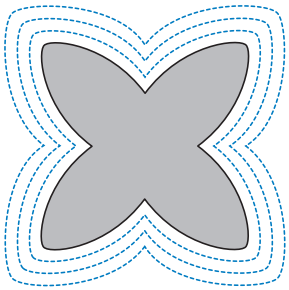
7 **Using the measurement on the quilting foot as a guide, sew around the motif.**





① 6.4 mm (approx. 1/4 inch)

Finished project



8 **Press** **to cancel the free motion sewing mode.**

→ Rotate the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) to raise the feed dogs.

Blind Hem Stitches

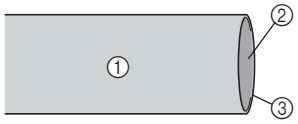
Secure the bottoms of skirts and pants with a blind hem. Two stitches are available for blind hem stitching.

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot	Applications	Stitch width [mm (inch)]		Stitch length [mm (inch)]		Twin needle
				Auto	Manual	Auto	Manual	
	Blind hem stitch		Blind hem stitching on mediumweight fabrics	**0.0 (0)**	+3.0 - -3.0 (+1/8 - -1/8)	**2.0 (1/16)**	1.0 - 3.5 (1/16 - 1/8)	NO
	Blind hem stitch stretch		Blind hem stitching on stretch fabrics	**0.0 (0)**	+3.0 - -3.0 (+1/8 - -1/8)	**2.0 (1/16)**	1.0 - 3.5 (1/16 - 1/8)	NO

Memo

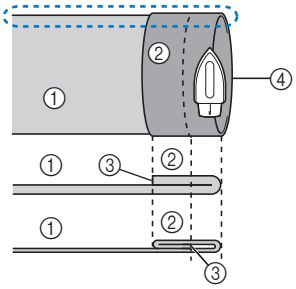
- When the size of cylindrical pieces is too small to slide onto the arm or the length is too short, the fabric will not feed and desired results may not be achieved.

1 Turn the skirt or pants wrong side out.



① Wrong side of fabric
② Right side of fabric
③ Lower edge of fabric

2 Fold the fabric along the desired edge of the hem, and press.



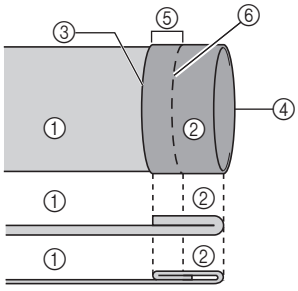
① Wrong side of fabric
② Right side of Fabric
③ Edge of fabric
④ Desired edge of hem

<Thick fabric>

<Normal fabric>

<Seen from the side>

3 Use a chalk to mark on the fabric about 5 mm (3/16 inch) from the edge of the fabric, and then baste it.



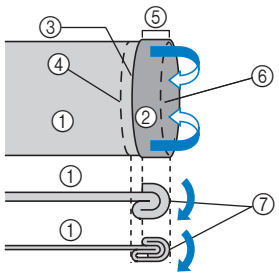
① Wrong side of fabric
② Right side of fabric
③ Edge of fabric
④ Desired edge of hem
⑤ 5 mm (3/16 inch)
⑥ Basting

<Thick fabric>

<Normal fabric>

<Seen from the side>

4 Fold back the fabric inside along the basting.



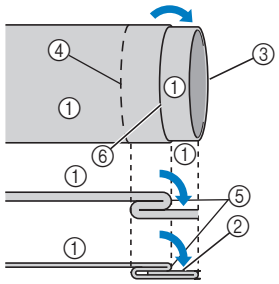
① Wrong side of fabric
② Right side of fabric
③ Edge of fabric
④ Desired edge of hem
⑤ 5 mm (3/16 inch)
⑥ Basting
⑦ Basting point

<Thick fabric>

<Normal fabric>

<Seen from the side>

5 Unfold the edge of fabric, and position the fabric with the wrong side facing up.



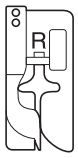
① Wrong side of fabric
② Right side of fabric
③ Edge of fabric
④ Desired edge of hem
⑤ Basting point
⑥ Basting

<Thick fabric>

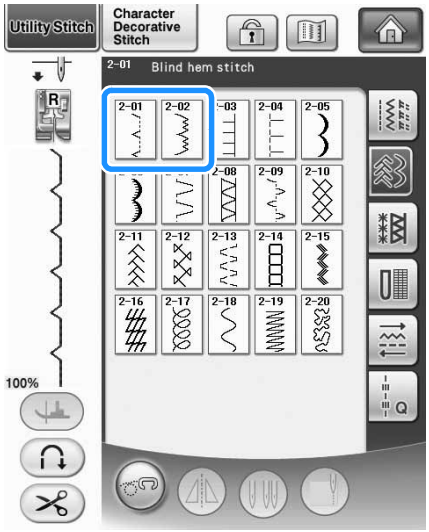
<Normal fabric>

<Seen from the side>

6 Attach blind hem foot “R”.

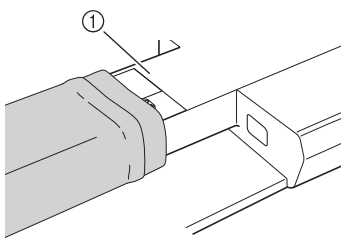


7 Select 2-01 or 2-02.



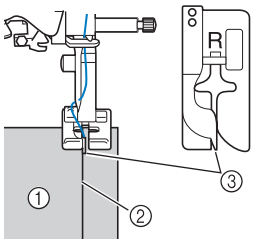
8 Remove the flat bed attachment to use the free-arm.

9 Slide the item that you wish to sew onto the free arm, make sure that the fabric feeds correctly, and then start sewing.



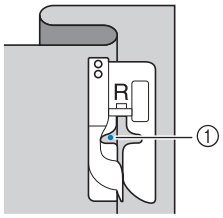
① Free arm

10 Position the fabric with the edge of the folded hem against the guide of the presser foot, and then lower the presser foot lever.

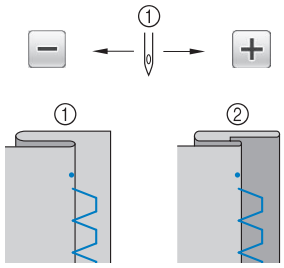


① Wrong side of fabric
② Fold of hem
③ Guide

11 Adjust the stitch width until the needle slightly catches the fold of the hem.



① Needle drop point
When you change the needle drop point, raise the needle, and then change the stitch width.



① Stitch width

Memo

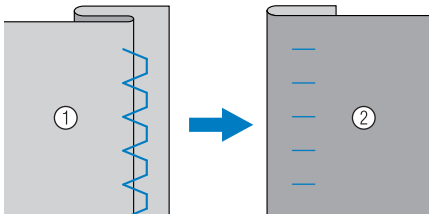
- Blind hem stitches cannot be sewn if the left needle drop point does not catch the fold. If the needle catches too much of the fold, the fabric cannot be unfolded and the seam appearing on the right side of the fabric will be very large, leaving an unattractive finish. If you experience either of these cases, follow the instructions below to solve the problem.

■ If the Needle Catches Too Much of the Hem Fold

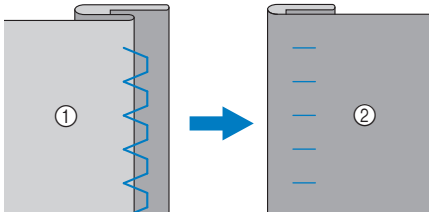
The needle is too far to the left.

Press [+] to decrease the stitch width so that the needle slightly catches the fold of the hem.

<Thick fabric>



<Normal fabric>



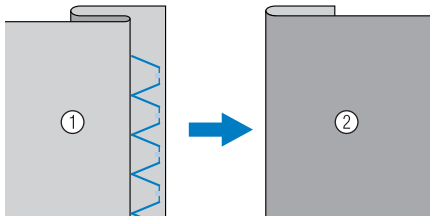
① Wrong side of fabric
② Right side of fabric

■ If the Needle does not Catch the Hem Fold

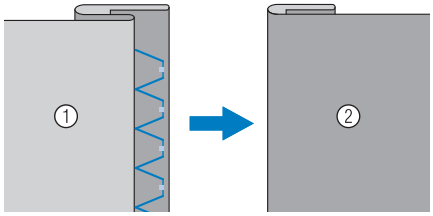
The needle is too far to the right.

Press [−] to increase the stitch width so that the needle slightly catches the fold of the hem.

<Thick fabric>



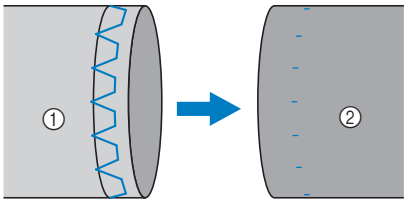
<Normal fabric>



① Wrong side of fabric
② Right side of fabric

12 Sew with the fold of the hem against the presser foot guide.

13 Remove the basting stitching and reverse the fabric.

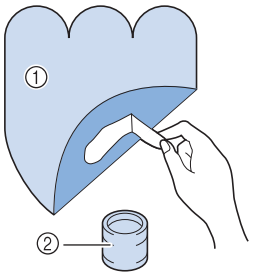


① Wrong side of fabric
② Right side of fabric

Appliqué

1 **Use a temporary spray adhesive, fabric glue or a basting stitch to attach the appliqué to the fabric.**

* This will keep the fabric from moving during sewing.



① Appliqué
② Fabric glue

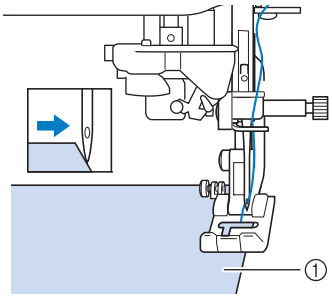
2 **Select** **or** **.**

* Adjust the stitch length and width to correspond to the appliqué shape, size, and quality of material (see page 78).

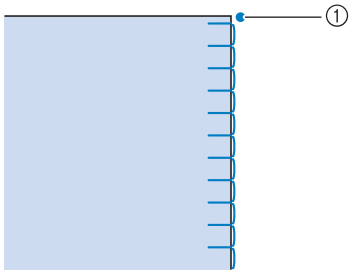
Memo

- For details on each stitch, refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" at the end of this manual.

3 **Attach presser foot "J". Check that the needle drops slightly off the edge of the appliqué, then start sewing.**



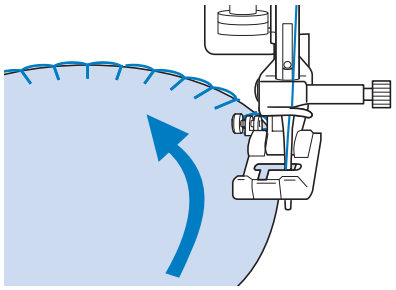
① Appliqué material



① Needle drop position

■ Appliqué Sharp Curves

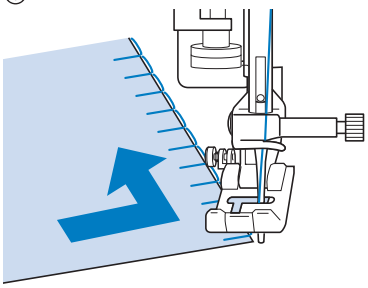
Stop the machine with the needle in the fabric outside the appliqué. Raise the presser foot and turn the fabric a little bit at a time while sewing for an attractive finish to the seam.



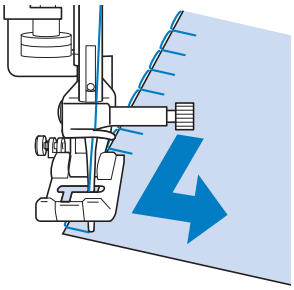
■ Appliqué Corners

Stop the machine with the needle in the right position of the outside (or inside) corner of the appliqué. Raise the presser foot and pivot the fabric to align the fabric edge. Lower the presser foot and continue stitching.

①



②



① Outside corner
② Inside corner

Memo

- Placing a lightweight tear away stabilizer beneath the stitching area will improve the stitch placement along the edge of the appliqué fabric.

Shelltuck Stitches

Shelltuck stitches give an attractive appearance of shells along the curve of a collar. This stitch pattern can be used for edging the neckline or sleeves of dresses and blouses.

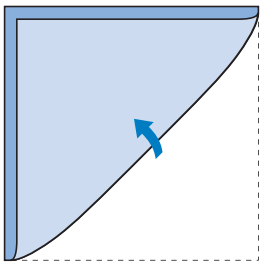
1 **Select** **.**

Memo
- For details on each stitch, refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" at the end of this manual.

2 **Increase the upper thread tension for an attractive scallop finish to the shelltuck stitches (see page 79).**

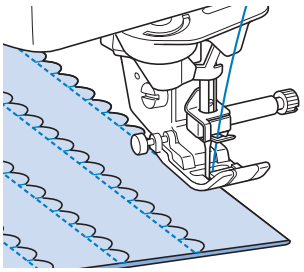
Memo
- If the upper thread tension is too weak, the shelltuck stitches will not scallop.

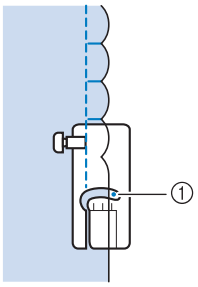
3 **To make rows of shell tuck stitches, fold the fabric in half along the bias.**



Memo
- Use a thin fabric.

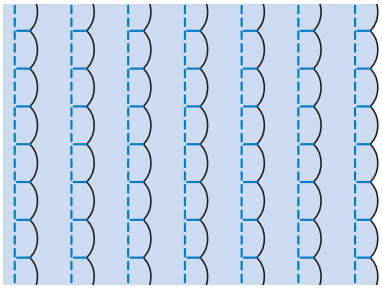
4 **Attach presser foot "J". Set the needle drop point slightly off the edge of the fabric, and start sewing.**





① Needle drop position

5 **Unfold the fabric, and iron the tucks to one side.**



Memo
- To make shell tucks at the edge of a collar or neckline, follow the pattern's instructions and then use this stitch to make a decorative finish on the collar or neckline.

Scallop Stitches

This wave-shaped satin stitch is called the scallop stitch. Use this stitch to decorate the edges of blouse collars and handkerchiefs or use it as a hem accent.

Memo
- A temporary spray adhesive may be necessary for lightweight fabrics. Test sew the fabric before sewing a project.

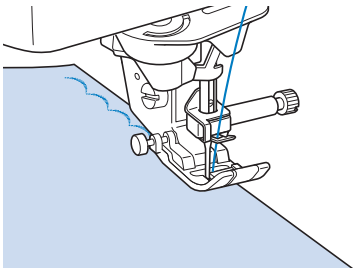
1 **Select**

.

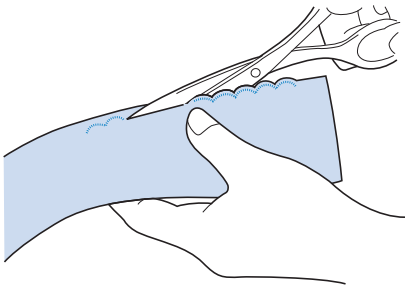
Memo
- For details on each stitch, refer to the “STITCH SETTING CHART” at the end of this manual.

2 **Attach presser foot “N”. Sew scallop stitches along the edge of the fabric.**

* Do not sew directly on the edge of the fabric.



3 **Trim along the seam, making sure not to cut the stitches.**



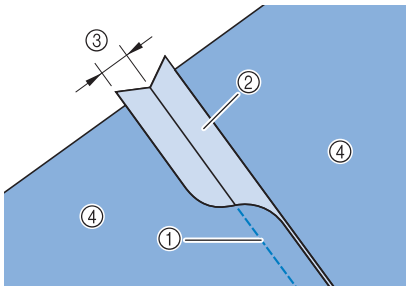
Memo
- Use a seam sealant to secure the edges of the scallop stitches.

Crazy Quilting

For a decorative look called “Crazy Quilting”, the following stitches can be sewn on top of a pressed seam allowance.

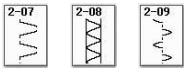
1 **Select a straight stitch and attach presser foot “J”.**

2 **With the right sides facing each other, sew two pieces of fabric together, and then press open the seam allowance.**

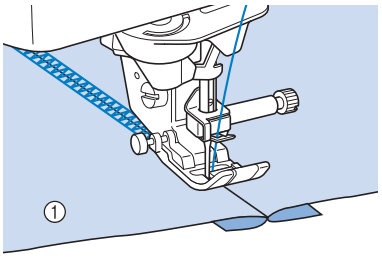


① Straight stitch
② Seam margins
③ 6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch)
④ Wrong side

3 **Select a stitch for top stitching.**



4 **Place the fabric right side up in the machine, and center the presser foot over the seam when sewing.**

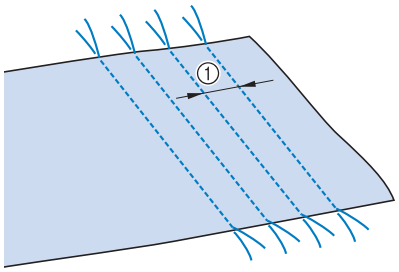


① Right side of fabric

Smocking Stitches

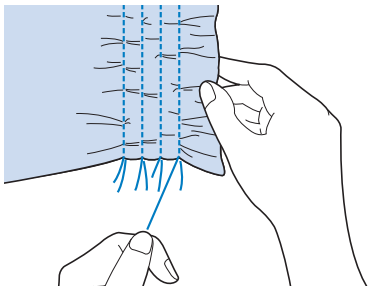
Use smocking stitches for decorative sewing on clothes, etc.

1. **Select a straight stitch and attach presser foot “J”.**
2. **Set the stitch length to 4.0 mm (approx. 3/16 inch) and loosen the upper thread tension to approximately 2.0 (see “Setting the Stitch Length” on page 79 and “Setting the Thread Tension” on page 79).**
3. **Pull the bobbin and upper threads out by 50 mm (approx. 1-15/16 inches).**
4. **Sew the seams, leaving approximately 10 mm (approx. 3/8 inch) between the seams, then trim excess thread, leaving 50 mm (approx. 1-15/16 inches).**



① Approximately 10 mm (approx. 3/8 inch)

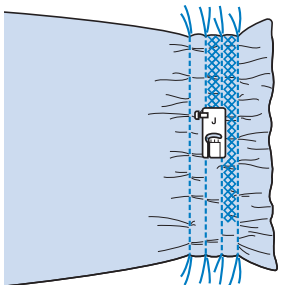
5. **Pull the bobbin threads to obtain the desired amount of gather, and then smooth the gathers by ironing them.**



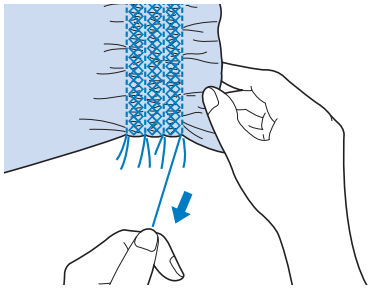
6. **Select** **or** **.**

Memo
- For details on each stitch, refer to the “STITCH SETTING CHART” at the end of this manual.

7. **Sew the spaces between the straight seams.**



8. **Pull out the straight stitch threads.**

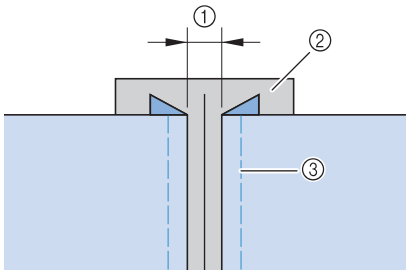


Fagoting

When there is a space between two fabrics with thread sewn over the space to join the fabrics together, it is called fagoting. Use this stitch when sewing blouses or children’s clothes.

1. **Baste two pieces of fabric onto thin paper, leaving a space of 4 mm (approx. 3/16 inch) between the fabrics.**

* If you draw a line down the middle of the thin paper or water-soluble stabilizer, sewing is easier.

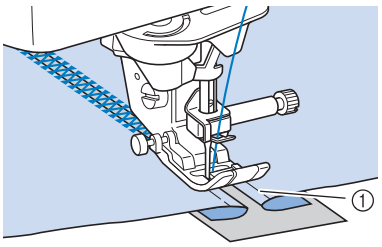


① 4.0 mm (approx. 3/16 inch)
② Paper
③ Basting stitches

2. **Select** **or** **.**

Memo
- For details on each stitch, refer to the “STITCH SETTING CHART” at the end of this manual.

3 **Attach presser foot "J". Align the center of the presser foot with the middle of the space between the fabrics and begin sewing.**



① Basting stitches

Memo
- Use a thick thread.

4 **When sewing is finished, gently tear the paper away.**

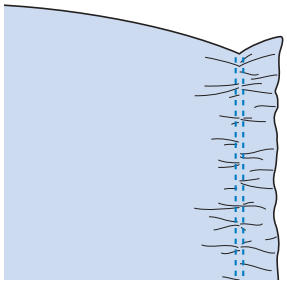
Tape or Elastic Attaching

1 **Select a straight stitch and attach presser foot "J".**

2 **Set the stitch length to 4.0 mm (approx. 3/16 inch), and loosen the upper thread tension to 2.0 (see "Setting the Stitch Length" on page 79 and "Setting the Thread Tension" on page 79).**

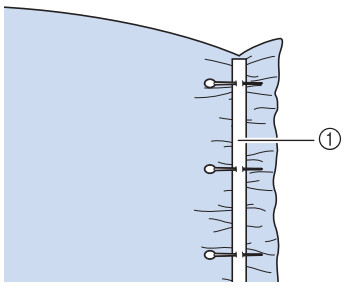
Memo
- Be sure that neither automatic reinforcement nor automatic thread cutting is selected.

3 **Sew two rows of straight stitches on the right side of the fabric, then pull the bobbin thread to create the necessary gather.**



Memo
- Before sewing the straight stitch, rotate the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) and pull up the bobbin thread. Holding the top and bobbin thread, pull a length of thread out from the rear of the machine. (Be sure that the presser foot is raised.)

4 **Place the tape over the gather, and hold it in place with basting pins.**

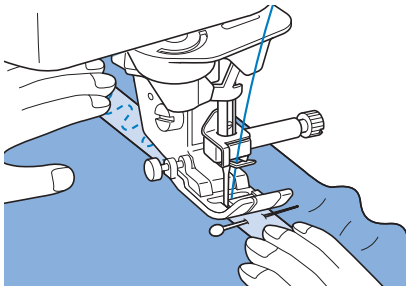


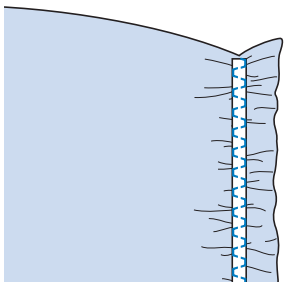
① Tape

5 **Select** 2-13 **or** 1-13 **.**

Memo
- For details on each stitch, refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" at the end of this manual.

6 **Sew over the tape (or elastic).**

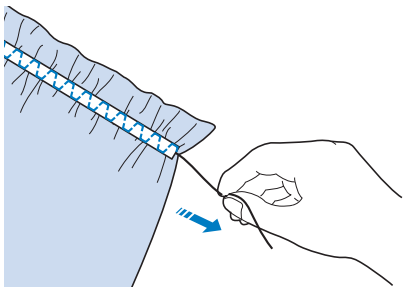




CAUTION

- **Be sure the needle does not strike a basting pin, or any other objects, during sewing. The thread could tangle or the needle could break, causing injury.**

7 **Pull out the straight stitch threads.**



Heirloom

■ Hemstitching (1) (Daisy Stitch)

Use for sewing tablecloths, decorative hems, and decorative stitching on shirt fronts.

Memo

- Use a light to medium weight homespun fabric with a little stiffness.

1 **Insert a type 130/705H, size 100/16 Wing needle.**

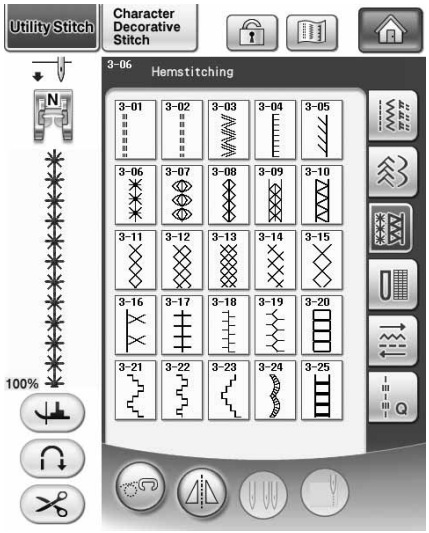
* This specialty sewing needle is not furnished with your machine. Must be purchased separately.

⚠ CAUTION

- **The "Automatic Threading" button cannot be used. Thread the wing needle by hand, from front to back. Using the "Automatic Threading" button may result in damage to the machine.**
- **A more attractive finish can be obtained if you use a "130/705H Wing" needle when sewing these patterns. If using a wing needle and the stitch width has been set manually, check that the needle will not touch the presser foot by carefully rotating the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) before starting to sew.**

2 **Select a stitch and attach presser foot "N".**

* Select any stitch between 3-01 and 3-25.

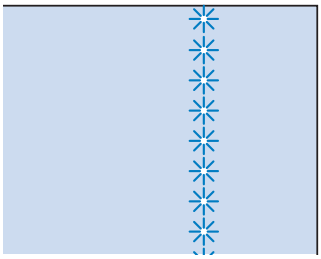


Memo

- For details on each stitch, refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" at the end of this manual.

3 **Start sewing.**

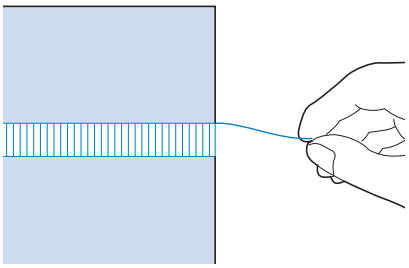
Example: Illustration of finished product



■ Hemstitching (2) (Drawn Work (1))

1 **Pull out several threads from one area on a piece of fabric to open the area.**

* Pull out 5 or 6 threads to leave a 3 mm (approx. 1/8 inch) area open.



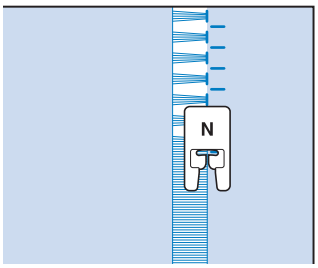
Memo

- Loosely woven fabrics work best for this.

2 Select .

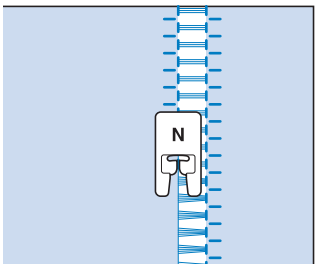
Memo
- For details on each stitch, refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" at the end of this manual.

3 **Attach presser foot "N". With the right side of the fabric facing up, sew one edge of the open area.**



4 **Press to create a mirror image of the stitch.**

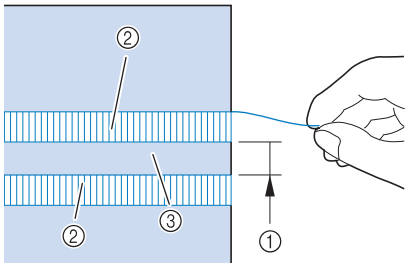
5 **Match beginning needle drop points on the opposite edge of the open area to keep the stitching symmetrical.**



■ Hemstitching (3) (Drawn Work (2))

1 **Pull out several threads from both sides of the 4 mm (approx. 3/16 inch) area which are not yet open.**

* Pull out four threads, leave five threads, and then pull out four threads. The width of five threads is approximately 4 mm (approx. 3/16 inch) or less.

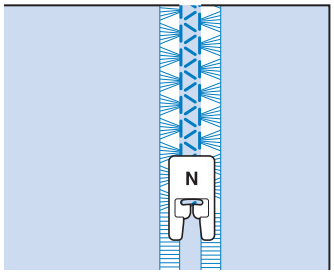


① Approx. 4 mm (approx. 3/16 inch) or less
② Four threads (pull out)
③ Five threads (leave)

2 Select .

Memo
- For details on each stitch, refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" at the end of this manual.

3 **Sew the decorative stitch in the center of the five threads created above.**



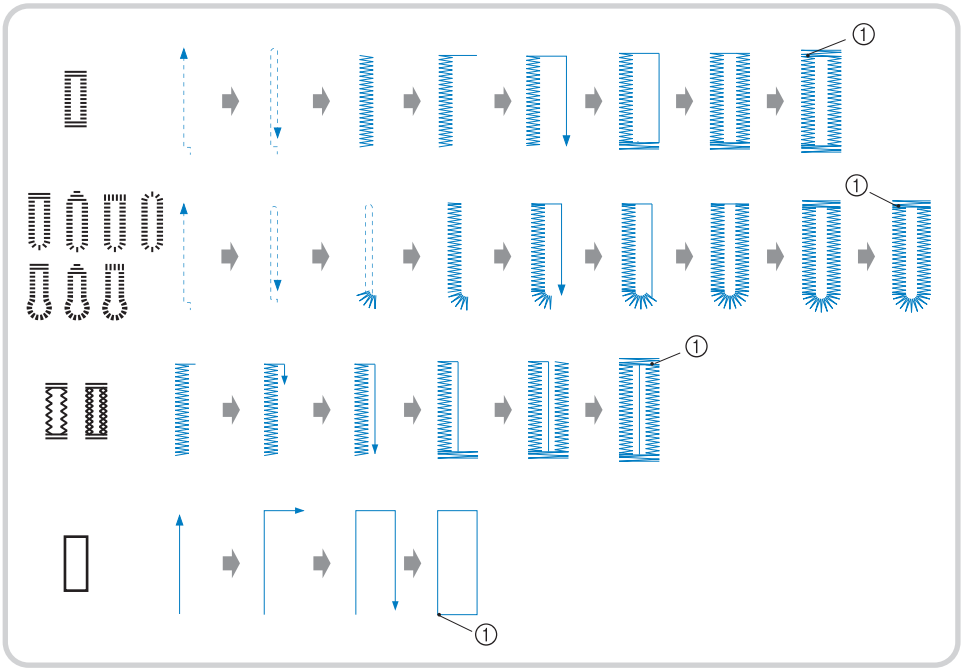
Memo
- A wing needle can be used for Hemstitching (3).

One-step Buttonholes

With one-step buttonholes, you can make buttonholes appropriate to the size of your button.

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot	Applications	Stitch width [mm (inch)]		Stitch length [mm (inch)]		Twin needle
				Auto	Manual	Auto	Manual	
	Narrow rounded buttonhole		Buttonhole on light to medium weight fabrics	**5.0 (3/16)**	3.0 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	**0.4 (1/64)**	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
	Wide round ended buttonhole		Buttonholes with extra space for larger buttons	**5.5 (7/32)**	3.5 - 5.5 (1/8 - 7/32)	**0.4 (1/64)**	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
	Tapered round ended buttonhole		Reinforced waist tapered buttonholes	**5.0 (3/16)**	3.0 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	**0.4 (1/64)**	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
	Round ended buttonhole		Buttonholes with vertical bar tack in heavyweight fabrics	**5.0 (3/16)**	3.0 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	**0.4 (1/64)**	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
	Round ended buttonhole		Buttonholes with bar tack	**5.0 (3/16)**	3.0 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	**0.4 (1/64)**	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
	Round double ended buttonhole		Buttonholes for fine, medium to heavyweight fabrics	**5.0 (3/16)**	3.0 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	**0.4 (1/64)**	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
	Narrow squared buttonhole		Buttonholes for light to medium weight fabrics	**5.0 (3/16)**	3.0 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	**0.4 (1/64)**	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
	Wide squared buttonhole		Buttonholes with extra space for larger decorative buttons	**5.5 (7/32)**	3.5 - 5.5 (1/8 - 7/32)	**0.4 (1/64)**	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
	Squared buttonhole		Heavy-duty buttonholes with vertical bar tacks	**5.0 (3/16)**	3.0 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	**0.4 (1/64)**	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
	Stretch buttonhole		Buttonholes for stretch or woven fabrics	**6.0 (15/64)**	3.0 - 6.0 (1/8 - 15/64)	**1.0 (1/16)**	0.5 - 2.0 (1/32 - 1/16)	NO
	Heirloom buttonhole		Buttonholes for heirloom and stretch fabrics	**6.0 (15/64)**	3.0 - 6.0 (1/8 - 15/64)	**1.5 (1/16)**	1.0 - 3.0 (1/1 - 1/8)	NO
	Bound buttonhole		The first step in making bound buttonholes	**5.0 (3/16)**	0.0 - 6.0 (0 - 15/64)	**2.0 (1/16)**	0.2 - 4.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
	Keyhole buttonhole		Buttonholes in heavyweight or thick fabrics for larger flat buttons	**7.0 (1/4)**	3.0 - 7.0 (1/8 - 1/4)	**0.5 (1/32)**	0.3 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
	Tapered keyhole buttonhole		Buttonholes in medium to heavy weight fabrics for larger flat buttons	**7.0 (1/4)**	3.0 - 7.0 (1/8 - 1/4)	**0.5 (1/32)**	0.3 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
	Keyhole buttonhole		Buttonholes with vertical bar tack for reinforcement in heavyweight or thick fabrics	**7.0 (1/4)**	3.0 - 7.0 (1/8 - 1/4)	**0.5 (1/32)**	0.3 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO

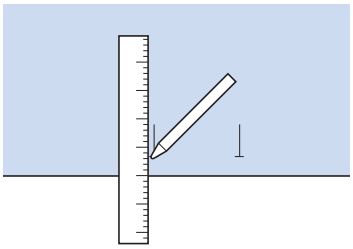
One-step buttonholes are sewn from the front of the presser foot to the back, as shown below.



① Reinforcement stitching

1 **Select a buttonhole stitch, and attach buttonhole foot "A".**

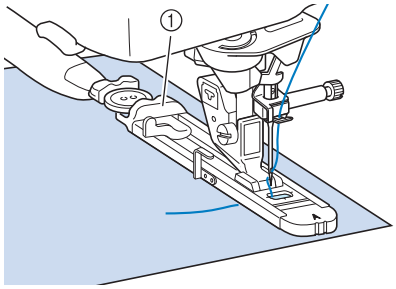
2 **Mark the position and length of the buttonhole on the fabric.**



Memo

- The maximum buttonhole length is about 28 mm (approx. 1-1/16 inches) (diameter + thickness of the button).

3 **Pull out the button holder plate on the presser foot, and insert the button that will be put through the buttonhole. Then tighten the button holder plate around the button.**

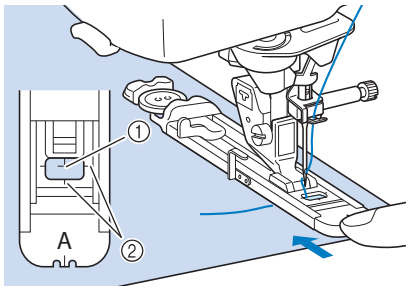


① Button holder plate

Memo

- The size of the buttonhole is determined by the size of the button in the button holder plate.

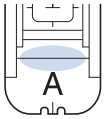
4 **Align the presser foot with the mark on the fabric, and lower the presser foot.**



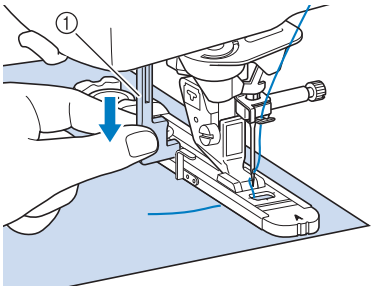
① Mark on the fabric
② Marks on the presser foot

Note

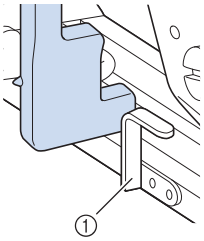
- Pass the thread underneath the presser foot.
- Slide the outside frame of the buttonhole foot backward as far as possible as shown in the illustration, making sure that there is no gap behind the part of the foot marked “A”. If the buttonhole foot is not slid back as far as possible, the buttonhole will not be sewn at the correct size.



5 Lower the buttonhole lever so that it is positioned behind the metal bracket on the buttonhole foot.



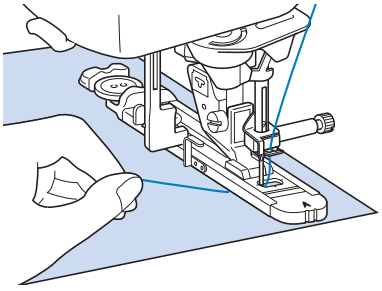
① Buttonhole lever



① Metal bracket

6 Gently hold the end of the upper thread, and then start sewing.

* Feed the fabric carefully by hand while the buttonhole is sewn.

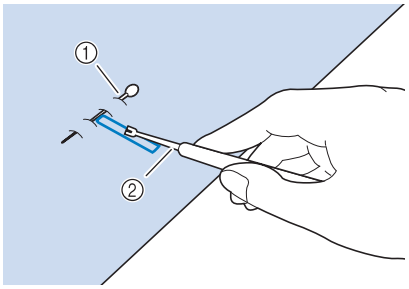


→ Once sewing is completed, the machine automatically sews reinforcement stitches, and then stops.

Memo

- If automatic thread cutting is turned on before you start sewing, both threads are automatically cut after the reinforcement stitches are sewn. If the fabric does not feed (for example, because it is too thick), increase the stitch length setting.

7 Insert a pin along the inside of one of the bar tacks, and then insert the seam ripper into the center of the buttonhole and cut towards the pin.



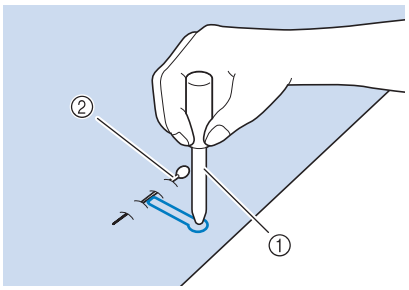
① Basting pin
② Seam ripper

CAUTION

- **When using the seam ripper to open the buttonhole, do not put your hand or finger in the path of the ripper. The ripper may slip and cause injury. Do not use the seam ripper in any other way than how it is intended.**

Memo

- For keyhole buttonholes, use the eyelet punch to make a hole in the rounded end of the buttonhole. Then insert a pin along the inside of one of the bar tacks, insert a seam ripper into the hole made with the eyelet punch, and cut towards the pin.

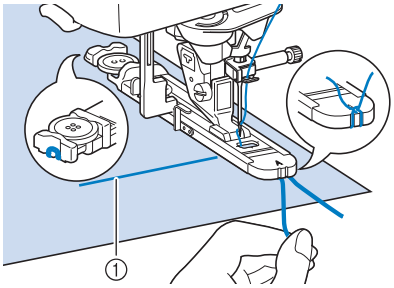


① Eyelet punch
② Basting pin

■ Sewing Stretch Fabrics

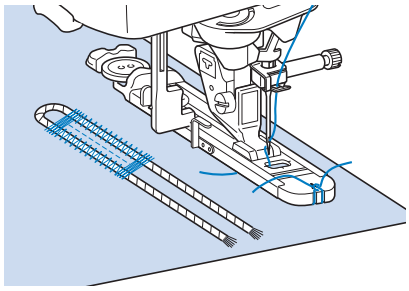
When sewing on stretch fabric with or , sew the buttonhole stitches over a gimp thread.

1 Hook the gimp thread onto the back of presser foot "A". Insert the ends into the grooves at the front of the presser foot, and then temporarily tie them there.



① Upper thread

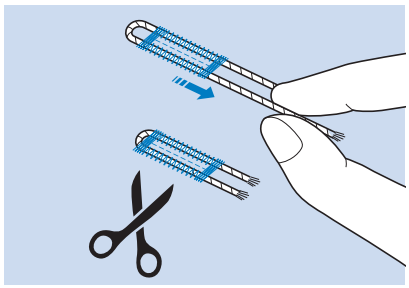
2 Lower the presser foot and start sewing.



Memo

- Set the width of the satin stitches to the width of the gimp thread, and set the buttonhole width to be 2-3 times the width of the gimp thread.

3 Once sewing is completed, gently pull the gimp thread to remove any slack, and trim off any excess.

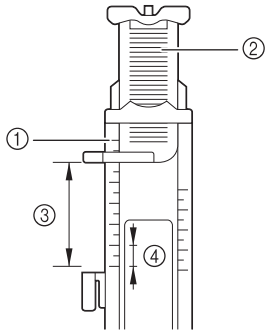


Memo

- After using the seam ripper to cut open the threads over the buttonhole, trim off the threads.

■ Odd Shaped Buttons/Buttons that do Not Fit into the Button Holder Plate

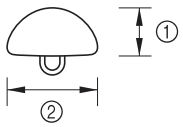
Use the markings on the presser foot scale to set the size of the buttonhole. One mark on the presser foot scale equals 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch).
Add the button diameter and thickness together, and then set the plate at the calculated value.



① Presser foot scale
② Button holder plate
③ Completed measurement of diameter + thickness
④ 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch)

Memo

- For example, for a button with a diameter of 15 mm (approx. 9/16 inch) and a thickness of 10 mm (approx. 3/8 inch), the scale should be set at 25 mm (approx. 1 inch).



① 10 mm (approx. 3/8 inch)
② 15 mm (approx. 9/16 inch)

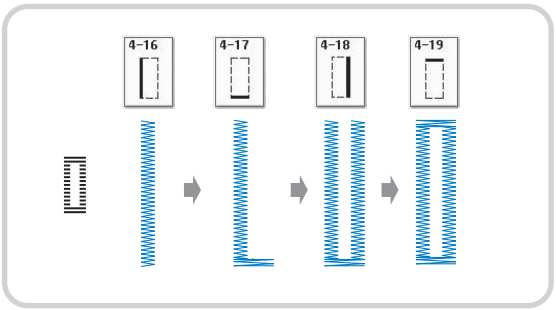
Four-step Buttonholes

You can sew 4-step buttonholes using the following 4 stitches together. You can sew any desired length for the buttonhole when using 4-step buttonholes. 4-step buttonholes are a good option when attaching oversize buttons.

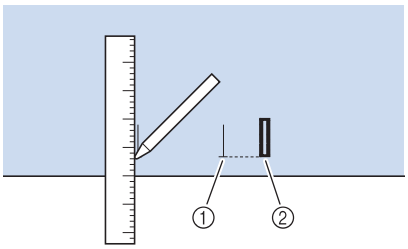
Note
- When changing the stitch settings, make sure that all stitch settings are changed to match.

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot	Applications	Stitch width [mm (inch)]		Stitch length [mm (inch)]		Twin needle
				Auto	Manual	Auto	Manual	
	4 steps buttonhole 1		Left side of 4 steps buttonhole	**5.0 (7/32)**	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	**0.4 (1/64)**	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
	4 steps buttonhole 2		Bar tack of 4 steps buttonhole	**5.0 (7/32)**	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	**0.4 (1/64)**	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
	4 steps buttonhole 3		Right side of 4 steps buttonhole	**5.0 (7/32)**	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	**0.4 (1/64)**	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
	4 steps buttonhole 4		Bar tack of 4 steps buttonhole	**5.0 (7/32)**	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	**0.4 (1/64)**	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO

Four-step buttonholes are sewn as shown below.

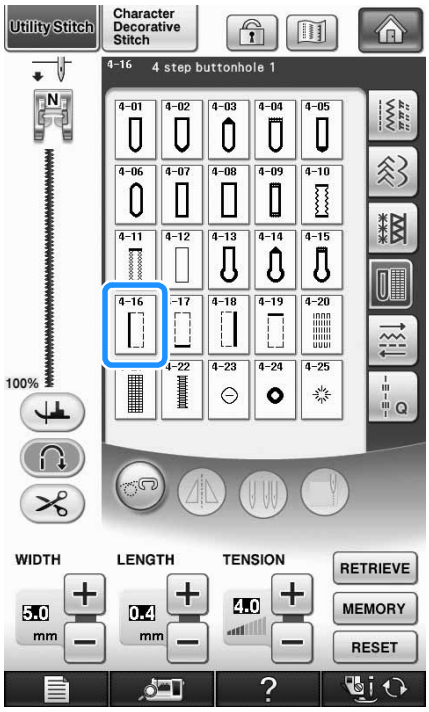


1 Mark the position and length of the buttonhole on the fabric.



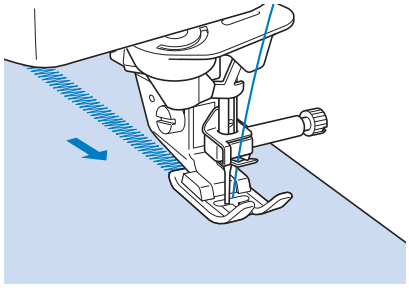
① Marks on fabric
② Finished stitching

2 **Attach monogramming foot “N”, and select stitch 4-16 to sew the left side of the buttonhole.**



3 **Press the “Start/Stop” button to start sewing.**

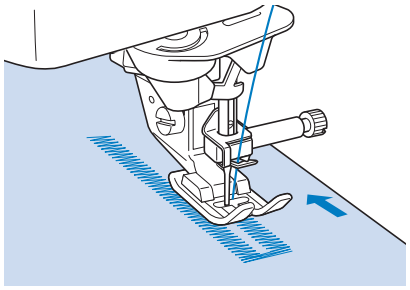
4 **Sew the desired length for the buttonhole and press the “Start/Stop” button again.**



5 **Select stitch 4-17 to sew the bar tack and press the “Start/Stop” button.**

→ The machine will automatically stop after sewing the bar tack.

6 **Select stitch 4-18 to sew the right side of the buttonhole, and press the “Start/Stop” button to begin sewing.**



7 **Sew the right side of the buttonhole and press the “Start/Stop” button again.**

* Sew the right side of the buttonhole the same length as the left.

8 **Select stitch 4-19 to sew the bar tack and then press the “Start/Stop” button.**

→ The machine will automatically sew off the bar tack tie and stop when the bar tack is complete.

9 **Raise the presser foot and remove the fabric.**

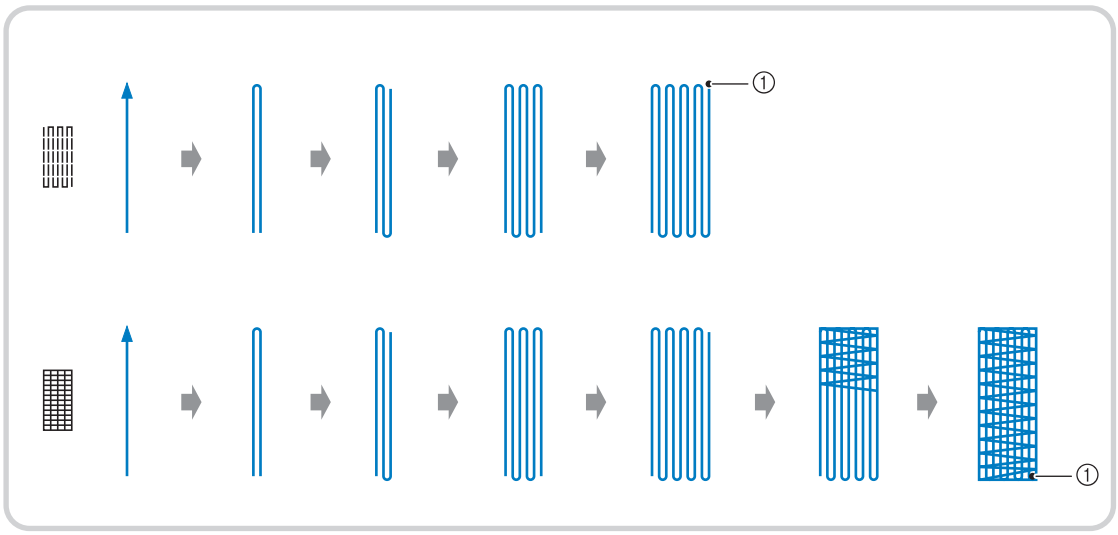
10 **Refer to page 134 to open the buttonhole.**

■ Darning

Use darning stitches for mending and other applications.

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot	Applications	Stitch width [mm (inch)]		Stitch length [mm (inch)]		Twin needle
				Auto	Manual	Auto	Manual	
	Darning		Darning medium weight fabric	**7.0 (1/4)**	2.5 - 7.0 (3/32 - 1/4)	**2.0 (1/16)**	0.4 - 2.5 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
	Darning		Darning heavyweight fabric	**7.0 (1/4)**	2.5 - 7.0 (3/32 - 1/4)	**2.0 (1/16)**	0.4 - 2.5 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO

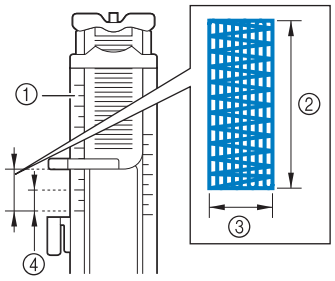
Darning is performed by sewing from the front of the presser foot to the back as shown below.



① Reinforcement stitches

1 **Select a stitch, and attach buttonhole foot "A".**

2 **Set the scale to the desired length of the darning.**

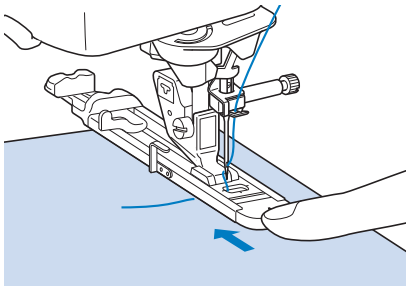


① Presser foot scale
② Completed length measurement
③ Width 7 mm (approx. 1/4 inch)
④ 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch)

Memo

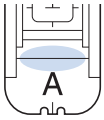
- The maximum length for darning is 28 mm (approx. 1-1/16 inches).

3 **Check that the needle drops at the desired position and lower the presser foot, making sure the upper thread passes underneath the buttonhole foot.**

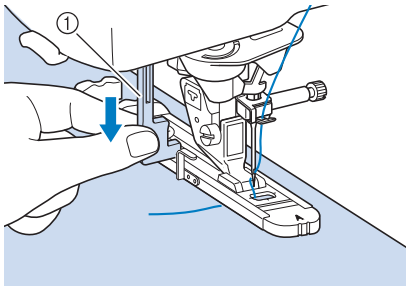


Note

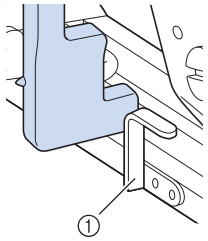
- Pass the thread underneath the presser foot.
- Set the presser foot so that there is no gap behind the section marked with an “A” (the shaded area in the illustration below). If there is a gap, the size of the darning will not be correct.



4 **Lower the buttonhole lever so that it is positioned behind the metal bracket on the buttonhole foot.**

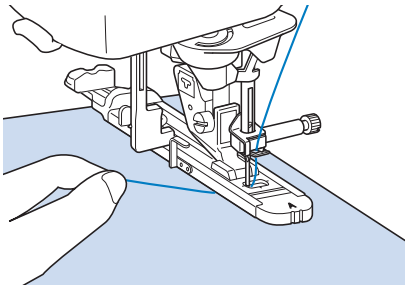


① Buttonhole lever



① Metal bracket

5 **Gently hold the end of the upper thread, and then press the “Start/Stop” button to start the machine.**



→ Once sewing is completed, the machine automatically sews reinforcement stitches, and then stops.

Memo

- If automatic thread cutting is turned on before you start sewing, both threads are automatically cut after the reinforcement stitches are sewn. If the fabric does not feed (for example, because it is too thick), increase the stitch length setting.

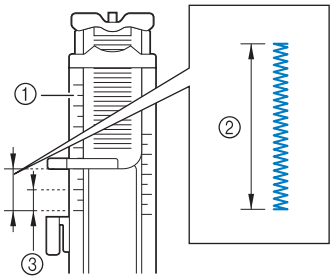
Bar Tacks

Use bar tacks to reinforce areas that will be subject to strain, such as pocket corners.

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot	Applications	Stitch width [mm (inch)]		Stitch length [mm (inch)]		Twin needle
				Auto	Manual	Auto	Manual	
	Bar tack		Reinforcement at opening of pocket, etc.	**2.0 (1/16)**	1.0 - 3.0 (1/16 - 1/8)	**0.4 (1/64)**	0.3 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO

1 **Select** **.**

2 **Attach buttonhole foot "A" and set the scale to the length of the bar tack you wish to sew.**

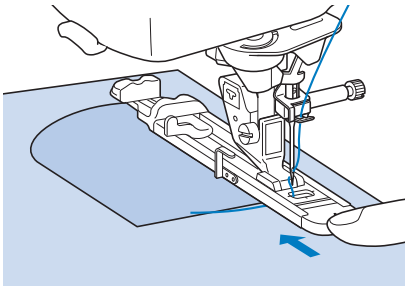


① Presser foot scale
② Completed length measurement
③ 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch)

Memo

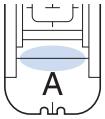
- Bar tacks can be between 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch) and 28 mm (approx. 1-1/16 inches). Bar tacks are usually between 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch) and 10 mm (approx. 3/8 inch).

3 **Set the fabric so that the pocket moves toward you during sewing.**

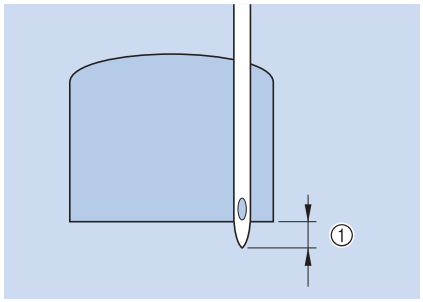


Note

- Pass the thread underneath the presser foot.
- Slide the outside frame of the buttonhole foot backward as far as possible as shown in the illustration, making sure that there is no gap behind the part of the foot marked "A". If the buttonhole foot is not slid back as far as possible, the bar tack will not be sewn to the correct size.

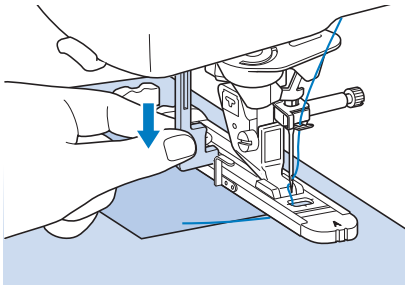


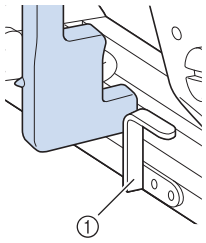
4 **Check the first needle drop point and lower the presser foot.**



① 2 mm (approx. 1/16 inch)

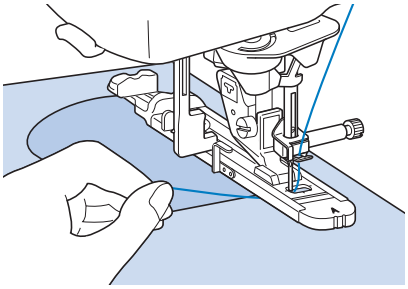
5 **Lower the buttonhole lever so that it is positioned behind the metal bracket on the buttonhole foot.**





① Metal bracket

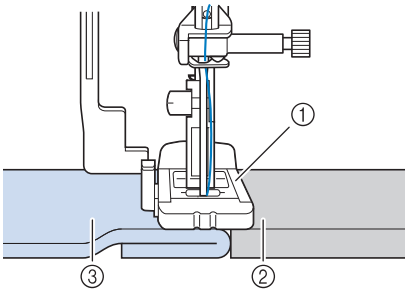
6 **Gently hold the end of the upper thread and begin sewing.**



→ When sewing is completed, the machine will sew reinforcement stitches and stop automatically.

■ Bar Tacks on Thick Fabrics

Place a piece of folded fabric or cardboard beside the fabric being sewn to level the buttonhole foot and allow for easier and even feeding.



① Presser foot
② Thick paper
③ Fabric

Memo

- If automatic thread cutting is turned on before you start sewing, both threads are automatically cut after the reinforcement stitches are sewn. If the fabric does not feed (for example, because it is too thick), increase the stitch length setting.

Button Sewing

Buttons with 2 or 4 holes can be attached, using the machine.

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot	Applications	Stitch width [mm (inch)]		Stitch length [mm (inch)]		Twin needle
				Auto	Manual	Auto	Manual	
	Button sewing		Attaching buttons	**3.5 (1/8)**	2.5 - 4.5 (3/32 - 3/16)	—	—	NO

Note

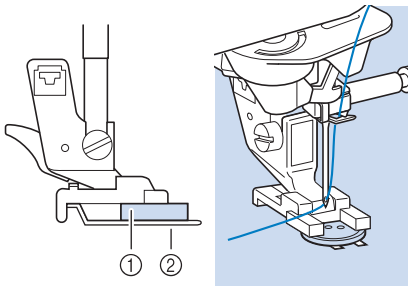
- Do not use the automatic thread cutting function when sewing buttons. Otherwise, you will lose the thread ends.

1 **Select** **.**

→ The feed dogs are lowered automatically.

2 **Raise the presser foot.**

3 **Attach button sewing foot "M", slide the button along the metal plate and into the presser foot, and lower the presser foot.**



① Button
② Metal plate

4 **Rotate the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) to check that the needle goes into each hole correctly.**

* If the needle does not reach the holes on the left side, adjust the stitch width.
* To attach the button more securely, repeat the process.

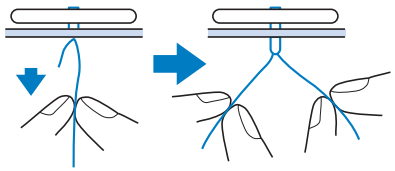
5 **Gently hold the end of the upper thread and start sewing.**

→ The machine stops automatically when sewing is finished.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Make sure the needle does not strike the button during sewing. The needle may break and cause injury.**

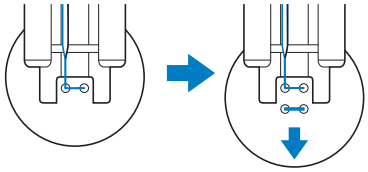
6 **From the wrong side of the fabric, pull the end of the bobbin thread to pull the upper thread through to the wrong side of the fabric. Tie the two thread ends together and cut the threads.**



7 **After the button is attached, select another stitch and rotate the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) to raise the feed dogs.**

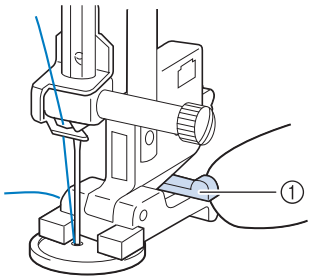
■ Attaching 4 Hole Buttons

Sew the two holes closest to you. Then raise the presser foot and move the fabric so that the needle goes into the next two holes, and sew them in the same way.



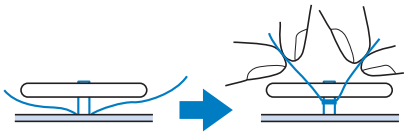
■ Attaching a Shank to the Button

1 **Pull the shank lever toward you before sewing.**



① Shank lever

2 **Pull the two ends of the upper thread between the button and the fabric, wind them around the shank, and then tie them firmly together.**



3 **Tie the ends of the bobbin thread from the beginning and end of sewing together on the wrong side of the fabric.**

Note

- When sewing is completed, be sure to select the other stitch and rotate the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) to raise the feed dogs.

4 **Cut off any excess thread.**

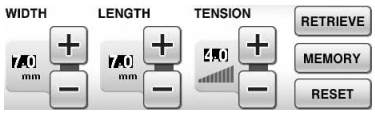
Eyelet

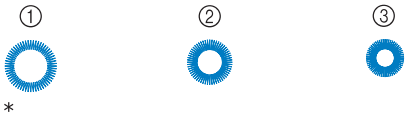
Use this stitch for making belt holes and other similar applications.

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot	Applications	Stitch width [mm (inch)]		Stitch length [mm (inch)]		Twin needle
				Auto	Manual	Auto	Manual	
4-24	**Eyelet**	N	For making eyelets, holes on belts, etc.	**7.0 (1/4)**	7.0 6.0 5.0 (1/4 15/64 3/16)	**7.0 (1/4)**	7.0 6.0 5.0 (1/4 15/64 3/16)	NO
4-25	**Star eyelet**	N	For making star-shaped eyelets on holes.	—	—	—	—	NO

1 **Select** 4-24 **or** 4-25 **.**

2 **Use** − + **in either the stitch width display or the stitch length display to choose the size of the eyelet.**





*

* Actual size

① Large 7 mm (approx. 1/4 inch)

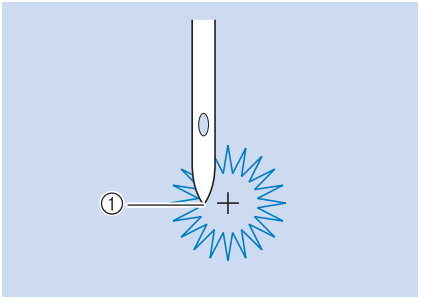
② Medium 6 mm (approx. 15/64 inch)

③ Small 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch)

Note

- Only one size is available for 4-25 .

3 **Attach monogramming foot "N", then rotate the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) to check the needle drop position.**



① Needle drop position

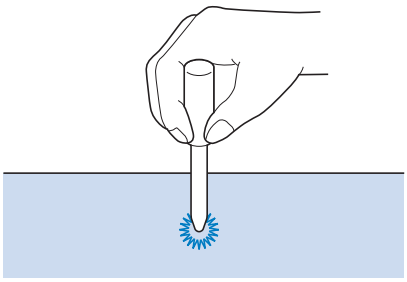
4 **Lower the presser foot and start sewing.**

→ When sewing is finished, the machine sews reinforcement stitches and stops automatically.

Note

- If the stitch pattern comes out poorly, make adjustments to "SEWING STITCH PATTERNS" on page 161.

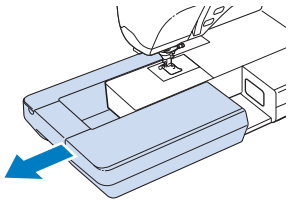
5 **Use the eyelet punch to make a hole in the center of the stitching.**



Multi-directional Sewing (Straight Stitch and Zigzag Stitch)

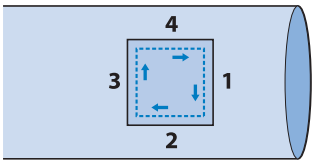
Use these stitch patterns to attach patches or emblems to pant legs, shirt sleeves, etc.

1 **Remove the flat bed attachment to use the free-arm.**

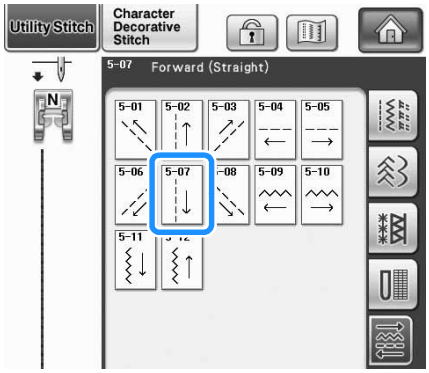


Memo

- Insert the tubular piece of fabric onto the free-arm, and then sew in the order shown in the illustration.



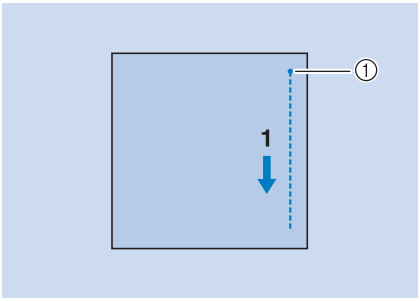
2 **Select** **and attach monogramming foot "N".**



Memo

- For details on each stitch, refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" at the end of this manual.

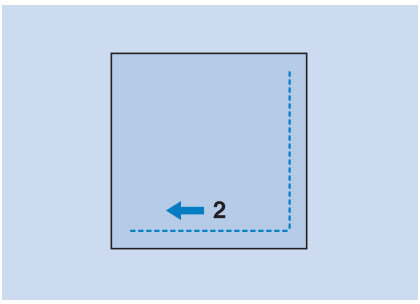
3 **Set the needle in the fabric at the sewing start point, and sew seam "1" as shown.**



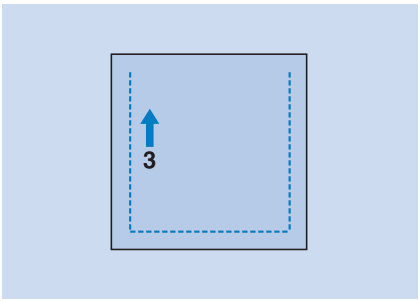
① Start Point

4 **Select** **and sew seam "2" as shown.**

* The fabric will move sideways, guide the fabric by hand to keep sewing straight.

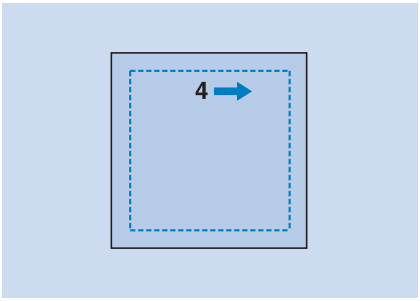


5 **Select** **and sew seam "3" as shown.**



→ The fabric feeds forward while stitching backward.

6 **Select** **and sew seam "4" as shown.**



→ The seam will be connected to the starting point of seam 1.

Zipper Insertion

■ Centered Zipper

Use for bags and other such applications.

1 **Select** **.**

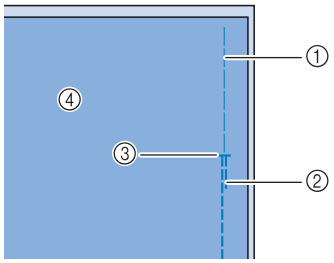
Memo

- For details on each stitch, refer to the “STITCH SETTING CHART” at the end of this manual.

Note

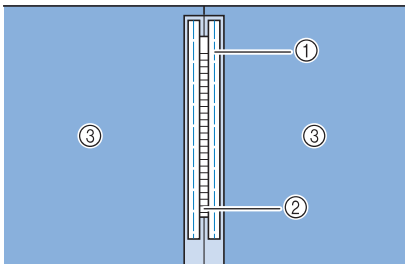
- Make sure you sew using the middle needle position.

2 **Attach presser foot “J” and sew straight stitches up to the zipper opening. Change to a basting stitch (see page 98) and sew to the top of the fabric.**



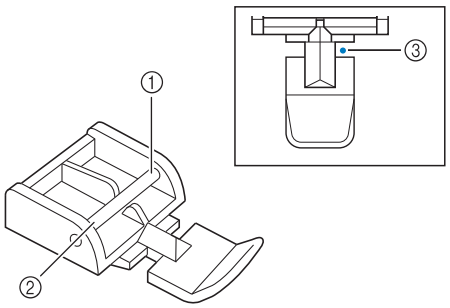
① Basting stitches
② Reverse stitches
③ End of zipper opening
④ Wrong side

3 **Press the seam allowance open and attach the zipper with a basting stitch in the middle of each side of the zipper tape.**



① Basting stitches
② Zipper
③ Wrong side

4 **Remove presser foot “J”. Align the right side of the pin in zipper foot “I” with the presser foot holder, and attach the zipper foot.**

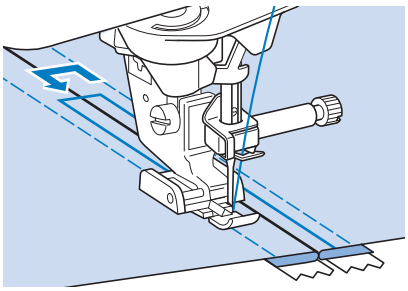


① Right
② Left
③ Needle drop position

CAUTION

- **When using zipper foot “I”, make sure the straight stitch, middle needle position is selected. Rotate the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) to make sure the needle does not strike the presser foot. If another stitch is selected, the needle will strike the presser foot, causing the needle to break and possibly causing injury.**

5 **Topstitch 7 to 10 mm (approx. 1/4 to 3/8 inch) from the seamed edge of the fabric, then remove the basting.**



CAUTION

- **Make sure the needle does not strike the zipper during sewing. If the needle strikes the zipper, the needle may break, leading to injury.**

■ Inserting a Side Zipper

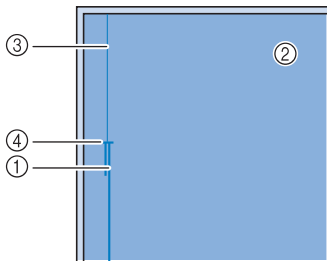
Use for side zippers in skirts or dresses.

1 **Select** **.**

Note

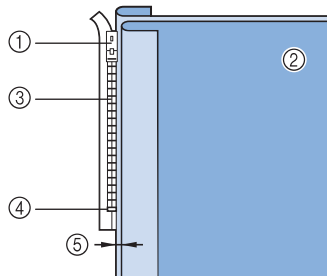
- Make sure you sew using the middle needle position.

2 **Attach presser foot “J” and sew straight stitches up to the zipper opening. Change to a basting stitch and sew to the top of the fabric.**



① Reverse stitches
② Wrong side of fabric
③ Basting stitches
④ End of zipper opening

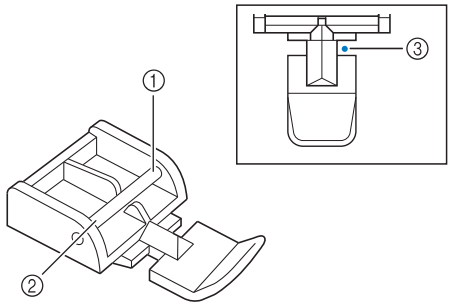
3 **Press the seam allowance open and align the folded hem along the teeth of the zipper, while maintaining 3 mm (approx. 1/8 inch) of sewing space.**



① Zipper pull tab
② Wrong side of fabric
③ Zipper teeth
④ End of zipper opening
⑤ 3 mm (approx. 1/8 inch)

4 **Remove presser foot “J”.**

5 **Align the right side of the pin in zipper foot “I” with the presser foot holder, and attach the presser foot.**



① Right
② Left
③ Needle drop position

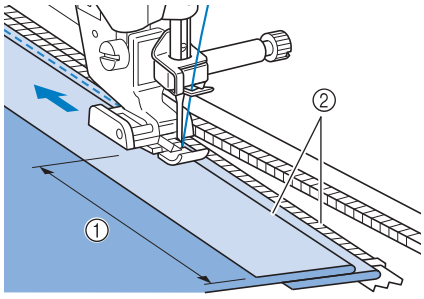
CAUTION

- **When using zipper foot “I”, make sure the straight stitch, middle needle position is selected. Rotate the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) to make sure the needle does not strike the presser foot. If another stitch is selected, the needle will strike the presser foot, causing the needle to break and possibly causing injury.**

6 **Set the presser foot in the 3 mm (approx. 1/8 inch) margin.**

7 **Starting from the end of the zipper opening, sew to a point about 50 mm (approx. 2 inches) from the edge of the fabric, then stop the machine.**

8 **Pull down the zipper slider, then continue sewing to the edge of the fabric.**

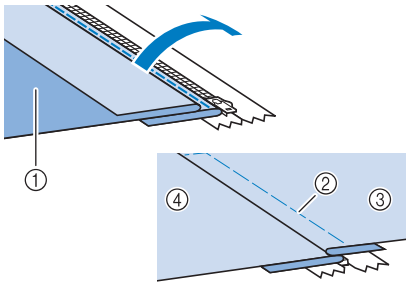


① 50 mm (approx. 2 inches)
② 3 mm (approx. 1/8 inch)

CAUTION

- **Make sure the needle does not strike the zipper during sewing. If the needle strikes the zipper, the needle may break, leading to injury.**

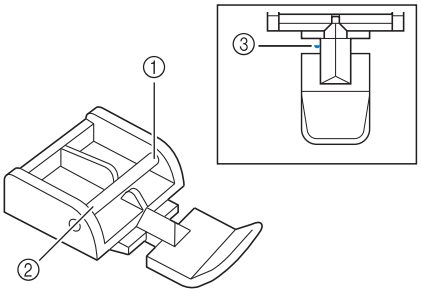
9 **Close the zipper, turn the fabric over, and sew a basting stitch.**



① Front of the skirt (wrong side of fabric)
② Basting stitches
③ Front of the skirt (right side of fabric)
④ Back of the skirt (right side of fabric)

10 **Remove the presser foot, and reattach it so that the left side of the pin is attached to the presser foot holder.**

* When sewing the left side of the zipper, the needle should drop on the right side of the presser foot. When sewing the right side of the zipper, the needle should drop on the left side of the presser foot.



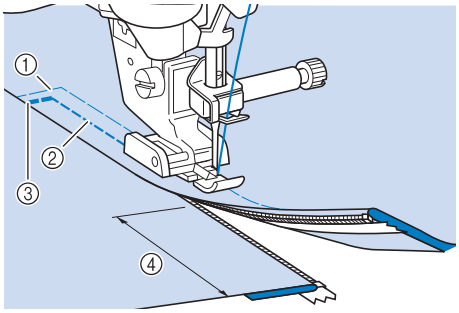
① Right
② Left
③ Needle drop position

11 **Set the fabric so that the left edge of the presser foot touches the edge of the zipper teeth.**

12 **Sew reverse stitches at the top of the zipper, then continue sewing.**

13 **Stop sewing about 50 mm (approx. 2 inches) from the edge of the fabric, leave the needle in the fabric, and remove the basting stitches.**

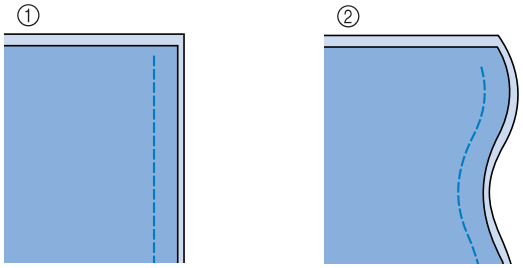
14 **Open the zipper and sew the rest of the seam.**



① Basting stitches
② 7 to 10 mm (approx. 1/4 inch to 3/8 inch)
③ Reverse stitches
④ 50 mm (approx. 2 inches)

Edge Sewing

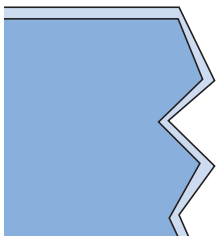
Using the built-in camera, the width of the area from the edge of the fabric to the stitching line can be measured and set for edge sewing.
This function can be used when the edge of the fabric is straight or a gentle curve.



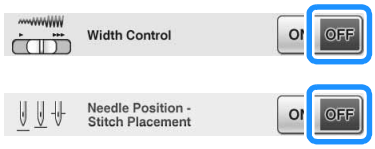
① Straight
② Curved

Note

- Clean stitching cannot be sewn if this function is used when the edge of the fabric has corners as shown below.



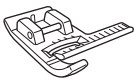
- When edge sewing using the built-in camera, make sure that the room is evenly lit. If the brightness in the room changes while edge sewing, the built-in camera may not be able to detect the edge of the fabric.
- The built-in camera detects the contrast between the fabric and the background. Therefore, observe the following precautions.
  – If the edge of the fabric is fraying, cut off any excess fabric threads.
  – If the fabric has a complicated pattern, is sheer or is glossy, such as a vinyl material, the built-in camera may not be able to detect it correctly.
- For best results, iron the fold when folding the edge of the fabric for edge sewing.
- When “Width Control” on page 1/8 of the settings screen is set to “ON” or when “Needle Position – Stitch Placement” on page 3/8 is set to “ON”, the built-in camera cannot be used with edge sewing. If either of these parameters are set to “ON”, appears gray and cannot be selected.
  Before using the built-in camera for edge sewing, set “Width Control” and “Needle Position – Stitch Placement” in the settings screen to “OFF”.



1 Select a stitch.

* Edge sewing using the built-in camera cannot be used with patterns where appears in gray when the pattern is selected.

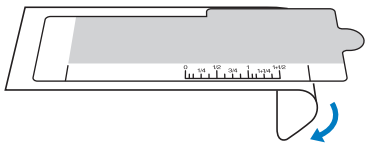
2 Attach the vertical stitch alignment foot “V”.



CAUTION

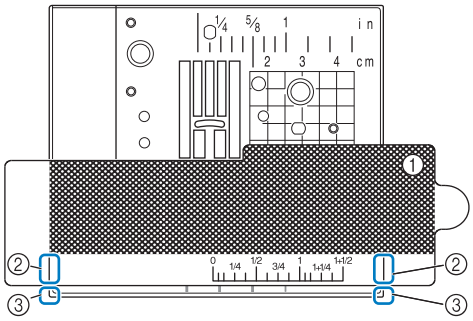
- **When edge sewing with the built-in camera, be sure to use the vertical stitch alignment foot “V”. In order to maintain a fixed distance from the edge of the fabric, the needle will slightly move to either side, even when sewing with a straight stitch. If a different presser foot is used, it may be hit by the needle, causing the needle to break or resulting in injuries.**

3 Peel off the transparent sheet of the edge sewing sheet.

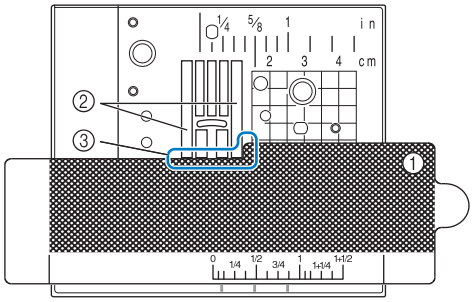


4 Place the edge sewing sheet on top of the needle plate cover.

Align the guides on the edge sewing sheet with the sides of the needle plate cover, and then adjust the position of the edge sewing sheet so that its cutout aligns with the edges of the opening for the feed dogs. Position the edge sewing sheet so that there is no gap between it and the edges of the opening for the feed dogs.



① Edge sewing sheet
② Guides on edge sewing sheet
③ Sides of needle plate cover



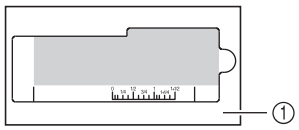
① Edge sewing sheet
② Feed dogs
③ Between the feed dogs and the edge sewing sheet

Note

- If the metal needle plate is visible between the feed dogs and the edge sewing sheet, the fabric may be incorrectly detected by the built-in camera.

Memo

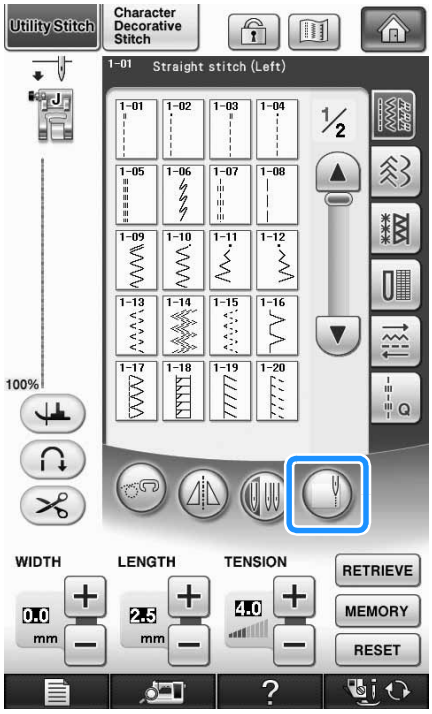
- Before using the edge sewing sheet, peel off the transparent sheet. After use, affix the edge sewing sheet to the transparent sheet to prevent it from collecting dust.



① Transparent sheet

- Set a fully wound bobbin before starting to use the edge sewing feature and built-in camera. If you need to change the bobbin while edge sewing, remove the edge sewing sheet carefully and place it again after changing the bobbin.

5 Press .



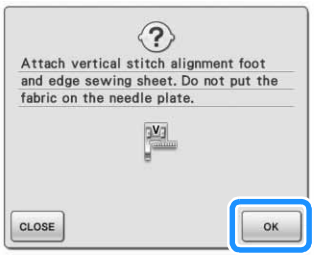
→ Depending on the stitch, the straight stitch with the middle (center) needle position is selected, regardless of the preset stitch width.

* Regardless of the setting selected in the machine settings screen, the brightness of the light changes to "5".

Note

- After is pressed, the stitch width and stitch length cannot be changed. Change the stitch width and stitch length before pressing .

6 When the message shown below appears, check that the vertical stitch alignment foot "V" is attached and that the edge sewing sheet is positioned, and then press OK.



→ Then the edge sewing window appears.

Note

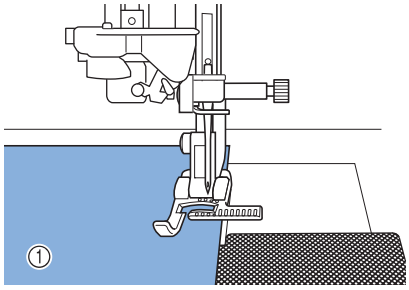
- Before pressing [OK], install the vertical stitch alignment foot “V” and position the edge sewing sheet; otherwise, the built-in camera cannot detect the fabric.

  If [OK] is pressed before the edge sewing sheet is positioned, the message shown in step 6 appears again.

- After pressing [OK], do not place your hands or any other object near the needle plate until the message “Recognizing...” disappears.

7 Place the fabric under the presser foot.

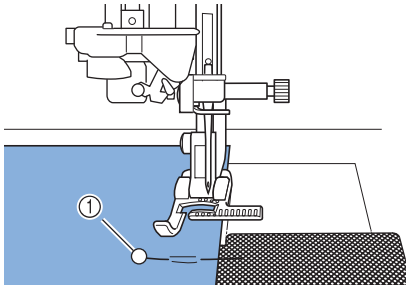
8 Move the fabric to the desired position for edge sewing. Position the fabric so that its edge is as straight as possible.



① Fabric

Note

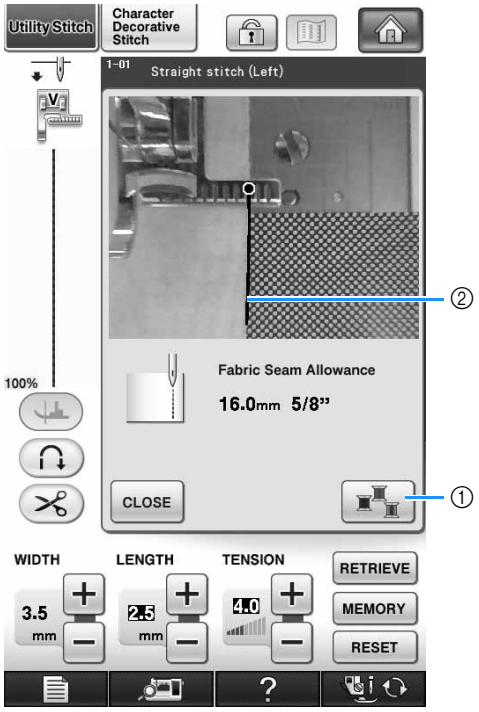
- When pinning the fabric, insert the pins as shown below. If the head of the pin extends off the edge of the fabric, the fabric may not be correctly detected.



① Basting pin

9 Check that the built-in camera is correctly detecting the fabric.

* Press [⬛] to change the colors of the fabric edge indicator line and starting point according to the color of the fabric. Each press of this key changes the color of the fabric edge indicator line to red (with a blue starting point), blue (with a black starting point) or black (with a red starting point).

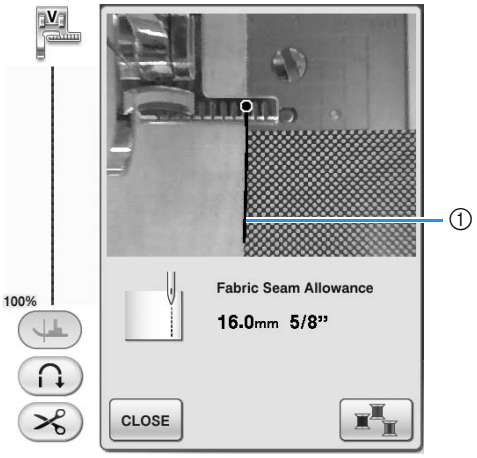


① Key for changing the color of the fabric edge indicator line

② Fabric edge indicator line

When the Built-In Camera Can Detect the Edge of the Fabric

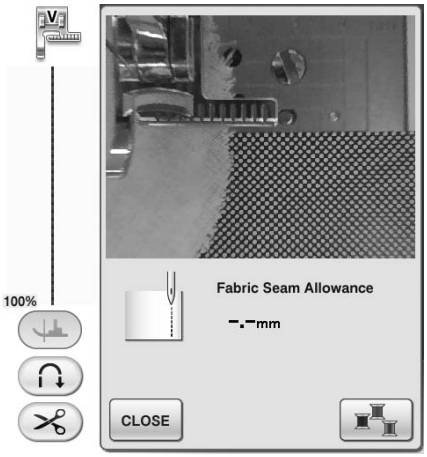
The fabric edge indicator line appears correctly following the edge of the fabric.



① Fabric edge indicator line

When the Fabric Edge Indicator Line Does Not Appear

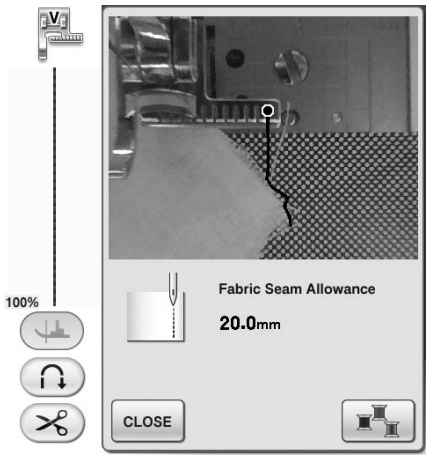
The built-in camera cannot detect the edge of the fabric.



Press CLOSE, and then perform the procedure again starting with step 1.

When the Fabric Edge Indicator Line Is Not Aligned With the Edge of the Fabric

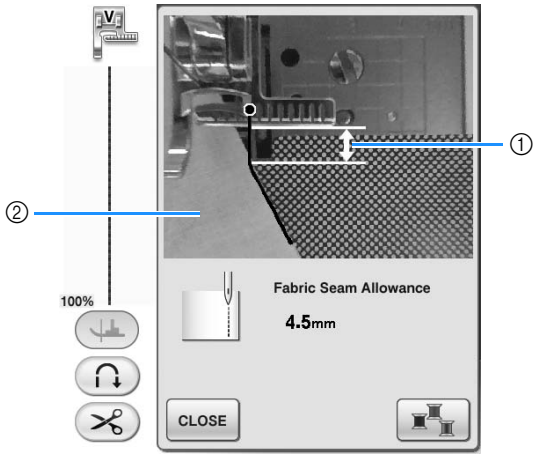
The fabric edge indicator line that appears is not aligned with the edge of the fabric. The fabric at the beginning of sewing is not straight.



Try to straighten the edge of the fabric at the beginning of sewing (so it is parallel with the edge of the presser foot).

Note

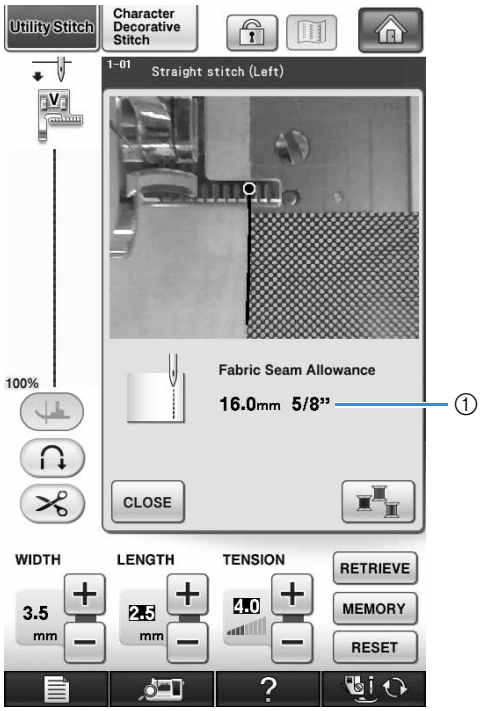
- If a straight part of fabric edge indicator line (shown below) does not follow the edge of the fabric, edge sewing cannot be sewn correctly.



① Straight part
② Fabric

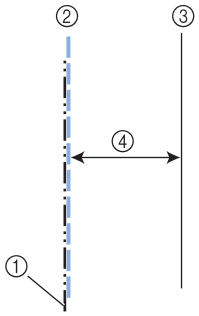
10 **While checking the screen for the distance from the fabric edge to the edge sewing position, move the fabric to the desired position.**

* The starting point of the fabric edge indicator line shows the position for the start of sewing. The actual position for the start of sewing is directly below the needle and parallel to the starting point.



① Distance from edge of fabric

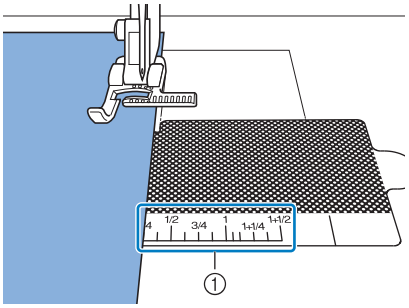
Example: When a straight stitch is selected (example:)



① Middle needle position
② Stitching
③ Edge of fabric
④ Width of edge sewing

Note

- Distances between 1.5 mm (about 1/16 inch) and 38.5 mm (about 1-1/2 inches) can be measured. The distance is displayed in the screen in 0.5 mm (about 1/64 inch) increments.
- The distance is displayed in millimeters. However, depending on the measurement setting, it can also be displayed in inches.
- If "-_- mm" appears as the distance and no inch measurement is displayed, the built-in camera is not able to detect the edge of the fabric.
- When a straight stitch is selected, use the scale on the edge sewing sheet as a guide for positioning the fabric for edge sewing.



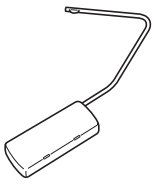
① Scale on the edge sewing sheet

11 **Lower the presser foot.**

→ The distance from the edge of the fabric to the seam is set.

Memo

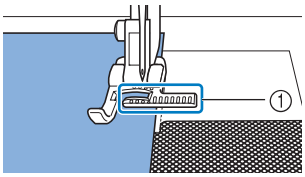
- If the knee lifter is used to lower the presser foot, the fabric can be held in place with both hands so the fabric does not move when the presser foot is lowered.



12 Press the “Start/Stop” button to start edge sewing.

→ Sewing starts with the set distance to the edge of the fabric maintained.

* While sewing, use the red scale marks on the vertical stitch alignment foot “V” as a guide to keep a fixed distance from the edge of the fabric.

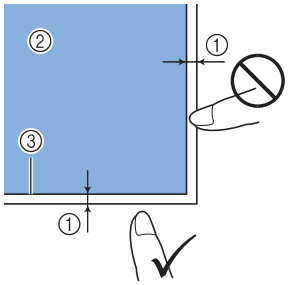


① Red scale marks

* When sewing starts, a still image from the built-in camera is displayed.

Note

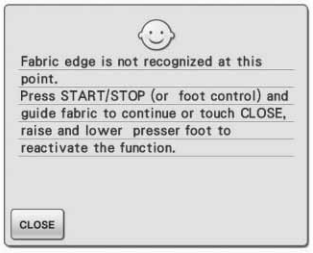
- While sewing, do not place anything, including your hands, within 2 mm (about 1/16 inch) from the edge of the fabric, otherwise the edge of the fabric cannot be detected correctly. When guiding the fabric with your hands, place them outside of the object-free area and more than 2 mm (about 1/16 inch) from the edge of the fabric.



① Approximately 2 mm (about 1/16 inch)
② Fabric
③ Edge of fabric

13 When sewing is between 1 and 2 cm (about 3/8 and 3/4 inch) from the edge of the fabric, sewing stops automatically and the following message appears. To stop sewing, press CLOSE.

* When this message appears, edge sewing (with the seam wizard function) is canceled.



Note

- To continue sewing to the edge of the fabric, do not press CLOSE when the message shown above appears. With the above message displayed, press the “Start/Stop” button to sew.

Memo

- When edge sewing is finished, store the edge sewing sheet affixed to the transparent sheet in order to prevent it from collecting dust.

Chapter 4
Character/Decorative Stitches

SELECTING STITCH PATTERNS....156

■ Stitch Selection Screens....157
Selecting Decorative Stitch Patterns/7mm Decorative Stitch Patterns/Satin Stitch Patterns/7mm Satin Stitch Patterns/ Cross Stitch/Utility Decorative Stitch Patterns....158
Alphabet Characters....158
■ Deleting Characters....159
■ Adjusting the Character Spacing....160

SEWING STITCH PATTERNS....161

Sewing Attractive Finishes....161
Basic Sewing....161
Making Adjustments....162

EDITING STITCH PATTERNS....164

■ Key Functions....164
Changing the Size....166
Changing the Length (for 7mm Satin Stitch Patterns Only)....166
Creating a Vertical Mirror Image....166
Creating a Horizontal Mirror Image....167
Sewing a Pattern Continuously....167
Changing Thread Density (for Satin Stitch Patterns Only)....167
Returning to the Beginning of the Pattern....168
Checking the Image....168

COMBINING STITCH PATTERNS....170

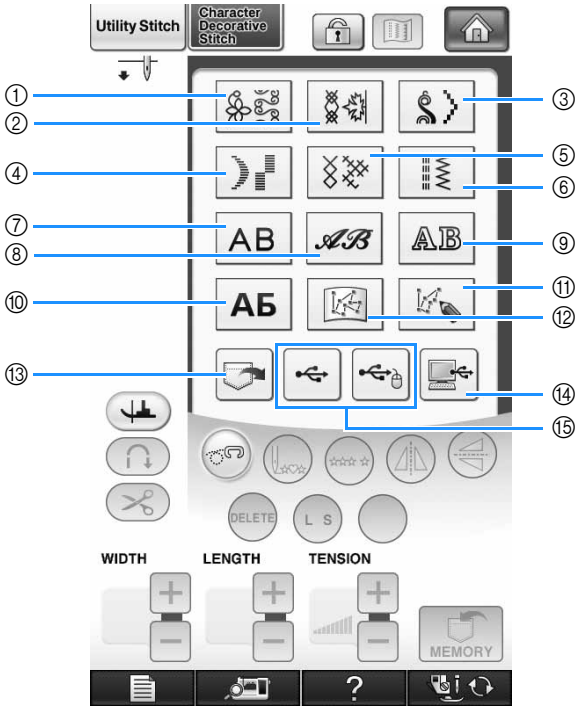
Before Combining....170
Combining Various Stitch Patterns....170
Combining Large and Small Stitch Patterns....171
Combining Horizontal Mirror Image Stitch Patterns....172
Combining Stitch Patterns of Different Length....173
Making Step Stitch Patterns (for 7mm Satin Stitch Patterns Only)....174
■ More Examples....175

USING THE MEMORY FUNCTION....176

Stitch Data Precautions....176
■ Types of Stitch Data that can be Used....176
■ Types of USB Devices/Media that can be Used....176
■ Computers and Operating Systems with the Following Specifications can be Used....176
■ Precautions on Using the Computer to Create and Save Data....176
Saving Stitch Patterns in the Machine's Memory....177
■ If the Memory is Full....177
Saving Stitch Patterns to USB Media....178
Saving Stitch Patterns in the Computer....179
Retrieving Stitch Patterns from the Machine's Memory....180
Recalling from USB Media....181
Recalling from the Computer....182

SELECTING STITCH PATTERNS

Press , then Character Decorative Stitch to display the screen below.



① Decorative stitch patterns
② 7mm decorative stitch patterns. You can set stitch length and width.
③ Satin stitch patterns
④ 7mm satin stitch patterns. You can set stitch length and width.
⑤ Cross stitch
⑥ Utility decorative stitch patterns
⑦ Alphabet characters (gothic font)
⑧ Alphabet characters (handwriting font)
⑨ Alphabet characters (outline)
⑩ Cyrillic font
⑪ Press this key to create your own stitches with the “MY CUSTOM STITCH” function (see page 328)
⑫ Patterns stored in “MY CUSTOM STITCH” (see page 335)
⑬ Patterns saved in the machine’s memory (see page 180)
⑭ Patterns saved in USB media (see page 181)
⑮ Patterns saved on the computer (see page 182)

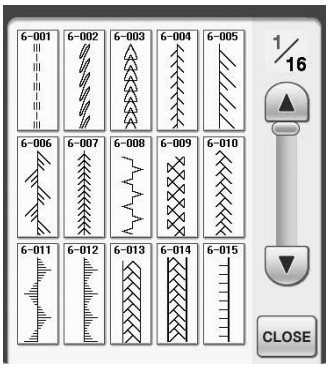
Note

- If the screen is locked ( ), unlock the screen by pressing . While the screen is locked, no other key can be operated.

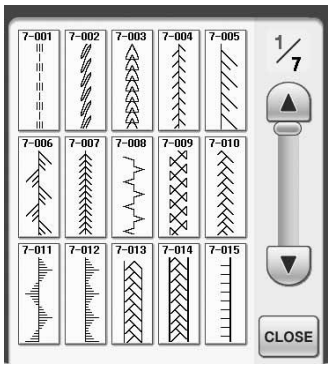
■ Stitch Selection Screens

There are 10 categories of Character/Decorative stitch patterns. If a page number such as ½ appears, there is more than one stitch selection screen for that category.

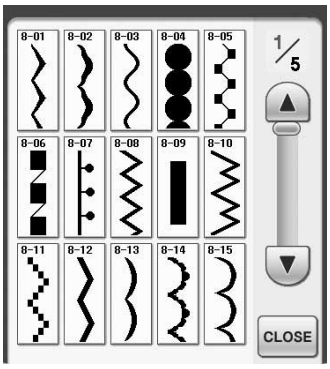
Decorative Stitch Patterns



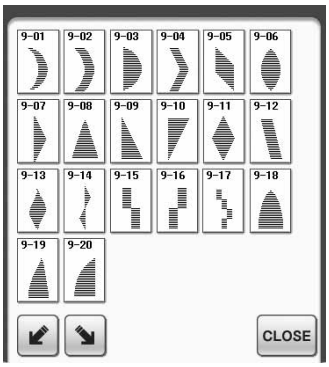
7mm Decorative Stitch Patterns



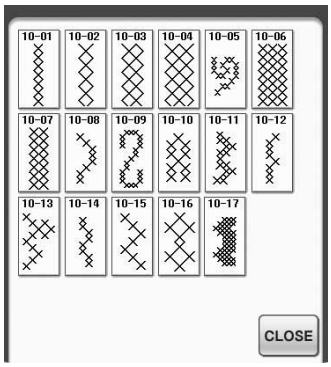
Satin Stitch Patterns



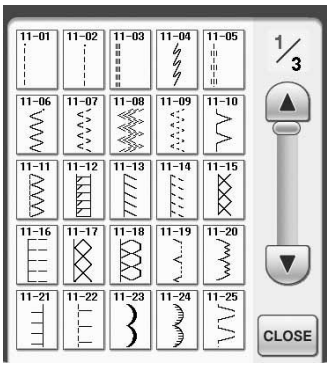
7mm Satin Stitch Patterns



Cross Stitch

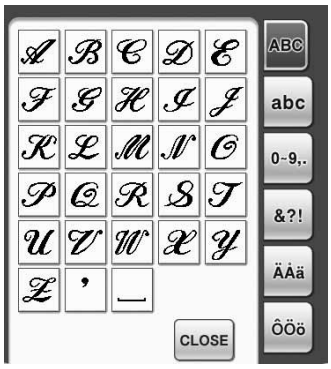


Utility Decorative Stitch Patterns

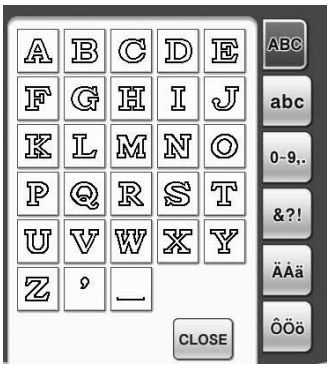


Alphabet Characters (Gothic Font)

Alphabet Characters (Handwriting Font)



Alphabet Characters (Outline)



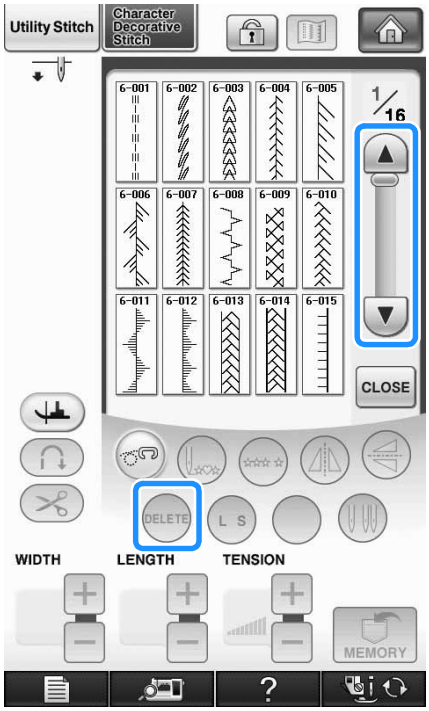
Cyrillic font

Selecting Decorative Stitch Patterns/7mm Decorative Stitch Patterns/Satin Stitch Patterns/ 7mm Satin Stitch Patterns/ Cross Stitch/Utility Decorative Stitch Patterns

1 **Select the category of the pattern you want to sew.**

2 **Press the key of the stitch pattern you want to sew.**

* Press ▼ to view the next page.
* Press ▲ to view the previous page.
* Touch the bar that appears between ▼ and ▲ to leap multiple pages at one time.
* To select a different stitch pattern, press DELETE. When the current stitch pattern is erased, select the new stitch pattern.

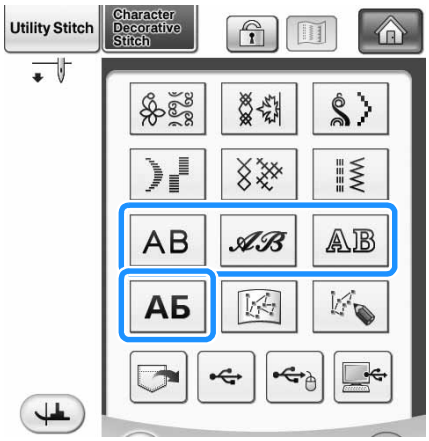


→ The selected pattern is displayed.

Alphabet Characters

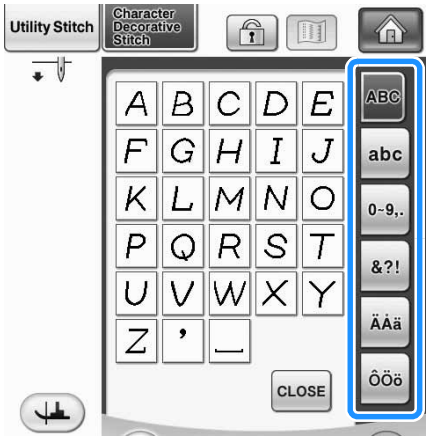
Example: Entering “Blue Sky”.

1 **Press AB, AB, AB or AБ to select a font.**



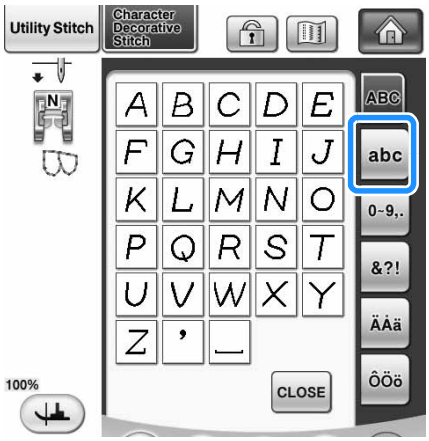
Memo
- There are four fonts for alphabet character stitching.

2 **Press to change the selection screens.**

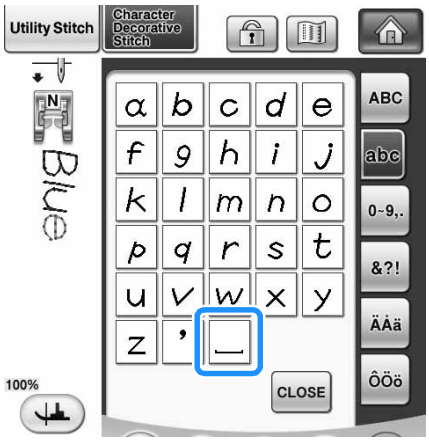


3 **Press ABC and then enter “B”.**

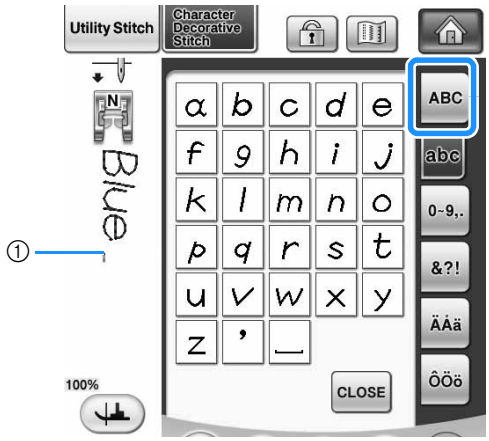
4 Press abc and then enter “lue”.



5 Press ⎵ to enter a space.



6 Press ABC again and enter “S”.



① Jumping stitch

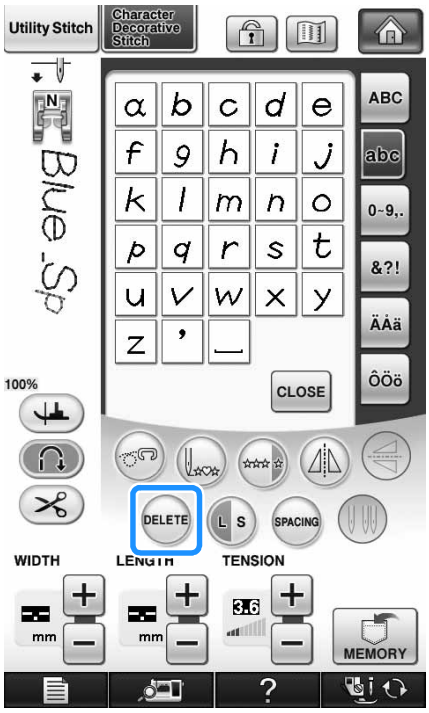
* Remove the jumping stitches after sewing.

7 Press abc and then enter “ky”.

* If you want to continue entering characters in a different font, press CLOSE, and then repeat from step 1.

■ Deleting Characters

1 Press DELETE to delete the last character.



Memo

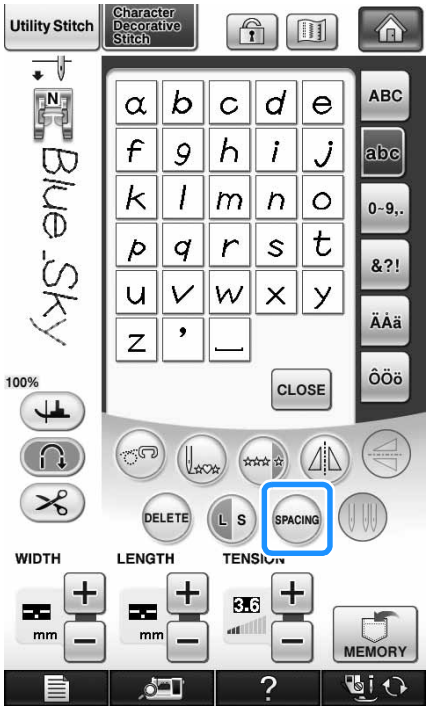
- Characters are deleted individually starting with the last character entered.

2 **Select the correct character.**

■ Adjusting the Character Spacing

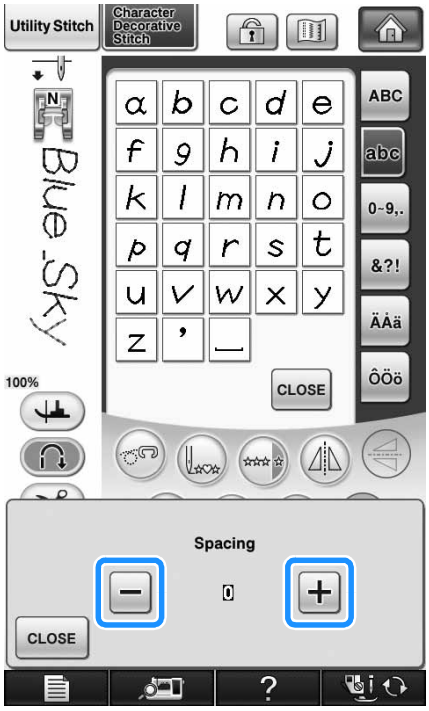
The space between the characters can be adjusted.

1 **Press** SPACING **.**



→ The character spacing window appears.

2 **Press** − + **to adjust character spacing.**



* Press + to increase the character spacing and press − to decrease the character spacing.

Example:

* Each setting equals a specific distance between characters.

Value	mm
0	0
1	0.18
2	0.36
3	0.54
4	0.72
5	0.9
6	1.08
7	1.26
8	1.44
9	1.62
10	1.8

Memo

- The default setting is “0”. No number less than “0” can be set.
- Changing character spacing by this method, pertains to all characters. Spacing changes are valid not only while entering characters but also before and after the entering of characters.

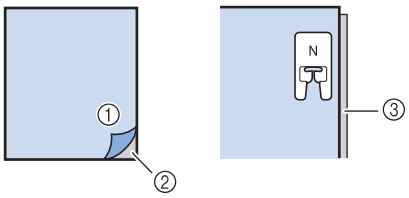
SEWING STITCH PATTERNS

Sewing Attractive Finishes

To achieve attractive results when sewing character/decorative stitches, check the table below for the proper fabric/needle/thread combinations.

Note

- Other factors, such as fabric thickness, stabilizer material, etc., also have an effect on the stitch, so you should always sew a few trial stitches before beginning your project.
- When sewing satin stitch patterns, there may be shrinking or bunching of stitches, so be sure to attach a stabilizer material.
- Guide the fabric with your hand to keep the fabric feeding straight and even during sewing.

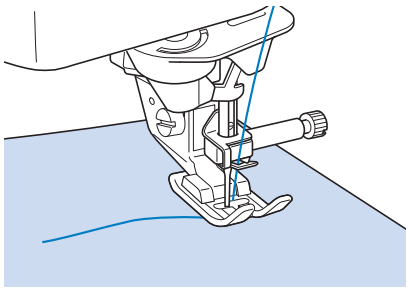
Fabric	When sewing on stretch fabrics, lightweight fabrics, or fabrics with coarse weaves, attach stabilizer on the wrong side of the fabric. If you do not wish to do so, place the fabric on a thin paper such as tracing paper.  ① Fabric ② Stabilizer ③ Thin paper
Thread	#50 - #60
Needle	With lightweight, regular, or stretch fabrics: the Ball point needle (golden colored) With heavyweight fabrics: home sewing machine needle 90/14
Presser foot	Monogramming foot “N”. Using another presser foot may give inferior results.

Basic Sewing

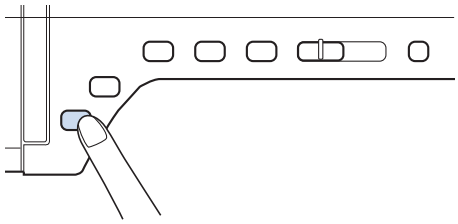
1 **Select a stitch pattern.**

2 **Attach monogramming foot “N”.**

3 **Place the fabric under the presser foot, pull the upper thread out to the side, and then lower the presser foot.**



4 **Press the “Start/Stop” button to start sewing.**



⚠ CAUTION

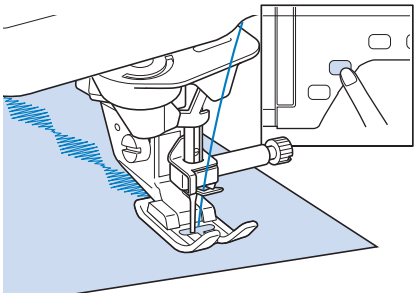
- **When sewing 7 mm satin stitch patterns and the stitches are bunched, lengthen the stitch length. If you continue sewing when the stitches are bunched, the needle may bend or break (“Setting the Stitch Length” on page 79).**

Memo

- If the fabric is pulled or pushed during sewing, the pattern may not turn out correctly. Also, depending on the pattern, there may be movement to the left and right as well as front and back. Guide the fabric with your hand to keep the fabric feeding straight and even during sewing.

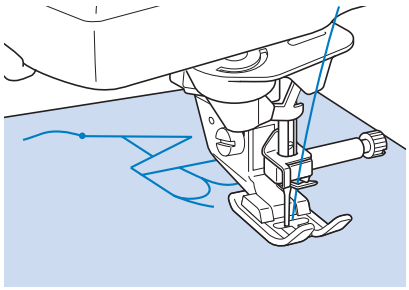
5 **Press the "Start/Stop" button to stop sewing.**

6 **Press the "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button to sew reinforcement stitches.**

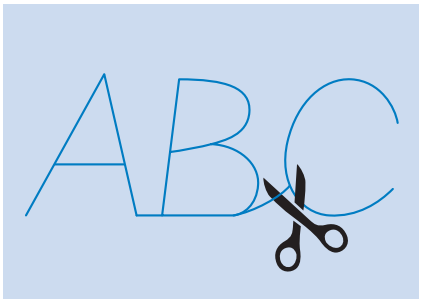


Memo

- When sewing character stitches, the machine automatically sews reinforcement stitches at the beginning and end of each character.



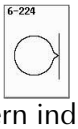
- When sewing is completed, trim any excess thread between letters.



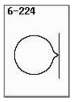
Note

- When sewing some patterns, the needle will temporarily pause in the raised position while the fabric is fed due to the operation of the needle bar separation mechanism which is used in this machine. At such times, a clicking sound different from the sound generated during sewing will be heard. This sound is normal and is not the sign of a malfunction.

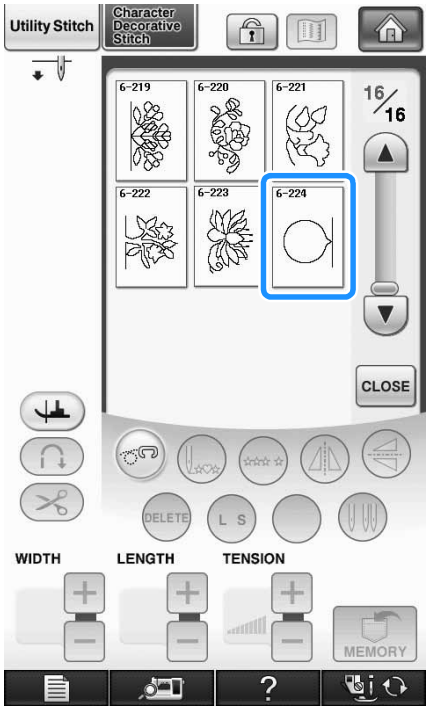
Making Adjustments

Your stitch pattern may sometimes turn out poorly, depending on the type or thickness of fabric, the stabilizer material used, sewing speed, etc. If your sewing does not turn out well, sew trial stitches using the same conditions as the real sewing, and adjust the stitch pattern as explained below. If the pattern does not turn out well even after making adjustments based on the 

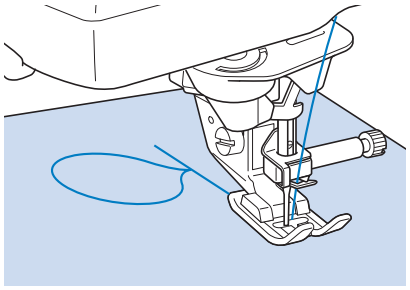
pattern, make adjustments for each pattern individually.

1 **Press** **and select** 

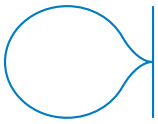
on 16/16.



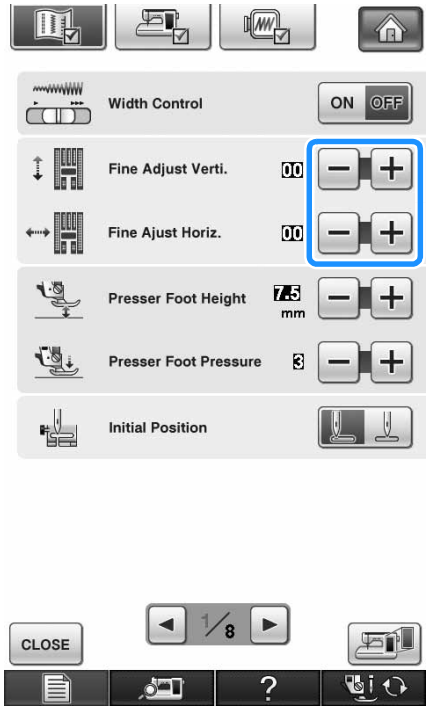
2 **Attach monogramming foot "N" and sew the pattern.**



3 **Compare the finished pattern to the illustration of the correct pattern below.**



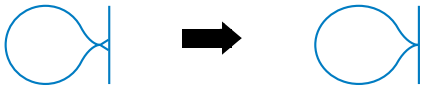
4 **Press [ ], and then adjust the pattern with the "Fine Adjust Verti." or "Fine Adjust Horiz." displays.**



* If the pattern is bunched:

Press [+] in the "Fine Adjust Verti." display.

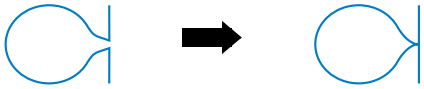
→ The displayed value increases each time the button is pressed and the pattern will lengthen.



* If the pattern has gaps:

Press [−] in the "Fine Adjust Verti." display.

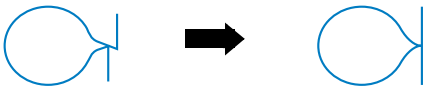
→ The displayed value decreases each time the button is pressed and the pattern will shorten.



* If the pattern is skewed to the left:

Press [+] in the "Fine Adjust Horiz." display.

→ The displayed value increases each time the button is pressed and the pattern will slide to the right.



* If the pattern is skewed to the right:

Press [−] in the "Fine Adjust Horiz." display.

→ The displayed value decreases each time the button is pressed and the pattern will slide to the left.

5 **Sew the stitch pattern again.**

* If the stitch pattern still comes out poorly, make adjustments again. Adjust until the stitch pattern comes out correctly.

Memo

- You can sew with the setting screen on the display.

6 **Press [CLOSE] to return to the original screen.**

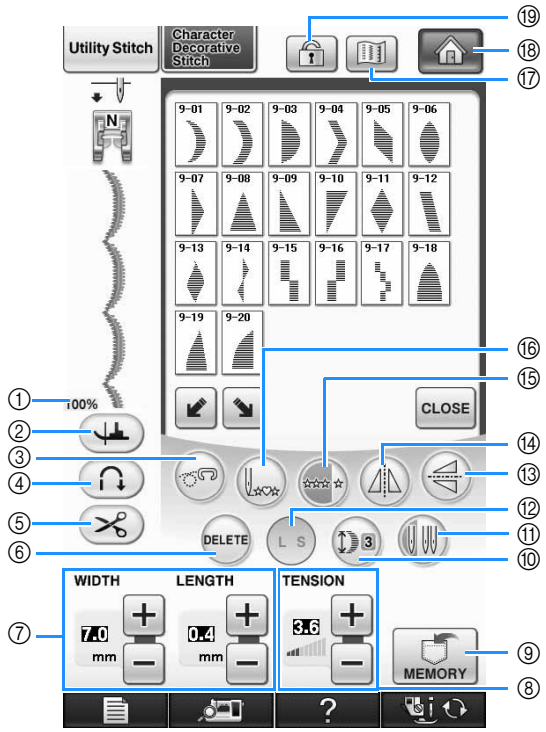
EDITING STITCH PATTERNS

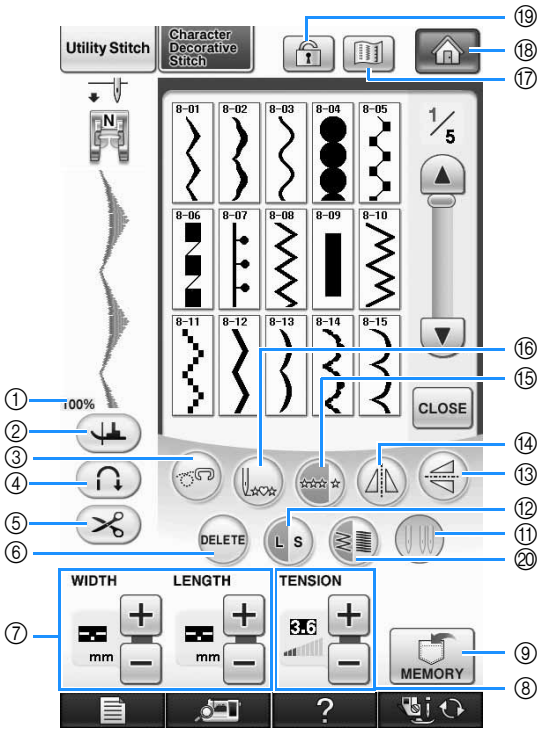
■ Key Functions

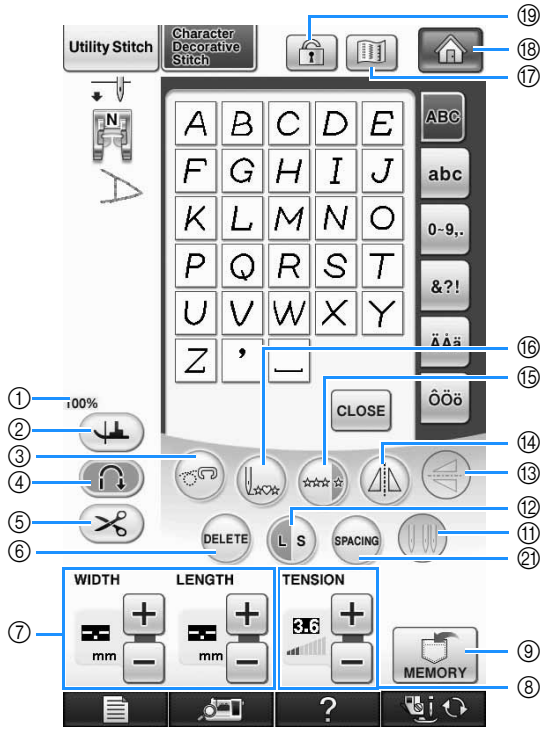
You can create just the finish you want using the editing functions. Make patterns larger or smaller, make mirror images, etc.

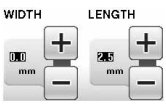
Note

- Some editing functions cannot be used with certain stitch patterns. Only the functions for the displayed keys are available when a pattern is selected.



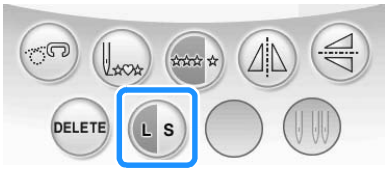




No.	Display	Key Name	Explanation	Page
①	100%	Pattern display size	Show the approximate size of the pattern selected. 100% : Nearly the same size as the sewn pattern 50% : 1/2 the size of the sewn pattern 25% : 1/4 the size of the sewn pattern * The actual size of the sewn pattern may differ depending on the type of fabric and thread that is used.	91
②		Pivot key	Press this key to select the pivot setting. When the pivot setting is selected, stopping the machine lowers the needle and slightly raises the presser foot automatically. In addition, when sewing is restarted, the presser foot is automatically lowered. • If this key appears as , the pivot function cannot be used. • Be sure the needle position on page 3 of Machine Settings is set to the down position.	84
③		Free motion mode key	Press this key to enter free motion sewing mode. The feed dog is lowered and presser foot is raised to a height appropriate for free motion quilting.	116
④		Automatic reinforcement stitch key	Press this key to turn on the automatic reinforcement stitching mode.	81
⑤		Automatic thread cutting key	Press this key to turn on the automatic thread cutting mode.	82
⑥		Delete key	When you make a mistake selecting a stitch pattern, use this key to delete the mistake. When you make a mistake in combining stitch patterns, use this key to delete stitch patterns.	158, 159
⑦		Stitch width and stitch length key	Shows the stitch width and stitch length of the selected stitch pattern. The machine default settings are highlighted.	78-79
⑧		Thread tension key	Shows the thread tension setting for the selected stitch pattern. The machine default settings are highlighted	79
⑨		Memory key	Use this key to save stitch pattern combinations.	177-178
⑩		Elongation key	When 7mm satin stitch patterns are selected, press this key to choose from 5 automatic length settings, without changing the stitch zigzag width or stitch length settings.	166
⑪		Needle mode selection key (Single/Double)	Press this key to choose single needle sewing or twin needle sewing.	60
⑫		Size selection key	Use this key to select the size of the stitch pattern (large, small).	166
⑬		Vertical mirror image key	After selecting the stitch pattern, use this key to create a vertical mirror image of the stitch pattern.	166
⑭		Horizontal mirror image key	After selecting the stitch pattern, use this key to create a horizontal mirror image of the stitch pattern.	167
⑮		Single/Repeat sewing key	Press this key to choose single stitches or continuous stitches.	167
⑯		Back to beginning key	When sewing is stopped, press this key to return to the beginning of the pattern.	168
⑰		Image key	Press this key to display an enlarged image of the selected stitch pattern.	168
⑱		Home key	Press this key to return to the home page screen.	28
⑲		Screen lock key	Press this key to lock the screen. When the screen is locked, the various settings, such as the stitch width and stitch length, are locked and cannot be changed. Press this key again to unlock the settings.	86
⑳		Thread density key	After selecting the stitch pattern, use this key to change the thread density of the pattern.	167
㉑		Character spacing key	Press this key to change the spacing of character patterns.	160

Changing the Size

Select a stitch pattern, then press L S to change the size of the stitch pattern. The stitch pattern will be sewn in the size highlighted on the key.

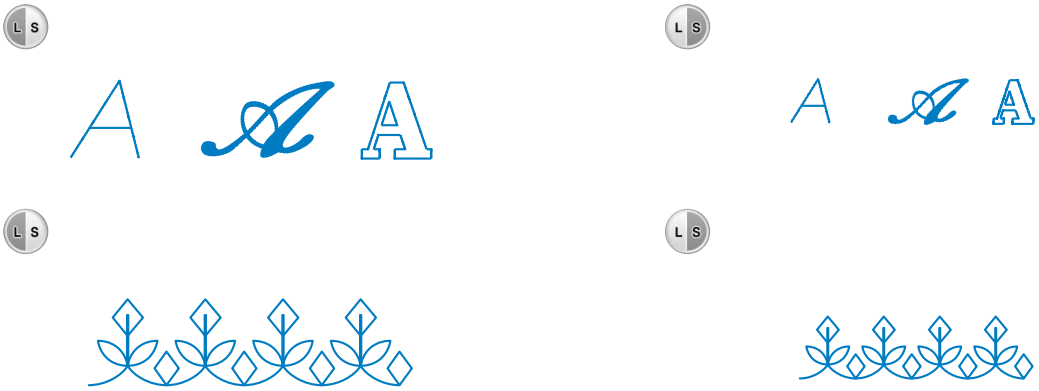


Memo

- If you continue entering stitch patterns after changing the size, those patterns will also be sewn in that size.
- You cannot change the size of combined stitch patterns once the stitch pattern is entered.

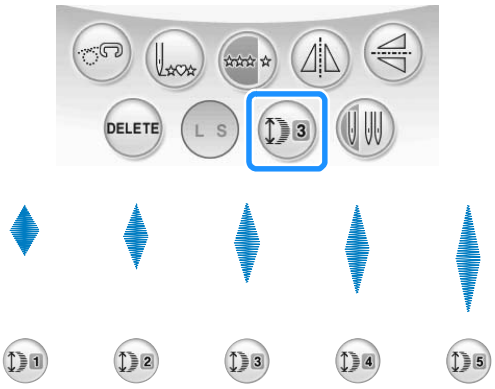
Actual Stitch Pattern Size

* The size differs depending on the fabric and threads.



Changing the Length (for 7mm Satin Stitch Patterns Only)

When 7mm satin stitch patterns are selected, press 3 to choose from 5 automatic length settings, without changing the stitch zigzag width or stitch length settings.

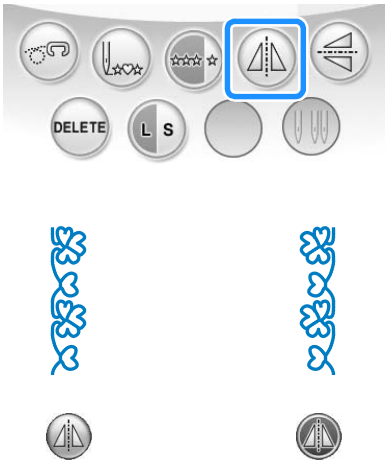


Creating a Vertical Mirror Image

To create a vertical mirror image, select a stitch pattern then press .

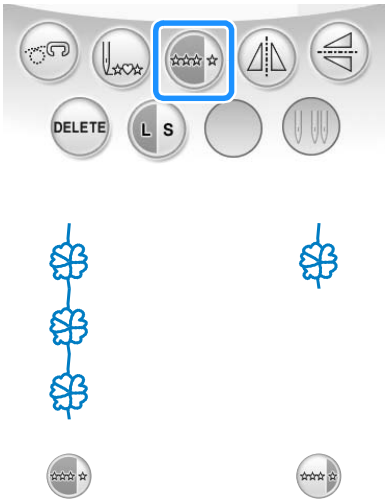
Creating a Horizontal Mirror Image

To create a horizontal mirror image, select a stitch pattern then press .



Sewing a Pattern Continuously

Press to select continuous sewing or single stitch sewing.

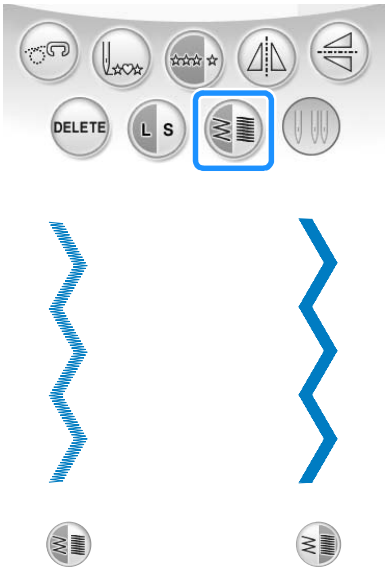


Memo

- To finish a complete motif while sewing the pattern continuously, you can press the key while sewing. The machine will automatically stop when the motif is finished.

Changing Thread Density (for Satin Stitch Patterns Only)

After selecting a satin stitch pattern, press to select your preferred thread density.



CAUTION

- **If the stitches bunch when thread density is changed to , return the thread density to . If you continue sewing when the stitches are bunched, the needle may bend or break.**

Memo

- Even if you select a new pattern after changing the thread density, the thread density remains the same until you change it.
- You cannot change thread density for a combined pattern after additional patterns are added.

Returning to the Beginning of the Pattern

When sewing character/decorative stitches, you can return to the beginning of the pattern after trial sewing or when the stitching is sewn incorrectly.

1 **Press the “Start/Stop” button to stop the machine, and then press .**

→ Sewing returns to the beginning of the selected pattern (“W”) from the point where sewing was stopped.

Memo

- If this key is pressed when sewing is stopped, patterns can be added at the end of a combined stitch pattern. (In this example, “!” is added.)

2 **Press the “Start/Stop” button to continue sewing.**

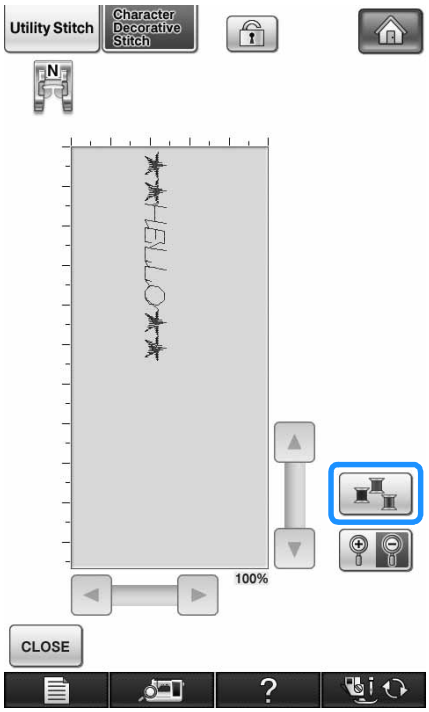
Checking the Image

You can display an approximate size image of the selected stitch pattern. You can also check and change the colors of the image on the screen.

1 **Press .**

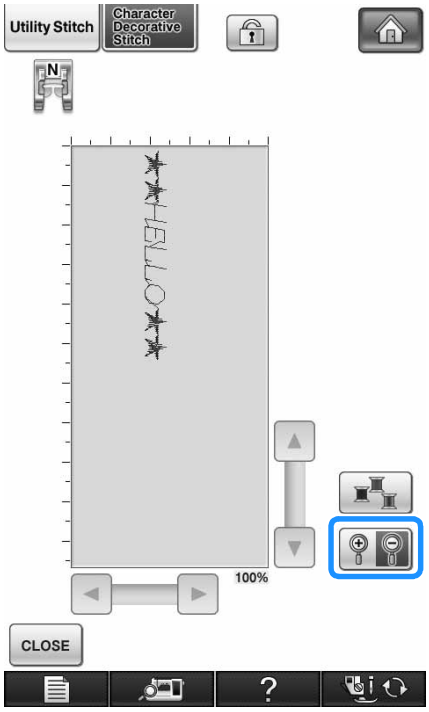
→ An image of the selected pattern is displayed.

2 **Press to change the thread color in the image to red, blue, or black.**

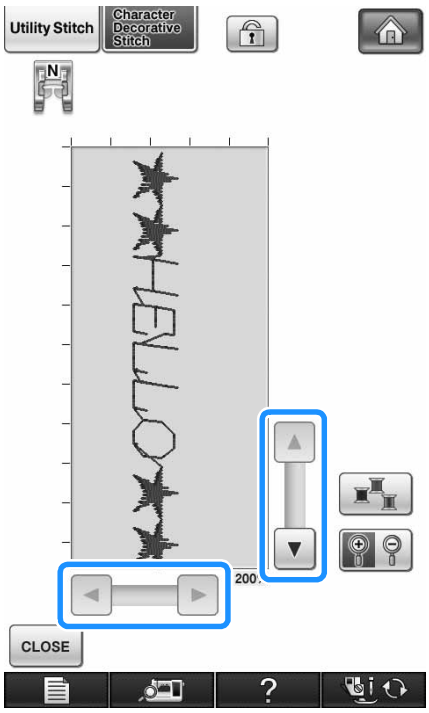


→ The color changes every time you press the button.

3 Press to display the enlarged image.



4 Use ▲ / ▼ / ◄ / ► to view any part of the image that extends out of the viewable display area.



5 Press CLOSE to return to the original screen.

Memo

- You can also sew from this screen when the presser foot symbol is displayed.
- Image of some patterns will display in default size only.

COMBINING STITCH PATTERNS

You can combine many varieties of stitch patterns, such as character stitches, cross stitches, satin stitches, or stitches you design with MY CUSTOM STITCH function (see chapter 8 for information about MY CUSTOM STITCH). You can also combine stitch patterns of different sizes, mirror image stitch patterns, and others.

Before Combining

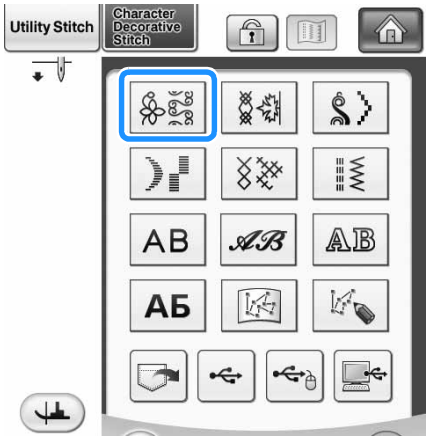
Single stitch sewing is automatically selected for sewing combined patterns. If you want to sew the pattern continuously, press after finishing the stitch pattern combination.

When changing sizes, creating mirror images, or making other adjustments to a combined stitch pattern, be sure to edit the selected stitch pattern before selecting the next one. You cannot edit a stitch pattern once the next stitch pattern is selected.

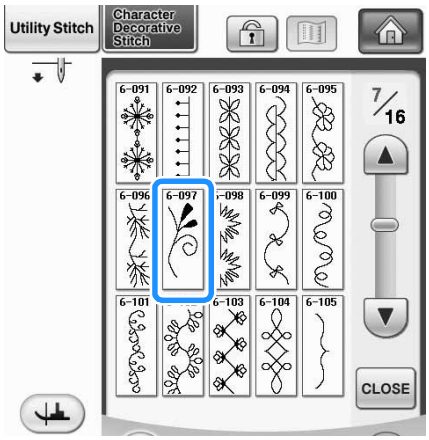
Combining Various Stitch Patterns

Example:

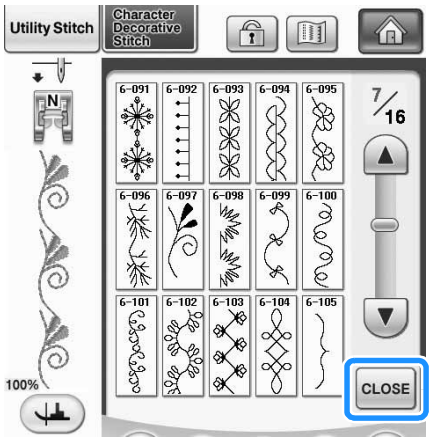
1 **Press** .



2 **Select** .

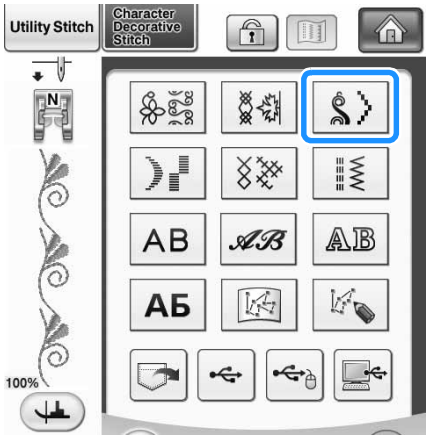


3 **Press** .

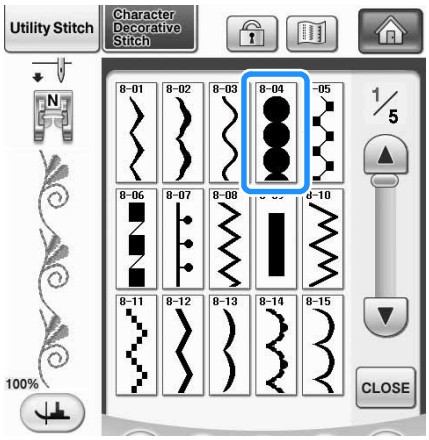


→ The display returns to the stitch selection screen.

4 Press .

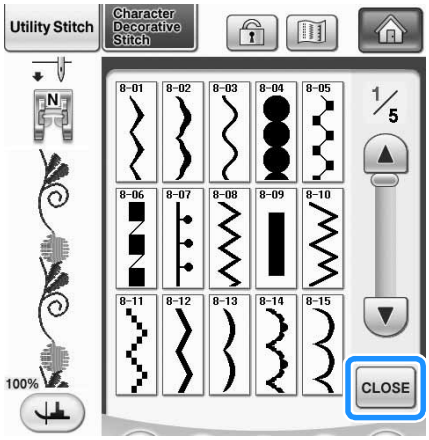


5 Select .



6 Press to sew the pattern continuously.

7 Press CLOSE.

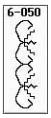


Memo

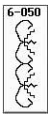
- Patterns are deleted individually starting with the last pattern entered by pressing .

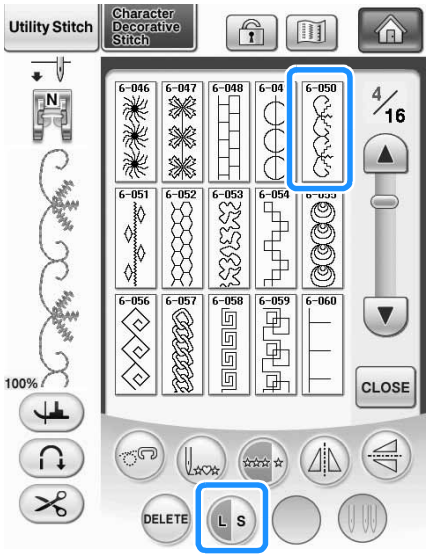
Combining Large and Small Stitch Patterns

Example:

1 Press  .

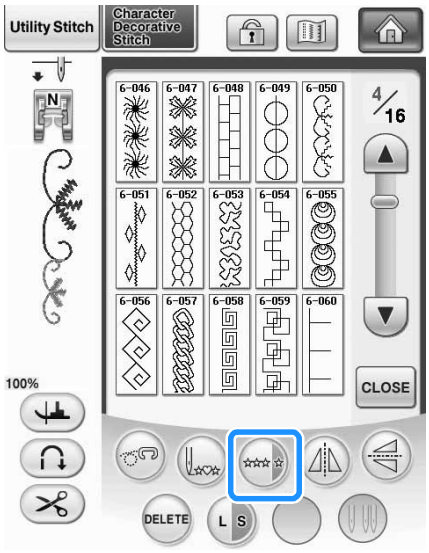
→ The large size stitch will be selected.

2 Press  again, then press to select the small size.



→ The pattern is displayed in a smaller size.

3 **Press** **to sew continuously.**



→ The entered pattern is repeated.

Combining Horizontal Mirror Image Stitch Patterns

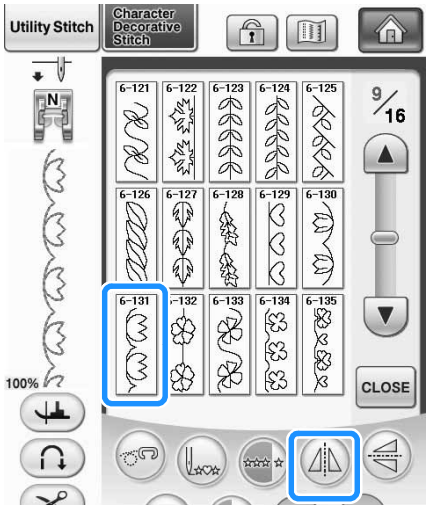
Example:

1 **Press**

.

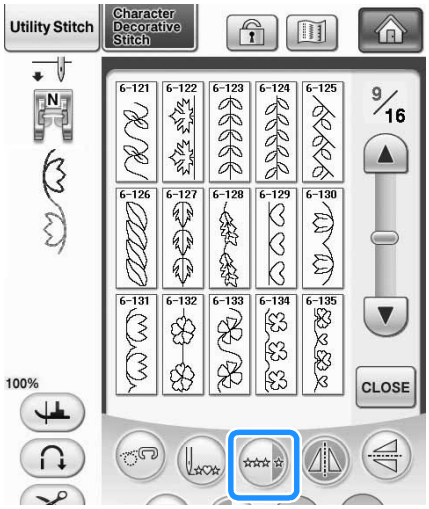
2 **Press**

again, then press .



→ The pattern is flipped along a vertical axis.

3 **Press** .



→ The entered pattern is repeated.

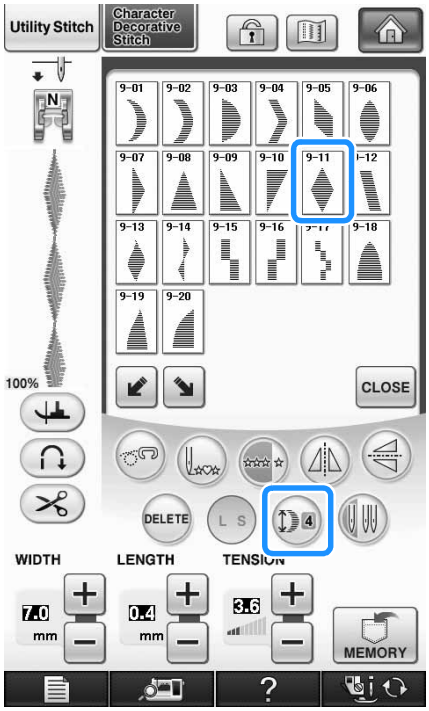
Combining Stitch Patterns of Different Length

Example:

1 **Press** 9-11 **, then press** ③ **once.**

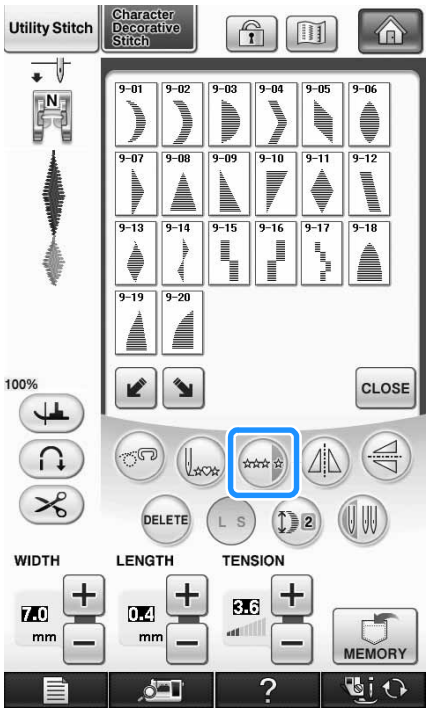
→ The length of the image is set to ④.

2 **Select** 9-11 **again, then press** ④ **3 times.**



→ The length of the image is set to ②.

3 **Press** ☆☆☆ **.**



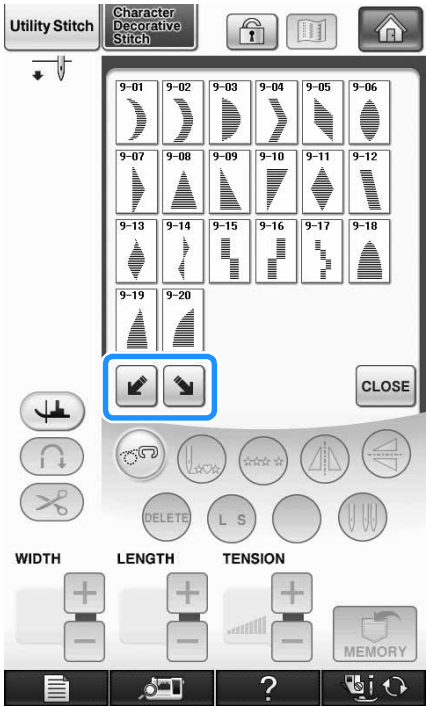
→ The entered pattern is repeated.

Making Step Stitch Patterns (for 7mm Satin Stitch Patterns Only)

You can use the [↙] [↘] keys with 7mm satin stitch patterns to create a step effect.

Stitch patterns sewn so that they create a step effect are called step stitch patterns.

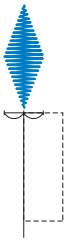
* Press [↙] to move the stitch pattern a distance equal to half of the stitch pattern's size to the left.
* Press [↘] to move the stitch pattern a distance equal to half of the stitch pattern's size to the right.



Example:

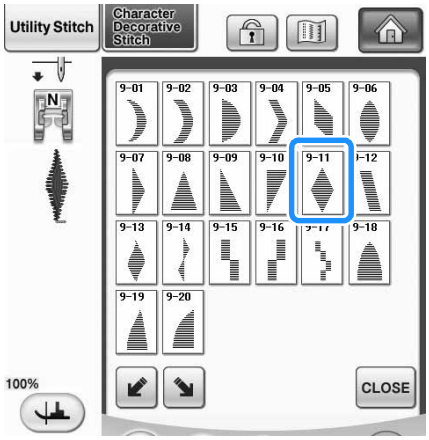
1 **Press** [9-11] **.**

2 **Press** [↘] **.**



→ The next stitch pattern will move to the right.

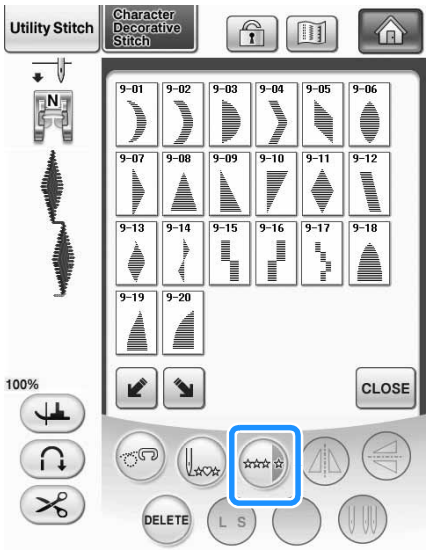
3 **Press** [9-11] **again.**



4 **Press** [↙] **.**

→ The next stitch pattern will move to the left.

5 **Press** .



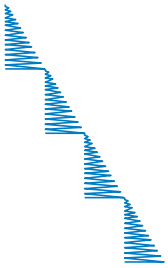
→ The entered pattern is repeated.

■ More Examples

Press 9-15 → → 9-16 → → → .

Press 9-09 → → → 9-09 → 9-10 → → → 9-10 → .

Press 9-09 → → → → .



Press 9-06 → 9-06 → → → 9-11 → 9-11 → → → → .

USING THE MEMORY FUNCTION

Stitch Data Precautions

Observe the following precautions when using stitch data other than that created and saved in this machine.

■ Types of Stitch Data that can be Used

- In the Character/Decorative Stitch memory, ".pmx" and ".pmu" stitch data files can be used with this machine. ".pmu" stitch data files can be retrieved; however, when the machine is used to save the file, it is saved as a ".pmx" stitch data file. Using data other than that created using this machine or the machine which create ".pmu" data file, may cause the machine to malfunction.

■ Types of USB Devices/Media that can be Used

Stitch data can be saved to or recalled from USB external media. Use external media that meets the following specifications.

- USB Flash drive (USB Flash memory)
- USB Floppy disk drive

Stitch data can be recalled only from;

- USB CD-ROM, CD-R, CD-RW drives

You can also use the following types of USB media with the USB Memory Card Reader/USB card writer module.

- Secure Digital (SD) Card
- CompactFlash
- Memory Stick
- Smart Media
- Multi Media Card (MMC)
- XD-Picture Card

Note

- Some USB media may not be usable with this machine. Please visit our website for more details.
- The access lamp will begin blinking after inserting USB Devices/Media, and it will take about 5 to 6 seconds to recognize the Devices/Media. (Time will differ depending on the USB Device/Media).

- To create file folders, use a computer.

■ Computers and Operating Systems with the Following Specifications can be Used

- Compatible models:
  IBM PC with a USB port as standard equipment
  IBM PC-compatible computer equipped with a USB port as standard equipment
- Compatible operating systems:
  Microsoft Windows XP, Windows Vista, Windows 7

■ Precautions on Using the Computer to Create and Save Data

- If the name of the stitch data file/folder cannot be identified, for example, because the name contains special characters, the file/folder is not displayed. If this occurs, change the name of the file/folder. We recommend using the 26 letters of the alphabet (uppercase and lowercase), the numbers 0 through 9, "-", and "_".
- Stitch data in a folder created in USB media can be retrieved.
- Do not create folders in "Removable Disk" on a computer. If stitch data is stored in a folder in "Removable Disk", that stitch data cannot be retrieved by the machine.

Saving Stitch Patterns in the Machine's Memory

You can save often used stitch patterns in the machine's memory. A total of about 1 MB of stitch patterns can be saved in the machine's memory.

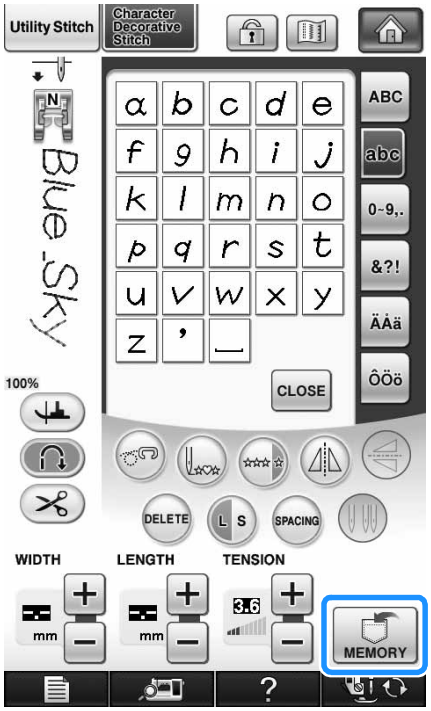
Note

- Do not turn the main power to OFF while the "Saving" screen is displayed. You will lose the stitch pattern you are saving.

Memo

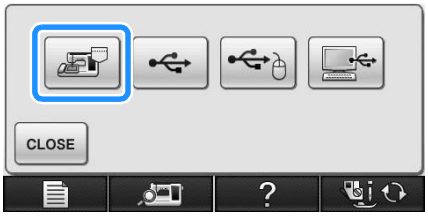
- It takes a few seconds to save a stitch pattern.
- See page 180 for information on retrieving a saved stitch pattern.

1 **Press** MEMORY.



2 **Press** .

* Press CLOSE to return to the original screen without saving.



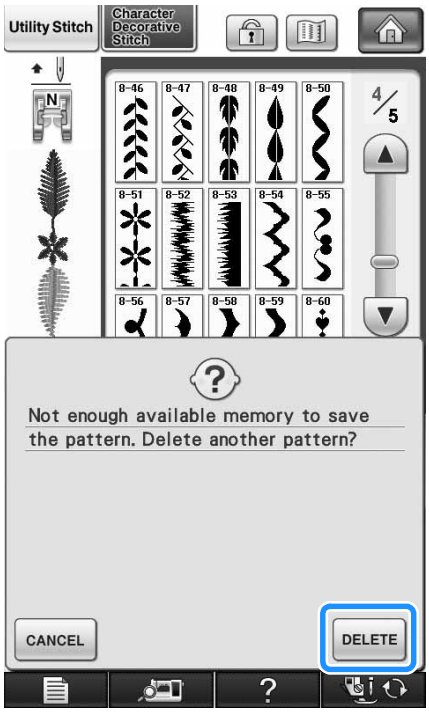
→ The "Saving" screen is displayed. When the pattern is saved, the display returns to the original screen automatically.

■ If the Memory is Full

If the following screen appears while you are trying to save a pattern on the machine's memory, the memory is too full to hold the currently selected stitch pattern. To save the stitch pattern in the machine's memory, you have to delete a previously saved stitch pattern.

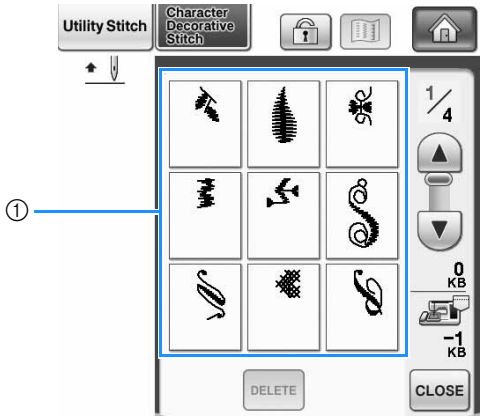
1 **Press** DELETE.

* Press CANCEL to return to the original screen without saving.



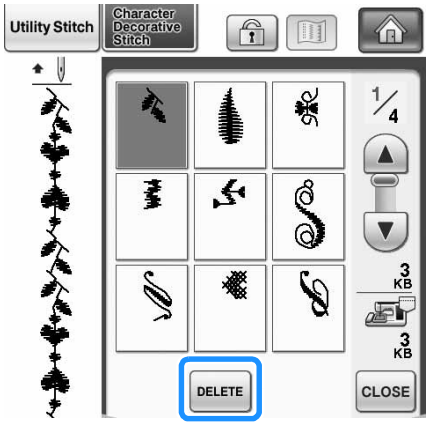
2 **Choose a stitch pattern to delete.**

* Press CLOSE if you decide not to delete the stitch pattern.



① Pockets holding saved stitch patterns

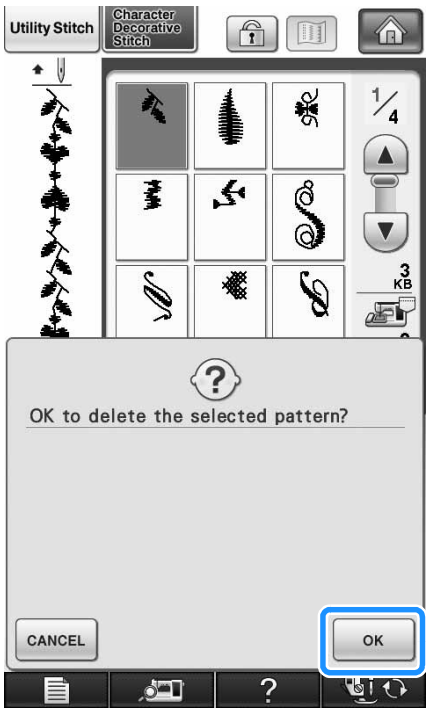
3 **Press** DELETE.



→ A confirmation message appears.

4 **Press** OK.

* If you decide not to delete the stitch pattern, press CANCEL.



→ The machine deletes the stitch pattern, then automatically saves the new stitch pattern.

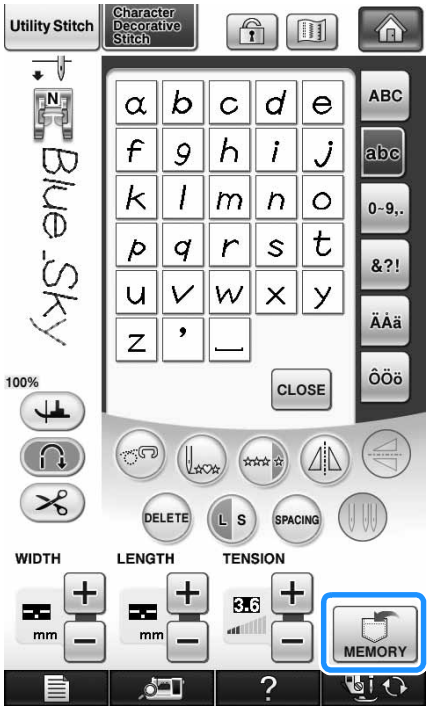
Saving Stitch Patterns to USB Media

When sending stitch patterns from the machine to USB media, plug the USB media into the machine's top USB port.

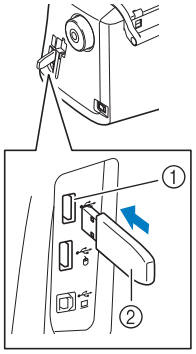
Memo

- USB media is commercially available, but some USB media may not be usable with this machine. Please visit our website for more details.
- Depending on the type of USB media being used, either directly plug the USB device into the machine's USB port or plug the USB media Reader/Writer into the machine's USB port.
- The USB media can be inserted or removed at any time.

1 **Press** MEMORY.



2 **Insert the USB media into the primary (top) USB port on the machine.**

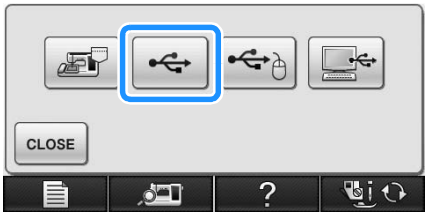


① Primary (top) USB port for media
② USB media

Note
- The processing speed may vary by port selection and quantity of data. You can also plug a USB media into the center port, but the primary (top) USB port will process the data faster. It is recommended to use the primary (top) USB port.
- Two USB media cannot be used with this machine at the same time. If two USB media are inserted, only the USB media inserted first is detected.

3 **Press** **.**

* Press CLOSE to return to the original screen without saving.



→ The "Saving" screen is displayed. When the pattern is saved, the display returns to the original screen automatically.

Note
- Do not insert or remove USB media while "Saving" screen is displayed. You will lose some or all of the pattern you are saving.

Saving Stitch Patterns in the Computer

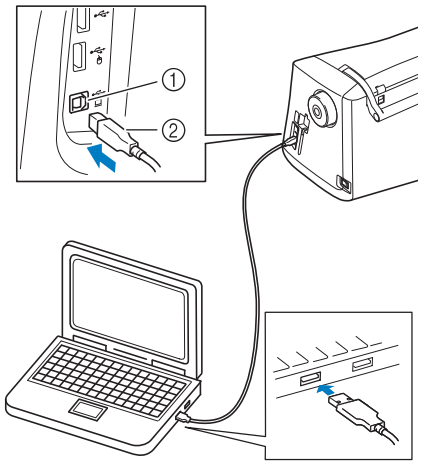
Using the included USB cable, the machine can be connected to your computer, and the stitch patterns can be temporarily retrieved from and saved in the "Removable Disk" folder in your computer. A total of about 3 MB of stitch patterns can be saved in the "Removable disk", but the saved stitch patterns are deleted when the machine is turned OFF.

Note
- Do not turn the main power to OFF while the "Saving" screen is displayed. You will lose the stitch pattern you are saving.

1 **Plug the USB cable connector into the corresponding USB ports for the computer and for the machine.**

2 **Turn on your computer and select "Computer (My computer)".**

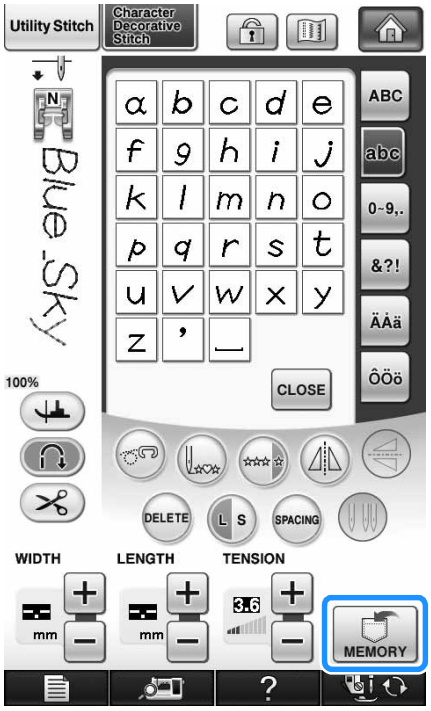
* The USB cable can be plugged into the USB ports on the computer and machine whether or not they are turned on.



① USB port for computer
② USB cable connector
→ The "Removable Disk" icon will appear in "Computer (My computer)" on the computer.

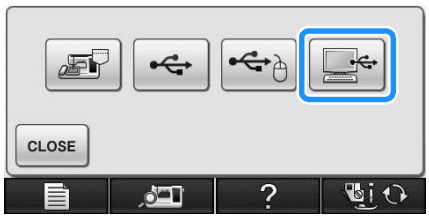
Note
- The connectors on the USB cable can only be inserted into a port in one direction. If it is difficult to insert the connector, do not insert it with force and check the orientation of the connector.
- For details on the position of the USB port on the computer (or USB hub), refer to the instruction manual for the corresponding equipment.

3 **Press** MEMORY.



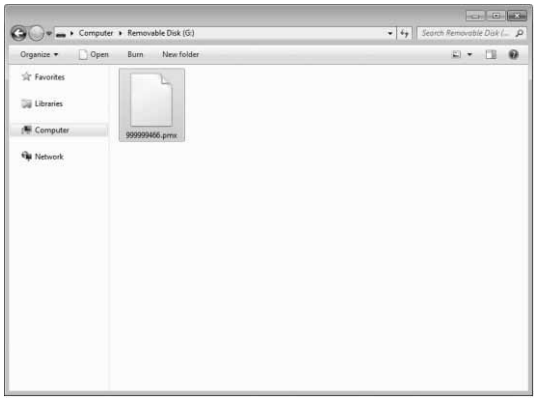
4 **Press** .

* Press CLOSE to return to the original screen without saving.



→ The stitch pattern will be temporarily saved to "Removable Disk" under "Computer (My computer)".

5 **Select the stitch pattern's .pmx file and copy the file to the computer.**

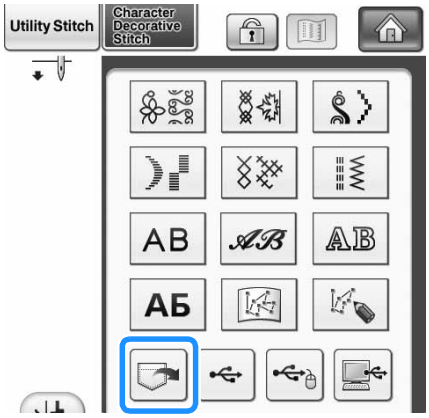


Note

- Do not turn off the machine while the "Saving" screen is showing. You may lose the data.

Retrieving Stitch Patterns from the Machine's Memory

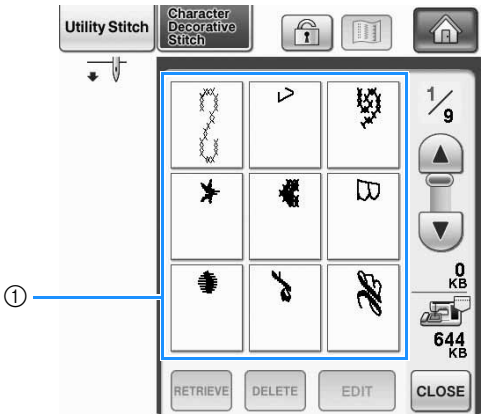
1 **Press** .



→ The pocket selection screen appears.

2 Choose a stitch pattern to retrieve.

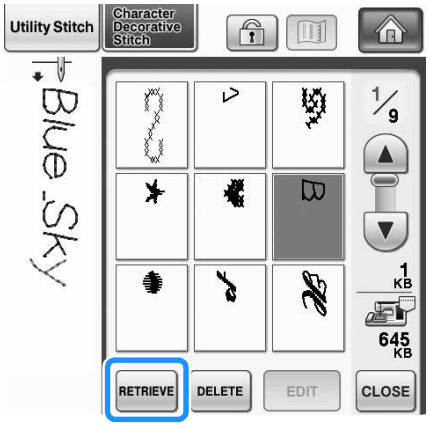
* If the entire saved stitch pattern is not displayed, press the thumbnail.
* Press CLOSE to return to the original screen without saving.



① Saved stitch patterns

3 Press RETRIEVE.

* Press DELETE to delete the stitch pattern.

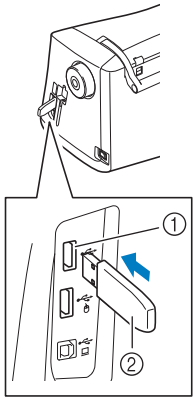


→ The selected stitch pattern is retrieved and the sewing screen will be displayed.

Recalling from USB Media

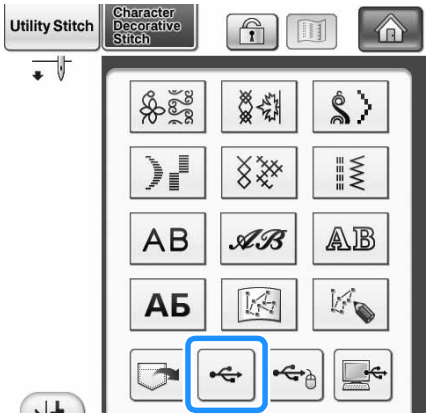
You can recall a specific stitch pattern from either direct USB media or a folder in the USB media. If the stitch pattern is in a folder, check each folder to find the stitch pattern.

1 Insert the USB Media into the primary (top) USB port on the machine (see page 178).



① Primary (top) USB port for media
② USB media

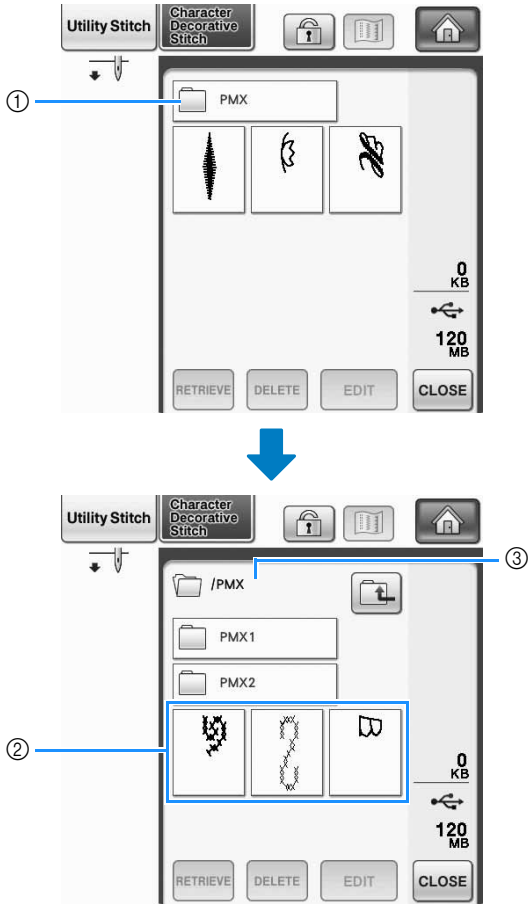
2 Press .



→ Stitch patterns and a folder in a top folder are displayed.

3 **Press [ ] when there is a subfolder to sort two or more stitch patterns to USB media, the stitch pattern in the subfolder is displayed.**

* Press [CLOSE] to return to the original screen without recalling.



① Folder name

② Stitch patterns in a folder show only the first pattern of any combined patterns.

③ Path

→ The path shows the current folder at the top of the list.
Stitch patterns and a subfolder within a folder are displayed.

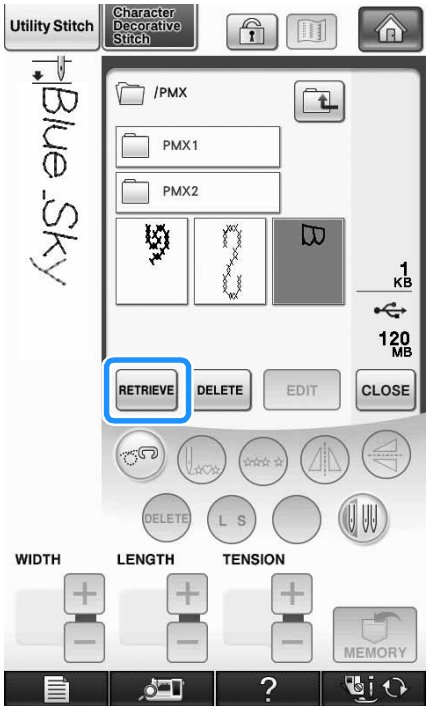
* Press [ ] to return to the previous folder.

* Use the computer to create folders. Folders cannot be created with the machine.

4 **Press the key of the stitch pattern you want to recall.**

5 **Press [RETRIEVE].**

* Press [DELETE] to delete the stitch pattern. The pattern will be deleted from the USB media.

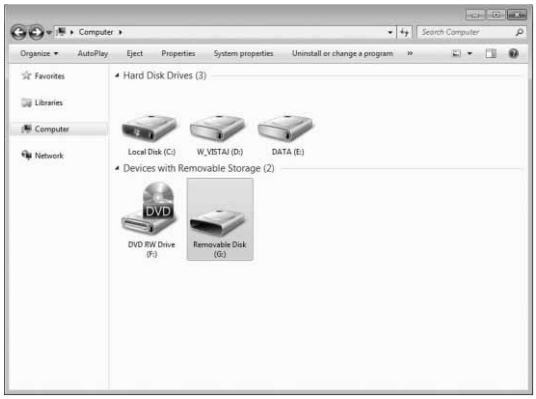


→ The selected stitch pattern is recalled and the sewing screen will be displayed.

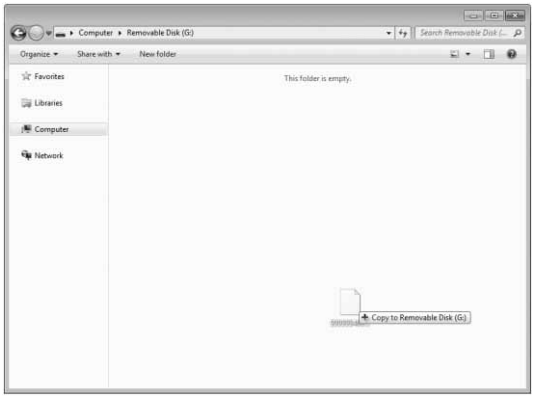
Recalling from the Computer

1 **Plug the USB cable connector into the corresponding USB ports for the computer and for the machine (see page 179).**

2 **On the computer, open "Computer (My computer)" then go to "Removable Disk".**



3 Move/copy the pattern data to “Removable Disk”.

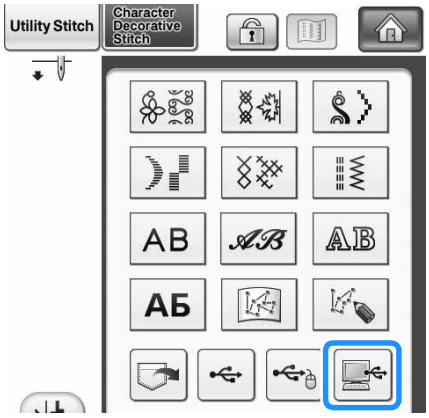


→ Stitch pattern data in “Removable Disk” is written to the machine.

Note

- While data is being written, do not disconnect the USB cable.
- Do not create folders within “Removable Disk”. Since folders are not displayed, stitch pattern data within folders cannot be recalled.

4 Press .



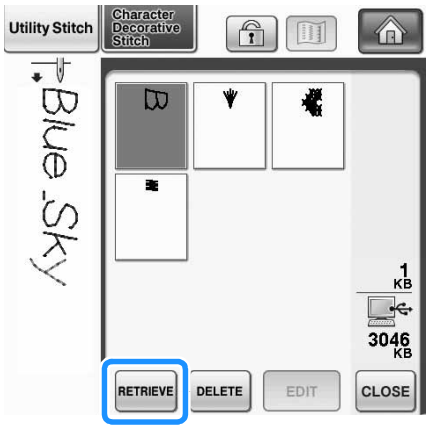
→ The stitch patterns in the computer are displayed on the selection screen.

5 Press the key of the stitch pattern you want to recall.

* Press CLOSE to return to the original screen without recalling.

6 Press RETRIEVE.

* Press DELETE to delete the stitch pattern.
The pattern will be deleted from the “Removable Disk” folder in your computer.



→ The selected stitch pattern is recalled and the sewing screen will be displayed.

Note

- The pattern recalled from the computer is only temporarily written to the machine. It is erased from the machine when the machine is turned off. If you wish to keep the stitch pattern, store it in the machine (“Saving Stitch Patterns in the Machine’s Memory” on page 177).

Chapter 5
Embroidery

BEFORE EMBROIDERING 186

Embroidery Step by Step 186
Attaching Embroidery Foot "W" 187
Attaching the Embroidery Unit 188
■ About the Embroidery Unit 188
■ Removing the Embroidery Unit 189

SELECTING PATTERNS 190

■ Copyright Information 190
■ Pattern Selection Screens 191
Selecting Embroidery Patterns/Brother "Exclusives"/Greek Alphabet Patterns/Floral Alphabet Patterns/Utility Embroidery Patterns 193
Selecting Alphabet Character Patterns 194
Selecting Frame Patterns 196
Selecting Patterns from Embroidery Cards 197
■ About Embroidery Card Reader (Sold Separately) and USB Card Writer Module* 197
■ About Embroidery Cards (Sold Separately) 197
Selecting Patterns from USB Media/Computer 197

VIEWING THE SEWING SCREEN 198

■ Key Functions 199

PREPARING THE FABRIC 200

Attaching Iron-on Stabilizers (Backing) to the Fabric 200
Hooping the Fabric in the Embroidery Frame 202
■ Types of Embroidery Frames 202
■ Inserting the Fabric 203
■ Using the Embroidery Sheet 204
Embroidering Small Fabrics or Fabric Edges 205
■ Embroidering Small Fabrics 205
■ Embroidering Edges or Corners 205
■ Embroidering Ribbons or Tape 205

ATTACHING THE EMBROIDERY FRAME 206

■ Removing the Embroidery Frame 207

CONFIRMING THE PATTERN POSITION 208

Aligning the Embroidering Position Using the Built-In Camera 208
Display the Fabric While Aligning the Embroidering Position 211
■ Positioning the Pattern on Thick Fabric 213
Using the Built-In Camera to Align the Embroidering Position 213
Checking the Pattern Position 216
Previewing the Completed Pattern 217

SEWING AN EMBROIDERY PATTERN 218

Sewing Attractive Finishes 218
■ Embroidery Needle Plate Cover 219
Sewing Embroidery Patterns 219
Sewing Embroidery Patterns Which Use Appliqué 221

PRINT AND STITCH (COMBINING EMBROIDERY PATTERNS AND PRINTED DESIGNS) 223

Selecting a Pattern 224
■ Checking Only the Embroidery Pattern 224
Outputting the Background Image and Positioning Image 225
■ Using USB Media 225
■ Using a USB Cable 226
Printing the Background and Embroidery Position Sheet 226
Sewing Embroidery Patterns 227

ADJUSTMENTS DURING THE EMBROIDERY PROCESS 229

If the Bobbin Runs Out of Thread 229
If the Thread Breaks During Sewing 230
Restarting from the Beginning 231
Resuming Embroidery After Turning Off the Power 231

MAKING EMBROIDERY ADJUSTMENTS 233

Adjusting Thread Tension 233
■ Correct Thread Tension 233
■ Upper Thread is Too Tight 233
■ Upper Thread is Too Loose 234
Adjusting the Alternate Bobbin Case (with No Color on the Screw) 234
■ Correct Tension 234
■ Bobbin Thread is Too Loose 235
■ Bobbin Thread is Too Tight 235
Using the Automatic Thread Cutting Function (END COLOR TRIM) 235
Using the Thread Trimming Function (JUMP STITCH TRIM) 236
■ Selecting the Length of Jump Stitch Not to Trim 236
Adjusting the Embroidery Speed 237
Changing the Thread Color Display 237
Changing the Embroidery Frame Display 238

REVISING THE PATTERN 240

Moving the Pattern 240
Aligning the Pattern and the Needle 240
Changing the Size of the Pattern 241
Rotating the Pattern 242
Creating a Horizontal Mirror Image 243
Changing the Density (Alphabet Character and Frame Patterns Only) 244
Changing the Colors of Alphabet Character Patterns 245
Embroidering Linked Characters 245
Uninterrupted Embroidering (Using a Single Color) 248

USING THE MEMORY FUNCTION 249

Embroidery Data Precautions 249
■ Types of Embroidery Data that can be Used 249
■ Types of USB Devices/Media that can be Used 249
■ Computers and Operating Systems with the Following Specifications can be Used 250
■ Precautions on Using the Computer to Create and Save Data 250
■ Tajima (.dst) Embroidery Data 250
Saving Embroidery Patterns in the Machine's Memory 251
■ If the Memory is Full 251
Saving Embroidery Patterns to USB Media 252
Saving Embroidery Patterns in the Computer 253
Retrieving Patterns from the Machine's Memory 254
Recalling from USB Media 255
Recalling from the Computer 256

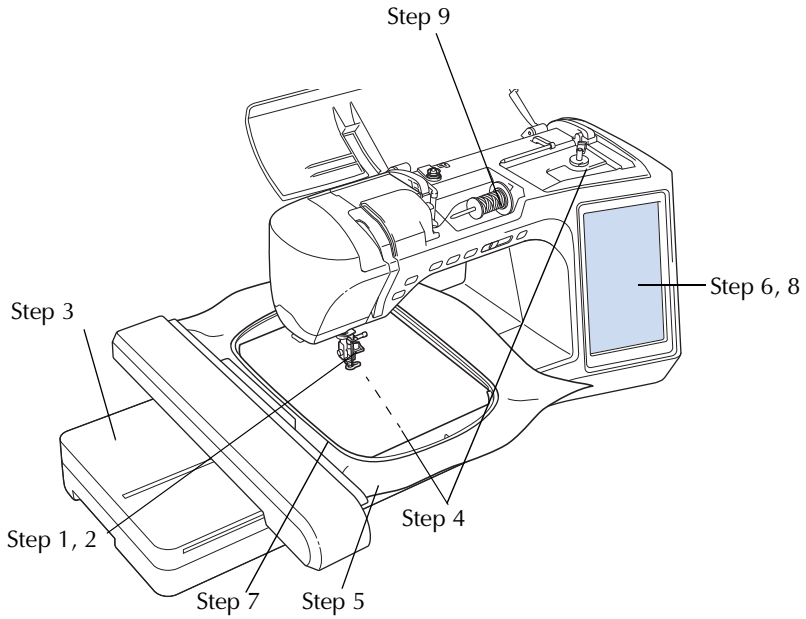
EMBROIDERY APPLICATIONS 258

Using a Frame Pattern to Make an Appliqué (1) 258
Using a Frame Pattern to Make an Appliqué (2) 259
Sewing Split Embroidery Patterns 261

BEFORE EMBROIDERING

Embroidery Step by Step

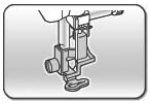
Follow the steps below to prepare the machine for embroidery.



Step #	Aim	Action	Page
1	Presser foot attachment	Attach embroidery foot “W”.	187
2	Checking the needle	Use needle 75/11 for embroidery. *	69
3	Embroidery unit attachment	Attach the embroidery unit.	188
4	Bobbin thread setup	For the bobbin thread, wind embroidery bobbin thread and set it in place.	48
5	Fabric preparation	Attach a stabilizer material to the fabric, and hoop it in the embroidery frame.	200
6	Pattern selection	Turn the main power to ON, and select an embroidery pattern.	190
7	Embroidery frame attachment	Attach the embroidery frame to the embroidery unit.	206
8	Checking the layout	Check and adjust the size and position of the embroidery.	208
9	Embroidery thread setup	Set up embroidery thread according to the pattern.	57

* It is recommended that a 90/14 needle should be used when embroidering on heavy weight fabrics or stabilizing products (for example; denim, puffy foam, etc.). Ball point needle (golden colored) 90/14 is not recommended for embroidery.

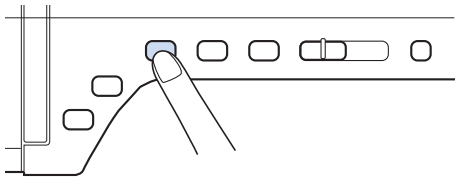
Attaching Embroidery Foot “W”

Press [?] → [Operation Guide] → [Embroidery Basic Operation] →  → [📹] in this order to display a video example of attaching embroidery foot “W” (see page 46). Follow the steps explained below to complete the operation.

⚠ CAUTION

- **When attaching a presser foot, always press [] on the screen. You may accidentally press the “Start/Stop” button and possibly cause injury.**
- **Be sure to use embroidery foot “W” when doing embroidery. Using another presser foot may cause the needle to strike the presser foot, causing the needle to bend or break and possibly cause injury.**

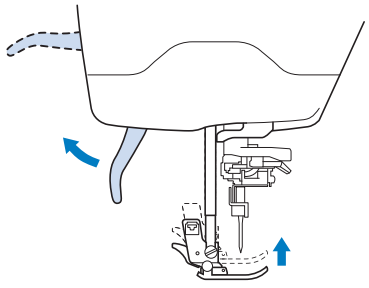
1 Press the “Needle Position” button to raise the needle.



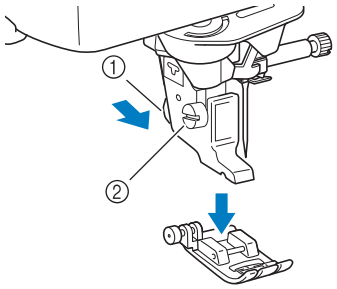
2 Press [].

→ The entire screen becomes white, and all keys and operation buttons are locked.

3 Raise the presser foot lever.

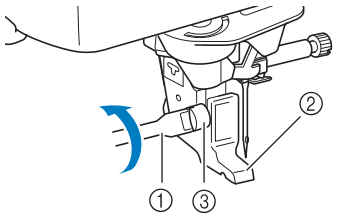


4 Push the black button on the presser foot holder and remove the presser foot.



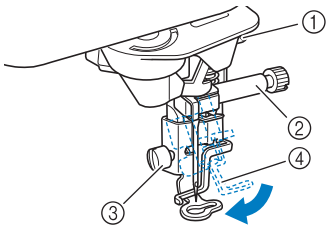
① Black button
② Presser foot holder
→ Remove the presser foot from the presser foot holder.

5 Use the included screwdriver to loosen the screw of the presser foot holder, then remove the presser foot holder.



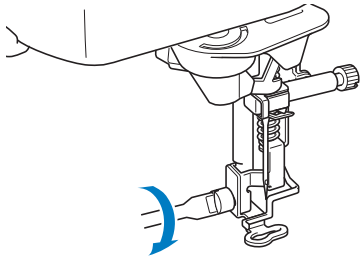
① Screwdriver
② Presser foot holder
③ Presser foot holder screw
→ Remove the presser foot holder.

6 Position embroidery foot “W” on the presser foot bar so that the arm of embroidery foot “W” is behind the needle holder and the wiper is behind the needle.



① Arm
② Needle holder
③ Presser foot holder screw
④ Wiper

7 **Hold the embroidery foot in place with your right hand, and then use the included screwdriver to securely tighten the presser foot holder screw.**



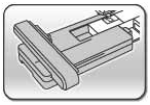
⚠ CAUTION

- **Use the included screwdriver to firmly tighten the screw of the presser foot holder. If the screw is loose, the needle may strike the presser foot and possibly cause injury.**

8 **Press** **to unlock all keys and buttons.**

→ All keys and operation buttons are unlocked, and the previous screen is displayed.

Attaching the Embroidery Unit

Press ? → Operation Guide → Embroidery Basic Operation →  → in this order to display a video example of attaching the embroidery unit (see page 46). Follow the steps explained below to complete the operation.

■ About the Embroidery Unit

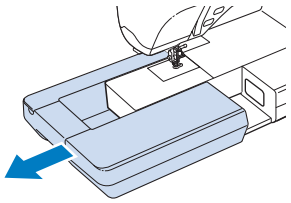
⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not move the machine with the embroidery unit attached. The embroidery unit could fall off and cause injury.**
- **Keep your hands and foreign objects away from the embroidery carriage and frame when the machine is embroidering. Otherwise, injury may result.**
- **To avoid distorting your embroidery design, do not touch the embroidery carriage and frame when the machine is embroidering.**

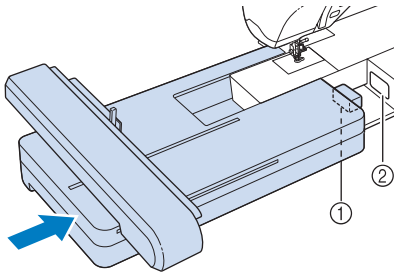
Note

- You can also sew utility/decorative stitches with the embroidery unit attached. Touch and . The feed dog will automatically raise for utility and decorative stitching.
- Be sure to turn off the power before installing the embroidery unit. Otherwise, the machine may be damaged.
- Do not touch the inner connector of the embroidery unit. The pins on the embroidery unit connection may be damaged.
- Do not apply strong force to the embroidery unit carriage or pick up the unit by the carriage. Otherwise, the embroidery unit may be damaged.
- Store the embroidery unit in the proper storage case.

1 **Turn the main power to OFF, and remove the flat bed attachment.**



2 **Insert the embroidery unit connection into the machine connection port. The spring hinge on the connection port cover will allow easy access to the port. Push lightly on the connection port cover until the unit clicks into place.**



① Embroidery unit connection
② Machine connection port

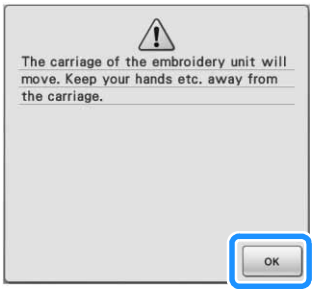
Note

- Be sure there is no gap between the embroidery unit and the sewing machine. If there is a gap, the embroidery patterns will not embroider with the correct registration.
- Do not push on the carriage when installing the embroidery unit onto the machine. Moving the carriage may damage the embroidery unit.

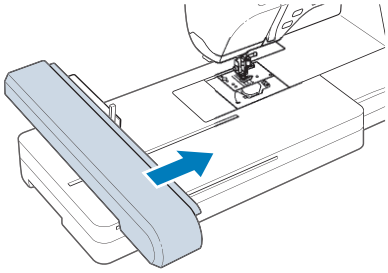
3 **Turn the main power to ON.**

→ The following message will appear.

4 **Press** OK.



→ The carriage will move to the initialization position.



■ Removing the Embroidery Unit

1 **Press either** **or** **, then press** .

→ The carriage will move to the removal position.

⚠ CAUTION

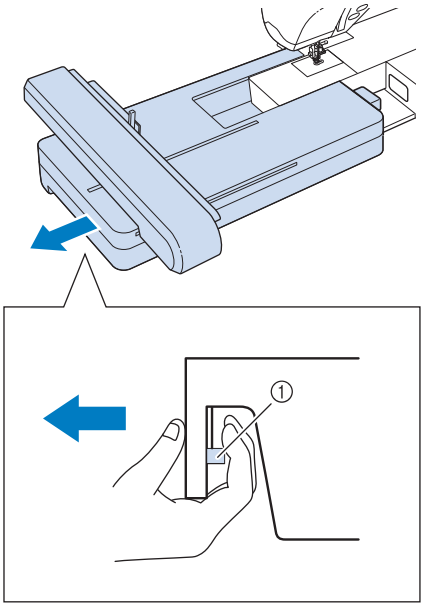
- **Always remove the embroidery frame before pressing** **. Otherwise, the frame may strike the embroidery foot, and possibly cause injury.**
- **The embroidery unit will not fit in the storage case if this step is not done.**

2 **Turn the main power to OFF.**

Note

- Be sure to turn off the machine before removing the embroidery unit, otherwise damage to the machine may result.

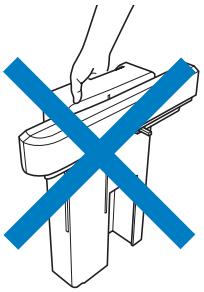
3 **Hold down the release button, and pull the embroidery unit away from the machine.**



① Release button

⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not carry the embroidery unit by holding the release button compartment.**

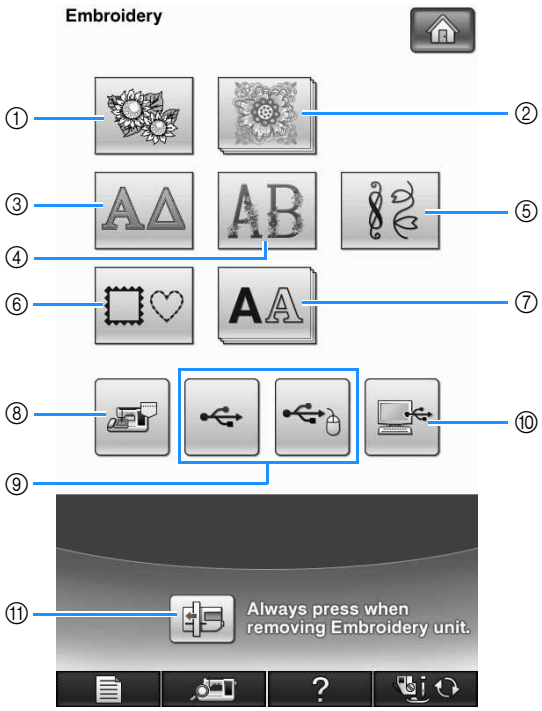


SELECTING PATTERNS

■ Copyright Information

The patterns stored in the sewing machine and embroidery cards are intended for private use only. Any public or commercial use of copyrighted patterns is an infringement of copyright law and is strictly prohibited.
There are many character and decorative embroidery patterns stored in the machine's memory (see the "QUICK REFERENCE GUIDE" for a full summary of patterns in the machine's memory). You can also use patterns from the embroidery cards (sold separately).
Once the machine has finished the initialization and the carriage has moved to the start position, the pattern type selection screen will display.

If another screen is displayed, press , then to display the screen below.



① Embroidery patterns
② Brother "Exclusives"
③ Greek alphabet patterns
④ Floral alphabet patterns
⑤ Utility embroidery patterns
⑥ Frame patterns
⑦ Alphabet characters
⑧ Patterns saved in the machine's memory (see page 254)
⑨ Patterns saved in USB media (see page 255)
⑩ Patterns saved on the computer (see page 256)
⑪ Press this key to position the embroidery unit for storage

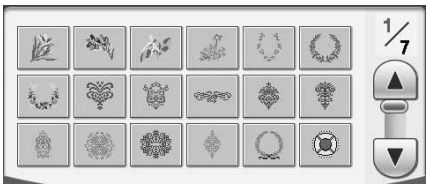
Memo

- A key that appears stacked, such as and , indicates that there are sub-categories, which must be selected before a pattern selection screen appears.

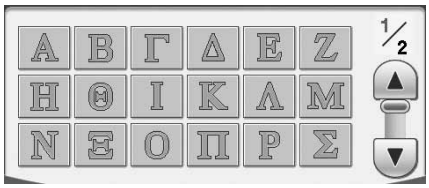
■ Pattern Selection Screens

There are 7 categories of patterns in this machine. If a page number such as 1/2 appears, there is more than one pattern selection screen for that category.

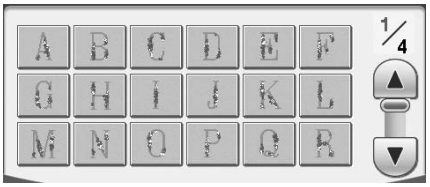
Embroidery patterns



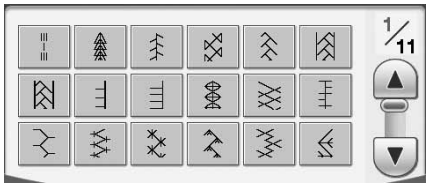
Greek alphabet patterns



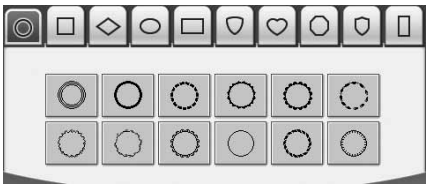
Floral alphabet patterns



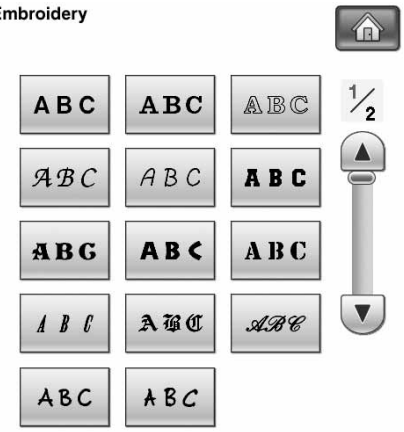
Utility embroidery patterns



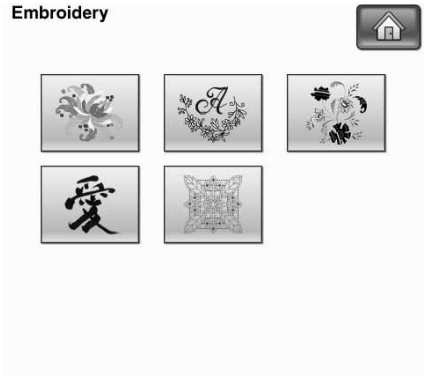
Frame patterns



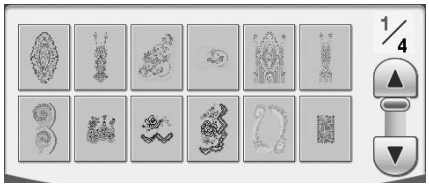
Alphabet characters



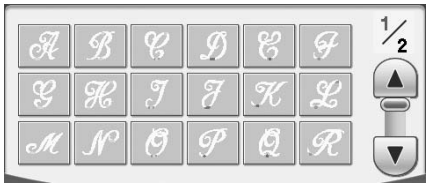
Brother “Exclusives”



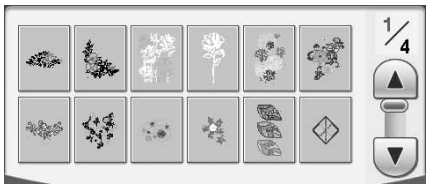
Vintage designs



Monogram designs

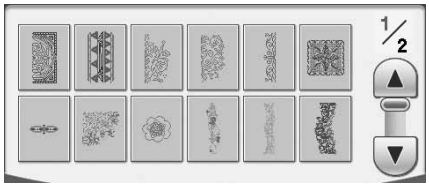


New European designs



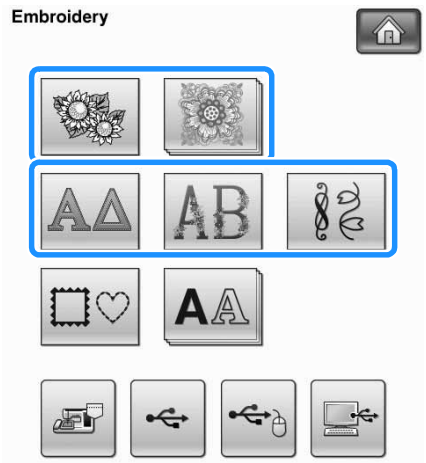
Japanese designs

Quilt designs

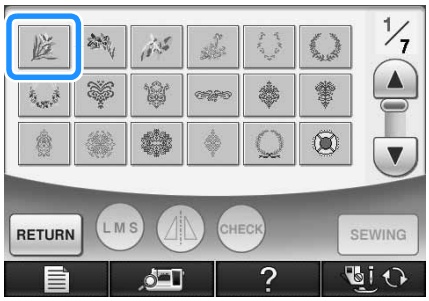


Selecting Embroidery Patterns/ Brother "Exclusives"/Greek Alphabet Patterns/Floral Alphabet Patterns/Utility Embroidery Patterns

1 **Touch the key of the category of the pattern you want to embroider.**



2 **Press the key of the pattern you want to embroider.**



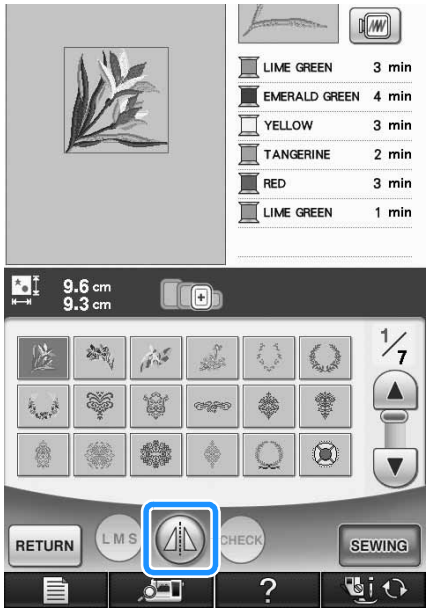
* Press ▼ to view the next page.

* Press ▲ to view the previous page.

→ The selected pattern is displayed.

3 **Press to create a mirror image of the pattern as needed.**

* If a mistake has been made when selecting the pattern, press the key of the pattern you want to embroider and the new selection appears.

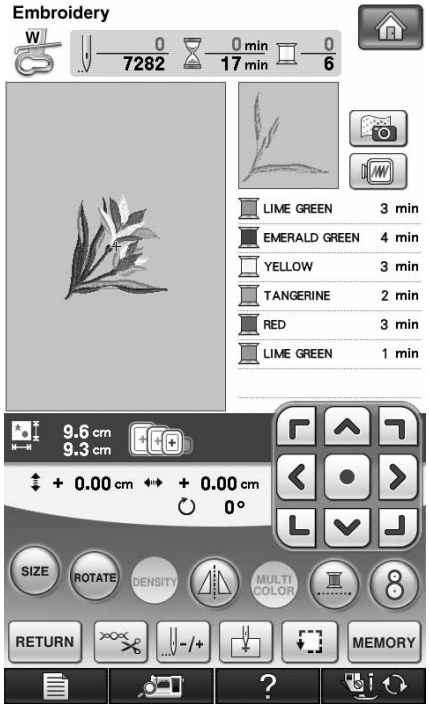


4 **Press SEWING.**

→ The sewing screen is displayed.

5 **Proceed to "VIEWING THE SEWING SCREEN" on page 198 to embroider the pattern.**

* To return to the previous screen to select another pattern, press RETURN.

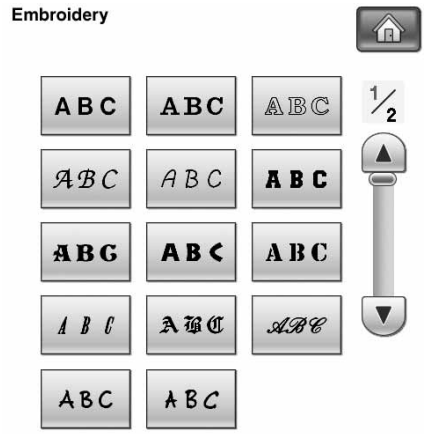


Selecting Alphabet Character Patterns

Example: Entering “Blue Sky”.

1 **Press** .

2 **Press the key of the font you want to embroider.**



3 **Press to change the selection screens.**

Memo

- If you continue adding characters after changing the size, the new characters will be entered in the new size.
- You cannot change the size of the entered characters after combining character stitch patterns.

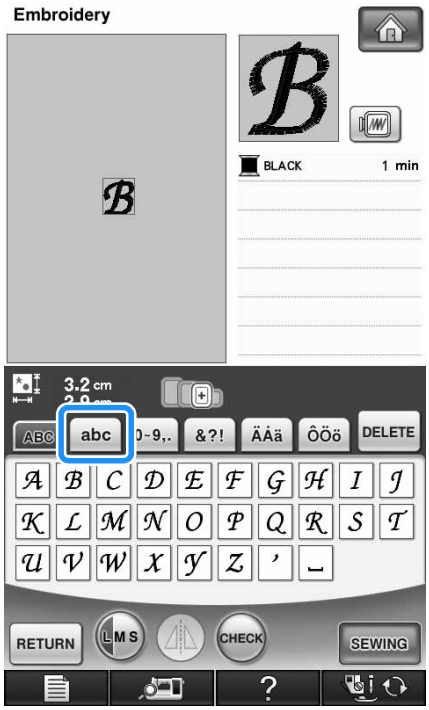
4 **Press** ABC **and then enter “B”.**

* If you want to change the size of a character, select the character and then press LMS to change the size. The size changes each time you press the key, from large to medium to small.

* If you make a mistake, press DELETE to erase the mistake.

* If the pattern is too small to see clearly, you can use the CHECK key to check it.

5 **Press** abc **and enter “lue”.**



6 Press ␣ to enter a space.

7 Press ABC again and enter “S”.

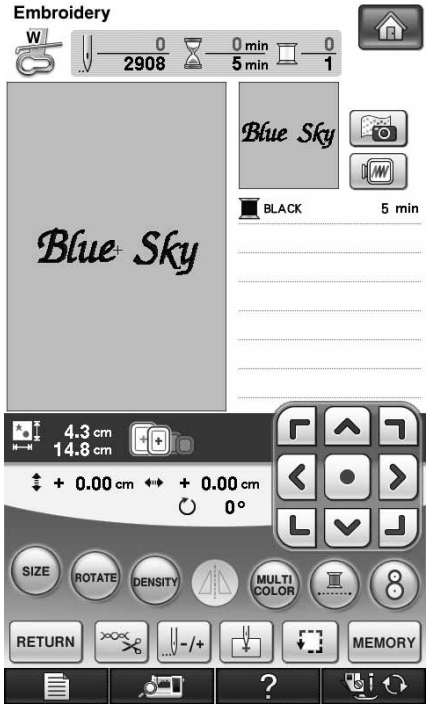
8 Press abc and then enter “ky”.

9 Press SEWING.

→ The sewing screen is displayed.

10 **Proceed to "VIEWING THE SEWING SCREEN" on page 198 to embroider the pattern.**

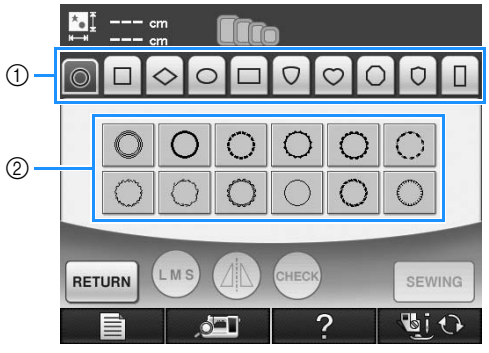
* To return to the previous screen to select another pattern, press RETURN.



Selecting Frame Patterns

1 **Press** .

2 **Press the key of the frame shape you want to embroider in the top part of the screen.**



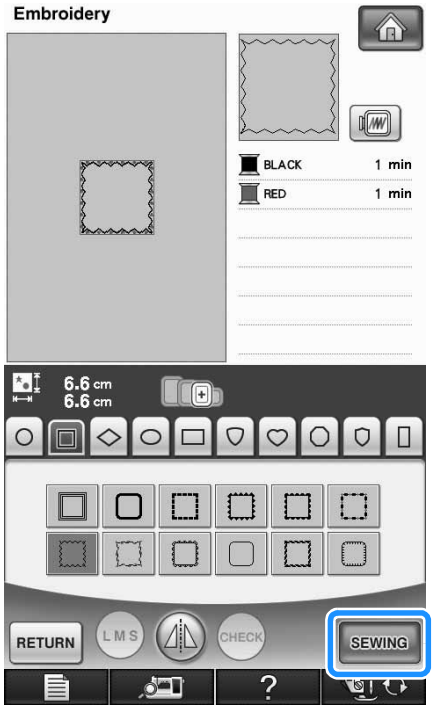
→ Various frame patterns are displayed at the bottom part of the screen.

3 **Press the key of the frame pattern you want to embroider.**

* If you make a mistake selecting the pattern, press the key of the pattern you want to embroider.

→ The selected pattern is displayed on the screen.

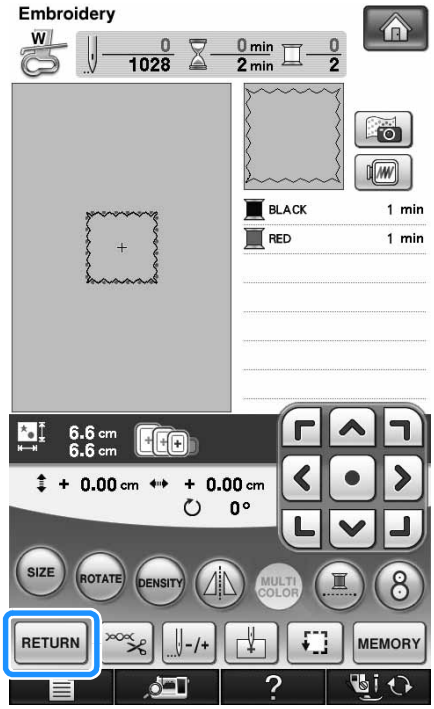
4 **Press** SEWING.



→ The sewing screen is displayed.

5 **Proceed to "VIEWING THE SEWING SCREEN" on page 198 to embroider the pattern.**

* To return to the previous screen to select another pattern, press RETURN.



Selecting Patterns from Embroidery Cards

■ About Embroidery Card Reader (Sold Separately) and USB Card Writer Module*

- Use only an embroidery card Reader designed for this machine. Using an unauthorized embroidery card Reader may cause your machine to operate incorrectly.

* If you have purchased the PE-DESIGN Ver5 or later, PE-DESIGN Lite or PED-BASIC, you can plug the included USB card writer module into the machine as an embroidery card reader, and recall patterns.

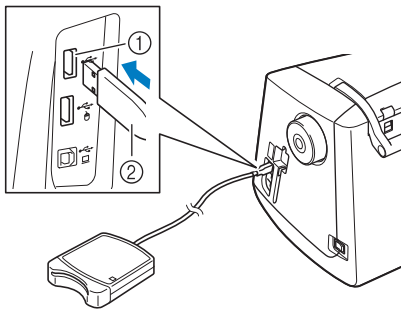
Note

- Embroidery patterns cannot be saved from the machine to an embroidery card inserted into a connected USB card writer module*.

■ About Embroidery Cards (Sold Separately)

- Use only embroidery cards manufactured for this machine. Using unauthorized cards may cause your machine to operate incorrectly.
- Embroidery cards sold in foreign countries cannot be used with this machine.
- Store embroidery cards in the hard case.

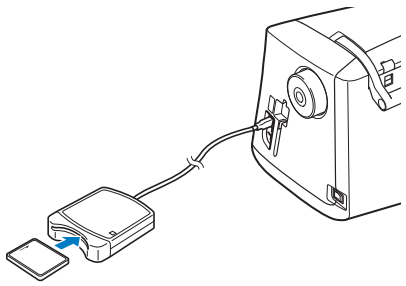
1 Plug the optional embroidery card Reader/USB card writer module* into the primary (top) USB port on the machine.



① Primary (top) USB port
② Embroidery card Reader/USB card writer module*

2 Insert the card completely into the card Reader/USB card writer module*.

* Insert the embroidery card so that the end with a printed arrow is facing up.



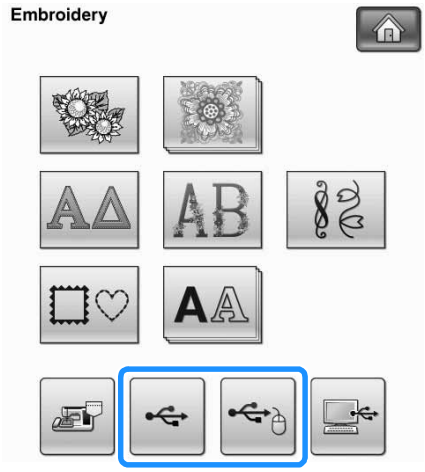
Note

- Two embroidery USB card Readers/USB card writer module* cannot be used with this machine at the same time. If two embroidery USB card Readers/USB card writer module* are inserted, only the embroidery USB card Reader/USB card writer module* inserted first is detected.

Memo

- You can also plug the embroidery card Reader/USB card writer module* into the center port of the machine.

3 Press the key of the USB port that the embroidery card Reader/USB card writer module* is plugged into.



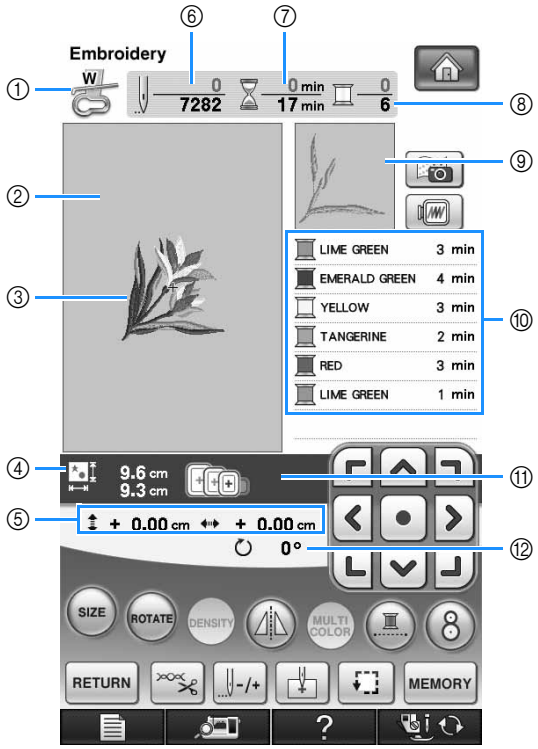
→ The patterns on the embroidery card are displayed on the selection screen.

4 Follow the steps on page 193 to select a pattern.

Selecting Patterns from USB Media/Computer

To recall patterns from the computer or USB media, see pages 255 through 257.

VIEWING THE SEWING SCREEN



① Shows the presser foot code.
Attach embroidery foot “W” for all embroidery projects. When the foot presser symbol is displayed on the screen, you are able to sew.

② Shows the boundary for embroidering with the extra large frame (30 cm × 20 cm (approx. 12 inches × 8 inches)).

③ Shows a preview of the selected pattern.

④ Shows the size of the selected pattern.

⑤ Shows how far the sewing position is from the center (when you move the sewing position).

⑥ Shows how many stitches are in the selected pattern and how many stitches have been sewn so far.

⑦ Shows the time necessary to sew the pattern, and the time already spent sewing the pattern (not including time for changing and automatically trimming the thread).

⑧ Shows the number of colors in the selected pattern, and the number of the color currently being sewn.

⑨ Shows the part of the embroidery that will be sewn with the first thread color.

⑩ Shows the order for thread color changes and the embroidering time for each thread color.

* The displayed time is the approximate time that will be required. The actual embroidering time may be longer than the displayed time, depending on the embroidery frame that is used. In addition, the amount of time required to change thread colors is not included.

⑪ Shows the embroidery frames that can be used for the selected pattern. Be sure to use the proper frame (see page 202).

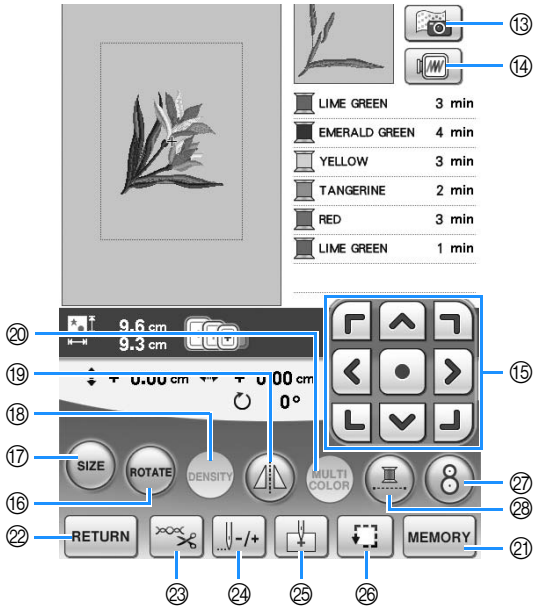
⑫ Shows the degree of rotation of the pattern.

Note

- There is an explanation of additional key functions on the next page.

■ Key Functions

Using these keys, you can change the size of the pattern, rotate the pattern, etc.



Note

- Some operations or functions are not available for certain patterns. If the key display is light gray, you cannot use that function or operation with the selected pattern.

No.	Display	Key Name	Explanation	Page
⑬		Fabric scan key	Press this key to scan the fabric to align the embroidery position.	211
⑭		Image key	Press this key for a preview of the sewn image.	217
⑮		Arrow keys (Center key)	Press an arrow key to move the pattern in the direction shown by the arrow. (Press the Center key to return the pattern to the center of the embroidery area.)	240
⑯	ROTATE	Rotate key	Press this key to rotate the pattern. You can rotate a pattern one degree, 10 degrees or 90 degrees at a time.	242
⑰	SIZE	Size key	Press this key to change the size of the pattern.	241
⑱	DENSITY	Density key	Press this key to change the density of alphabet character or frame patterns.	244
⑲		Horizontal mirror image key	Press this key to create a horizontal mirror image of the pattern.	243
⑳	MULTI COLOR	Multi color key	Press this key to change the color of each letter when sewing alphabet character patterns.	245
㉑	MEMORY	Memory key	Press this key to save a pattern in the machine's memory, USB media or a computer.	251-253
㉒	RETURN	Return key	Press this key to return to the pattern type selection screen.	—
㉓		Cut/Tension key	Press this key to specify automatic thread cutting, thread trimming or the thread tension. For embroidery, these functions are set automatically.	235-236
㉔		Forward/Back key	Press this key to move the needle forward or back in the pattern; useful if the thread breaks while sewing or if you want to start again from the beginning.	230-232
㉕		Starting point key	Press this key to move the needle start position to align the needle with the pattern position.	240
㉖		Trial key	Press this key to check the position of the pattern.The embroidery frame moves to the desired position so you can check that there is enough space to sew the pattern.	216
㉗		Embroidery positioning key	Press this key to align the embroidering position using the built-in camera.	213
㉘		Uninterrupted embroidery key	Press this key to embroider the selected pattern with a single color.	248

PREPARING THE FABRIC

⚠ CAUTION

- **Use fabrics with a thickness of less than 3 mm (approx. 1/8 inch). Using fabrics thicker than 3 mm (approx. 1/8 inch) may cause the needle to break.**
- **When using layers with thicker batting etc., you can sew more attractive embroidery by adjusting the embroidery presser foot height in the embroidery settings screen (see below).**
- **In the case of thick terry cloth towels we recommend that you place a piece of water soluble stabilizer on the top surface of the towel. This will help to reduce the nap of the toweling and result in more attractive embroidery.**

Note

- Press [ ], and select page 6/8 to use [−] and [+] in the Embroidery Foot Height display in the embroidery settings screen. Adjust the presser foot height for thick or puffy fabrics.

- To increase the space between the presser foot and the needle plate, set the embroidery foot height to a larger number, 1.5 mm setting is used for most embroidery.

Attaching Iron-on Stabilizers (Backing) to the Fabric

For best results in your embroidery projects, always use stabilizer material for embroidery. Follow the package instructions for the stabilizer being used.

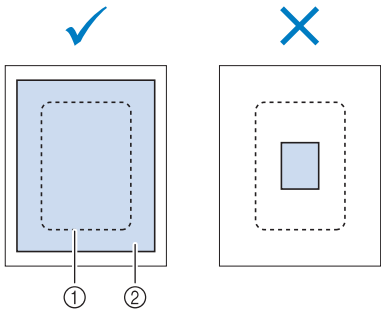
Press [?] → [Operation Guide] → [Embroidery Basic Operation] → → [ ] in this order to display a video example of attaching iron-on stabilizers (backing) to the fabric (see page 46). Follow the steps explained below to complete the operation.

When using fabrics that cannot be ironed (such as towel or fabrics that have loops which expand when ironed) or in places where ironing is difficult, position the stabilizer material under the fabric without fusing it, then position the fabric and stabilizer in the embroidery frame, or check with your authorized dealer for the correct stabilizer to use.

⚠ CAUTION

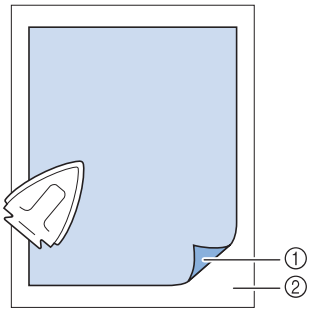
- **Always use a stabilizer material for embroidery when sewing stretch fabrics, lightweight fabrics, fabrics with a coarse weave, or fabrics which cause pattern shrinkage. Otherwise, the needle may break and cause injury. Not using a stabilizer material may result in a poor finish to your project.**

1 Use a piece of stabilizer which is larger than the embroidery frame being used.



① Size of the embroidery frame
② Iron-on stabilizer (backing)

2 Iron the iron-on stabilizer material to the wrong side of the fabric.



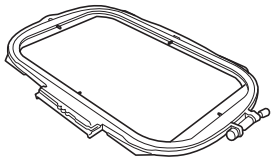
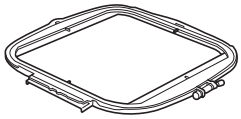
① Fusible side of stabilizer
② Fabric (wrong side)

Memo

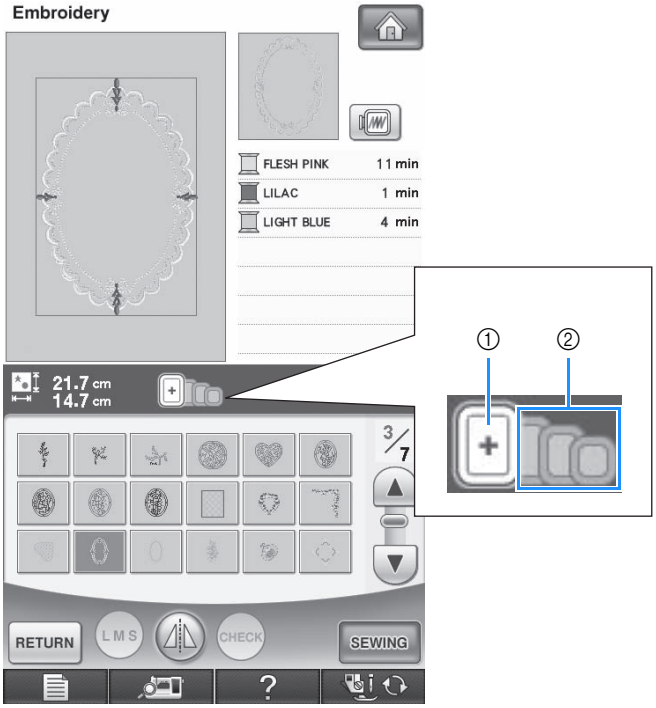
- When embroidering on thin fabrics such as organdy or lawn, or on napped fabrics such as towel or corduroy, use water soluble stabilizer (sold separately) for best results. The water soluble stabilizer material will dissolve completely in water, giving the project a more attractive finish.

Hooping the Fabric in the Embroidery Frame

■ Types of Embroidery Frames

Extra Large	Quilt	Medium	Small
			
Embroidery field 30 cm × 20 cm (approx. 12 inches × 8 inches)	Embroidery field 20 cm × 20 cm (approx. 8 inches × 8 inches)	Embroidery field 10 cm × 10 cm (approx. 4 inches × 4 inches)	Embroidery field 2 cm × 6 cm (approx. 1 inch × 2-1/2 inches)
Use when embroidering connected or combined characters or patterns, or when embroidering large patterns.	Use when embroidering patterns between 10 cm × 10 cm (approx. 4 inches × 4 inches) and 20 cm × 20 cm (approx. 8 inches × 8 inches).	Use when embroidering patterns under 10 cm × 10 cm (approx. 4 inches × 4 inches).	Use for embroidering names or very small patterns.

Other optional embroidery frame can be used. When choosing frames that do not appear on the screen, be sure to check the design size of the embroidery field of the optional frame. Check with your authorized dealer for frame compatibility.
Select a frame that matches the pattern size. Included frame options are displayed on the LCD.

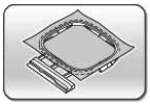


① Highlighted: Can be used
② Shaded: Cannot be used

⚠ CAUTION

- **If you use a frame that is too small, the presser foot may strike the frame during sewing and cause injury.**

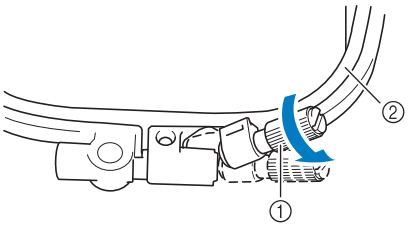
■ Inserting the Fabric

Press ? → Operation Guide → Embroidery Basic Operation →  → in this order to display a video example of hoping the fabric in the embroidery frame (see page 46). Follow the steps explained below to complete the operation.

Note

- If the fabric is not securely held in the embroidery frame, the embroidery design will sew out poorly. Insert the fabric on a level surface, and gently stretch the fabric taut in the frame. Follow the steps below to insert the fabric correctly.

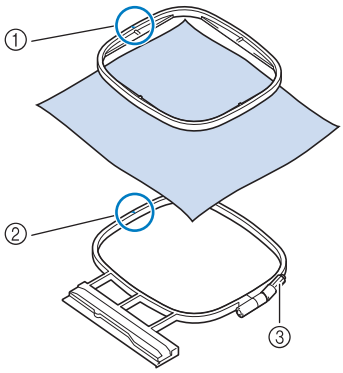
1 Lift-up and loosen the frame adjustment screw and remove the inner frame.



① Frame adjustment screw
② Inner frame

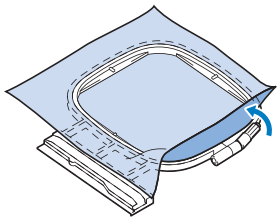
2 Lay the fabric right side up on top of the outer frame.

Re-insert the inner frame making sure to align the inner frame's △ with the outer frame's ▽ .



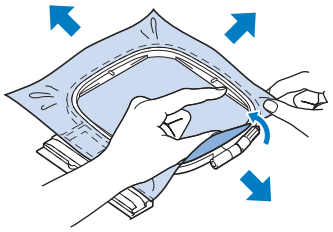
① Inner frame's △
② Outer frame's ▽
③ Frame adjustment screw

3 Slightly tighten the frame adjustment screw, and then remove the slack in the fabric by pulling on the edges and corners. Do not loosen the screw.

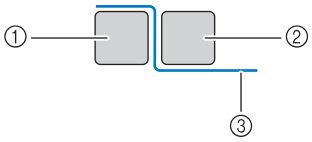


4 Gently stretch the fabric taut, and tighten the frame adjustment screw to keep the fabric from loosening after stretching.

* After stretching the fabric, make sure the fabric is taut.



* Make sure the inside and outside frames are even before you start embroidering.

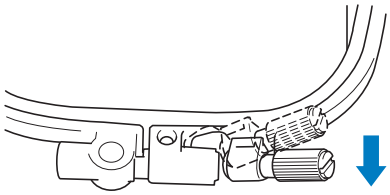


① Outer frame
② Inner frame
③ Fabric

Memo

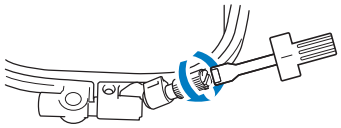
- Stretch the fabric from all four corners and all four edges. While stretching the fabric, tighten the frame adjustment screw.

5 **Return the frame adjustment screw to its initial position.**



Memo

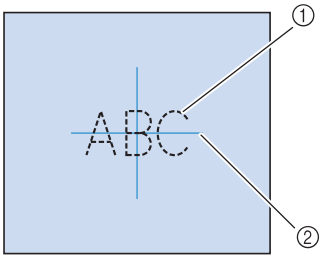
- You can use the included screw driver when you loosen or tighten the frame adjustment screw.



■ Using the Embroidery Sheet

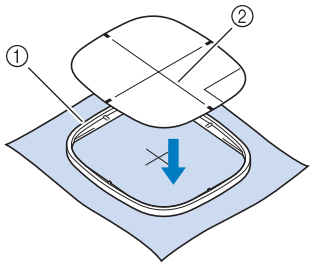
When you want to embroider the pattern in a particular place, use the embroidery sheet with the frame.

1 **With a chalk pencil, mark the area of the fabric you want to embroider.**



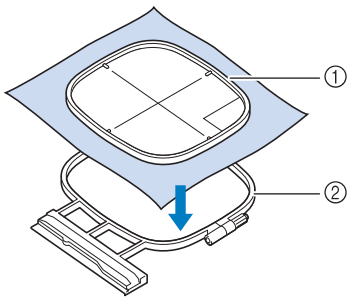
① Embroidery pattern
② Mark

2 **Place the embroidery sheet on the inner frame. Align the guide lines on the embroidery sheet with the mark you made on the fabric.**



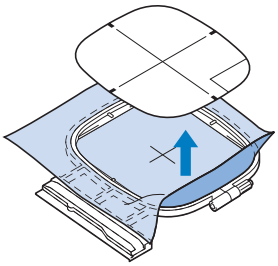
① Inner frame
② Guide line

3 **Gently stretch the fabric so there are no folds or wrinkles, and press the inner frame into the outer frame.**



① Inner frame
② Outer frame

4 **Remove the embroidery sheet.**

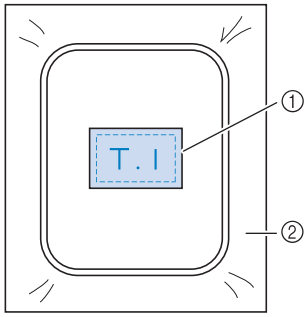


Embroidering Small Fabrics or Fabric Edges

Use an embroidery stabilizer to provide extra support. After embroidering, remove the stabilizer carefully. Attach the stabilizer as shown in the following examples. We recommend using a stabilizer for embroidery.

■ Embroidering Small Fabrics

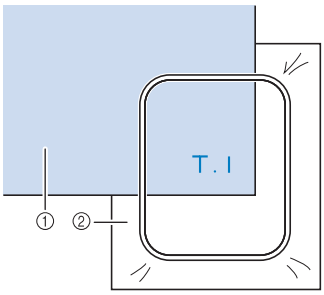
Use a temporary spray adhesive to adhere the small piece of fabric to the larger piece in the frame. If you do not wish to use a temporary spray adhesive, attach the stabilizer with a basting stitch.



① Fabric
② Stabilizer

■ Embroidering Edges or Corners

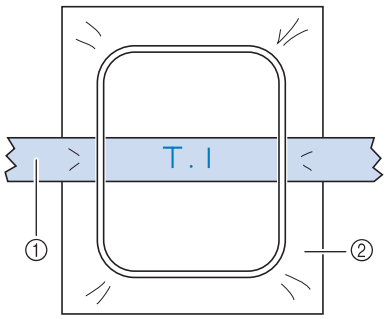
Use a temporary spray adhesive to adhere the small piece of fabric to the larger piece in the frame. If you do not wish to use a temporary spray adhesive, attach the stabilizer with a basting stitch.



① Fabric
② Stabilizer

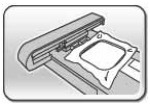
■ Embroidering Ribbons or Tape

Secure with double-sided tape or a temporary spray adhesive.



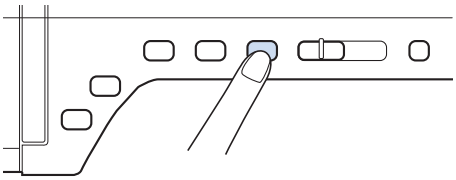
① Ribbon or tape
② Stabilizer

ATTACHING THE EMBROIDERY FRAME

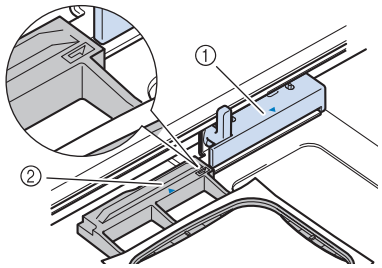
Press ? → Operation Guide → Embroidery Basic Operation →  → in this order to display a video example of attaching the embroidery frame (see page 46). Follow the steps explained below to complete the operation.

Note
- Wind and insert the bobbin before attaching the embroidery frame.

1 **Press the "Presser Foot Lifter" button to raise the presser foot.**

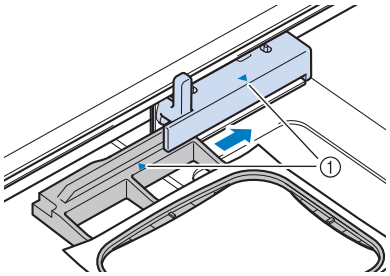


2 **Align the embroidery frame guide with the right edge of the embroidery frame holder.**



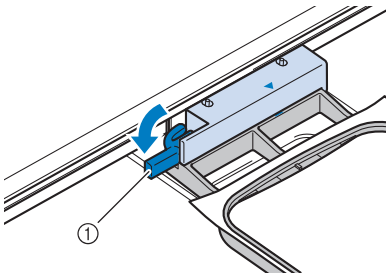
① Embroidery frame holder
② Embroidery frame guide

3 **Slide the embroidery frame into the holder, making sure to align the embroidery frame's △ with the holder's ▽.**



① Arrow mark

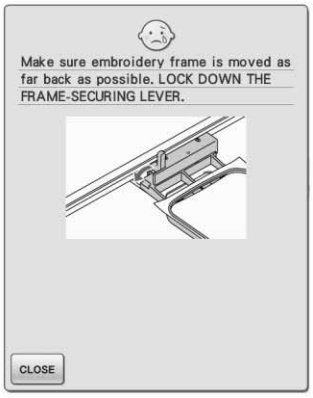
4 **Lower the frame-securing lever to be level with the frame to secure the embroidery frame in the embroidery frame holder.**



① Frame-securing lever

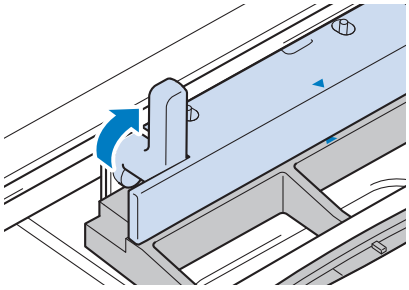
⚠ CAUTION

- **If the frame-securing lever is not lowered, the following message appears. You cannot start sewing until you lower the frame-securing lever.**

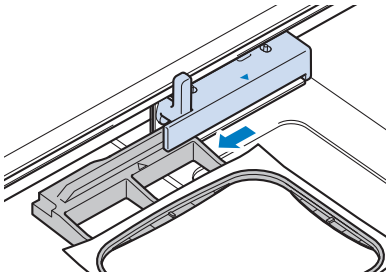


■ Removing the Embroidery Frame

1. **Raise the frame-securing lever.**



2. **Pull the embroidery frame toward you.**



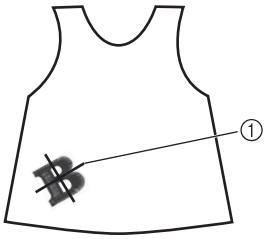
CONFIRMING THE PATTERN POSITION

The pattern is normally positioned in the center of the embroidery frame. If the pattern needs to be repositioned for better placement on the garment, you can check the layout before starting embroidery.

Aligning the Embroidering Position Using the Built-In Camera

The camera built into this machine can be used to easily align the embroidering position. This is useful for patterns which need to be embroidered in a particular position as shown below.

1 **Use a chalk pencil to draw a cross at the desired embroidering location.**



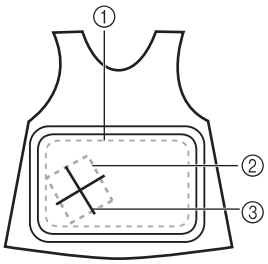
① Chalk pencil mark

* Display the grid lines or cross grid lines in the pattern display area to check the pattern orientation. (Refer to “Changing the Embroidery Frame Display” on page 238.)

2 **Hoop the fabric.**

Note

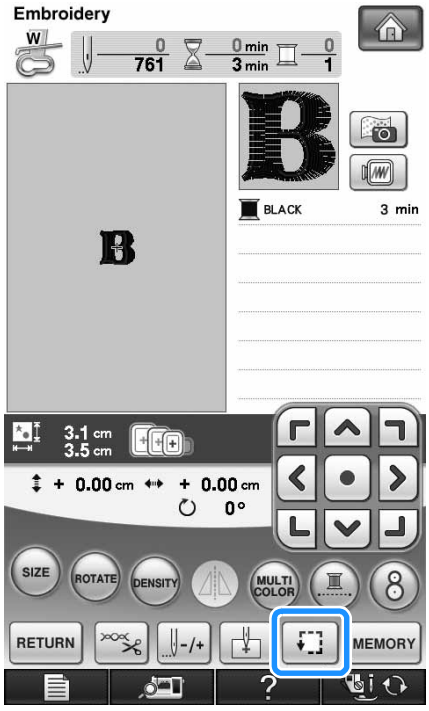
- When hooping the fabric in the embroidery frame, make sure that the embroidery pattern will fit within the embroidering area of the frame being used.



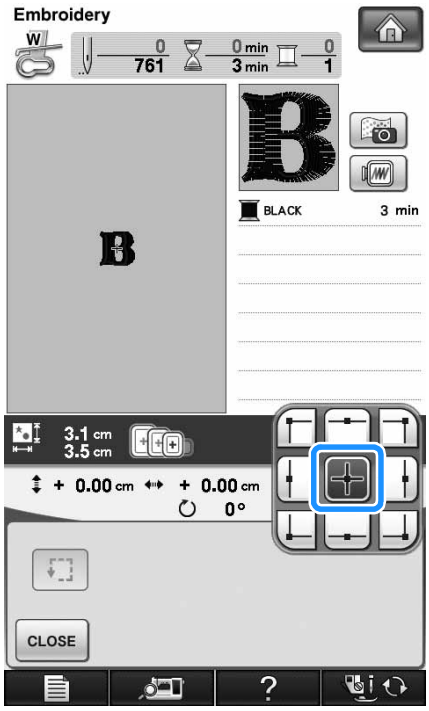
① Embroidering area
② Embroidery pattern size
③ Chalk pencil mark

3 Select the pattern on your sewing machine.

4 Press [⬚] in the sewing screen.



5 Press [⊕] to set the starting point to the center of the pattern.

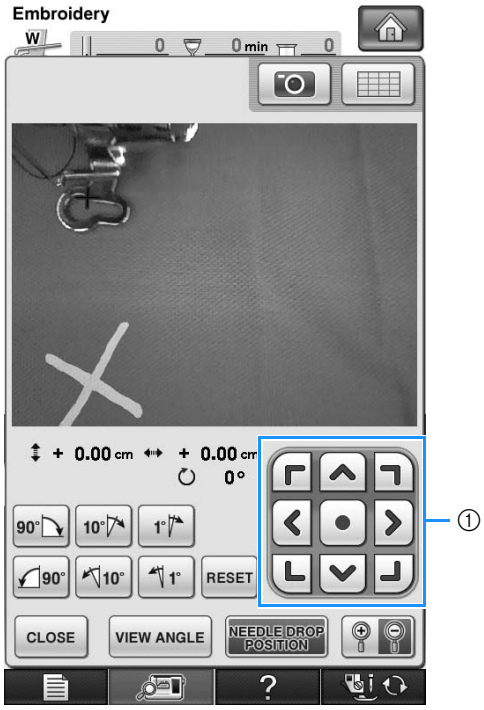


6 Press [CLOSE].

7 Press the "Presser Foot Lifter" button to lower the presser foot.

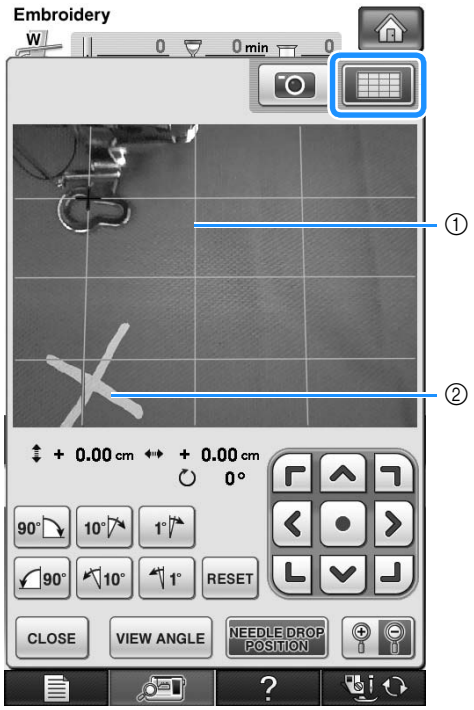
8 Press [⬚].

9 Press the positioning keys to move the embroidery frame until the cross-shaped chalk mark drawn on the fabric is displayed in the camera view window.



① Positioning keys

10 **Press [⊞] to display the grid lines.**

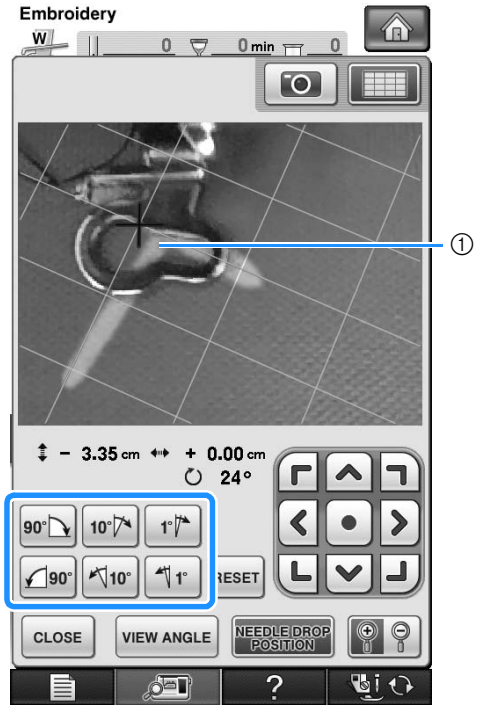


① Grid lines
② Chalk mark on the fabric

Memo

- Press [⊕⊖] to enlarge the camera view. By enlarging the camera view, you can make a close adjustment for the center point of the pattern moving the embroidery frame little by little.

11 **Adjust the orientation of the pattern by pressing the orientation keys until the grid lines are parallel with the chalk mark drawn on the fabric. (Refer to "Rotating the Pattern" on page 242.)**



① Center point of the pattern

12 **Press the positioning keys to move the embroidery frame until the center point of the pattern in the camera view window is aligned with the chalk mark drawn on the fabric.**

13 **Press [CLOSE] to return to the previous screen.**

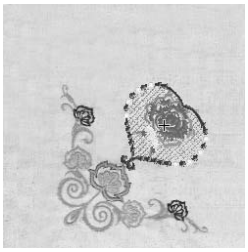
14 **Press the "Start/Stop" button to begin embroidering.**

* See "Sewing Embroidery Patterns" on page 219.

Display the Fabric While Aligning the Embroidering Position

The fabric hooped in the embroidery frame can be displayed on the LCD so that the embroidery position can be easily aligned.

Example:



Note

- When embroidery frame (small: H 2 cm × W 6 cm (H 1 inch × W 2-1/2 inches)) is installed, the built-in camera cannot be used to align the embroidering position. Install medium embroidery frame or larger.
- For details on using thicker fabric such as quilting, refer to “Positioning the Pattern on Thick Fabric” (page 213).

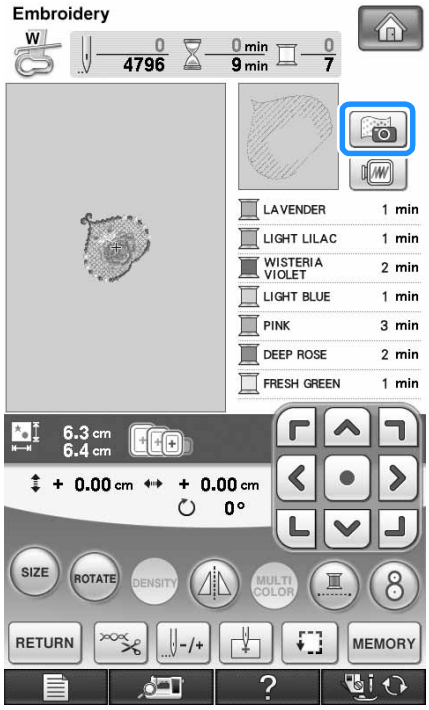
1 **Hoop the fabric in the embroidery frame, and then attach the frame to the embroidery machine.**

2 **Select the pattern, and then press** SEWING **.**

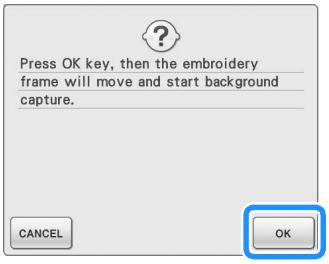
Note

- Check page 8/8 of Settings screen to make sure the Fabric Thickness Sensor is turned off when using light to medium weight fabrics.

3 **Press** **.**



4 **When the following message appears, press** OK **.**

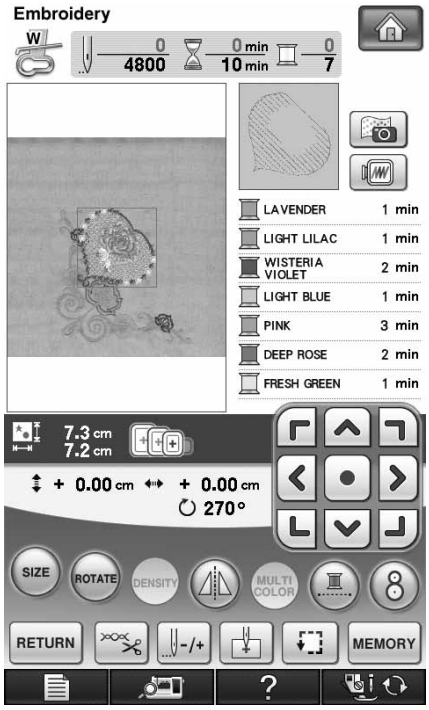


→ The embroidery frame moves so the fabric can be scanned.

Memo

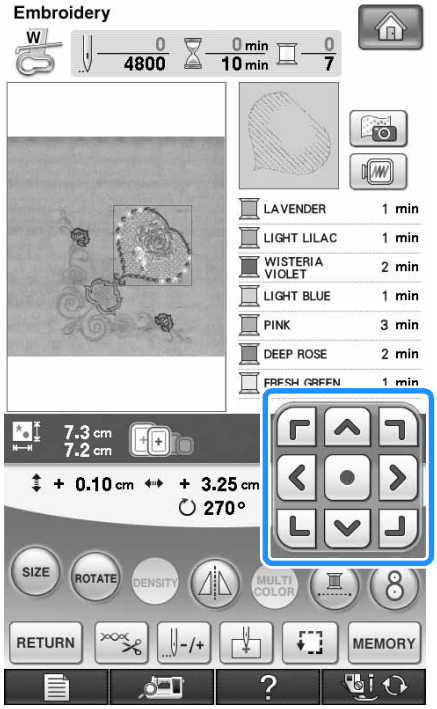
- If you do not wish the upper thread to be scanned together with the fabric, scan the fabric without the needle threaded with the upper thread.

5 **When the fabric appears as a background for the pattern, the pattern can be moved if it is necessary.**



6 **Use** **to align the pattern to the desired embroidery position.**

- The pattern can be moved to the desired position by using your finger or the touch pen to drag the pattern displayed on the screen.



Memo

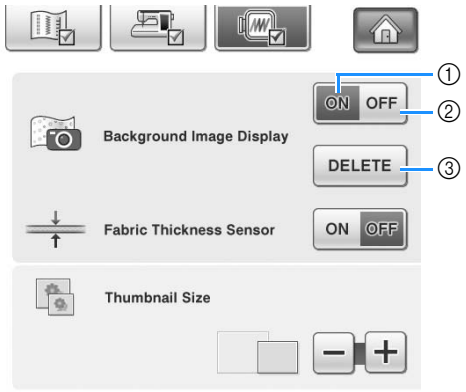
- If necessary, press to display a preview in order to check the pattern position.

7 **Press the "Start/Stop" button to start embroidering.**

* See "Sewing Embroidery Patterns" on page 219.

→ When embroidery is finished, the fabric displayed in the background disappears.

Whether the fabric disappears or remains displayed can be specified from page 8/8 of the Settings screen.



① Set to "ON" to leave the fabric displayed in the background.

② When set to "OFF", the background will disappear.

③ Press DELETE to remove the background image completely.

Note

- If the embroidery is not sewn the fabric background will remain on the screen.
  In Settings screen 8/8 press DELETE to erase the background image.

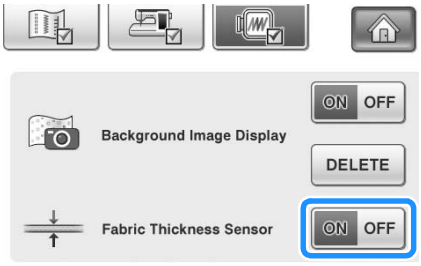
■ Positioning the Pattern on Thick Fabric

When positioning the pattern on thick fabric such as quilting, the fabric may not be detected correctly. In order for the fabric to be correctly detected, its thickness must first be measured.

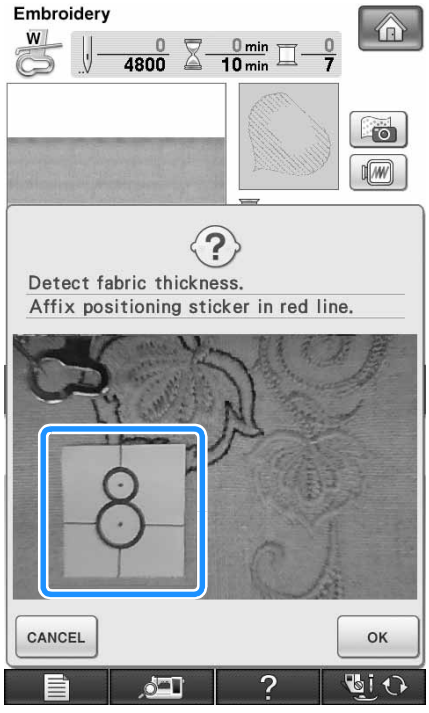
Memo

- This feature is functional only when the fabric is scanned. It will not affect embroidering if it is turned on with normal embroidery.

1. **Hoop the fabric in the embroidery frame, and then attach the frame to the embroidery machine.**
2. **Select the pattern, and then press** SEWING **.**
3. **Display page 8/8 of the Settings screen, and then set "Fabric Thickness Sensor" to "ON".**



4. **Press** CLOSE **.**
5. **Press** **.**
6. **Affix the embroidery positioning sticker to the fabric within the area indicated by the red frame in the LCD, and then press** OK **.**



7. **When the following message appears, remove the embroidery positioning sticker, and then press** OK **.**

→ The embroidery frame is moved, and the embroidery positioning sticker affixed to the fabric is detected.

8. **Continue with step 6 on page 212 to align the pattern with the desired embroidery position.**

CAUTION

- **Use fabrics with a thickness of less than 3 mm (approx. 1/8 inch). Using fabrics thicker than 3 mm (approx. 1/8 inch) may cause the needle to break.**

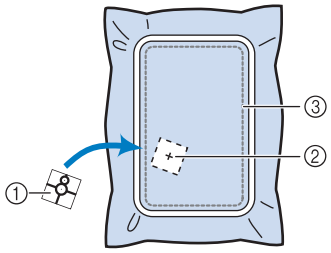
Using the Built-In Camera to Align the Embroidering Position

The embroidering position can easily be aligned using the machine's built-in camera and the included embroidery positioning sticker.

Note

- When embroidery frame (small) is installed, the built-in camera cannot be used to align the embroidering position. Install embroidery frame (medium) or a larger embroidery frame.

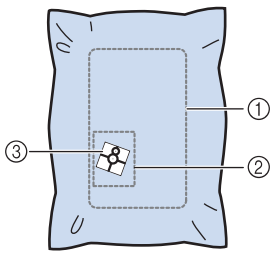
1. **Affix the embroidery positioning sticker to the location in the fabric to be embroidered. Place the embroidery positioning sticker so that the center of the larger circle is at the center of the embroidery pattern.**



① Embroidery positioning sticker
② Center of the embroidery pattern
③ Embroidery field

Note

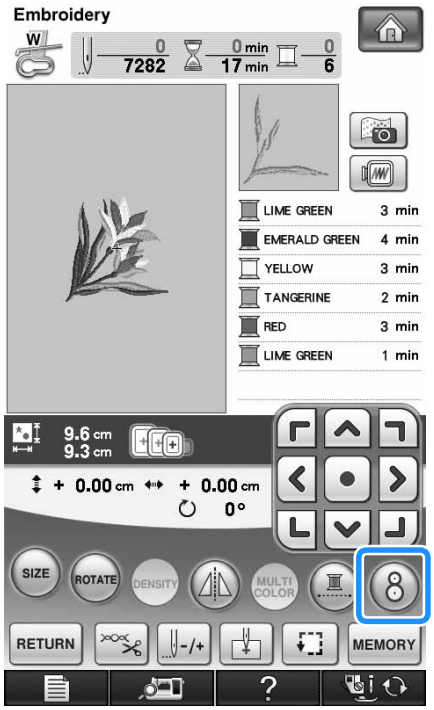
- When inserting the fabric in the embroidery frame, check that the embroidery pattern fits within the embroidery field for the frame that is used.



① Embroidery field
② Embroidery pattern
③ Embroidery positioning sticker

- Depending on the type of fabric that is used, a part of the embroidery positioning sticker may remain attached when it is peeled off. Before using the embroidery positioning sticker, check that it can be cleanly removed from a scrap piece of the fabric to be used.

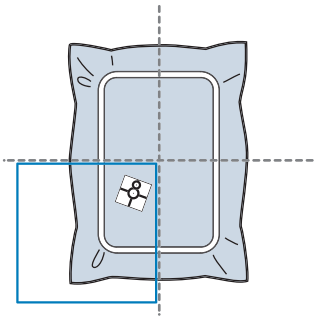
2 After selecting the pattern, press SEWING, and then press 8.

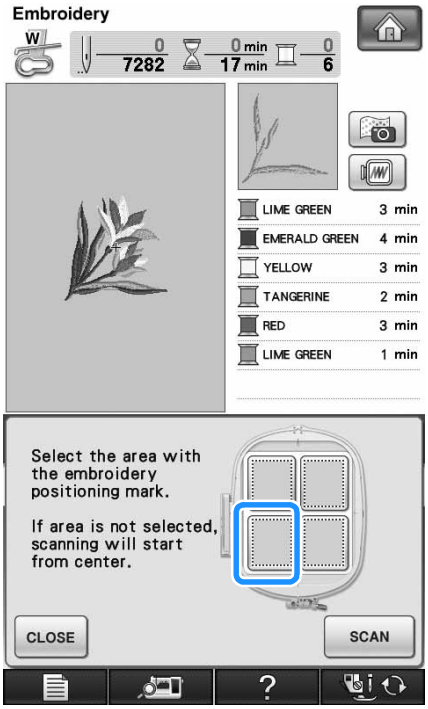


→ A window appears so that the area containing the embroidery positioning sticker can be selected.

3 From the areas shown in the window, select the area containing the embroidery positioning sticker.

* If an area is not selected, scanning will start from the center.

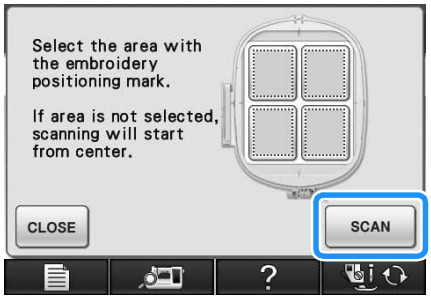




Note

- Scanning cannot start from the center after an area has been selected. To scan from the center, press CLOSE to close the window, then display the window again but do not select an area to scan, then press SCAN.
- If the embroidery positioning sticker overlaps two areas, select either of the two areas.

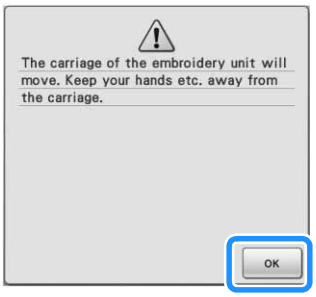
4 **Press** SCAN **.**



Note

- Attach embroidery foot “W” before pressing SCAN . The embroidery foot “W” lowers and check the fabric thickness, to help the built-in camera recognize the embroidery positioning sticker.

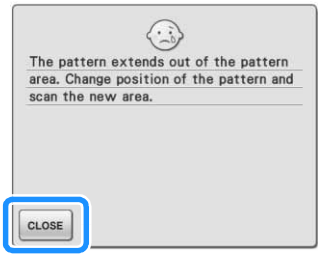
5 **Following message appears. Press** OK **.**



→ The built-in camera automatically searches for the embroidery positioning sticker, and then the carriage is moved so that the center of the embroidery pattern is aligned with the center of the embroidery positioning sticker. Regardless of the setting selected in the machine settings screen, the brightness of the light changes to “5” while the built-in camera searches for the embroidery positioning sticker.

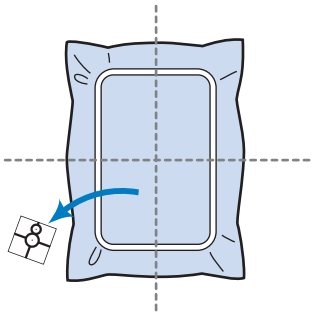
Note

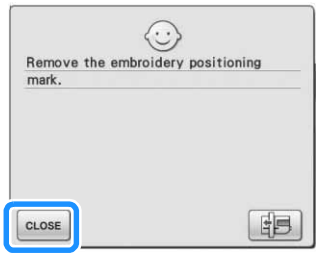
- If the following warning message appears, touch CLOSE and reposition the embroidery positioning sticker so the pattern is within the embroidery field, and then press SCAN again.



6 **A reminder message appears. Remove the embroidery positioning sticker from the fabric, and press** CLOSE **.**

* To remove the embroidery positioning sticker more easily, press so that the embroidery frame moves slightly forward and away from under the needle. After the embroidery positioning sticker is removed, press CLOSE .





7 **Press the “Start/Stop” button to begin embroidering.**

* See “Sewing Embroidery Patterns” on page 219.

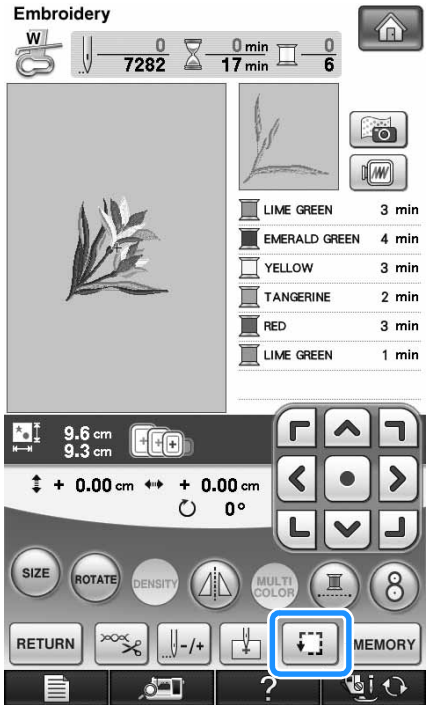
Note

- After the included embroidery positioning stickers are used up, optional stickers are available. For details, refer to “Options” on page 20.

Checking the Pattern Position

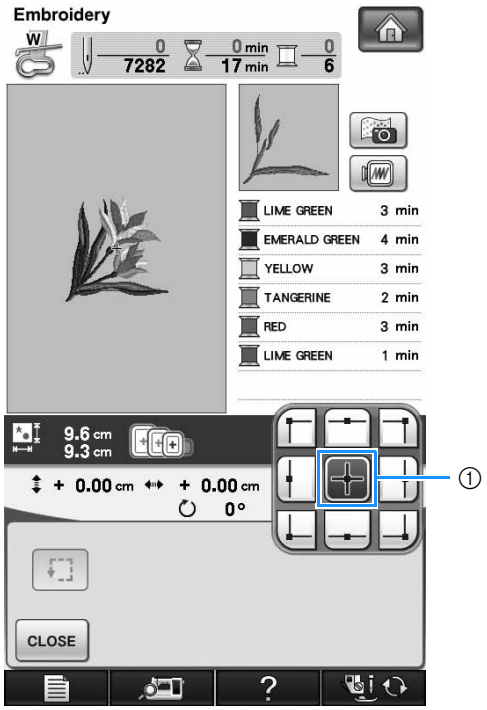
The embroidery frame moves and shows the pattern position. Watch the frame closely to make sure the pattern will be sewn in the right place.

1 **Press** [⬚].



→ The following screen is displayed.

2 **From [⊞], press the key for the position that you want to check.**

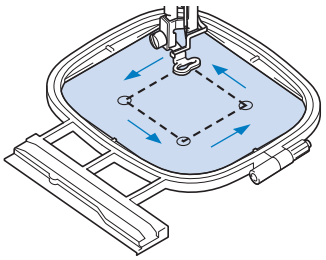


① Selected position

→ The needle will move to the selected position on the pattern.

Memo

- To see the entire embroidering area, press [⬚]. The embroidery frame moves and shows the embroidery area.



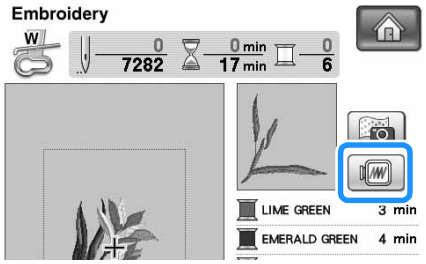
⚠ CAUTION

- **Make sure the needle is up when the embroidery frame is moving. If the needle is down, it could break and result in injury.**

3 **Press** [CLOSE].

Previewing the Completed Pattern

1 **Press** **.**



→ An image of the pattern as it will be embroidered appears.

2 **Press** **to select the frame used in the preview.**

* Frames displayed in light gray cannot be selected.
* Press to enlarge the image of the pattern.
* The pattern can be sewn as it appears in the following display.

Memo

- You can begin sewing from this screen by pressing the “Start/Stop” button.

3 **Press** **to return to the original screen.**

SEWING AN EMBROIDERY PATTERN

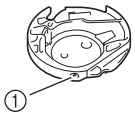
Sewing Attractive Finishes

There are many factors that go into sewing beautiful embroidery. Using the appropriate stabilizer (see page 200) and hooping the fabric in the frame (see page 202) are two important factors mentioned earlier. Another important point is the appropriateness of the needle and thread being used. See the explanation of threads below. Included with this machine are two bobbin cases. Follow the explanation below.

Thread	**Upper thread**	Use embroidery thread intended for use with this machine. Other embroidery threads may not yield optimum results.
	Bobbin thread	Use embroidery bobbin thread intended for use with this machine.

Memo

- If you use threads other than those listed above, the embroidery may not sew out correctly.

Bobbin case  ① Standard bobbin case (green marking on the screw) Alternate bobbin case (no color on the screw)	Standard bobbin case (green marking on the screw) is in the machine for sewing and embroidery. The bobbin case originally installed in the machine has a green marking on the screw. Do not adjust green marked screw.
	Alternate bobbin case (no color on the screw) is set with tighter tension for embroidery with different weights of bobbin threads and a variety of embroidery techniques. This bobbin case is identified with a dark colored mark on the inside of the bobbin cavity. The screw on this case can be adjusted if necessary.

See page 338 for how to remove the bobbin case.

⚠ CAUTION

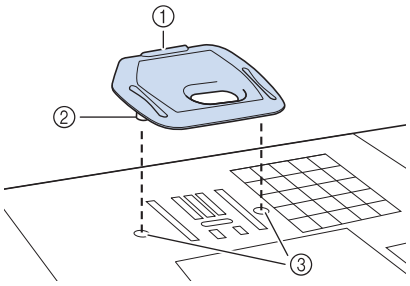
- **When embroidering on large garments (especially jackets or other heavy fabrics), do not let the fabric hang over the table. Otherwise, the embroidery unit cannot move freely and the embroidery frame may strike the needle, causing the needle to bend or break and possibly cause injury.**
  Place the fabric so that it does not hang off the table or hold the fabric to keep it from dragging.

Note

- Before embroidering, check that there is enough thread in the bobbin. If you start to sew your embroidery project without enough thread in the bobbin, you will need to rewind the bobbin in the middle of the embroidery pattern.
- Do not leave objects in the range of motion of the embroidery frame. The frame may strike the object and cause a poor finish to the embroidery pattern.
- When embroidering on large garments (especially jackets or other heavy fabrics), do not let the fabric hang over the table. Otherwise, the embroidery unit cannot move freely, and the pattern may not turn out as planned.

■ Embroidery Needle Plate Cover

Under some conditions, based on the type of fabric, stabilizer, or thread being used, there may be some looping in the upper thread. In this case, attach the included embroidery needle plate cover to the needle plate. Attach the cover by inserting the two projections on the underside of the cover into the notches on the needle plate as shown below.



① Groove
② Projection
③ Notch

To remove the embroidery needle plate cover, place your fingernail in the groove and lift the plate out.

⚠ CAUTION

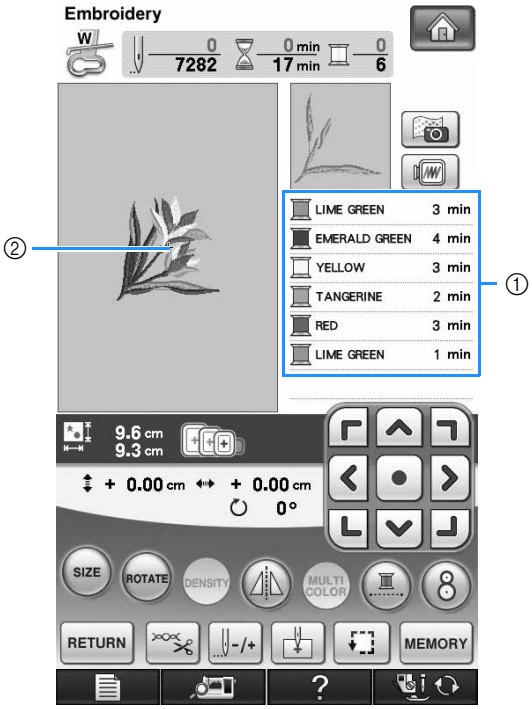
- **Push the embroidery needle plate cover as far as possible to attach it. If the embroidery needle plate cover is not securely attached, it may cause the needle to break.**

Note

- Do not use the embroidery needle plate cover for any applications other than embroidery.

Sewing Embroidery Patterns

Example:

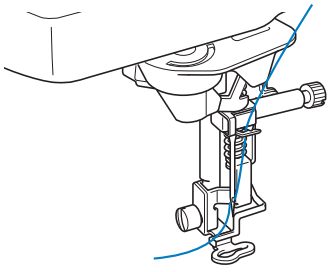


① Embroidery color order
② Cursor

Memo

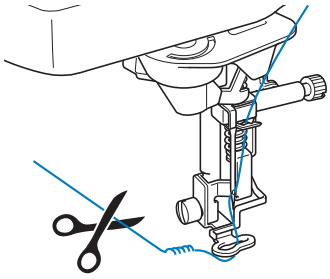
- The [+] cursor moves over the pattern, showing which part of the pattern is being sewn.

1 Thread the machine with thread for the first color, pass the thread through the hole in embroidery foot "W", pull out some thread to give it some slack, and then lightly hold the end of the thread in your left hand.



2 **Lower the presser foot, then press the "Start/Stop" button to start embroidering. After 5-6 stitches, press the "Start/Stop" button again to stop the machine.**

3 **Trim the excess thread at the end of the seam. If the end of the seam is under the presser foot, raise the presser foot, then trim the excess thread.**



4 **Press the "Start/Stop" button to start embroidering.**

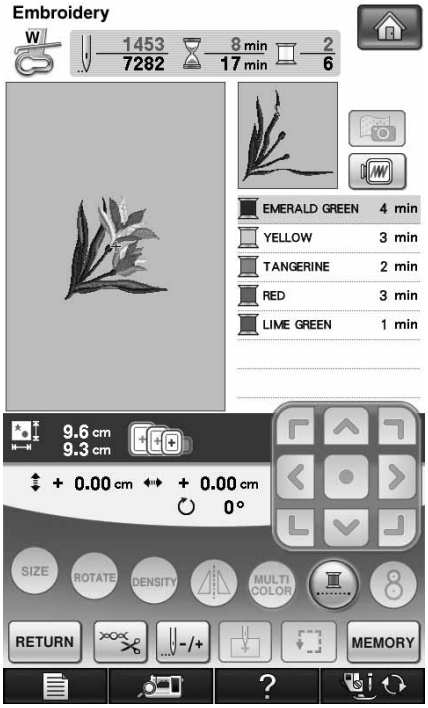
→ When the first color is completely sewn, the machine will automatically trim the threads and stop. The presser foot will then automatically be raised. On the embroidery color order display, the next color will move to the top.

Memo

- If there is thread left over from the beginning of sewing, it may be sewn over as you continue embroidering the pattern, making it very difficult to deal with the thread after the pattern is finished. Trim the threads at the beginning of each thread change.

5 **Remove the thread for the first color from the machine. Thread the machine with the next color.**

6 **Repeat the same steps for embroidering the remaining colors.**



→ When the last color is sewn, "Finished sewing" will appear on the display. Press [OK], and the display will return to the original screen.

Memo

- The Thread Trimming Function is originally set to trim excess thread jumps (threads linking parts of the pattern, etc.). Depending on the type of thread and fabric that are used, an end of upper thread may remain on the surface of the fabric at the beginning of the stitching. After embroidering is finished, cut off this excess thread.
  *If the setting has been turned off, trim the excess thread jumps using scissors after the pattern is finished.
  See page 236 for information on the thread trimming function.

Sewing Embroidery Patterns Which Use Appliqué

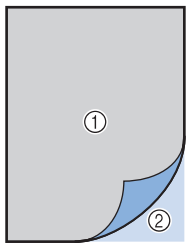
There are some patterns which call for an appliqué inside the pattern. Prepare the base fabric and the appliqué fabric (appliqué piece).

When sewing an embroidery pattern with an appliqué, the color sewing order display shows "APPLIQUE MATERIAL", "APPLIQUE POSITION", "APPLIQUE", and then the sewing order of the colors around the appliqué.

Memo

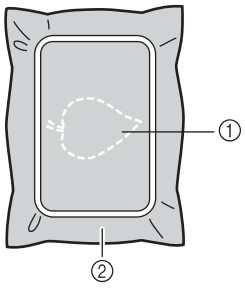
- Depending on the thread color display setting, the display may show , , or .

1 **Attach an iron-on stabilizer to the wrong side of the appliqué material.**



① Appliqué material (cotton, felt, etc.)
② Iron-on stabilizer

2 **Place the appliqué material into the embroidery frame, and then press the "Start/Stop" button to sew the outline of the appliqué.**



① Outline of appliqué
② Appliqué material

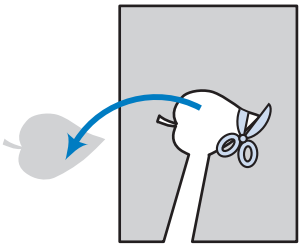
Memo

- The embroidery procedure is the same as the basic procedure explained on page 219.

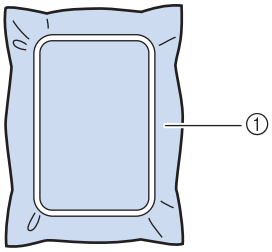
→ The machine will sew around the outline of the appliqué pieces and will then stop.

3 **Remove the appliqué material from the embroidery frame, and then cut carefully along the stitching. After cutting, remove all of the stitching thread carefully.**

* Carefully cut out the pattern on the outline you just sewed. Do not cut inside the stitching line, as the appliqué fabric will not be caught by the appliqué stitch.



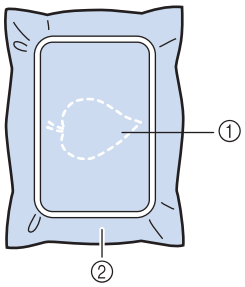
4 **Place the base material into the embroidery frame.**



① Base material

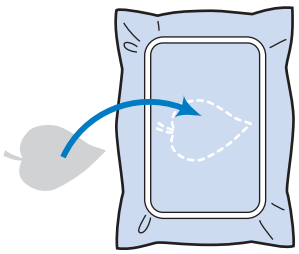
5 **Press the "Start/Stop" button to sew the position of the appliqué.**

* Use the same thread color you plan to use when attaching the appliqué in step 7.



① Position of appliqué
② Base material
→ The machine will sew around the position of the appliqué and will then stop.

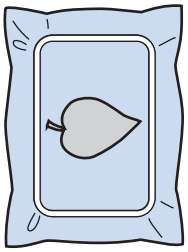
6 **Apply a thin layer of adhesive or spray adhesive to the back of the appliqué piece and attach it to the appliqué position so that it follows the seam of the outline.**



Memo

- If the appliqué material is a lightweight fabric, you may want to use a fusible web on the back to stabilize the fabric and for appliqué placement. Fuse appliqué in place with an iron.
  Do not remove fabric from the frame to iron the appliqué material.

7 **Press the "Start/Stop" button.**

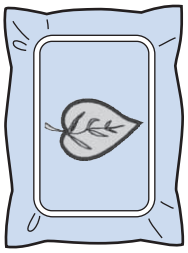


Memo

- Some patterns may not show all three appliqué steps. Sometimes the "APPLIQUE" step will be shown as a color.

→ The appliqué will then be completed.

8 **Change the upper thread and then carry out the rest of the embroidering.**



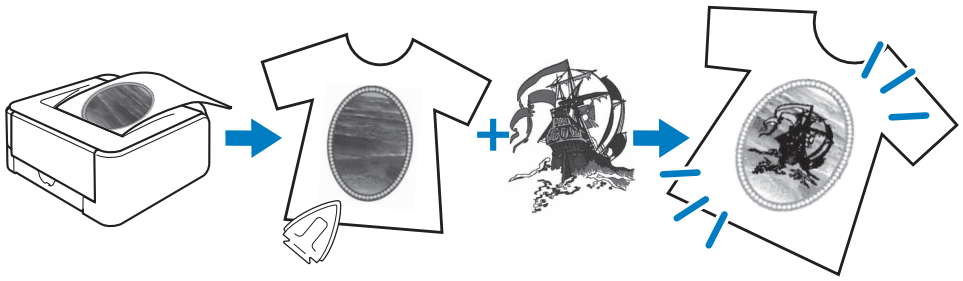
Memo

- Some glue may get onto the presser foot, needle, and needle plate at this time. Finish embroidering the appliqué pattern and then clean away the glue.
- For best sewing results clip all threads between color steps.

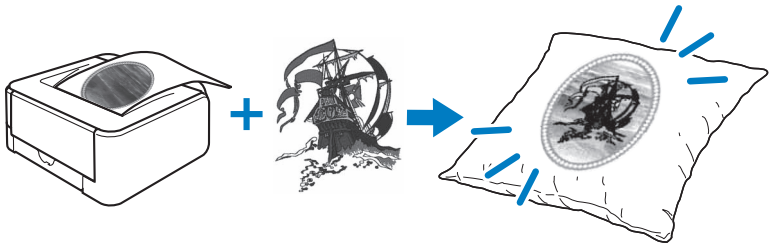
PRINT AND STITCH (COMBINING EMBROIDERY PATTERNS AND PRINTED DESIGNS)

Completed embroidery patterns combined with printed designs are built into this machine. Beautiful three-dimensional embroidered designs can be created by ironing a background onto fabric or printing it onto printable fabric, then sewing complementary embroidery on top of the background.

Using iron-on paper



Using printable fabric



Step1	**Select a pattern to be combined with the background image.** → See “Selecting a Pattern” on page 224.
Step2	**Output from the machine the background image and the positioning image.** → See “Outputting the Background Image and Positioning Image” on page 225.
Step3	**When using iron-on paper** With a printer, print the background onto iron-on paper, and print the embroidery position sheet on plain paper. Then, iron the background image onto fabric. **When using printable fabric** With a printer, print the background onto printable fabric, and print the embroidery position sheet on plain paper. → See “Printing the Background and Embroidery Position Sheet” on page 226.
Step4	**Hoop in the embroidery frame the fabric with the background image ironed on or printed, check the embroidering position, and then start embroidering.** → See “Sewing Embroidery Patterns” on page 227.

Note

- Print the background and embroidery position sheet in their original dimensions. If an image is printed in a different size, the sizes of the embroidery pattern and background may not match. In addition, the built-in camera cannot detect the embroidery position mark. Make sure that the print settings are correctly specified.

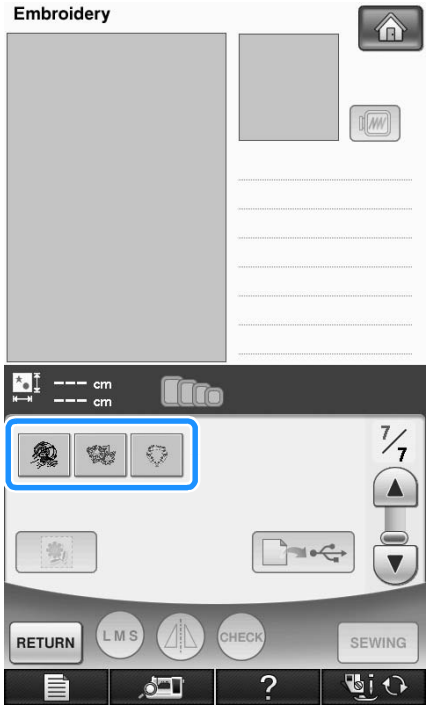
Selecting a Pattern

Patterns combining embroidery and printed designs can be selected from the pages that contain . Select the desired pattern.

Memo

- Refer to the Quick Reference Guide for the detail of patterns which enable this function.

1 Press the key of the pattern you want to embroider.

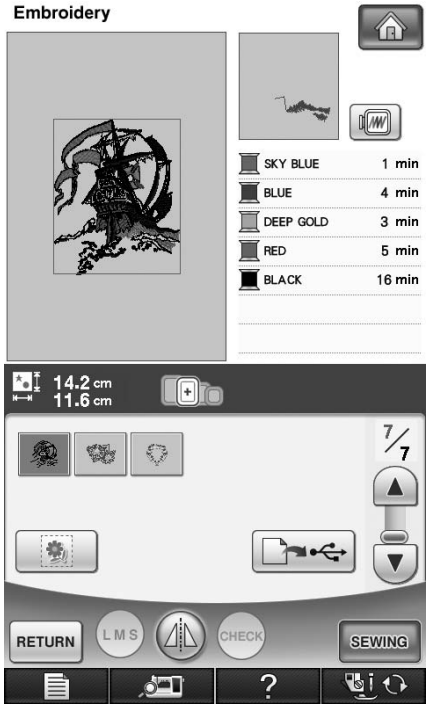


→ An image of the pattern combined with the background appears.

■ Checking Only the Embroidery Pattern

Press .

→ Only the embroidery pattern (not the background image of the selected embroidery pattern) is displayed.



* To return to the image of the pattern combined with the background, press .

Outputting the Background Image and Positioning Image

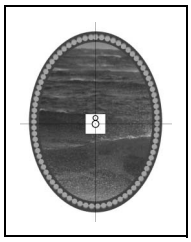
Use USB media or the computer to output the following three images from the machine.

* File name may differ depending on the PDF file selected.

- **[xxx]r.pdf (Example: E_1r.pdf)**
  An image flipped on a vertical axis (for an iron-on transfer)

- **[xxx]n.pdf (Example: E_1n.pdf)**
  An image that is not flipped (for printing on printable fabric)

- **[xxx]p.pdf (Example: E_1p.pdf)**
  An image that is not flipped, but has positioning marks attached (for positioning)



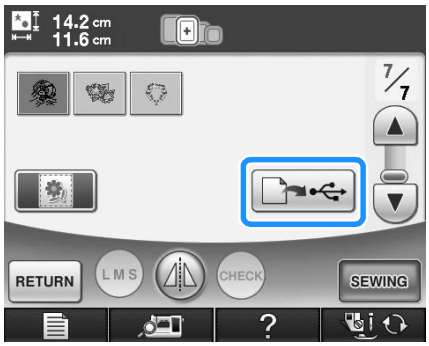
Note

- Print the background and embroidery position sheet in their original dimensions. If an image is printed in a different size, the sizes of the embroidery pattern and background may not match. In addition, the built-in camera cannot detect the embroidery position mark. Make sure that the print settings are correctly specified.
- When printing the PDF file of the image with positioning marks, specify the highest image quality possible for full-color printing. In addition, use matte printing paper. Due to poor printing conditions, the machine's built-in camera may not be able to correctly detect the positioning marks. (For details on printing, refer to the operating instructions for your printer.)

■ Using USB Media

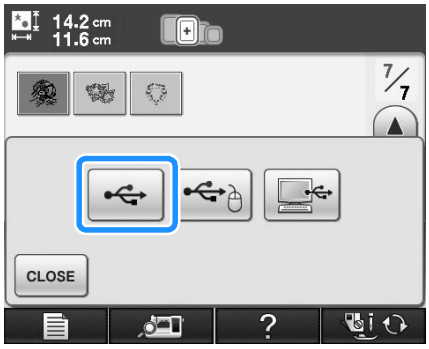
1 Insert the USB media into the primary (top) USB port on the machine.

2 Select the pattern, and then press .



→ The select USB output screen appears.

3 Press to select the primary (top) USB port where the USB media is inserted.



→ Two files of the background image only and one file for aligning embroidery into position are copied (PDF format) onto the USB media.

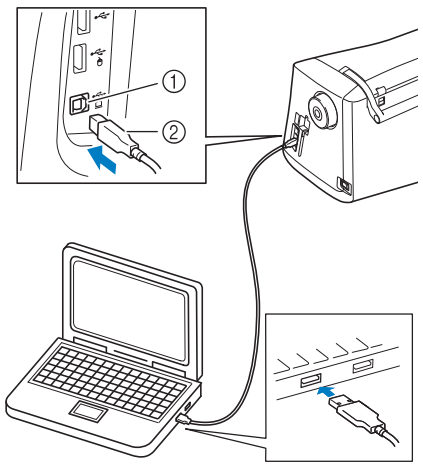
Memo

- Do not remove the USB media from the machine until data output is finished.

4 Remove the USB media where the image data is saved from the machine, and then copy the image data from the USB media to the computer.

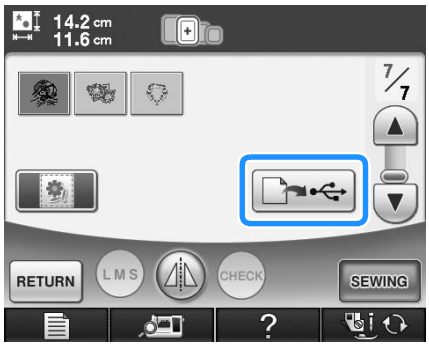
■ Using a USB Cable

1 **Plug the USB cable connectors into the corresponding USB ports on the computer and on the machine.**



① USB port for computer
② USB cable connector
→ The "Removable Disk" icon appears in "Computer (My computer)" on the computer.

2 **Select the pattern, and then press** **.**



→ The select USB output screen appears.

3 **Press** **.**

→ Two files of the background image and one file for aligning embroidery into position are copied (PDF format) into "Removable Disk" under "Computer (My computer)".

Memo
- Do not disconnect the USB cable from the machine until data output is finished.

4 **Copy the image data saved in "Removable Disk" into a different file before closing.**

Printing the Background and Embroidery Position Sheet

Print the PDF files of the background and embroidery position sheet. The background file that is printed differs depending on whether iron-on paper or printable fabric is used.

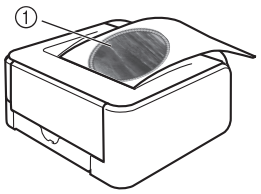
To view the PDF file, Adobe® Reader® is needed. If it is not installed on your computer, you can download it from the Adobe Systems website: http://www.adobe.com/

1 **Open the PDF file to be printed, click "File"-"Print", and then set "Page Scaling" to "None (100%)".**

Note
- Print the background and embroidery position sheet in their original dimensions. If an image is printed in a different size, the sizes of the embroidery pattern and background may not match. In addition, the built-in camera cannot detect the embroidery position mark. Make sure that the print settings are correctly specified.

2 **Print the background image.**

* When printing onto iron-on paper, print the file named E_1r.pdf (an image flipped on a vertical axis). When printing onto printable fabric, print the file named E_1n.pdf (an image that is not flipped).

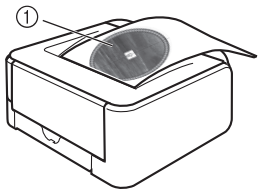


① Background image

Note

- Before printing onto iron-on paper or printable fabric, we recommend performing a test print to check the print settings.
- For details on printing on iron-on transfer sheets or printable fabric, refer to the instructions for the iron-on transfer sheets and printable fabric.
- Some printers will automatically print an image flipped if an iron-on transfer sheet is selected as the paper. For details, refer to the instructions for the printer being used.

3 Print the embroidery position sheet (file named E_1p.pdf) onto plain paper.



① Embroidery position sheet

Note

- When printing the PDF file for the embroidery position sheet, specify the highest image quality possible for full-color printing. In addition, we recommend printing on matte paper. If this is not done, the built-in camera may not be able to correctly detect the embroidery positioning mark.

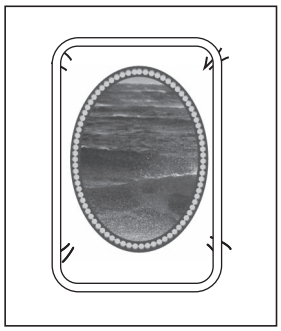
4 If an iron-on transfer sheet is used, transfer the image onto fabric.

Memo

- For details on transferring from iron-on transfer sheets, refer to the instructions for the iron-on transfer sheets.
- If necessary, cut the iron-on transfer sheet to the size of the pattern before transferring the image.

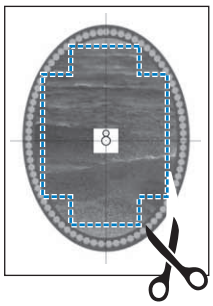
Sewing Embroidery Patterns

1 Hoop in the embroidery frame the fabric with the background image ironed on.

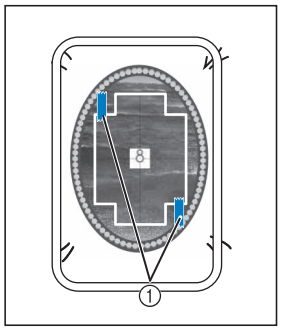


2 Cut the paper printed with the center positioning image so it can easily be positioned aligned with the background image on the fabric.

* Lines or color changes in the image can help you find the correct alignment position.



3 Place the paper printed with the positioning image on top of the fabric so that the pattern is aligned, and then affix the paper to the fabric with cellophane tape to prevent the paper from moving.



① Cellophane tape

4 **After checking that a pattern is selected, press SEWING.**

→ The sewing screen appears.

Note

- Before embroidering, check that the embroidery position sheet is perfectly aligned with the background.

5 **Align the embroidering position according to steps 2 through 6 of "Using the Built-In Camera to Align the Embroidering Position" on page 213.**

6 **Remove the positioning sheet and press the "Start/Stop" button to begin embroidering.**

⚠ CAUTION

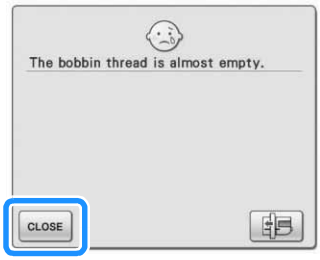
- **Before pressing the "Start/Stop" button to begin embroidering, remove the positioning sheet taped to the fabric in step 3.**

ADJUSTMENTS DURING THE EMBROIDERY PROCESS

Note
- Be careful not to bump the embroidery unit carriage or the presser foot when removing or attaching the embroidery frame. Otherwise, the pattern will not embroider correctly.

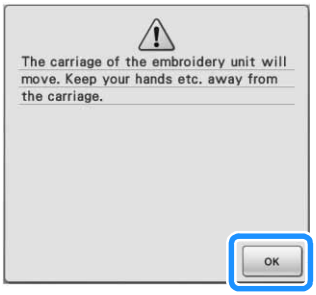
If the Bobbin Runs Out of Thread

When the bobbin begins to run out of thread during embroidering, the machine will stop and the message below will appear. Press [ ] and follow the directions below to rethread the lower threading. If very little sewing remains, you can embroider 10 final stitches without rethreading the machine by pressing [CLOSE]. The machine will stop after sewing the 10 stitches.



Note
- If “Upper and Bobbin Thread Sensor” in the General settings screen of the machine setting mode is set to “OFF”, the message shown above does not appear.

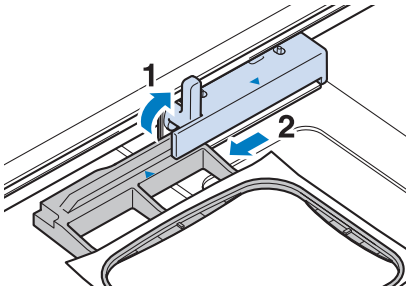
1 **Press [OK].**



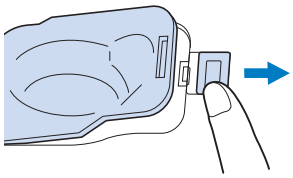
→ After the thread is automatically cut, the carriage will move.

2 **Unlock the frame-securing lever and remove the embroidery frame.**

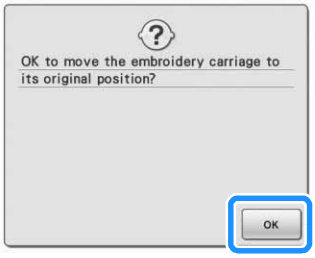
* Be careful not to apply strong force to the fabric at this time. Otherwise, the fabric may loosen in the frame.



3 **Insert a wound bobbin into the machine. (see page 54 for Setting the bobbin.)**



4 **Press [OK].**



→ The carriage will return to its original position.

5 **Attach the embroidery frame.**

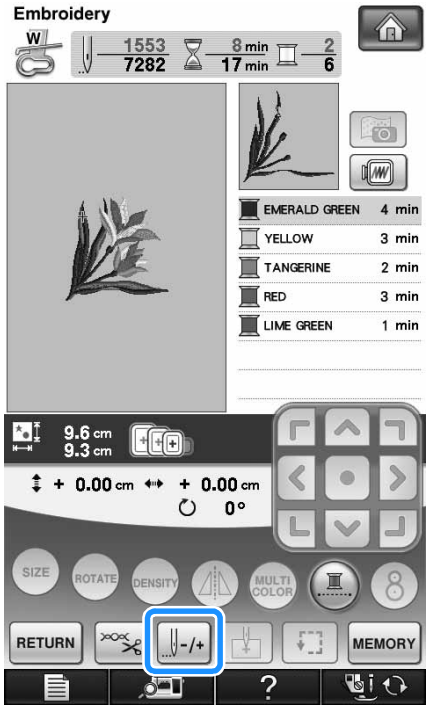
6 **To return to the spot in the pattern where you stopped sewing, follow steps 3 through 9 in the next section.**

If the Thread Breaks During Sewing

1 **Press the "Start/Stop" button to stop the machine.**

2 **If the upper thread is broken, redo the upper threading. If the bobbin thread is broken, press [ ] and follow the directions in steps 1 through 5 from the previous section to reset the bobbin.**

3 **Press [-/+].**



4 **Press the "Presser Foot Lifter" button to lower the presser foot.**

5 **Press [ ]**

→ The camera view window appears.

6 **Press [-1], [-10], or [-100] to move the needle back the correct number of stitches before the spot where the thread broke.**

* If you cannot move back to the spot where the thread broke, press [ ] to select the color and move to the beginning position of that color, then use [+1], [+10], or [+100] to move ahead to slightly before where the thread broke.

* Press [ ] to enlarge the image in the screen.

* Press [NEEDLE DROP POSITION] to remove " + " from the screen.

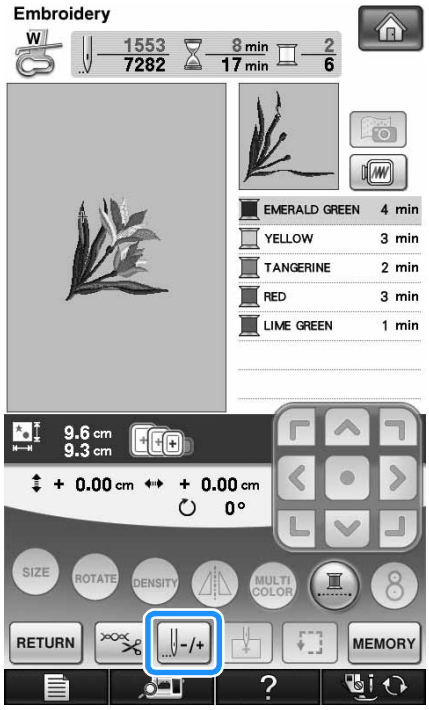
7 **Press [ ] to close the camera view window.**

8 **Press [CLOSE] to return to the original screen.**

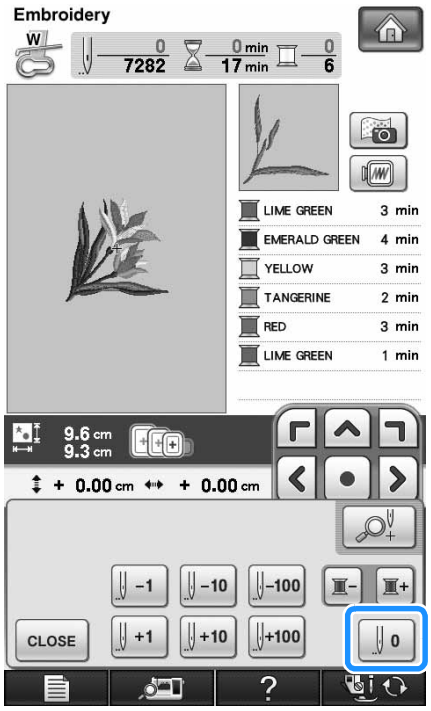
9 **Press the "Presser Foot Lifter" button to lower the presser foot, and press the "Start/Stop" button to continue sewing.**

Restarting from the Beginning

1 **Press** [-/+].



2 **Press** [0].



→ The embroidery frame moves, returning the needle to the pattern's beginning position.

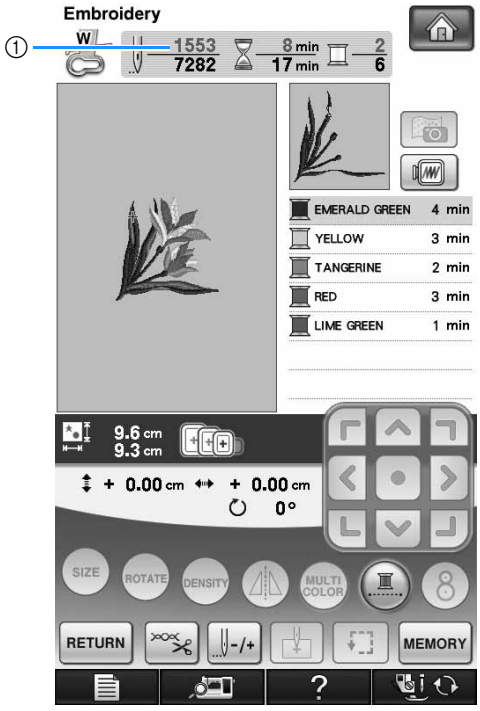
3 **Press the "Presser Foot Lifter" button to lower the presser foot and start sewing.**

Resuming Embroidery After Turning Off the Power

The current color and stitch number are saved when embroidery is stopped. The next time the machine is turned on, you have the option to continue or delete the pattern.

Memo

- Even if the power goes out in the middle of embroidery, the machine returns to the point where embroidery was stopped when the machine is turned on again.



① Current stitch number when embroidery was stopped

Note

- Do not remove the embroidery unit or the memory will no longer remember your design.

1 **Turn the main power to ON.**

2 **Follow the instructions shown on the screen and remove the embroidery frame.**

→ The following message will appear.

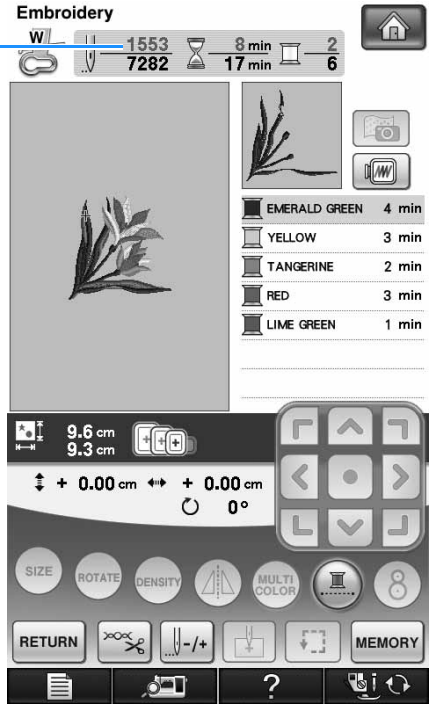
3 Attach the embroidery frame and press OK.

→ The previous sewing screen displayed before the machine was turned off appears.

Memo

- If you want to start a new embroidery pattern, press CANCEL so the pattern selection screen appears.

4 Continue embroidering.



① Stitch number when embroidery is resumed

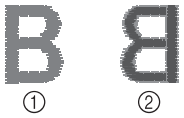
MAKING EMBROIDERY ADJUSTMENTS

Adjusting Thread Tension

When embroidering, the thread tension should be set so that the upper thread can slightly be seen on the wrong side of the fabric.

■ Correct Thread Tension

The pattern can be seen from the wrong side of the fabric. If the thread tension is not set correctly, the pattern will not finish well. The fabric may pucker or the thread may break.



① Right side
② Wrong side

Follow the operations described below to adjust thread tension according to the situation.

Note

- If the thread tension setting is made extremely weak, the machine may stop during sewing. This is not the sign of a malfunction. Increase the thread tension slightly, and begin sewing again.

Memo

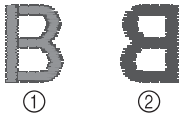
- If you turn the main power to OFF or select a different pattern, the thread tension will reset to the automatic setting.
- When you retrieve a saved pattern, the thread tension setting will be the same as when the pattern was saved.

■ Upper Thread is Too Tight

The tension of the upper thread is too tight, resulting in the bobbin thread being visible from the right side of the fabric.

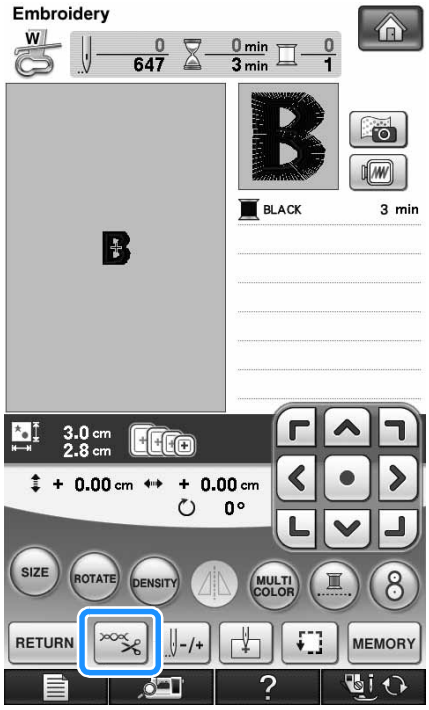
Note

- If the bobbin thread was incorrectly threaded, the upper thread may be too tight. In this case, refer to “Setting the Bobbin” (page 54) and rethread the bobbin thread.

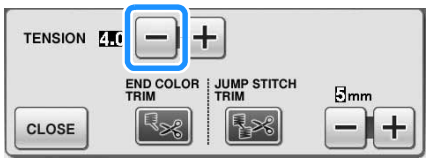


① Right side
② Wrong side

1 **Press** **.**



2 **Press** **to weaken the upper thread tension. (The tension number will decrease.)**



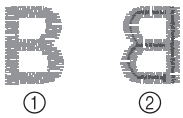
3 **Press** **.**

■ Upper Thread is Too Loose

The tension of the upper thread is too loose, resulting in a loose upper thread, loose thread locks, or loops appearing on the right side of the fabric.

Note

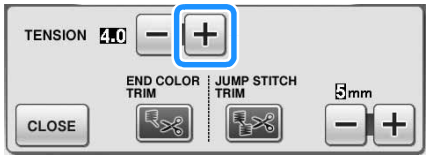
- If the upper thread was incorrectly threaded, the upper thread may be too loose. In this case, refer to “Upper Threading” (page 57) and rethread the upper thread.



① Right side
② Wrong side

1 **Press** **.**

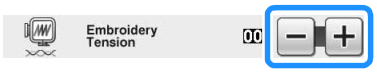
2 **Press** **to tighten the upper thread tension. (The tension number will increase.)**



3 **Press** **.**

Note

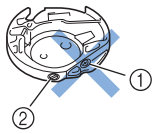
- With “Embroidery Tension” on page 6/8 of the setting screen, the tension of the upper thread can be adjusted for embroidering. The selected setting will be applied to all patterns.
  When embroidering, if the overall tension of the upper thread is too tight or too loose, adjust it from the setting screen. Press to tighten the upper thread tension and press to loosen the upper tension. If an individual embroidery pattern needs additional fine tuning, refer to “Adjusting Thread Tension” on page 233.



Adjusting the Alternate Bobbin Case (with No Color on the Screw)

When using the embroidery bobbin thread provided, please be sure to choose the green marked bobbin case when performing utility stitch sewing and embroidery functions. When in the embroidery function mode, the alternate bobbin case (with no color on the screw) should be selected when substitute embroidery bobbin threads (other than what is accompanied with your machine) are being used. The alternate bobbin case (with no color on the screw) can be easily adjusted when bobbin tension changes are required to accommodate different bobbin threads. See “Sewing Attractive Finishes” on page 218.

To adjust the bobbin tension for embroidery function, using the alternate bobbin case (with no color on the screw), turn the slotted screw (-) with a (small) screwdriver.



① Do not turn a phillips screw (+).
② Adjust with a screwdriver (small).

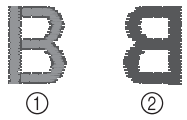
■ Correct Tension

Upper thread slightly appears on the wrong side of fabric.

① Right side
② Wrong side

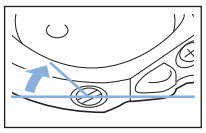
■ Bobbin Thread is Too Loose

Bobbin thread appears slightly on the right side of fabric.



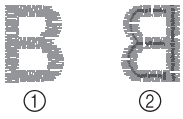
① Right side
② Wrong side

If this occurs, turn the slotted screw (-) clockwise, being careful not to over-tighten the screw, approximately 30-45 degrees to increase bobbin tension.



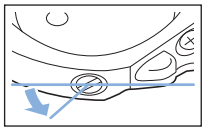
■ Bobbin Thread is Too Tight

Upper thread on the right side of fabric seems to be lifting/looping and bobbin thread is not seen on the wrong side of fabric.



① Right side
② Wrong side

If this occurs, turn the slotted screw (-) counterclockwise, being careful not to over-loosen the screw, approximately 30-45 degrees to decrease bobbin tension.



⚠ CAUTION

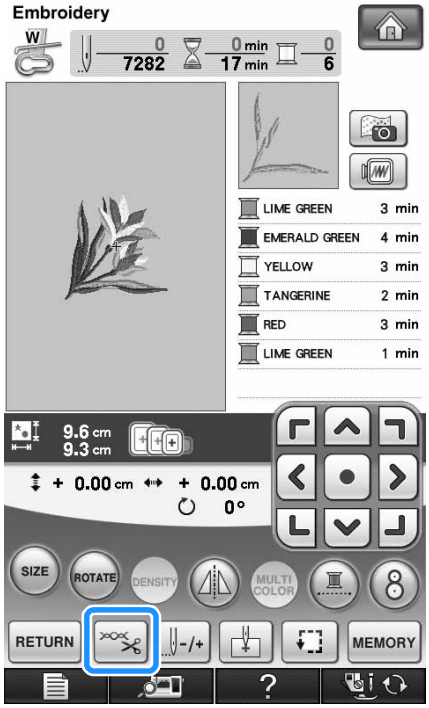
- **When adjusting the alternate bobbin case, be sure to remove the bobbin from the alternate bobbin case.**
- **DO NOT adjust the position of the phillips (+) screw on the alternate bobbin case as this may result in damage to the bobbin case, rendering it unusable.**
- **If the slotted screw (-) is difficult to turn, do not use force. Turning the screw too much or providing force in either (rotational) direction may cause damage to the bobbin case. Should damage occur, the bobbin case may not maintain proper tension.**

Using the Automatic Thread Cutting Function (END COLOR TRIM)

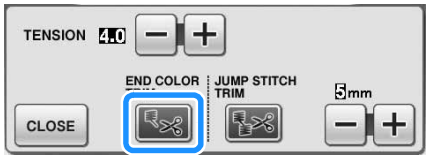
The automatic thread cutting function will cut the thread at the end of sewing each color. This function is initially turned on. To turn this function off, press key and then . This function can be turned on or off during embroidering.

* This setting returns to its default when the machine is turned off.

1 Press .



2 Press to turn off the automatic thread cutting function.



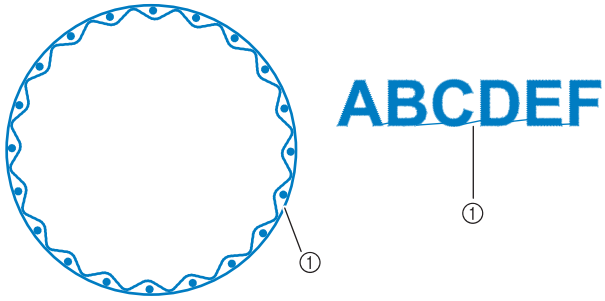
→ The key will display as .

* When one color thread is sewn, the machine will stop without cutting the thread.

Using the Thread Trimming Function (JUMP STITCH TRIM)

The thread trimming function will automatically trim any excess thread jumps within the color. This function is initially turned on. To turn this function off, press key and then . This function can be turned on or off during embroidering.

* Your customized setting remains after turning the machine off and on.

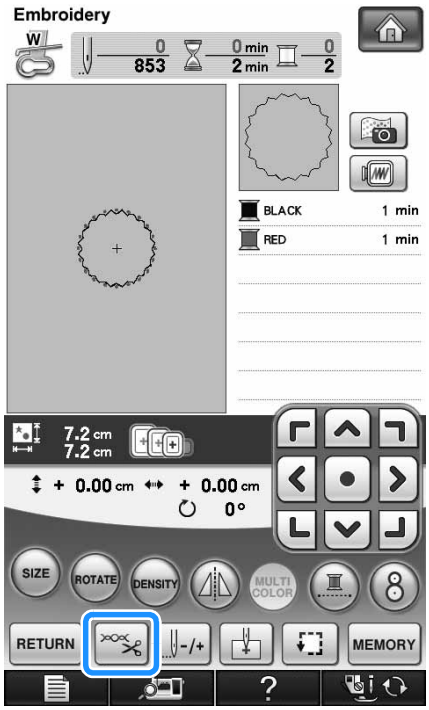


① Jump stitch

Note

- When this function is turned on, use the included ball point needle 75/11 for embroidering patterns with short jump stitches such as alphabet characters. Using other needles may cause the thread to break.

1 Press .



2 Press to turn off the thread trimming function.

→ The key will display as

* The machine will not trim the thread before moving to the next stitching.

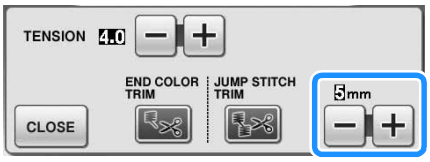
■ Selecting the Length of Jump Stitch Not to Trim

When the thread trimming function is turned on, you can select the length of the jump stitch not to trim the thread. This function can be turned on or off during embroidering.
Select a setting from 5 mm to 50 mm in 5 mm increments.

* Your customized setting remains after turning the machine off and on.

Press + or − to select the length of jump stitch.

For example: Press + to select 25 mm (1 inch) and the machine will not trim a jump stitch of 25 mm or less before moving to the next stitching.



Note

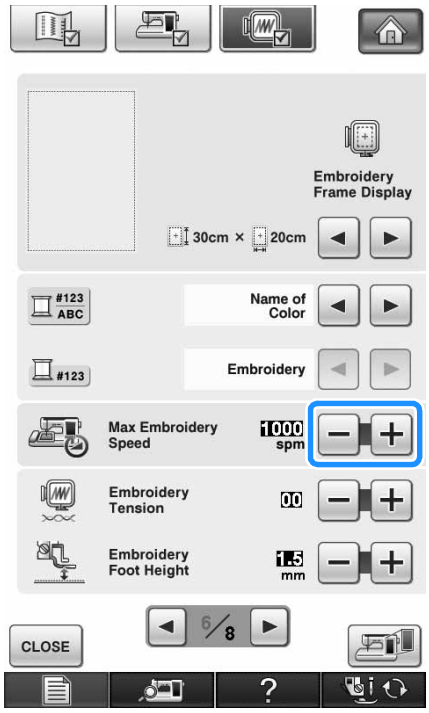
- If design has many trims it is recommended to select a higher jump stitch trim setting in order to reduce the amount of excess tails on backside of fabric.
- The higher number of the jump stitch length selected, the fewer number of times the machine will trim. In this case, more jump stitches remain on the surface of the fabric.

Adjusting the Embroidery Speed

1 **Press** [ ] **and** [ ].

2 **In the "Max Embroidery Speed" display, use [+] [−] to change the maximum embroidery speed.**

* You can choose from 3 different speed levels.



Memo

- SPM is the number of stitches sewn in one minute.
- Decrease the sewing speed when embroidering on thin, thick, or heavy fabrics.
- The sewing speed can be changed while embroidery is being sewn.
- The maximum sewing speed setting does not change until a new setting is selected. The setting specified before the main power is set to OFF remains selected the next time that the machine is turned on.
- Decrease the sewing speed to 600 spm when using a speciality thread like a metallic thread.

3 **Press** [CLOSE].

Changing the Thread Color Display

You can display the name of the thread colors or embroidery thread number.

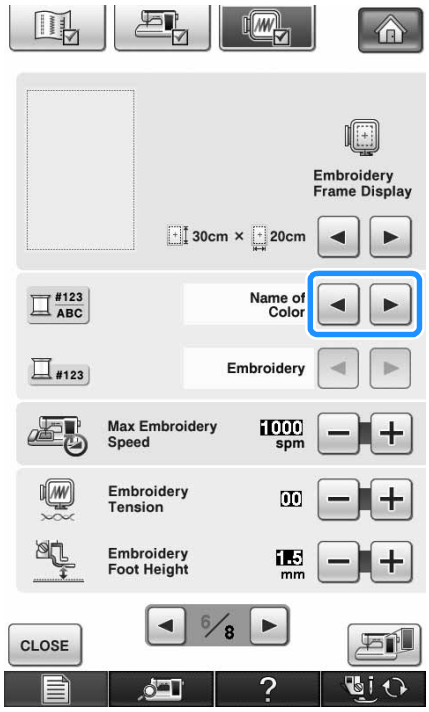
Memo

- Colors on the screen may vary slightly from actual spool colors.

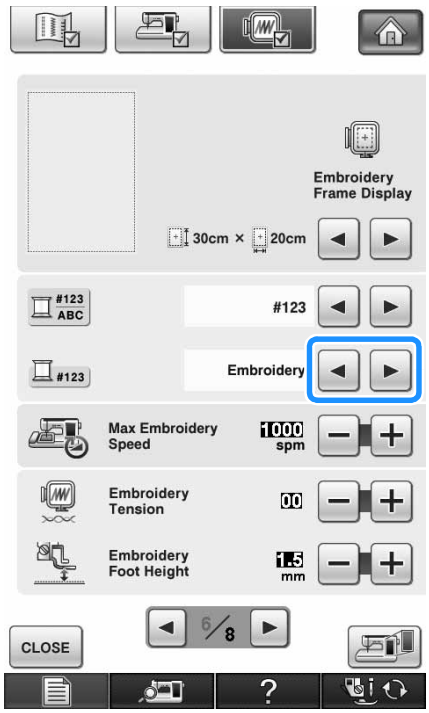
1 **Press** [ ].

2 **Press** [ ].

3 **In the "Thread Color Display", use [◄] [►] to display the name of the thread colors or the embroidery thread number.**



4 **When the thread number #123 is displayed, use ◄ ► to select from six embroidery thread brands pictured below.**



EMBROIDERY / POLYESTER THREAD#

509 Embroidery
804 Embroidery
085 Embroidery

COUNTRY/COTTON THREAD#*

463 Country
604 Country
155 Country

MADEIRA /POLYESTER THREAD#

1749 Madeira Poly
1630 Madeira Poly
1921 Madeira Poly

MADEIRA RAYON THREAD#

1050 Madeira Rayon
1261 Madeira Rayon
1108 Madeira Rayon

SULKY THREAD#

1510 Sulky
1193 Sulky
1224 Sulky

ROBISON-ANTON/POLYESTER THREAD#

5514 R-A Poly
5586 R-A Poly
5523 R-A Poly

* Depending on the country or area, cotton-like polyester thread is sold.

5 **Press CLOSE.**

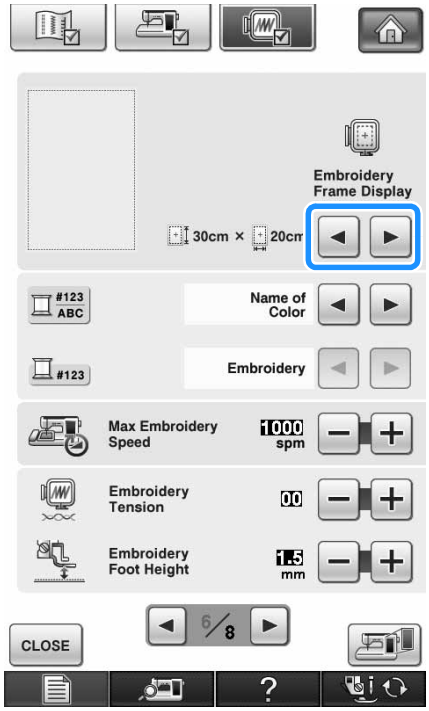
Changing the Embroidery Frame Display

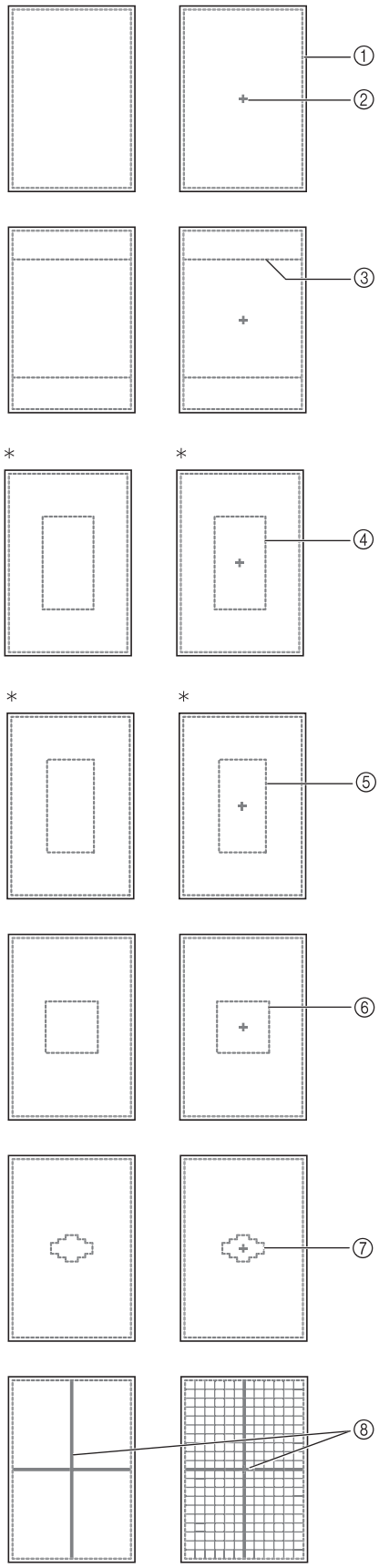
1 **Press .**

2 **Press .**

3 **In the "Embroidery Frame Display", use ◄ ► to change the embroidery frame display mode.**

* There are 14 choices.





* For the optional embroidery frame.

① Extra large frame embroidering area
30 cm × 20 cm (12 inches × 8 inches)

② Center mark

③ Quilt frame embroidering area
20 cm × 20 cm (8 inches × 8 inches)

④ Embroidery area for optional large embroidery frame
18 cm × 13 cm (7 inches × 5 inches)

⑤ Embroidering area for optional border embroidery frame
18 cm × 10 cm (7 inches × 4 inches)

⑥ Medium frame embroidering area
10 cm × 10 cm (4 inches × 4 inches)

⑦ Small frame embroidering area
2 cm × 6 cm (1 inch × 2-1/2 inches)

⑧ Grid lines

4 **Press** CLOSE **.**

REVISING THE PATTERN

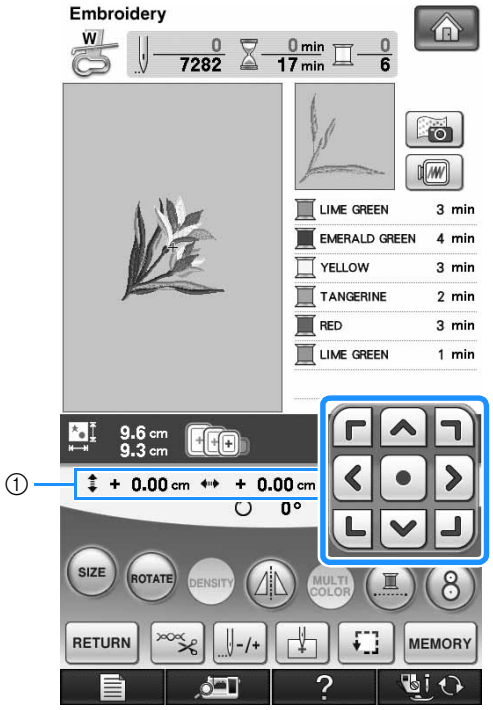
⚠ CAUTION

- **When you have revised the pattern, check the display of available embroidery frames and use an appropriate frame. If you use an embroidery frame not displayed as available for use, the presser foot may strike the frame and possibly cause injury.**

Moving the Pattern

Use to move the pattern in the direction shown by the arrow.

Press to center the pattern.



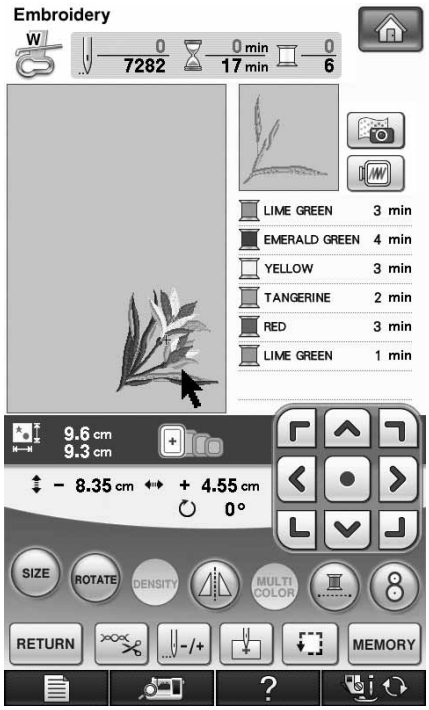
① Distance from the center

The pattern can also be moved by dragging it.

If a USB mouse is connected, move the mouse to position the pointer on the desired pattern, and then select and drag the pattern. The pattern can also be dragged by selecting it directly in the screen with your finger or the touch pen.

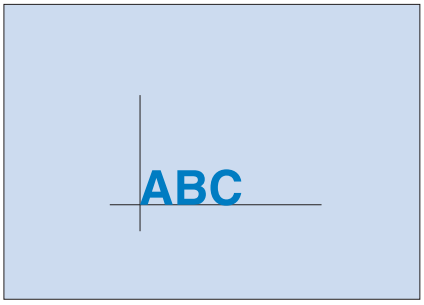
Memo

- Patterns cannot be moved in screens where does not appear.

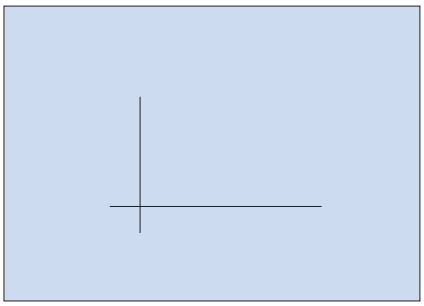


Aligning the Pattern and the Needle

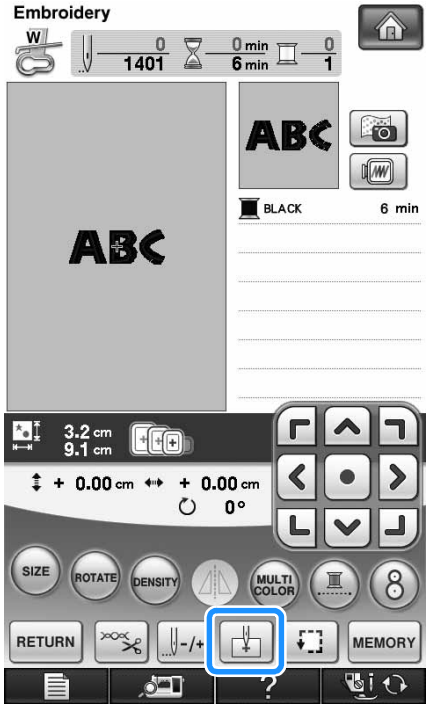
Example: Aligning the lower left side of a pattern and the needle



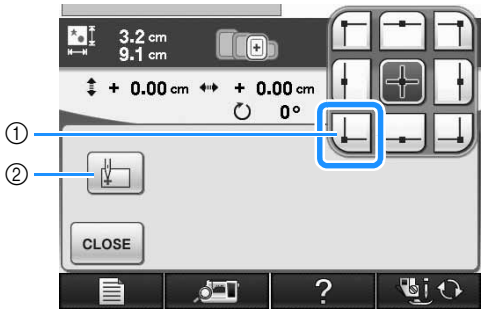
1 **Mark the embroidery start position on the fabric, as shown.**



2 **Press** .



3 **Press** .



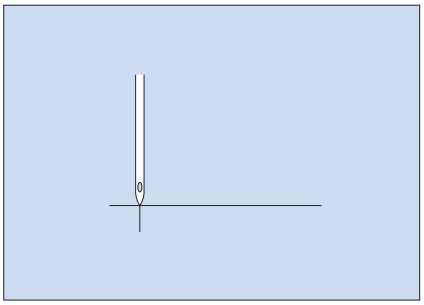
① Start position

② This key is used for aligning linked characters (see page 245).

→ The needle position moves to the bottom left corner of the pattern (the embroidery frame moves so that the needle is positioned correctly).

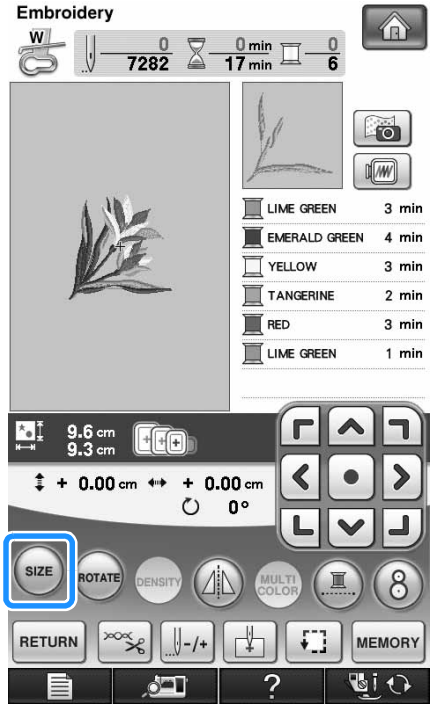
4 **Press** CLOSE .

5 **Use** to align the needle and the mark on the fabric, and begin embroidering the pattern.



Changing the Size of the Pattern

1 **Press** SIZE .



2 **Select the direction in which to change the size.**

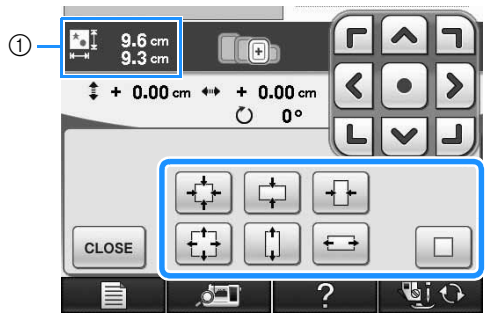
* Press to enlarge the pattern proportionately.

* Press to shrink the pattern proportionately.

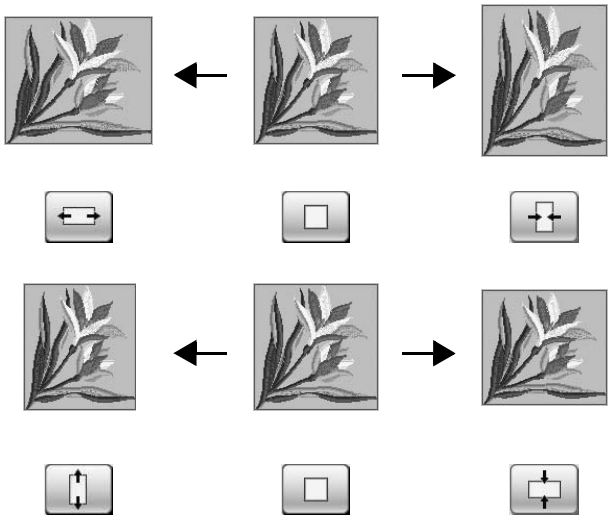
* Press to stretch the pattern horizontally.

* Press to compact the pattern horizontally.

* Press [↕] to stretch the pattern vertically.
* Press [↕] to compact the pattern vertically.
* Press [□] to return the pattern to its original appearance.



① Size of the pattern



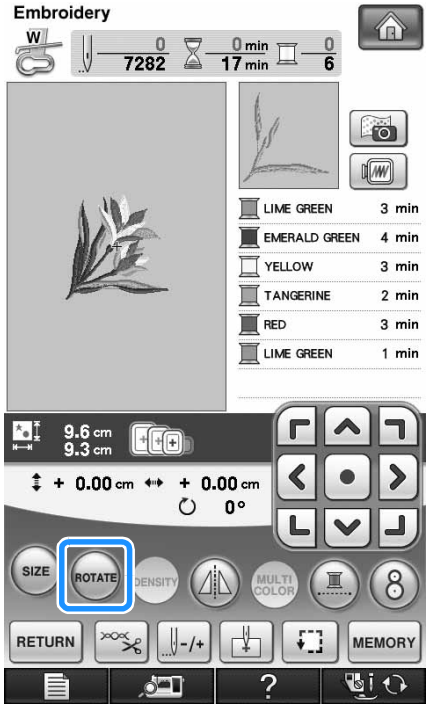
Memo

- Some patterns or characters can be enlarged more than others.
- Some patterns or characters can be enlarged to a greater degree if they are rotated 90 degrees.
- You can change the size of the pattern by rotating the mouse wheel. Rotate the mouse wheel away from you to shrink the pattern. Rotate the mouse wheel toward you to enlarge the pattern.

3 Press [CLOSE] to return to the original screen.

Rotating the Pattern

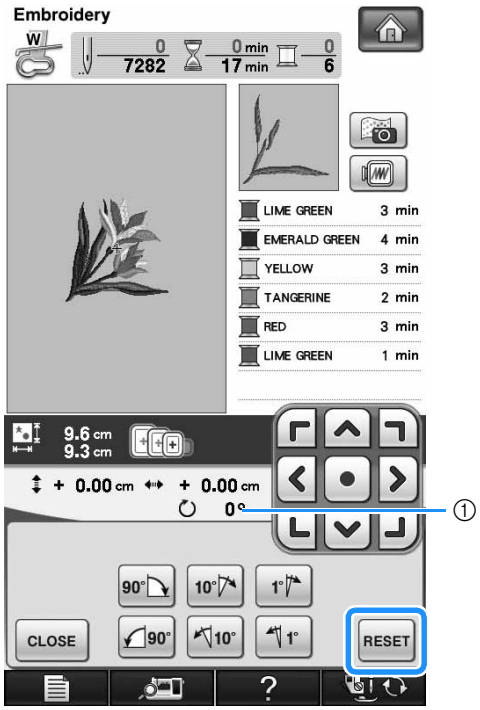
1 Press [ROTATE].



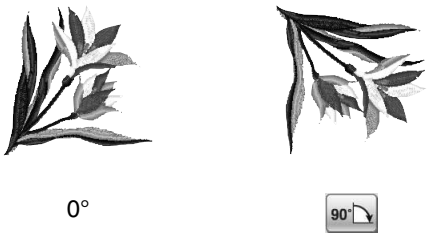
2 Select the angle of rotation for the pattern.

* Press [90°] to rotate the pattern 90 degrees to the left.
* Press [90°] to rotate the pattern 90 degrees to the right.
* Press [10°] to rotate the pattern 10 degrees to the left.
* Press [10°] to rotate the pattern 10 degrees to the right.
* Press [1°] to rotate the pattern 1 degree to the left.
* Press [1°] to rotate the pattern 1 degree to the right.

* Press RESET to return the pattern to its original position.



① Degree of rotation



0°

90°

Memo

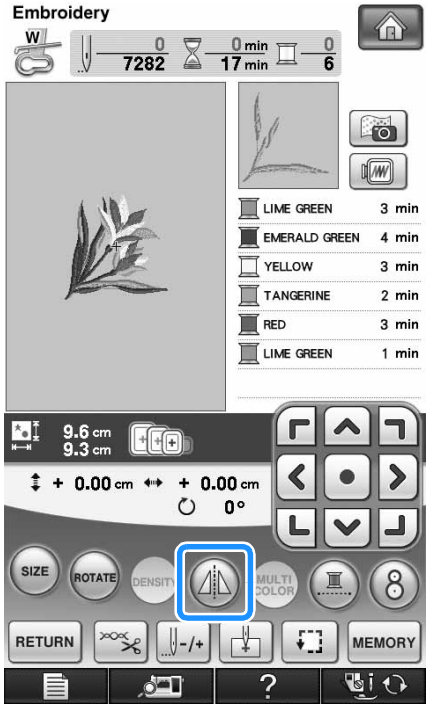
- You can rotate the pattern by rotating the mouse wheel. Rotate the mouse wheel away from you to rotate the pattern 10 degrees to the left. Rotate the mouse wheel toward you to rotate the pattern 10 degrees to the right.

3 Press CLOSE to return to the original screen.

Creating a Horizontal Mirror Image

Press so it appears as to create a horizontal mirror image of the selected pattern.

Press again to return the pattern to normal.

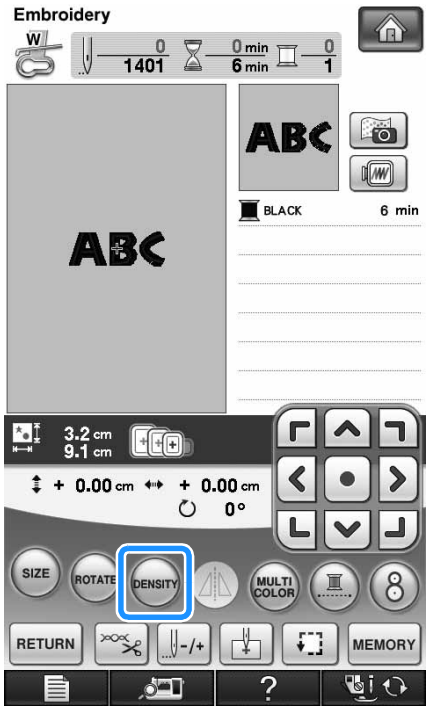


Changing the Density (Alphabet Character and Frame Patterns Only)

The thread density for some alphabet character and frame patterns can be changed.

A setting between 80% and 120% in 5% increments can be specified.

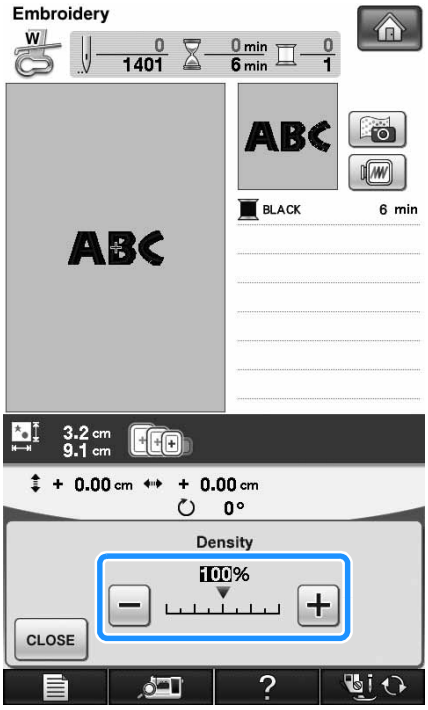
1 **Press** DENSITY.

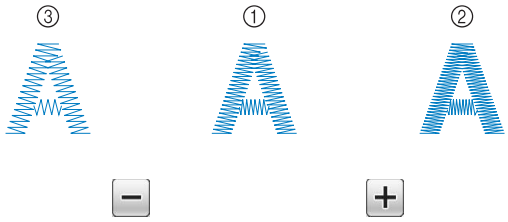


2 **Change the density.**

* Press − to make the pattern less dense.

* Press + to make the pattern more dense.





① Normal
② Fine (stitches closer together)
③ Coarse (stitches farther apart)
→ The pattern density changes each time you press a button.

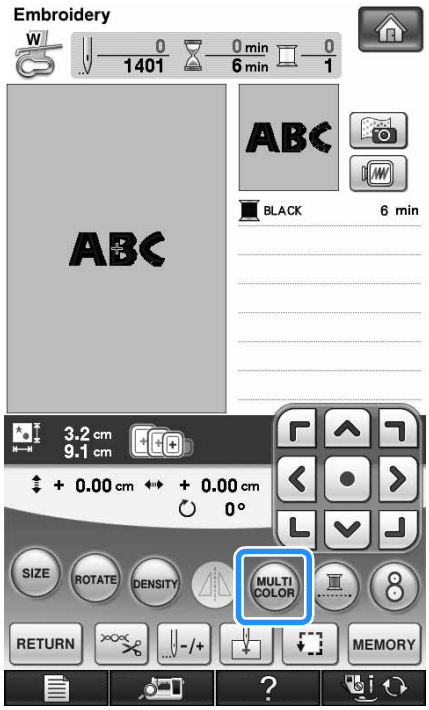
3 **Press** CLOSE **to return to the pattern selection screen.**

Changing the Colors of Alphabet Character Patterns

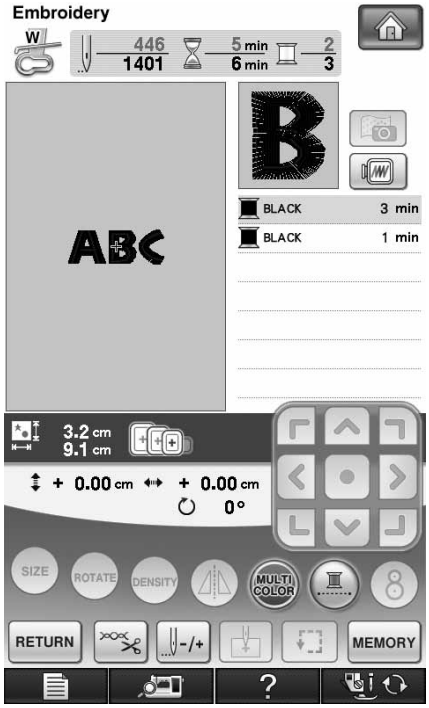
Combined alphabet character patterns can be sewn with each letter in a different color. If "MULTI COLOR" is set, the machine stops after each character is sewn so that the thread can be changed to a different color.

1 **Press MULTI COLOR so that it appears as MULTI COLOR.**

* Press the key again to return to the original setting.



2 **After a character is sewn, change the thread color, and then sew the next character.**



Embroidering Linked Characters

Follow the procedure described below to embroider linked characters in a single row when the entire pattern extends beyond the embroidery frame.

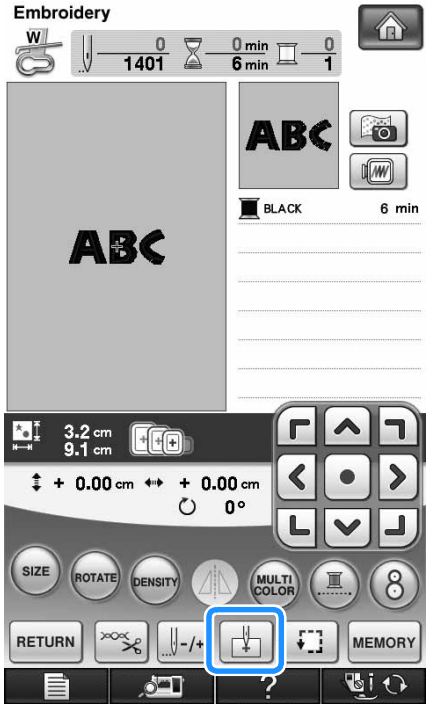
Example: Linking "DEF" to the characters "ABC"

A B C D E F

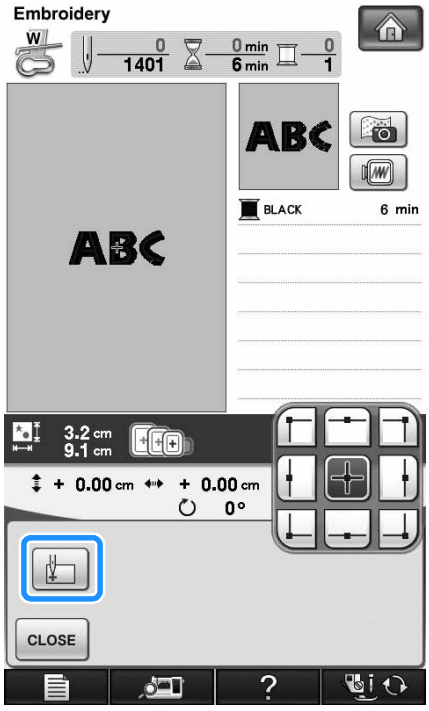
1 **Select the character patterns for "ABC".**

> **Note**
> • For details on selecting character patterns, refer to "Selecting Alphabet Character Patterns" on page 194.

2 **Press** .



3 **Press** .



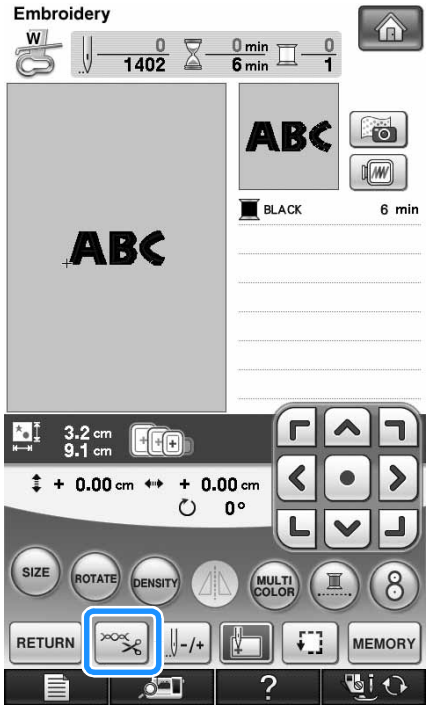
→ The needle is positioned in the lower-left corner of the pattern. The embroidery frame moves so that the needle is positioned correctly.

Note

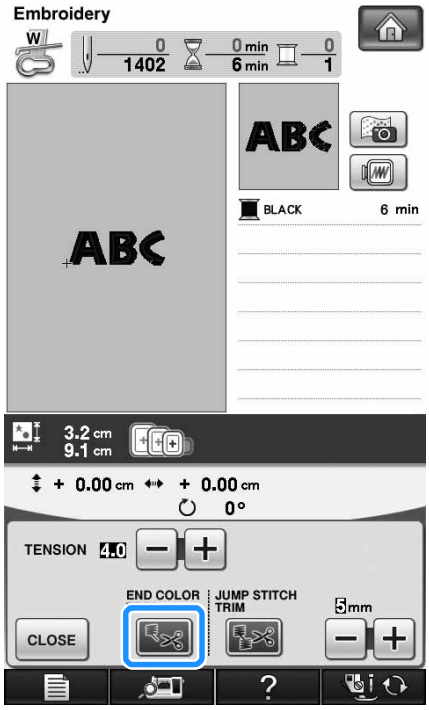
- To cancel the starting point setting and return the starting point to the center of the pattern, press .
- Use to select a different starting point for embroidering.

4 **Press** CLOSE.

5 **Press** .

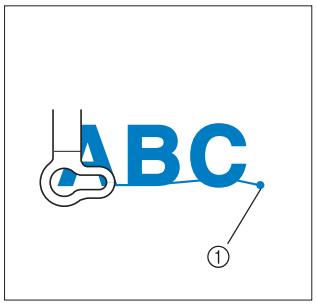


6 **Press [icon] to turn off the thread cutting function and then press [CLOSE].**



7 **Press the "Start/Stop" button.**

8 **After the characters are embroidered, cut the threads to a generous length, remove the embroidery frame, and then attach the embroidery frame again so that the remaining characters ("DEF") can be embroidered.**

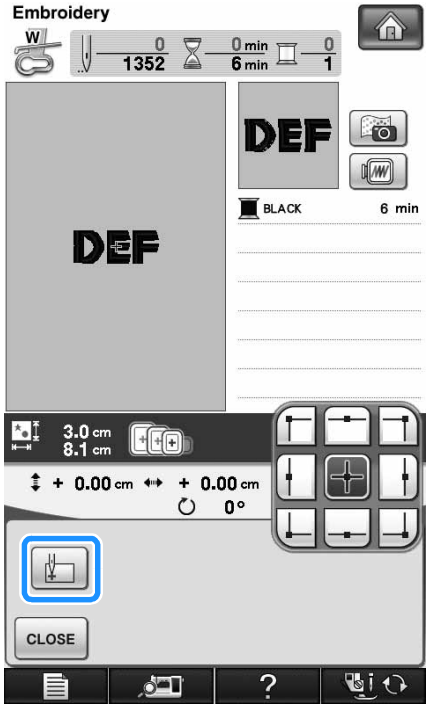


① End of the embroidering

9 **As in step 1, select the character patterns for "DEF".**

10 **Press [icon].**

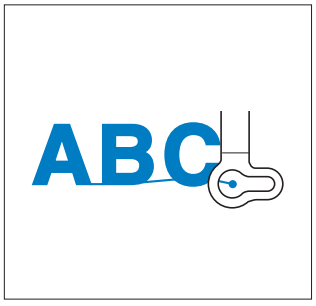
11 **Press [icon].**



→ The needle is positioned in the lower-left corner of the pattern. The embroidery frame moves so that the needle is positioned correctly.

12 **Press [CLOSE].**

13 **Use [icon] to align the needle with the end of embroidering for the previous pattern.**



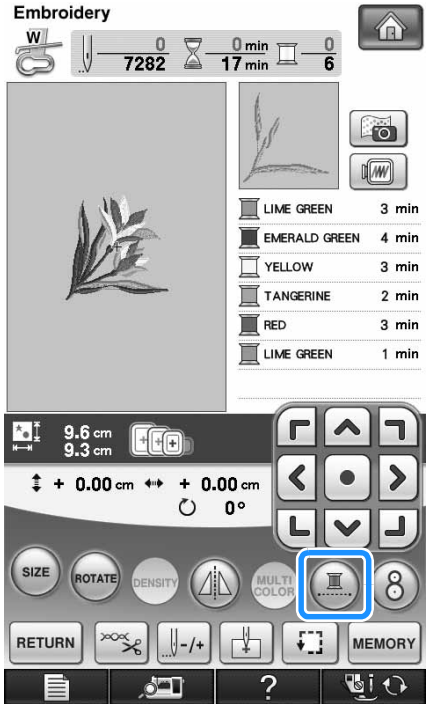
5

Embroidery

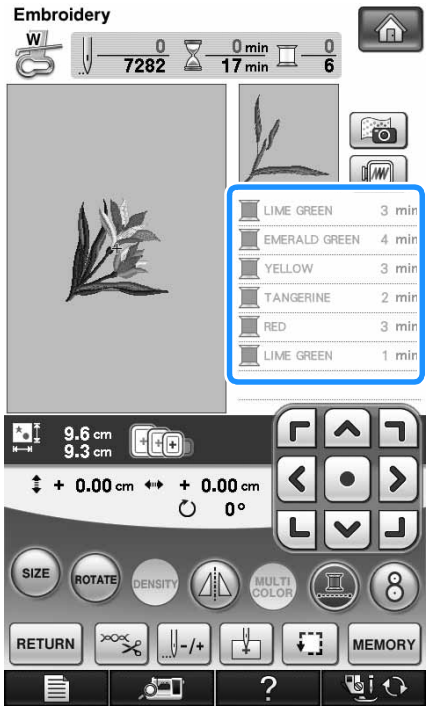
14 Press the “Start/Stop” button to begin embroidering the remaining character patterns.

Uninterrupted Embroidering (Using a Single Color)

A selected pattern can be stitched out in one color instead of multicolor. The machine will hesitate but not stop between color steps, and then continue till the pattern is completed. Press for the multicolor steps to become shaded and the selected pattern will embroider in a single color, instead of changing the thread while embroidering. Press again to return to the pattern’s original settings.



→ The thread color displayed on the screen will be grayed out.



Memo

- Even if uninterrupted embroidering has been set, the automatic thread cutting function and the thread trimming function can be used (see page 235 and 236).

USING THE MEMORY FUNCTION

Embroidery Data Precautions

Observe the following precautions when using embroidery data other than that created and saved in this machine.

⚠ CAUTION

- **When using embroidery data other than our original patterns, the thread or needle may break when sewing with a stitch density that is too fine or when sewing three or more overlapping stitches. In that case, use one of our original data design systems to edit the embroidery data.**

■ Types of Embroidery Data that can be Used

- Only .pes,.pha,.phb,.phc, and .dst embroidery data files can be used with this machine. Using data other than that saved using our data design systems or sewing machines may cause the embroidery machine to malfunction.

■ Types of USB Devices/Media that can be Used

Stitch data can be saved to or recalled from USB media. Use media that meets the following specifications.

- USB Flash drive (USB Flash memory)
- USB Floppy disk drive

Stitch data can be recalled only.

- USB CD-ROM, CD-R, CD-RW drives

You can also use the following types of USB media with the USB Memory Card Reader/USB card writer module.

- Secure Digital (SD) Card
- CompactFlash
- Memory Stick
- Smart Media
- Multi Media Card (MMC)
- XD-Picture Card

Note

- The processing speed may vary by port selection and quantity of data stored.
- Some USB media may not be usable with this machine. Please visit our website for more details.
- The access lamp will begin blinking after inserting USB devices/media, and it will take about 5 to 6 seconds to recognize the devices/media. (Time will differ depending on the USB device/media).

Memo

- To create file folders, use a computer.
- Letters and numerals can be used in the file names. In addition, if the file name contains no more than eight characters, the entire file name will appear on the screen.
  If the file name is more than eight characters long, only the first six characters followed by “~” and a number appear as the file name.

■ Computers and Operating Systems with the Following Specifications can be Used

- Compatible models:
  IBM PC with a USB port as standard equipment
  IBM PC-compatible computer equipped with a USB port as standard equipment
- Compatible operating systems:
  Microsoft Windows XP, Windows Vista, Windows 7

■ Precautions on Using the Computer to Create and Save Data

- If the name of the embroidery data file/folder cannot be identified, for example, because the name contains special characters, the file/folder is not displayed. If this occurs, change the name of the file/folder. We recommend using the 26 letters of the alphabet (uppercase and lowercase), the numbers 0 through 9,"-", and "_".
- If embroidery data larger than 300 mm (H) × 200 mm (W) (approx.12 inches (H) × 8 inches (W)) is selected, a message is shown asking if you wish to rotate the pattern 90 degrees.
  Even after being rotated 90 degrees, embroidery data larger than 300 mm (H) × 200 mm (W) (approx. 12 inches (H) × 8 inches (W)) cannot be used. (All designs must be within the 300 mm (H) × 200 mm (W) (approx. 12 inches (H) × 8 inches (W)) design field size.)
- .pes files saved with the number of stitches or the number of colors exceeding the specified limits cannot be displayed. The combined design can not exceed a maximum number of 500,000 stitches or a maximum number of 125 color changes (Above numbers are approximate, depending on the overall size of the design). Use one of our design software programs to edit the embroidery pattern so that it meets these specifications.
- Embroidery data stored in a folder created in USB media can be retrieved.
- Do not create folders in "Removable Disk" on a computer. If embroidery data is stored in a folder in "Removable Disk", that embroidery data cannot be retrieved by the machine.
- Even if the embroidery unit is not attached, the machine will recognize embroidery data.

■ Tajima (.dst) Embroidery Data

- .dst data is displayed in the pattern list screen by file name (the actual image cannot be displayed). Only the first eight characters of the file name can be displayed.
- Since Tajima (.dst) data does not contain specific thread color information, it is displayed with our default thread color sequence. Check the preview and change the thread colors as desired.

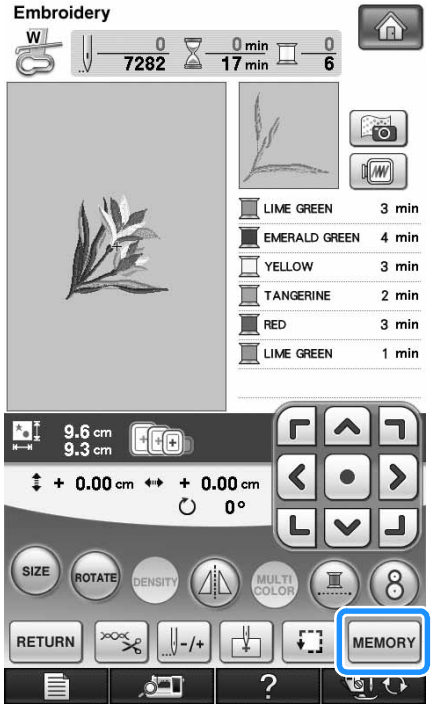
Saving Embroidery Patterns in the Machine's Memory

You can save embroidery patterns that you have customized and will use often; for example, your name, patterns that have been rotated or had the size changed, patterns that have had the sewing position changed, etc. A total of about 2 MB of patterns can be saved in the machine's memory.

Note
- Do not turn the main power to OFF while the "Saving" screen is displayed. You will lose the pattern you are saving.

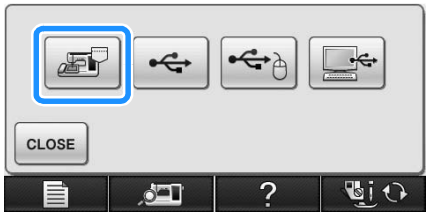
Memo
- It takes a few seconds to save a pattern to the machine's memory.
- See page 254 for information on retrieving a saved pattern.

1 Press MEMORY when the pattern you want to save is in the sewing screen.



2 Press .

* Press CLOSE to return to the original screen without saving.



→ The "Saving" screen is displayed. When the pattern is saved, the display returns to the original screen automatically.

■ If the Memory is Full

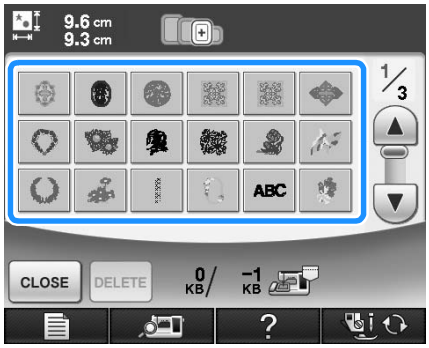
If the screen below displays, either the maximum number of patterns have been saved or the pattern you want to save takes a lot of memory, and the machine cannot save it. If you delete a previously saved pattern, you can save the current pattern.

1 Press DELETE.

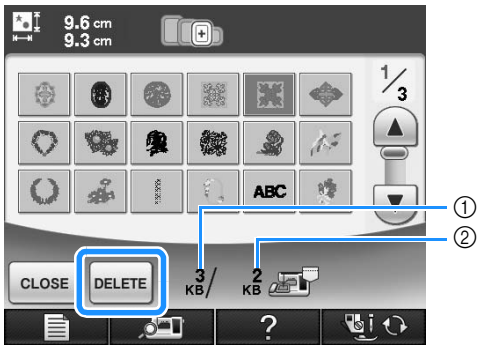
* Press CANCEL to return to the original screen without saving.

→ The machine displays the patterns currently saved.

2 **Select the pattern you want to delete.**



3 **Press** DELETE.

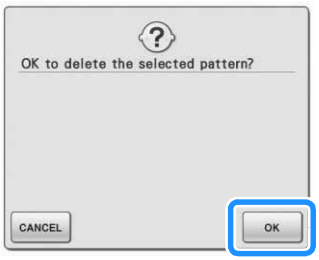


① Amount of memory used by the pattern to be deleted

② Amount of memory needed to save the current pattern

4 **Press** OK.

* If you decide not to delete the pattern, press CANCEL.



→ The "Saving" screen displays. When the pattern is saved, the display returns to the original screen automatically.

Note

- Do not turn the main power to OFF while the "Saving" screen is displayed. You will lose the pattern you are saving.

Memo

- If there is enough memory available after deleting the pattern, the pattern you want to save will be saved automatically. If there is not enough memory available after deleting the pattern, repeat the steps above to delete another pattern from the machine's memory.
- It takes a few seconds to save a pattern.
- See page 254 for more information about retrieving saved patterns.

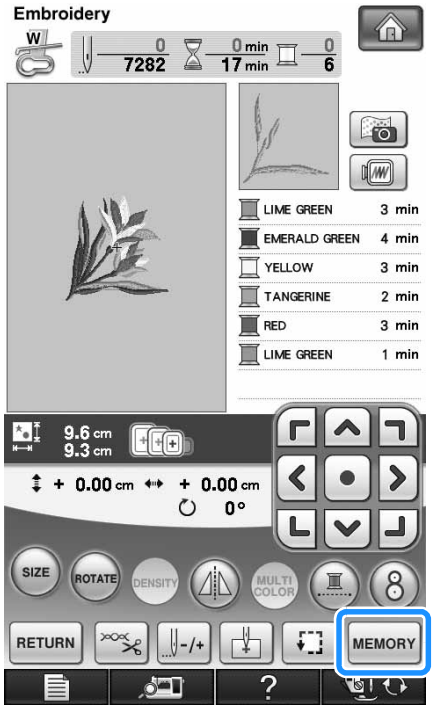
Saving Embroidery Patterns to USB Media

When sending embroidery patterns from the machine to USB media, plug the USB media into the machine's USB port.

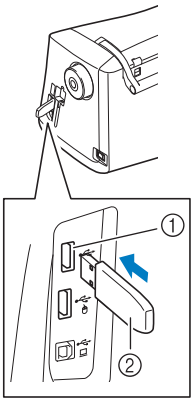
Memo

- USB media is commercially available, but some USB media may not be usable with this machine. Please visit our website for more details.
- Depending on the type of USB media being used, either directly plug the USB device into the machine's USB port or plug the USB media Reader/Writer into the machine's USB port.
- The USB media can be inserted or removed at any time.

1 **Press** MEMORY **when the pattern you want to save is in the sewing screen.**



2 **Insert the USB media into the primary (top) USB port on the machine.**

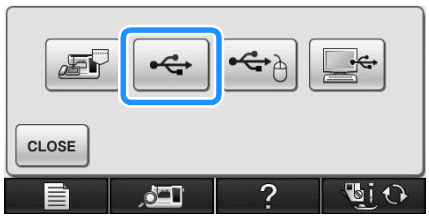


① Primary (top) USB port for media
② USB media

Note
- The processing speed may vary by port selection and quantity of data. The primary (top) USB port processes the data faster than the center port. It is recommended to use the primary (top) USB port.
- Two USB media cannot be used with this machine at the same time. If two USB media are inserted, only the USB media inserted first is detected.
- Do not insert anything other than USB media into the USB media port. Otherwise, the USB media drive may be damaged.

3 **Press** **.**

* Press CLOSE to return to the original screen without saving.



→ The "Saving" screen is displayed. When the pattern is saved, the display returns to the original screen automatically.

Note
- Do not insert or remove USB media while "Saving" screen is displayed. You will lose some or all of the pattern you are saving.

Saving Embroidery Patterns in the Computer

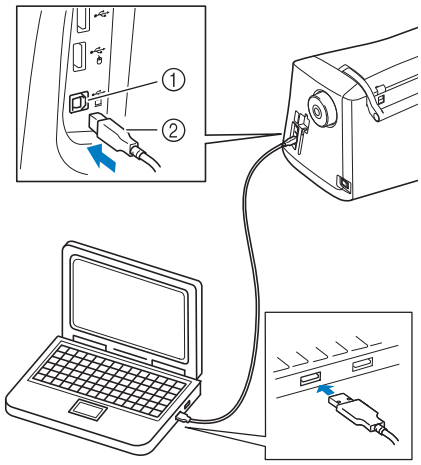
Using the included USB cable, the machine can be connected to your computer, and the embroidery patterns can be temporarily retrieved from and saved in the "Removable Disk" folder in your computer. A total of about 3 MB of embroidery patterns can be saved in the "Removable disk", but the saved embroidery patterns are deleted when the machine is turned OFF.

Note
- Do not turn the main power to OFF while the "Saving" screen is displayed. You will lose the pattern you are saving.

1 **Plug the USB cable connector into the corresponding USB ports for the computer and for the machine.**

2 **Turn on your computer and select "Computer (My computer)".**

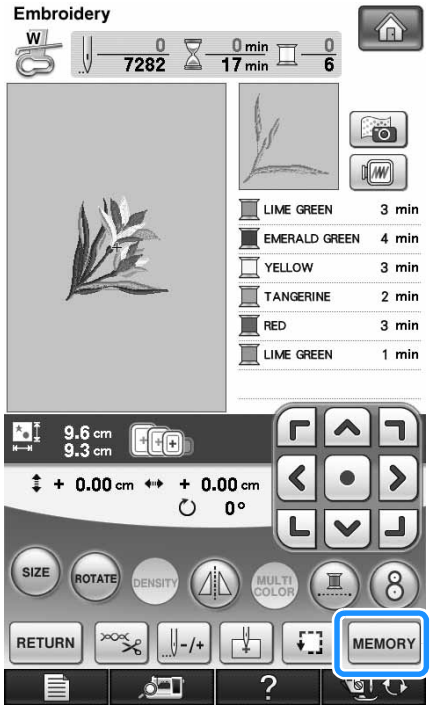
* The USB cable can be plugged into the USB ports on the computer and embroidery machine whether or not they are turned on.



① USB port for computer
② USB cable connector
→ The "Removable Disk" icon will appear in "Computer (My computer)" on the computer.

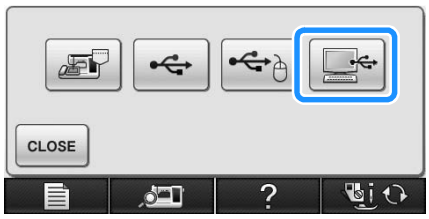
Note
- The connectors on the USB cable can only be inserted into a port in one direction. If it is difficult to insert the connector, do not insert it with force. Check the orientation of the connector.
- For details on the position of the USB port on the computer (or USB hub), refer to the instruction manual for the corresponding equipment.

3 **Press MEMORY when the pattern you want to save is in the sewing screen.**



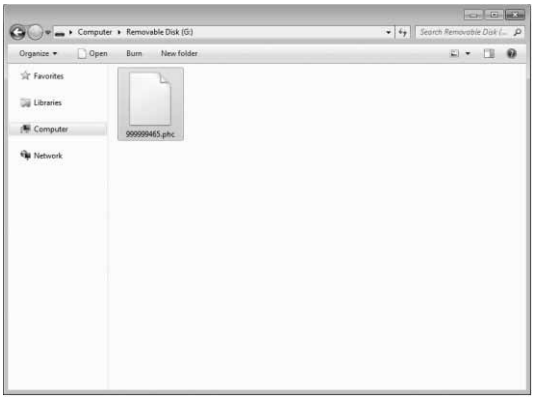
4 **Press .**

* Press CLOSE to return to the original screen without saving.



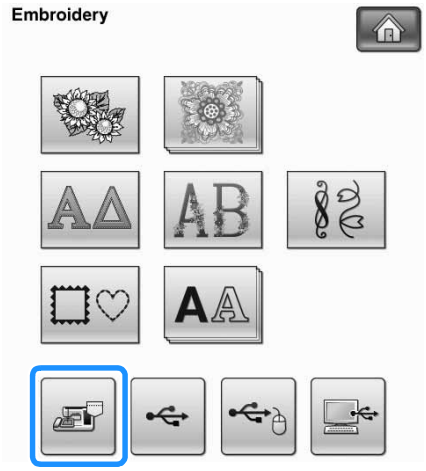
→ The pattern will be temporarily saved to "Removable Disk" under "Computer (My computer)".

5 **Select the pattern's .phc file in "Removable Disk" and copy the file to the computer.**



Retrieving Patterns from the Machine's Memory

1 **Press .**

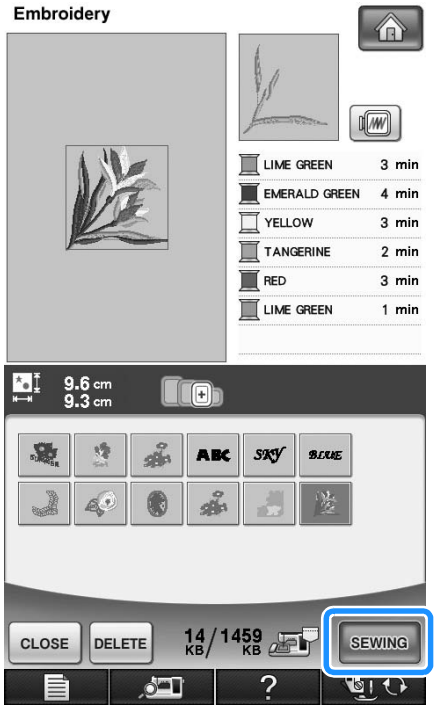


→ The machine displays the patterns currently in the memory.

2 **Press the key of the pattern you want to retrieve.**

* Press CLOSE to return to the original screen.

3 **Press** SEWING .



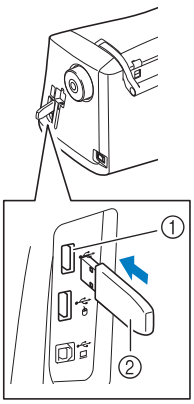
→ The sewing screen is displayed.

Recalling from USB Media

You can recall a specific embroidery pattern from either direct USB media or a folder in the USB media. If the pattern is in a folder, check each folder to find the embroidery pattern.

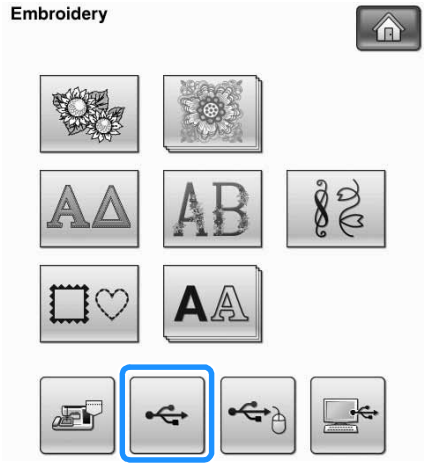
Note
- The processing speed may vary by port selection and quantity of data.

1 **Insert the USB media into the primary (top) USB port on the machine (see page 252).**



① Primary (top) USB port for media
② USB media

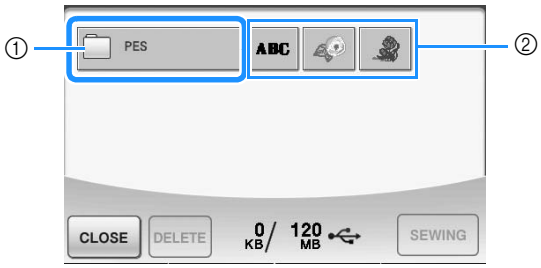
2 **Press** .

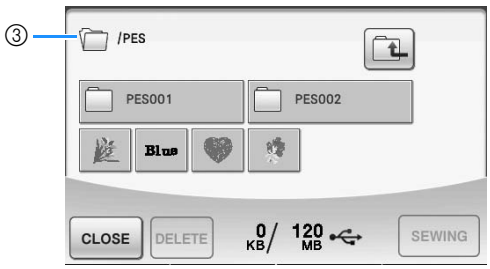


→ Embroidery patterns and a folder in a top folder are displayed.

3 **Press** **when there is a subfolder to sort two or more stitch patterns to USB media, the embroidery pattern in the subfolder is displayed.**

* Press CLOSE to return to the original screen without recalling.





① Folder name
② Embroidery patterns in USB media
③ Path

* The path to shows the current folder at the top of the list.
Embroidery patterns and subfolders within a folder are displayed.

* Press to return to the previous folder.

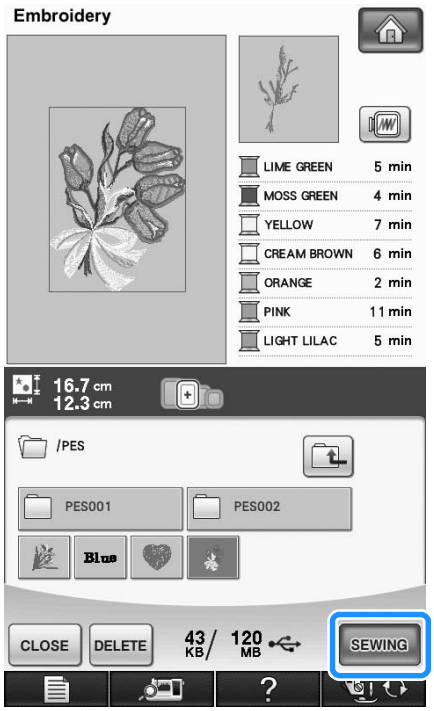
* Use the computer to create folders. Folders cannot be created with the machine.

4 **Press the key of the pattern you want to retrieve.**

* Press CLOSE to return to the original screen.

5 **Press SEWING .**

* Press DELETE to delete the pattern. The pattern will be deleted from the USB media.

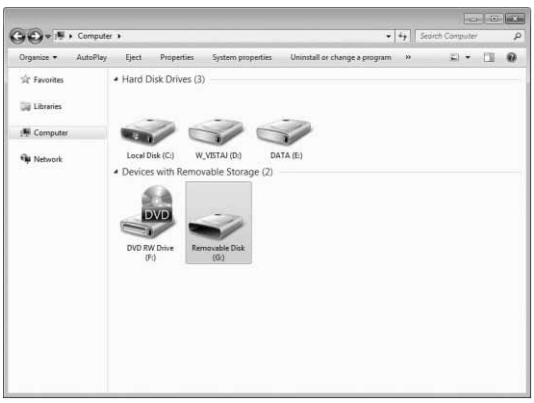


→ The sewing screen is displayed.

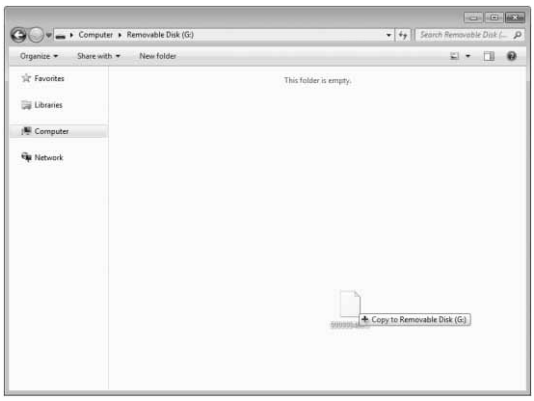
Recalling from the Computer

1 **Plug the USB cable connector into the corresponding USB ports for the computer and for the machine (see page 253).**

2 **On the computer, open "Computer (My computer)" then go to "Removable Disk".**



3 **Move/copy the pattern data to "Removable Disk".**

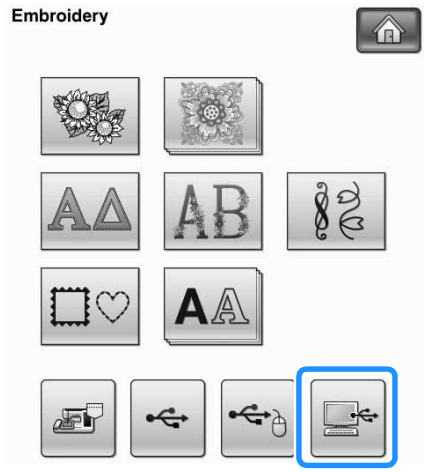


→ Pattern data in "Removable Disk" is written to the machine.

Note

- While data is being written, do not disconnect the USB cable.
- Do not create folders within "Removable Disk". Since folders are not displayed, stitch pattern data within folders cannot be recalled.

4 **Press .**



→ The patterns in the computer are displayed on the selection screen.

5 Press the key of the pattern you want to recall.

* Press CLOSE to return to the original screen.

6 Press SEWING .

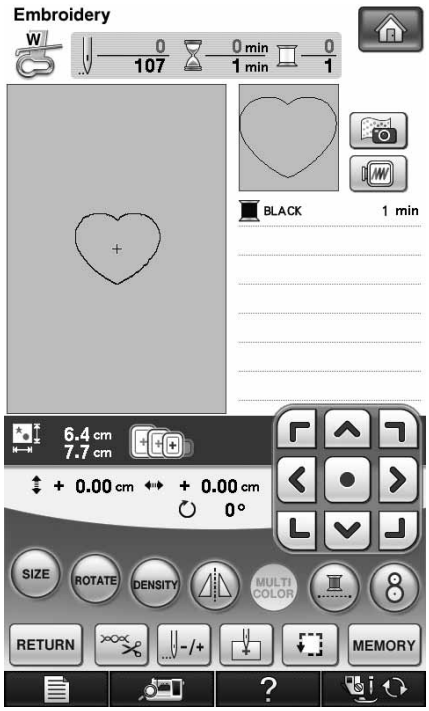
→ The sewing screen is displayed.

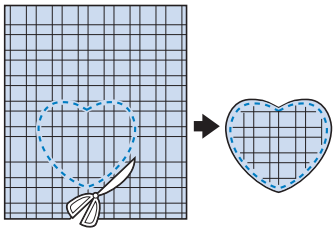
EMBROIDERY APPLICATIONS

Using a Frame Pattern to Make an Appliqué (1)

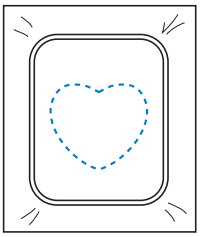
You can use framed patterns of the same size and shape to create an appliqué. Embroider one pattern with a straight stitch and one pattern with a satin stitch.

1 **Select a straight stitch frame pattern. Embroider the pattern onto the appliqué material, then cut neatly around the outside of the shape.**

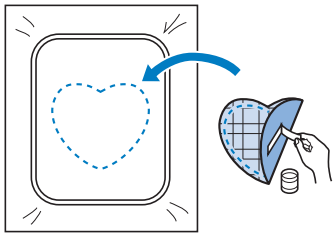




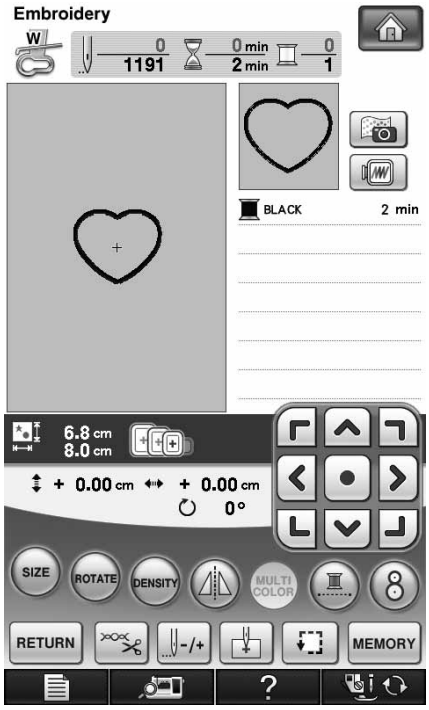
2 **Embroider the same pattern from step 1 onto the base fabric.**



3 **Apply a thin layer of fabric glue or a temporary spray adhesive to the rear of the appliqué created in step 1. Attach the appliqué to the base fabric matching the shapes.**

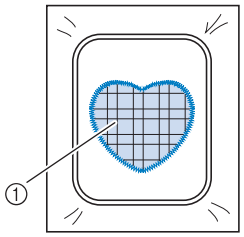


4 **Select the satin stitch frame pattern of the same shape as the appliqué. Embroider over the appliqué and base fabric from step 3 to create the appliqué.**



Note

- If you change the size or position of the patterns when selecting them, make a note of the size and location.

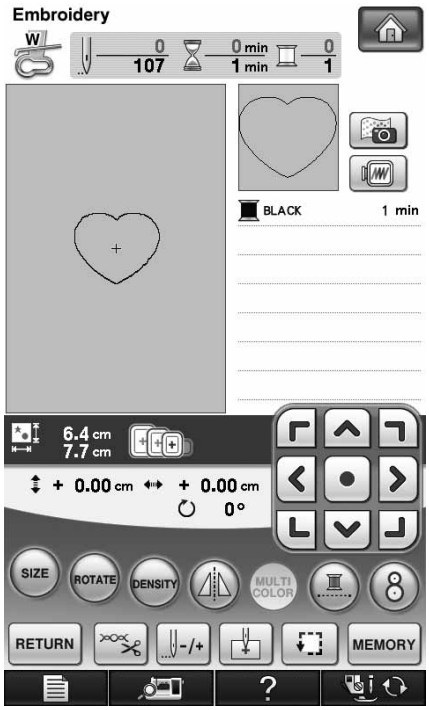


① Appliqué material

Using a Frame Pattern to Make an Appliqué (2)

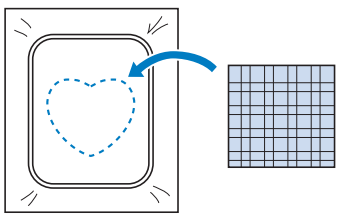
This is a second method to make appliqué using embroidery patterns. You do not have to change the fabric in the embroidery frame using this method. Embroider one pattern with a straight stitch and one pattern with a satin stitch.

1 **Select a straight stitch frame pattern, and embroider the pattern onto the base fabric.**

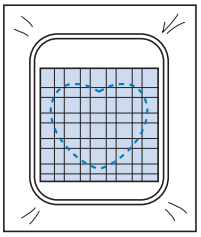


2 **Place the appliqué fabric over the pattern embroidered in step 1.**

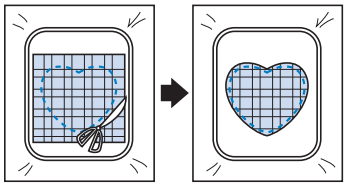
* Be sure that the appliqué fabric completely covers the seam.



3 **Embroider the same pattern on the appliqué fabric.**



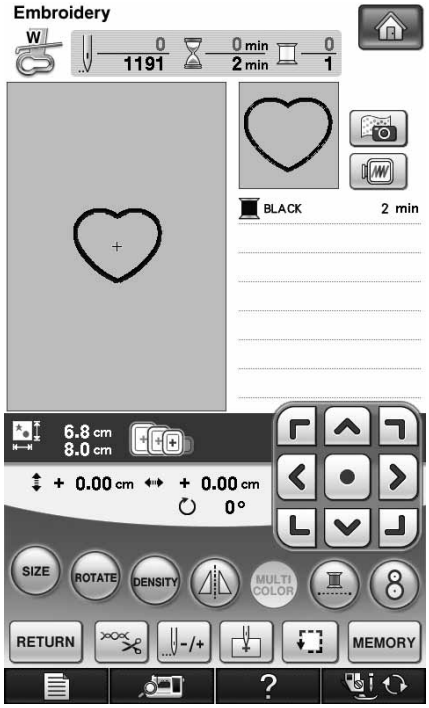
4 **Remove the embroidery frame from the embroidery unit, and cut around the outside of the stitches.**



Note

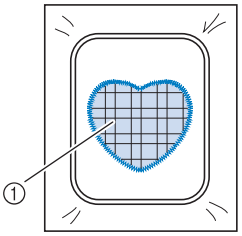
- Do not remove the fabric from the embroidery frame to cut it. Also, do not pull strongly on the fabric. Otherwise, the fabric may loosen in the frame.

5 **Select the satin stitch frame pattern of the same shape as the appliqué.**



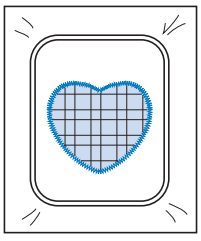
Note

- Do not change the size or position of the pattern.
- If you change the size or position of the patterns when selecting them, make a note of the size and location.



① Appliqué material

6 **Reattach the embroidery frame to the embroidery unit, and embroider the satin stitch pattern to create an appliqué.**

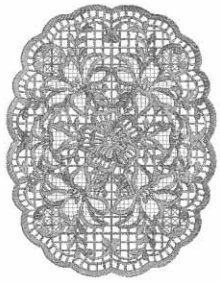


Sewing Split Embroidery Patterns

Split embroidery patterns created with PE-DESIGN Ver.7 or later can be sewn. With split embroidery patterns, embroidery designs larger than the embroidery hoop are divided into multiple sections, which combine to create a single pattern after each section is sewn.

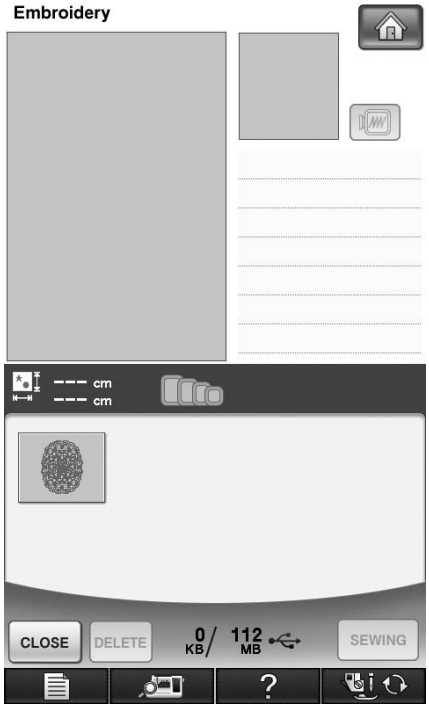
For details on creating split embroidery patterns and for more detailed sewing instructions, refer to the operation manual included with PE-DESIGN Ver.7 or later.

The following procedure describes how to read the split embroidery pattern shown below from USB media and embroider it.



1 Connect to the machine the media containing the created split embroidery pattern, and then select the split embroidery pattern to be embroidered.

* For details on recalling patterns, refer to "Selecting Patterns from Embroidery Cards" on page 197, "Recalling from USB Media" on page 255, or "Recalling from the Computer" on page 256.

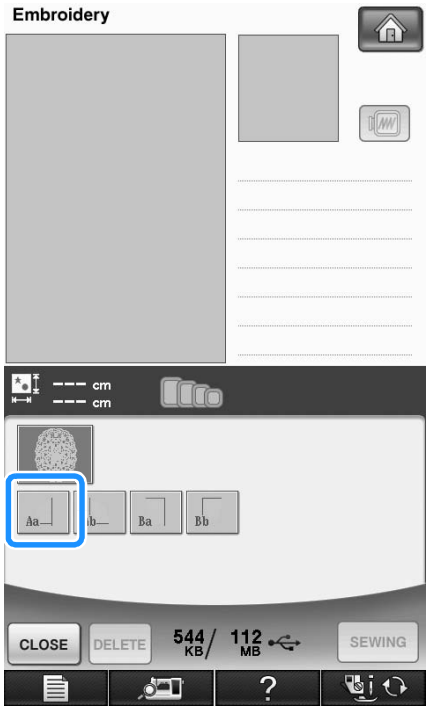


→ A screen appears so that a section of the split embroidery pattern can be selected.

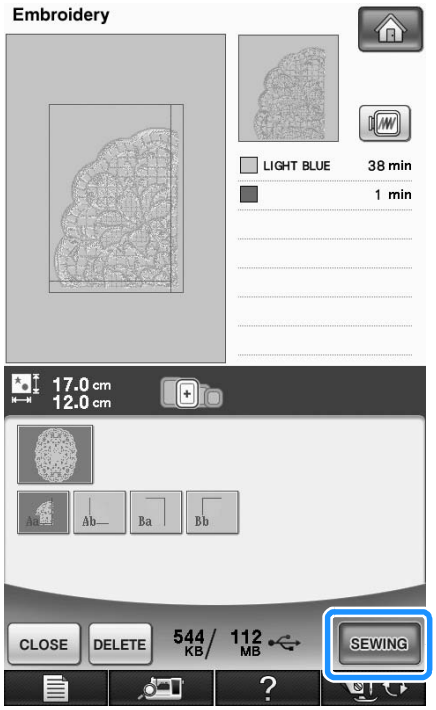
2 Select section Aa to be embroidered.

* Select the sections in alphabetical order.

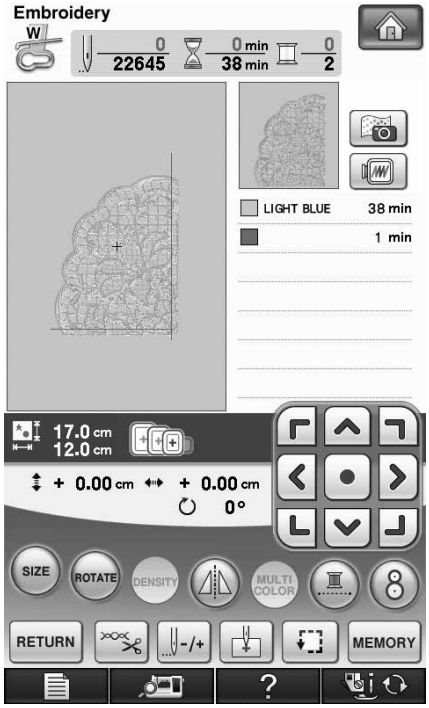
* A maximum of 12 sections can be displayed in one page. If there are 13 or more sections in the pattern, press ▲ or ▼ to display the previous or next page.



3 Press SEWING.



4 **If necessary, edit the pattern.**



* For details, refer to "REVISING THE PATTERN" on page 240.

Memo

- The pattern can be rotated 90° to either the left or right when ROTATE is pressed.

5 **Press the "Start/Stop" button to embroider the pattern section.**

6 **When embroidering is finished, the following screen appears. Press OK.**

→ A screen appears so that a section of the split embroidery pattern can be selected.

7 **Repeat steps 2 through 6 to embroider the remaining sections of the pattern.**

Chapter 6
Embroidery Edit

EXPLANATION OF FUNCTIONS.....264

SELECTING PATTERNS TO EDIT 265

Selecting Embroidery Patterns/Brother "Exclusives"/Greek Alphabet Patterns/Floral Alphabet Patterns/Utility Embroidery Patterns/Frame Patterns..... 266
Selecting Alphabet Character Patterns..... 266

EDITING PATTERNS.....268

■ Key Functions..... 269
Moving the Pattern 270
Rotating the Pattern..... 270
Changing the Size of the Pattern..... 270
Changing the Pattern Size While Maintaining the Desired Thread Density (Stitch Recalculator) 270
Deleting the Pattern..... 272
Displaying Patterns in the Screen Magnified by 200% ... 272
Changing the Configuration of Alphabet Character Patterns.....273
Changing Alphabet Character Spacing..... 273
Reducing Character Spacing..... 274
Separating Combined Character Patterns 275
Changing the Color of Each Alphabet Character in a Pattern 276
Embroidering Linked Characters..... 277
Changing the Thread Color..... 277
Creating a Custom Thread Table..... 278
■ Adding a Color to the Custom Thread Table from the List 280
■ Saving the Custom Thread Table to USB media..... 280
■ Recalling the Custom Thread Table data from USB media 281
Choosing a Color from the Custom Thread Table..... 282
Find New Color Schemes With the Color Shuffling Function.....283
Designing Repeated Patterns 285
■ Sewing Repeated Patterns 285
■ Repeating One Element of a Repeated Pattern..... 287
■ Color Sorting Repeated Patterns..... 289
■ Assigning Thread Marks..... 290
Embroidering the Pattern Repeatedly 291
Duplicating a Pattern..... 293
After Editing..... 294

COMBINING PATTERNS.....295

Editing Combined Patterns..... 295
■ Selecting combined embroidery patterns 297
Sewing Combined Patterns 298

VARIOUS EMBROIDERING FUNCTIONS....299

Uninterrupted Embroidering (Using a Single Color) 299
Basting Embroidery..... 299
Creating an Appliqué Piece..... 300
■ Creating an Appliqué Piece.....300
■ Using a Frame Pattern for the Outline.....304

USING THE MEMORY FUNCTION 306

PRINT AND STITCH (COMBINING EMBROIDERY PATTERNS AND PRINTED DESIGNS) 306

EXPLANATION OF FUNCTIONS

With the Embroidery Edit functions, you can combine embroidery patterns and character patterns, change the size of patterns, rotate patterns, and perform many other editing functions. This machine can perform the 11 functions listed below.

■ **Print and Stitch (Combining Embroidery Patterns and Printed Designs)**
You can create beautiful three-dimensional embroidered designs by ironing a background onto fabric or printing it onto printable fabric, then sewing complementary embroidery on top of the background.

■ **Create Appliqué Piece**
You can create an appliqué piece from the built-in patterns and patterns on embroidery cards.

■ **Combine Patterns**
You can easily create combinations of embroidery patterns, frame patterns, character patterns, patterns from the machine's memory, patterns from separately sold embroidery cards, and many other patterns.

■ **Move Patterns**
Within the 30 cm × 20 cm (approx. 12 inches × 8 inches) wide embroidery area, you can change the position of patterns, and check the position on the LCD.

■ **Rotate Patterns**
You can rotate patterns one degree, ten degrees or ninety degrees at a time.

■ **Enlarge or Reduce Patterns**
You can make patterns larger or smaller.
- This function is not available for some patterns.

■ **Create Mirror Images**
You can create horizontal mirror images.
- This function is not available for some patterns.

■ **Change Alphabet Character Spacing**
You can increase or decrease the spacing between characters in combined patterns.

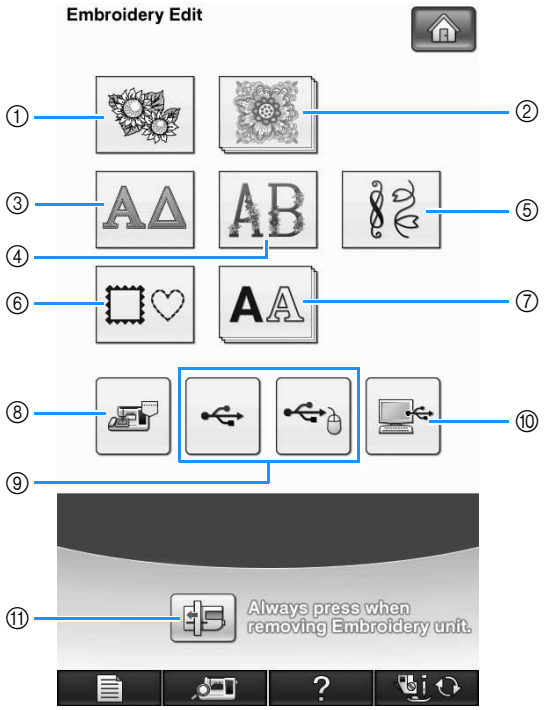
■ **Change Alphabet Character Appearance/Layout**
You can change the layout of the characters to a curved line, diagonal, etc. There are 6 choices total.

■ **Change the Thread Colors of Patterns**
You can change the thread colors of the pattern to your favorite colors.

■ **Creating a Repeating Pattern**
You can add copies of a pattern to create a pattern that repeats in a vertical or horizontal direction.

SELECTING PATTERNS TO EDIT

Prepare the machine for embroidery according to the instructions on page 186, and press , then to display the screen below.



① Embroidery patterns
② Brother “Exclusives”
③ Greek alphabet patterns
④ Floral alphabet patterns
⑤ Utility embroidery patterns
⑥ Frame patterns
⑦ Alphabet characters
⑧ Patterns saved in the machine’s memory (see page 254)
⑨ Patterns saved in USB media (see page 255)
⑩ Patterns saved on the computer (see page 256)
⑪ Press this key to position the embroidery unit for storage.

Memo
- See page 191 for more information on each category’s selection screen.

Note
- You can also sew Utility Stitches or Character/Decorative Stitches with the embroidery unit attached by pressing and (a confirmation message for moving the carriage will appear). Attach the appropriate presser foot before sewing.

Selecting Embroidery Patterns/ Brother "Exclusives"/Greek Alphabet Patterns/Floral Alphabet Patterns/Utility Embroidery Patterns/Frame Patterns

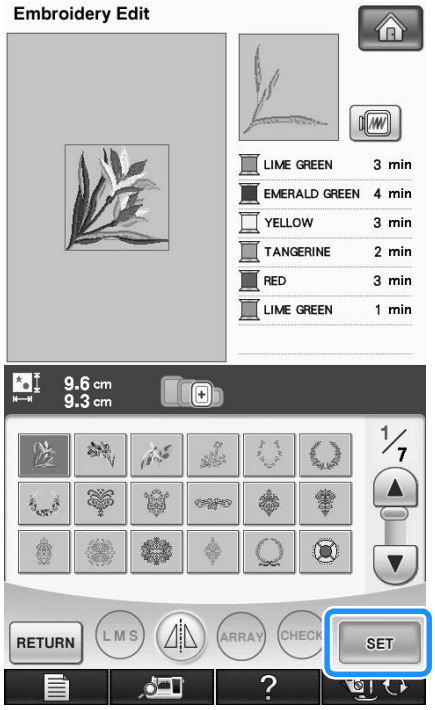
1 **Select the category of the pattern.**

2 **Press the key of the pattern you want to edit.**

* See pages 193 and 196 for more information on selecting patterns.

→ The pattern is displayed in the top part of the screen.

3 **Press** SET **.**



→ The pattern selected for editing is outlined in red on the embroidery edit display.

4 **Proceed to "EDITING PATTERNS" on page 268 to edit the pattern.**

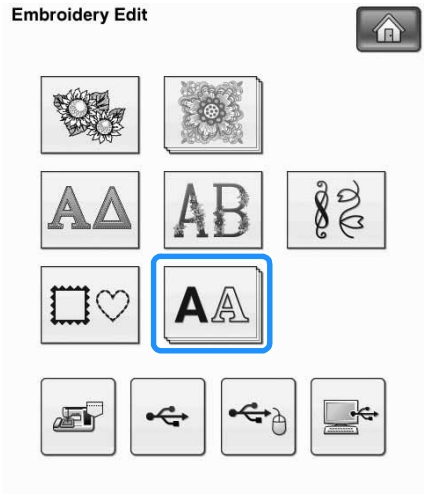
3 **Press** ARRAY **to change the layout of the pattern.**

* If the characters are too small to see, press CHECK to view a display of all entered characters.

Selecting Alphabet Character Patterns

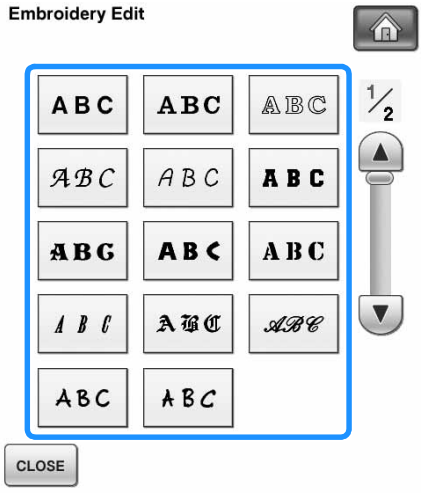
When you select character patterns from the embroidery edit screen, you can edit the appearance of the pattern at the same time.

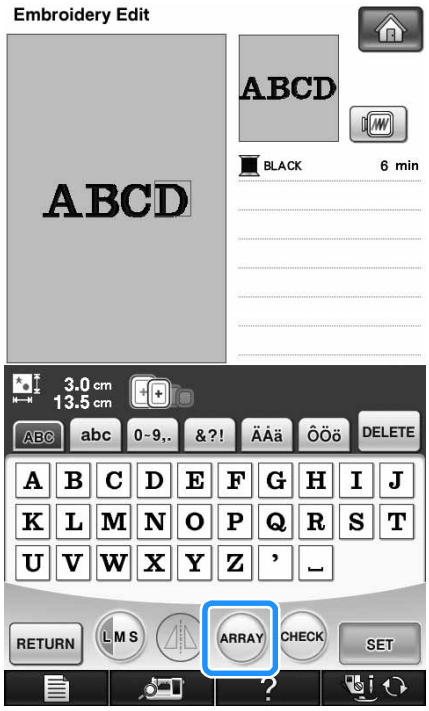
1 **Press** AA **.**



2 **Select the font, then enter the characters. (Example: A B C D)**

* See page 194 for more information about selecting characters.





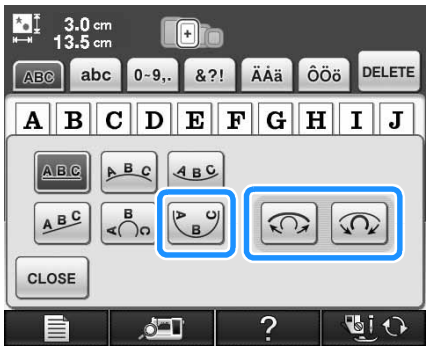
4 Select the layout. (Example:)

When selecting an arc, use and to change the degree of the arc.

* Press to make the arc flatter.
* Press to make the arc rounder.

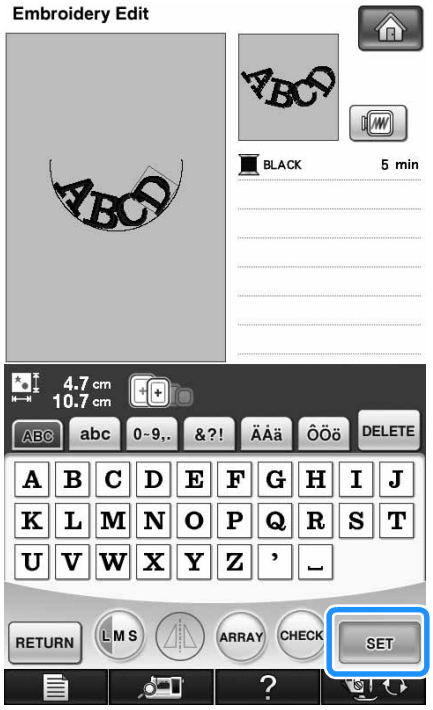
Memo

- When selecting , and change to and . You can increase or decrease the incline.



5 Press CLOSE to return to the original screen.

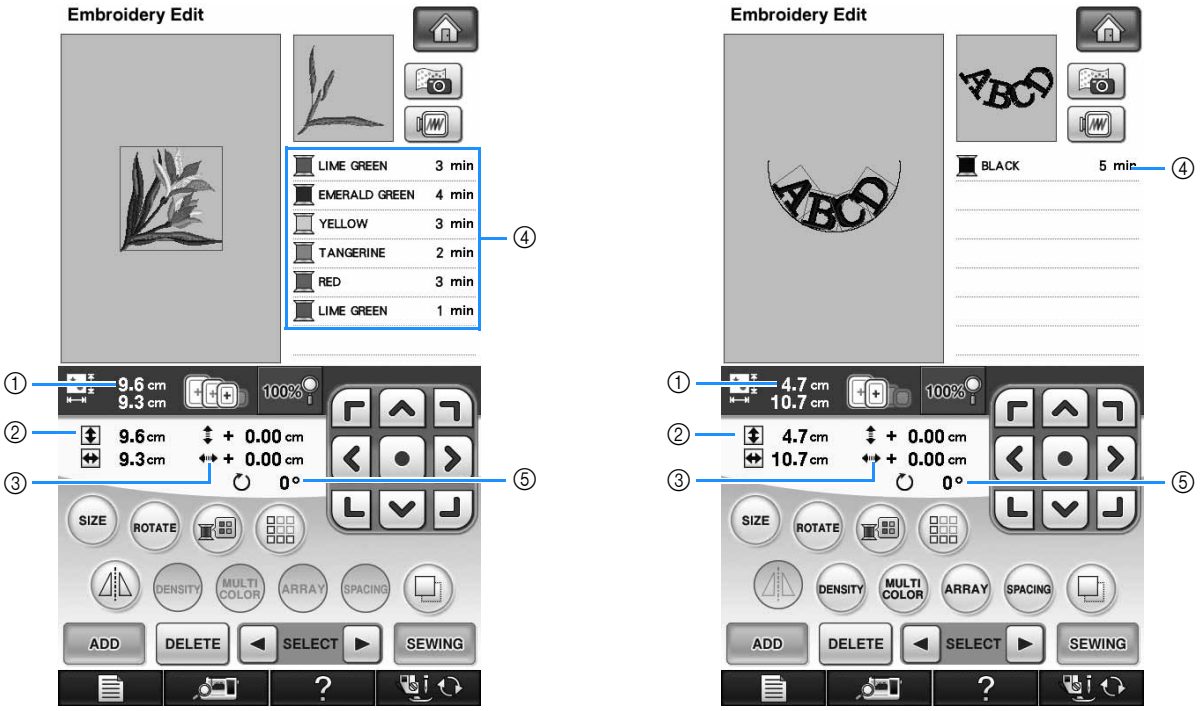
6 After you finish your selections, press SET.



→ The embroidery edit screen will appear.

7 Proceed to "EDITING PATTERNS" on page 268 to edit the pattern.

EDITING PATTERNS

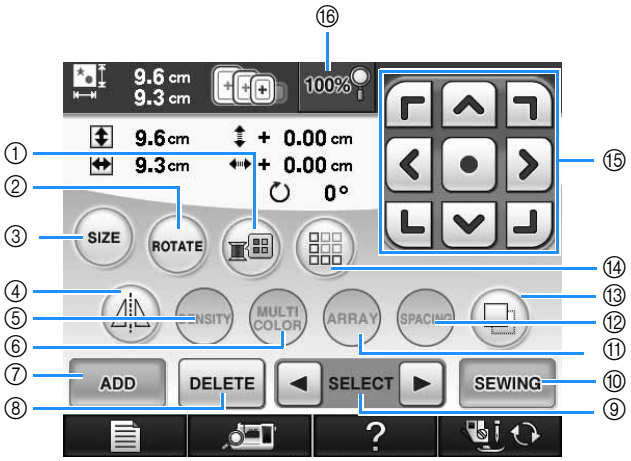


① Shows the size of the entire combined pattern.
② Shows the size of the pattern currently selected.
③ Shows the distance from the center of the frame.
④ Shows the color sequence and times of each step of the pattern currently selected.
⑤ Shows the degree of rotation for the pattern.

Memo

- If a key display is light gray, you cannot use that function with the selected pattern.

■ Key Functions



No.	Display	Key Name	Explanation	Page
①		Thread palette key	Press this key to change the colors of the displayed pattern.	277
②	ROTATE	Rotate key	Press this key to rotate the pattern. You can rotate a pattern one degree, ten degrees or ninety degrees at a time.	242
③	SIZE	Size key	Press this key to change the size of the pattern. Patterns can be enlarged or reduced.	241
④		Horizontal mirror image key	Press this key to make a horizontal mirror image of the selected pattern.	243
⑤	DENSITY	Density key	Press this key to change the density of frame patterns or character patterns.	244
⑥	MULTI COLOR	Multi color key	Press this key to change the color of individual characters in a pattern.	276
⑦	ADD	Add key	Press this key to add another pattern to the editing pattern.	294
⑧	DELETE	Delete key	Press this key to delete the selected pattern (the pattern outlined by the red box).	272
⑨	SELECT	Pattern select key	When a combined pattern is selected, use these keys to select a part of the pattern to edit.	297
⑩	SEWING	Sewing key	Press this key to call up the sewing screen.	294
⑪	ARRAY	Array key	Press this key to change the configuration of a character pattern.	273
⑫	SPACING	Character spacing key	Press this key to change the spacing of character patterns.	273
⑬		Duplicate key	Press this key to duplicate a pattern.	293
⑭		Border key	Press this key to make and edit a repeating pattern.	285
⑮		Arrow keys (Center key)	Press these keys to move the pattern in the direction indicated by the arrow on the key. (Press to return the pattern to its original position.)	240
⑯	100%	Magnify key	Press this key to magnify the pattern by 200% in the screen.	272

Moving the Pattern

For details on moving the pattern, refer to “Moving the Pattern” on page 240.

Rotating the Pattern

For details on rotating the pattern, refer to “Rotating the Pattern” on page 242.

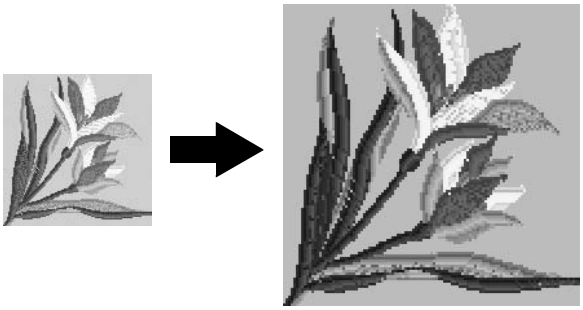
Changing the Size of the Pattern

For details on changing the size of the pattern, refer to “Changing the Size of the Pattern” on page 241.

Changing the Pattern Size While Maintaining the Desired Thread Density (Stitch Recalculator)

In the embroidery edit screen, the size of the pattern can be changed while the desired thread density is maintained.

With this function, the pattern will be enlarged or reduced at a larger ratio than with normal pattern resizing.



Note

- Be sure to sew trial embroidery using same fabric and threads as project in order to check the sewing results.

1. **Press** **.**

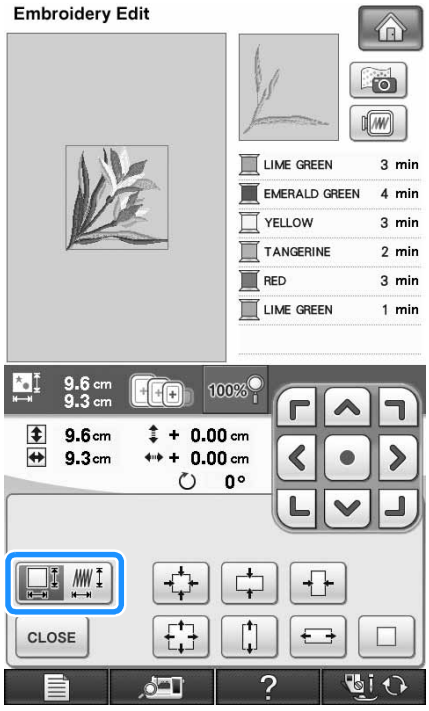
2. **Select the pattern to be resized, and then press** SET **.**

Note

- This function cannot be used with alphabet character patterns, frame patterns or border patterns. However, a border pattern can be edited after this function has been used.
- Patterns with a large number of stitches (about 100,001 or more) cannot be resized while maintaining a desired thread density. The maximum limit for the number of stitches differs depending on the data size of pattern.
- If this function is used, thread density is maintained while the pattern is enlarged/ reduced. However, the needle drop point pattern is not entirely maintained. Use the normal resizing mode depending on the results of trial embroidering.

3. **Press** SIZE **.**

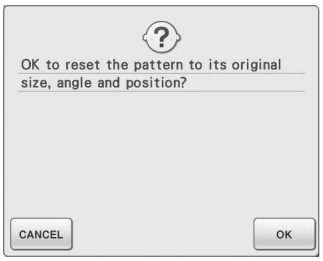
4. **Press** **to enter Stitch Recalculator mode (** **).**



Memo

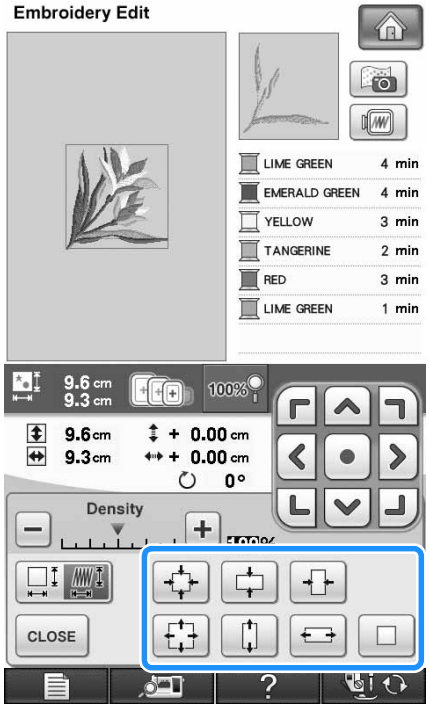
- Stitch Recalculator cannot be used if the key appears as .

5 **When the following message appears, press** OK **.**



→ The pattern will be returned to its original size, angle, and position as it was before it was edited.

6 **Select how to change the pattern size.**



* Press to enlarge the pattern proportionately.

* Press to shrink the pattern proportionately.

* Press to stretch the pattern horizontally.

* Press to compact the pattern horizontally.

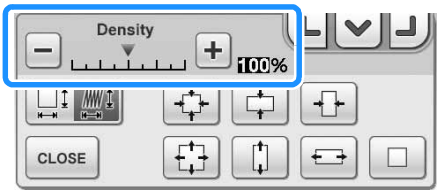
* Press to stretch the pattern vertically.

* Press to compact the pattern vertically.

* Press to return the pattern to its original appearance.

Memo

- With the density scale bar, the thread density can be changed.
  A setting between 80% and 120% in 5% increments can be specified.



* Press to make the pattern less dense.

* Press to make the pattern more dense.

7 **Press** CLOSE **.**

8 **Press** SEWING **.**

Note

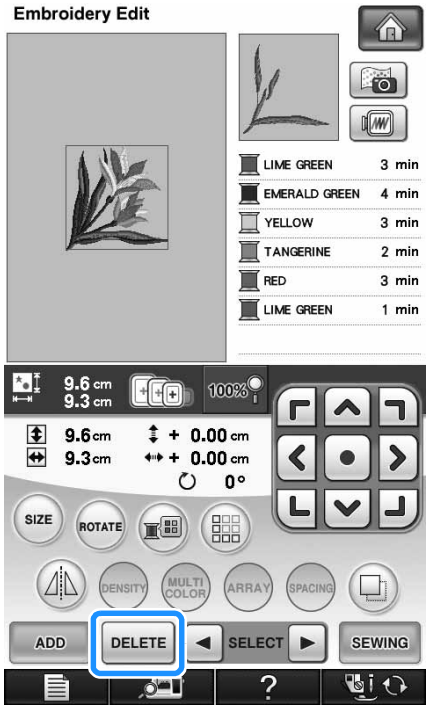
- Depending on the pattern, embroidering may not be possible at the appropriate thread density. Before sewing on your project, be sure to sew trial embroidery on a piece of scrap fabric that is the same as the fabric used in the project using the same needle and embroidery thread.
- If the pattern is enlarged and there is space between stitches, a better effect can be achieved by increasing the thread density.
- If the pattern is reduced and the stitching is too thick, a better effect can be achieved by reducing the thread density.

CAUTION

- **Depending on the pattern, the stitching may become entangled or the needle may break when the pattern is reduced. If this occurs, enlarge the pattern slightly.**

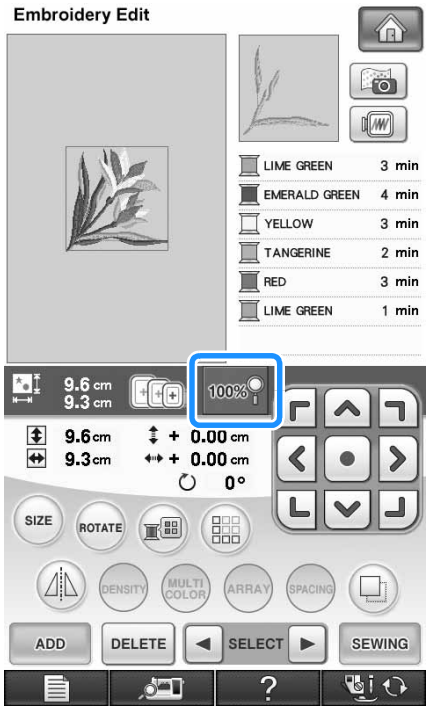
Deleting the Pattern

Press DELETE to delete the pattern from the screen.



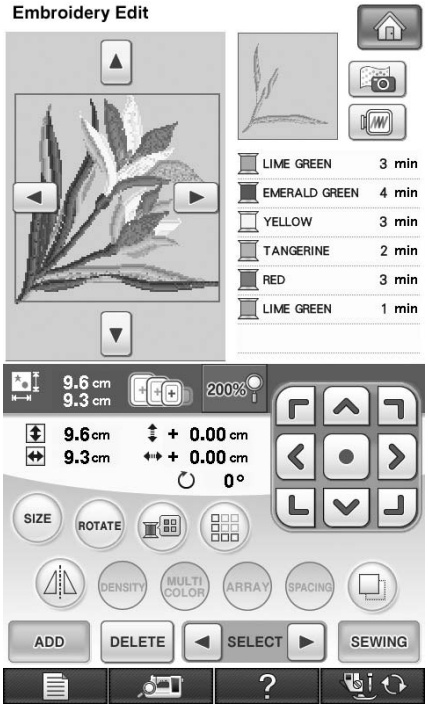
Displaying Patterns in the Screen Magnified by 200%

1 Press 100%.



→ 100% changes to 200%, and the pattern is magnified by 200%.

2 Check the displayed pattern.

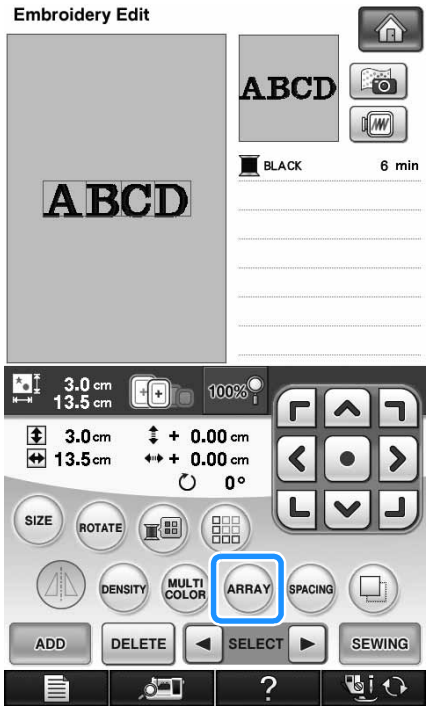


→ Use ▲ ▼ ◄ ► to scroll through the display in any direction.

3 To display the pattern back to the normal size (100%), press 200%.

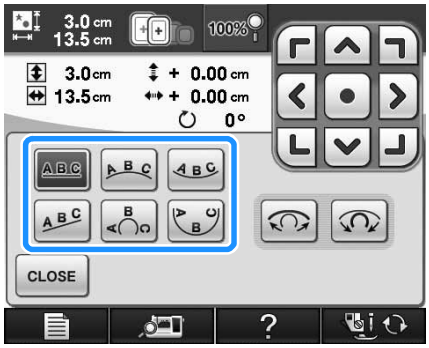
Changing the Configuration of Alphabet Character Patterns

1 **Press** ARRAY.



2 **Press the key of the layout you want to embroider.**

* See page 267 for more information about layout types.

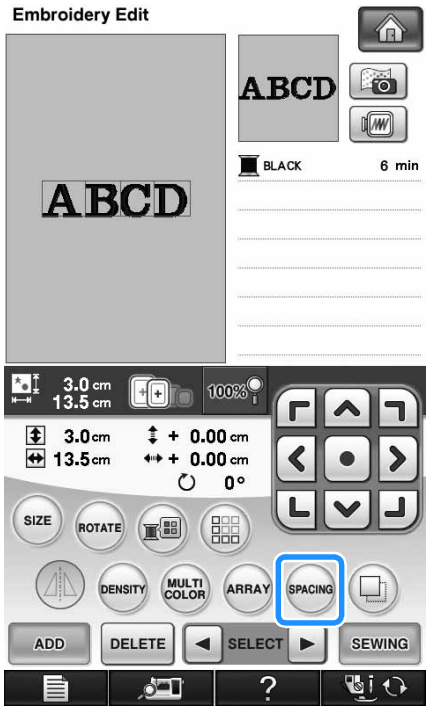


→ The display will show the selected layout.

3 **Press** CLOSE.

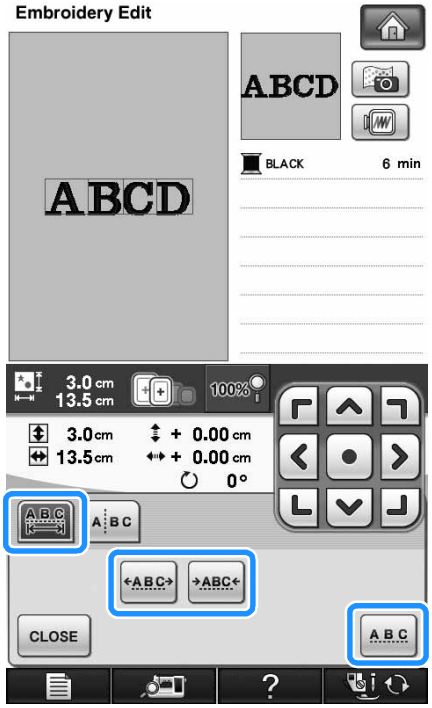
Changing Alphabet Character Spacing

1 **Press** SPACING.



2 **Use [ABC] to change the spacing.**

* Press [→ABC←] to increase the character spacing.
* Press [→ABC←] to decrease the character spacing.
* Press [A B C] to return the pattern to its original appearance.



A B C D↔ABCD

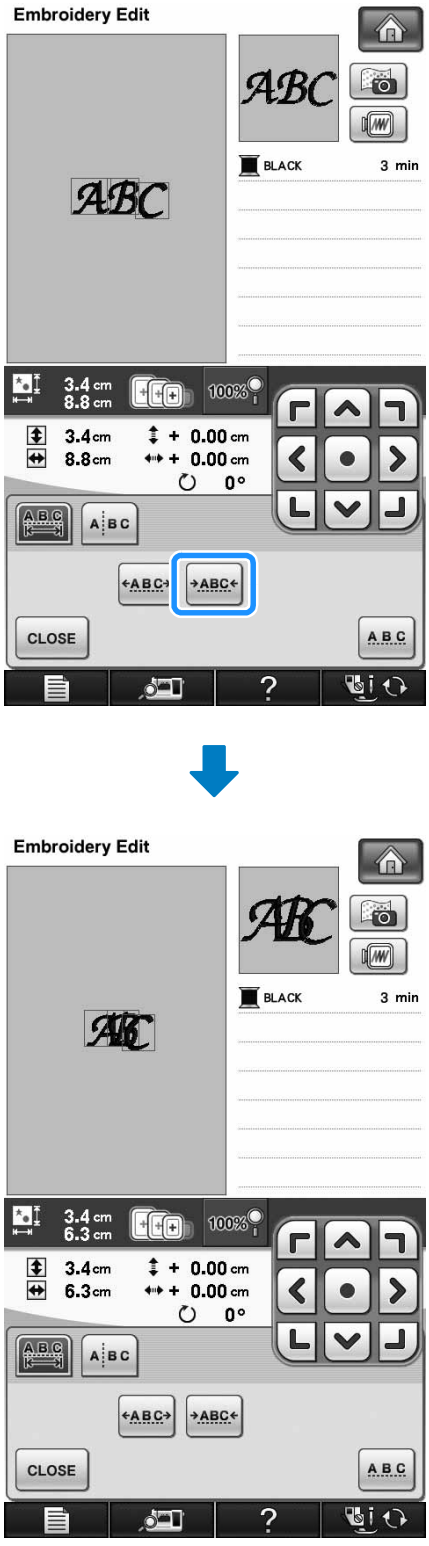
[→ABC←] [→ABC←]

3 **Press [CLOSE] to return to the original screen.**

Reducing Character Spacing

The spacing between characters can be reduced to 50% of the narrowest character in the group.

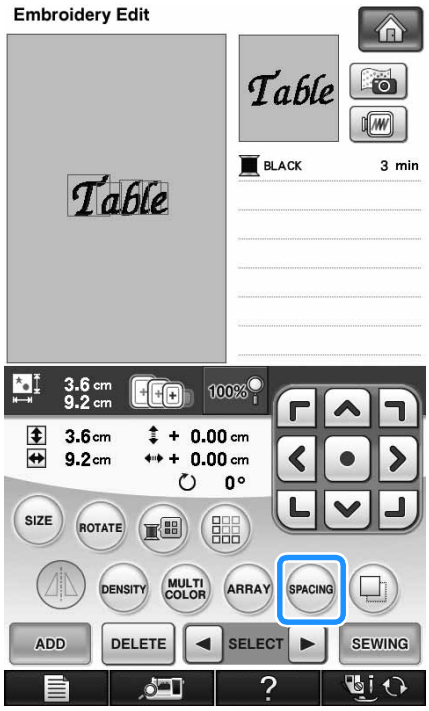
> **Note**
> - It is not recommended to edit data and transfer to other or older version machines. Same features do not apply in other machines, so problems may occur.
> - Character spacing can be reduced only when characters are arranged normally on a straight line.



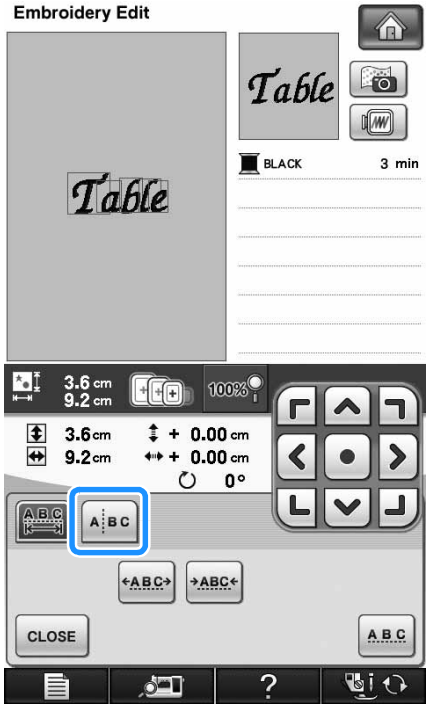
Separating Combined Character Patterns

Combined character patterns can be separated to adjust the character spacing or to separately edit the patterns after all characters have been entered.

1 **Press** SPACING **.**

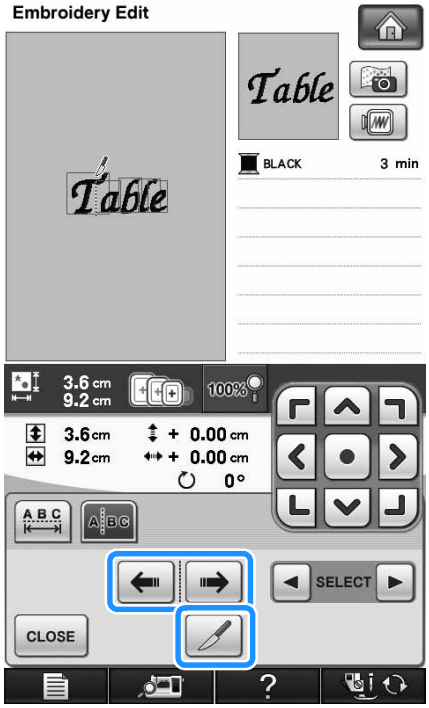


2 **Press** A BC **.**



→ The key appears as A BC .

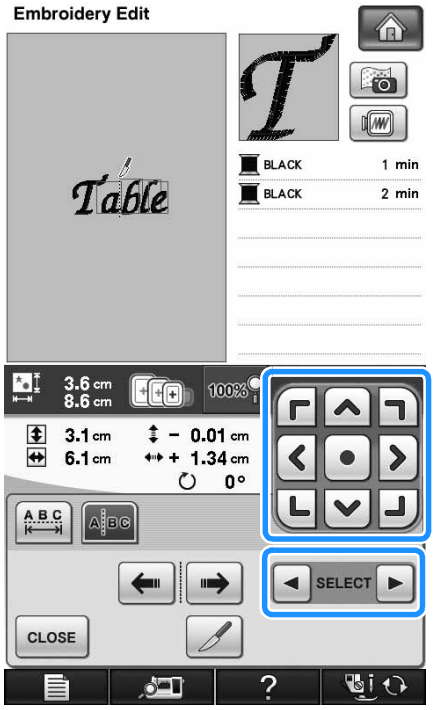
3 **Use ← → to select where the pattern is to be separated, and then press ✎ to separate it. For this example, the pattern will be separated between "T" and "a".**



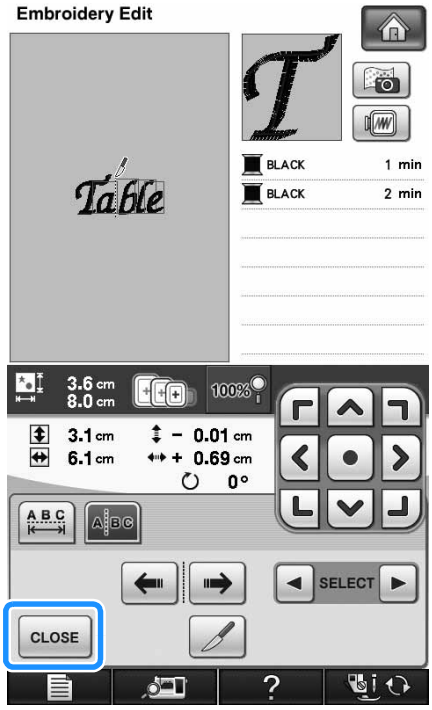
Note

- A separated character pattern cannot be combined again.

4 Use SELECT to select a pattern, and then use the arrow keys to adjust the character spacing.

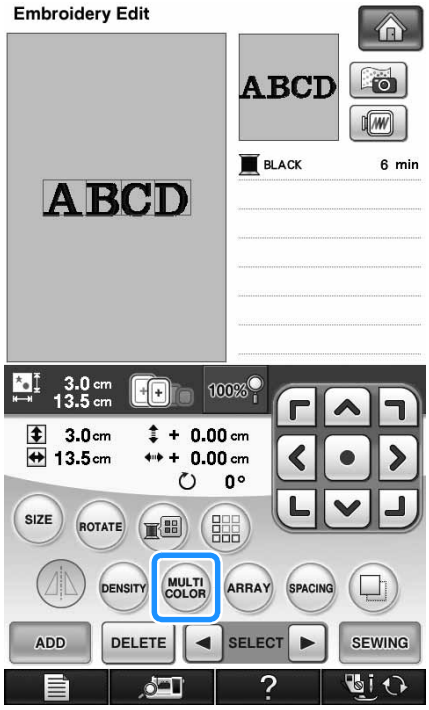


5 Press CLOSE.



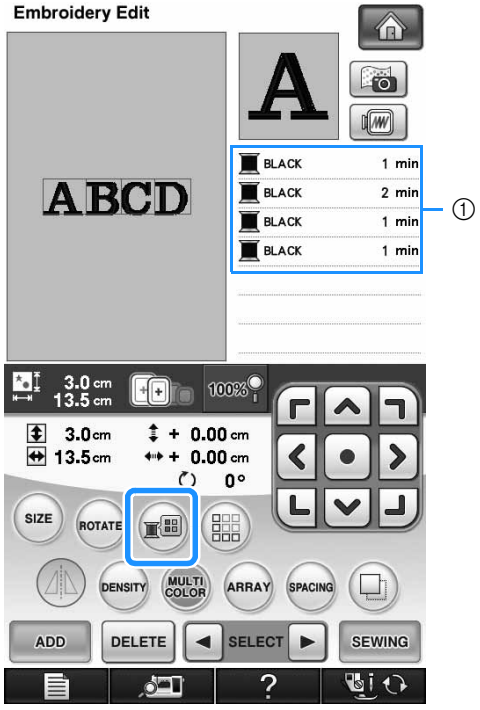
Changing the Color of Each Alphabet Character in a Pattern

1 Press MULTI COLOR so you can assign a thread color to each character.



2 Change the thread to sew each character in a different color.

* Press the color-sequence key to change the colors in the sewing order.



① Color for each character

Embroidering Linked Characters

You can embroider linked characters exampled below, in a single row when the pattern extends beyond the embroidery frame.

For details on embroidering linked characters, refer to “Embroidering Linked Characters” on page 245.

Example: Linking “DEF” to the characters “ABC”

A B C D E F

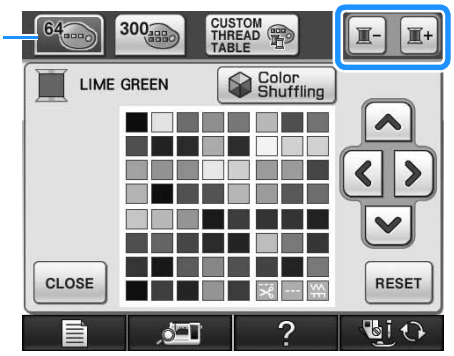
Changing the Thread Color

You can change the thread color by moving the color to be changed to the top of the sewing order and selecting a new color from the thread colors in the machine.

1 In the pattern editing screen, press .

→ The thread color palette screen displays.

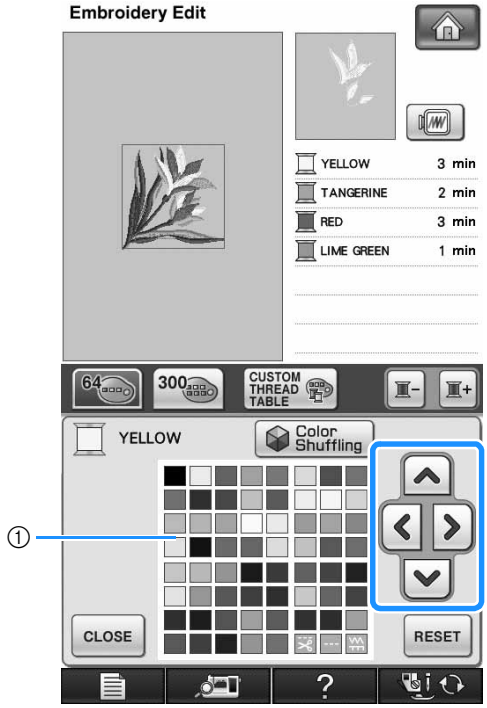
2 Press or to put the color you want to change at the top of the sewing order.



① 64 Embroidery threads table

3 Press to choose a new color from the color palette.

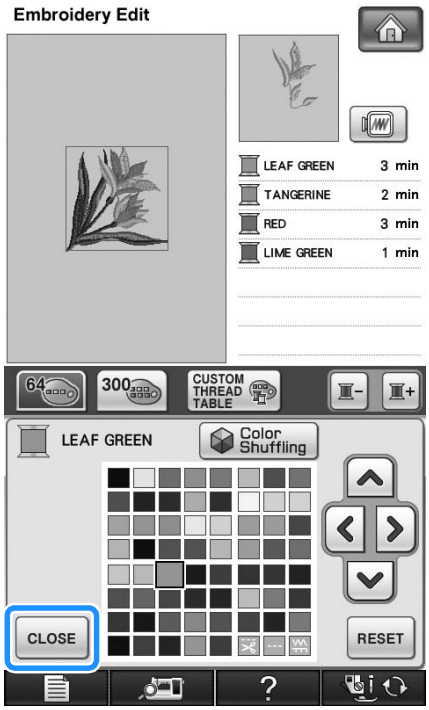
* To return to the original color, press RESET. If multiple colors have been changed, this command will return all colors to their original colors.
* You can select colors from the color palette by directly touching the color selection with the touch pen.



① Color palette

→ The selected color appears at the top of the sewing order.

4 **Press** CLOSE.



→ The display shows the changed colors.

Memo

- To select a color from the Custom Thread Table, “Choosing a Color from the Custom Thread Table” on page 282.

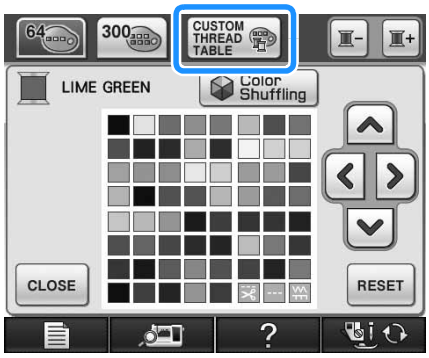
Creating a Custom Thread Table

You can create a custom thread table containing the thread colors that you most often use. You can select thread colors from the machine’s extensive list of thread colors from nine different thread brands. You can select any color and move the color to your custom thread table.

Note

- Some machines may already have an additional 300 Robison-Anton thread colors contained in the custom thread table. 300 Robison-Anton thread colors table data can be downloaded from our website “ http://solutions.brother.com ”.

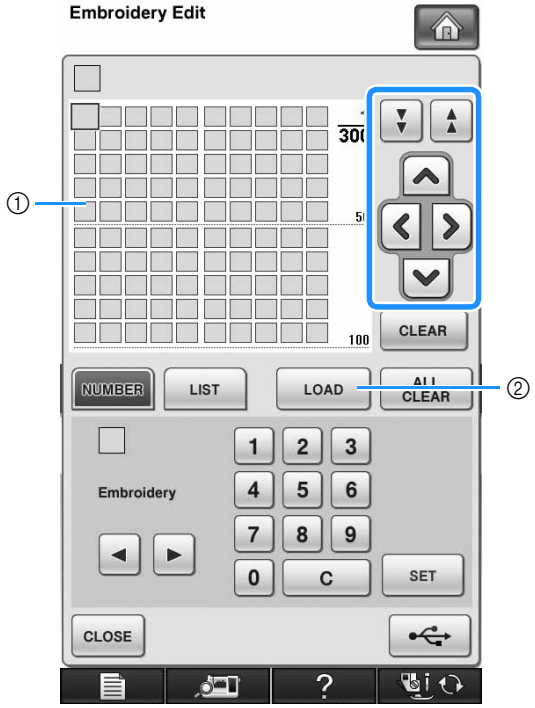
1 **In the pattern editing screen, press** **and then press** CUSTOM THREAD TABLE.



2 **Use** **to choose where to add a color on the custom thread table.**

* You can choose colors from the custom thread from the custom thread table by directly touching the screen with the touch pen.

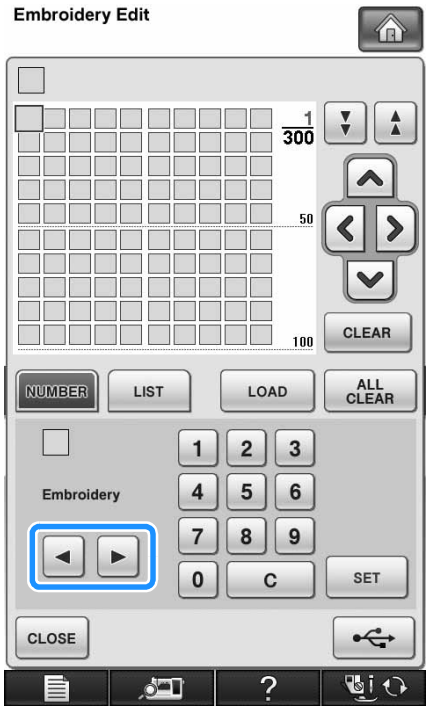
* You can scroll through 100 colors at a time using and on the custom thread table.



① Custom thread table

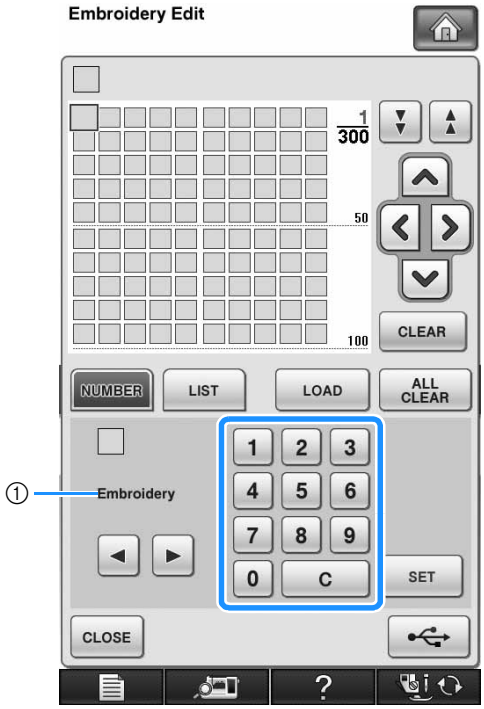
② Press LOAD to recall the custom thread table data (See page 281)

3 **Use ◄ ► to select one of the thread brands in the machine.**



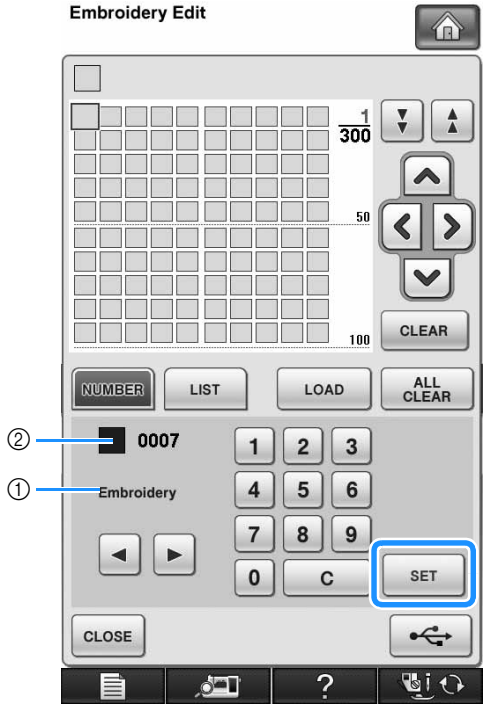
4 **Use 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 to enter a color's 4-digit number.**

* If you make a mistake, press C to erase the entered number, and then enter the correct number.



① Thread brand

5 **Press SET .**



① Thread brand
② Entered thread color number
→ The selected thread color is set in the custom thread table.

Note

- If SET is not pressed, the thread color number will not be changed.

6 **Repeat the previous steps until all desired thread colors are specified.**

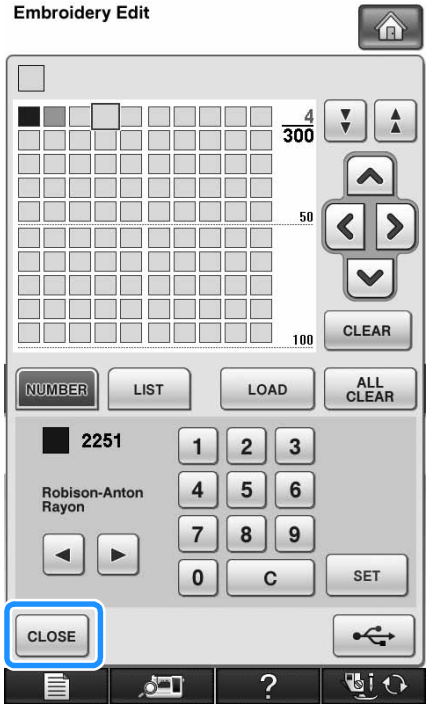
* To delete a specified color from the palette, press CLEAR .

* To delete all the specified color from the palette, press ALL CLEAR .

Note

- You can save the created custom thread table data. Refer to "Saving the Custom Thread Table to USB media" on page 280 for the detailed procedure.

7 **Press** CLOSE **to return to the original screen.**

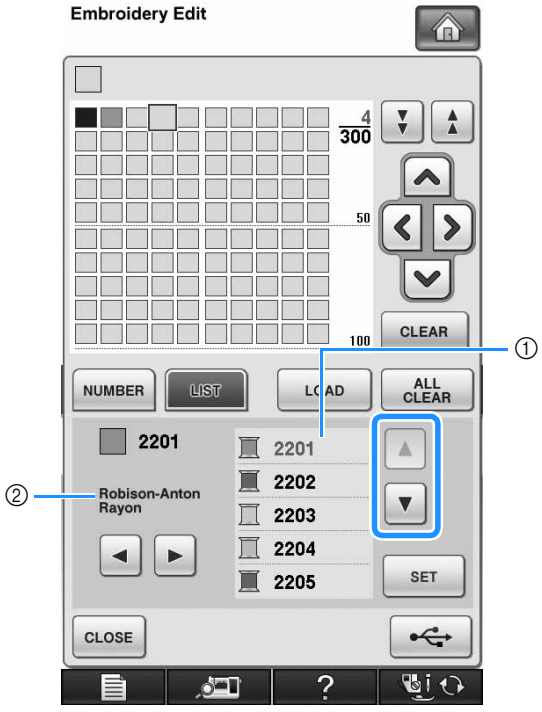


■ Adding a Color to the Custom Thread Table from the List

1 **Repeat the previous steps** 1 **through** 3 **on page 278.**

2 **Press** LIST **to display the thread list.**

3 **Use** ▲ ▼ **to select a thread color.**



① Thread list
② Thread brand

4 **Press** SET **.**

5 **Repeat the previous steps until all desired thread colors are specified.**

* To delete a specified color from the palette, press CLEAR .

* To delete all the specified color from the palette, press ALL CLEAR .

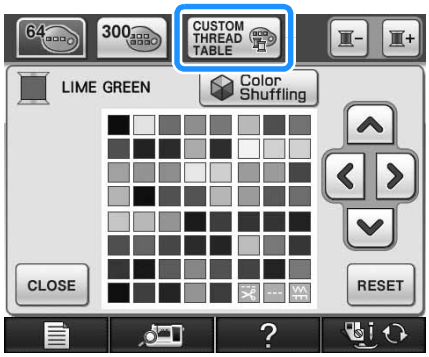
6 **Press** CLOSE **to return to the original screen.**

■ Saving the Custom Thread Table to USB media

You can save a custom thread table data file to USB media.

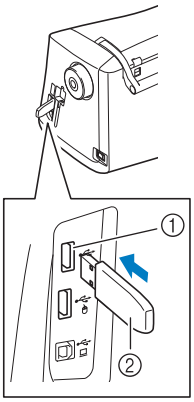
> **Note**
> • Custom thread table data can only be saved to USB media. You cannot save the data in the machine's memory or in the computer.
> • Custom thread table data is saved as ".pcp" data file.

1 **Press** **and then press** CUSTOM THREAD TABLE **.**



2 **Set your desired colors in the custom thread table according to the procedure in "Creating a Custom Thread Table" on page 278.**

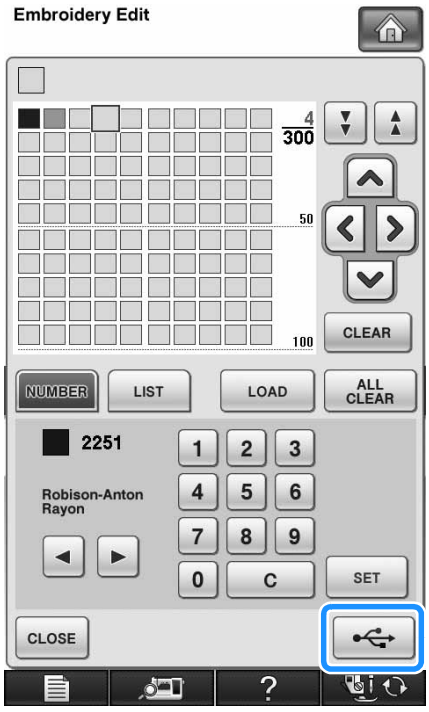
3 **Insert the USB media into the primary (top) USB port on the machine.**



① Primary (top) USB port for media
② USB media

Note
- Two USB media cannot be used with this machine at the same time. If two USB media are inserted, only the USB media inserted first is detected.

4 **Press** .



→ The "Saving" screen is displayed. When the data is saved, the display returns to the original screen automatically.

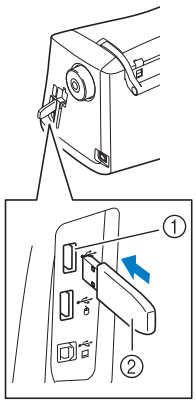
Note
- Do not insert or remove USB media while "Saving" screen is displayed. You will lose some or all of the data you are saving.

■ Recalling the Custom Thread Table data from USB media

You can recall a custom thread table data from USB media.

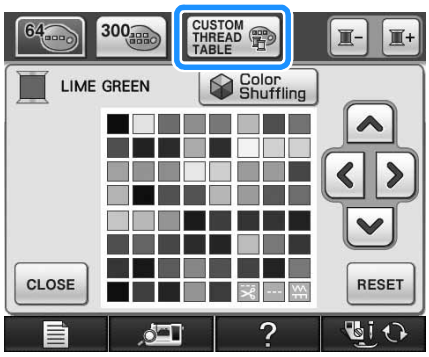
Note
- Do not store two or more ".pcp" data file in USB media. You can only recall one custom thread table data at a time.

1 **Insert the USB media containing the custom thread table data into the primary (top) USB port.**

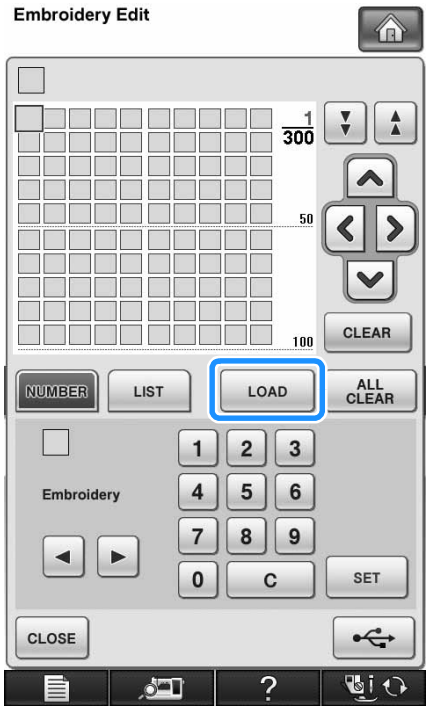


① Primary (top) USB port for media
② USB media

2 **Press** **and then press** .



3 **Press** LOAD.



→ The "Saving" screen is displayed. When the data is loaded to the machine, the display returns to the original screen automatically.

Note

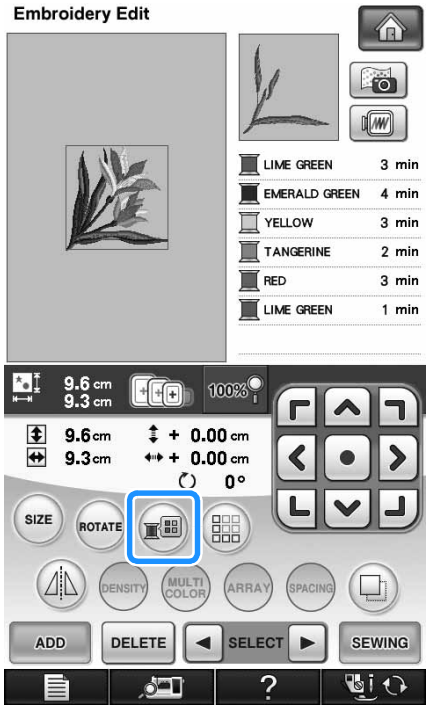
- Do not insert or remove USB media while "Saving" screen is displayed. You will lose some or all of the data you are saving.

4 **The recalled custom thread table is displayed on the screen.**

Choosing a Color from the Custom Thread Table

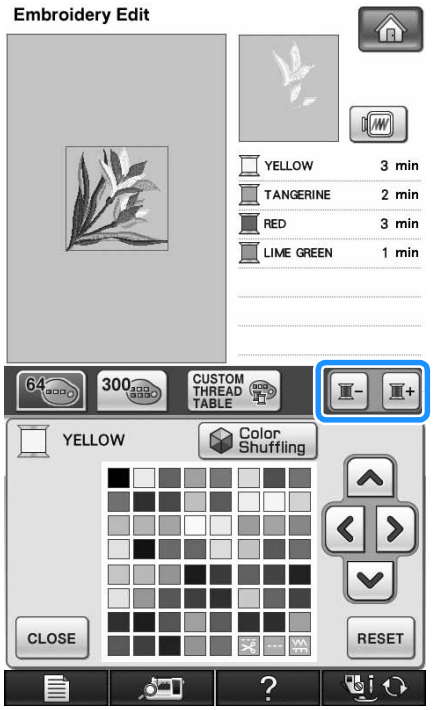
You can select a color from the up to 300 thread colors you have set in the custom thread table.

1 **Press** .

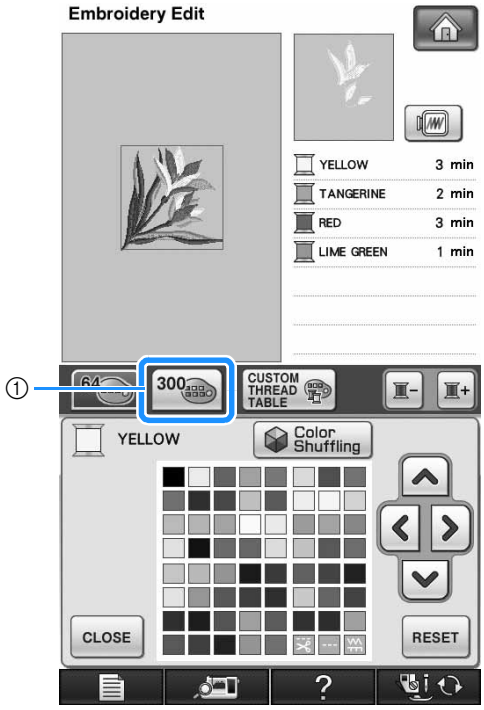


→ The thread color palette screen displays.

2 **Press** or **to put the color you want to change at the top of the sewing order.**



3 **Press** [300] **.**

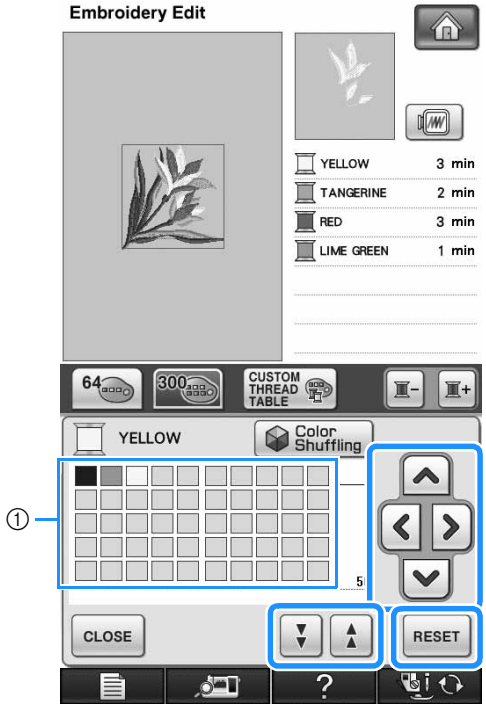


① Custom thread change key

→ The custom thread table will appear.

4 **Press** [▲] [◀] [▶] [▼] **to choose a new color from the custom thread table.**

* Use [▲] and [▼] to scroll through the custom thread table.
* Press [RESET] to return to the original color.
* You can choose colors from the custom thread table by directly touching the screen with the touch pen.



① Custom thread table

→ The display shows the changed colors.

5 **Press** [CLOSE] **.**

Find New Color Schemes With the Color Shuffling Function

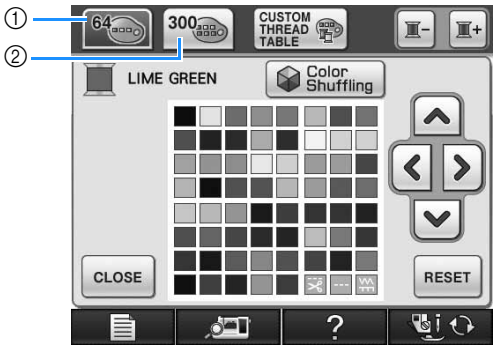
With the color shuffling function, the machine suggests new color schemes for the embroidery pattern that you have selected. After you select the desired effect from the four available ("RANDOM", "VIVID", "GRADIENT" and "SOFT"), sample color schemes for the selected effect are displayed.

1 **Press** [ ] **.**

→ The thread color palette screen appears.

2 **Press** [Color Shuffling] **.**

* You can select the color shuffling function either from thread table (64 colors) or custom thread table (300 colors). The thread table (64 colors) is the preset color table, and the custom thread table (300 colors) is the color table that you can set as you like. By setting the embroidery thread colors of the brand you have, you can create your embroidery pattern with your own thread colors.



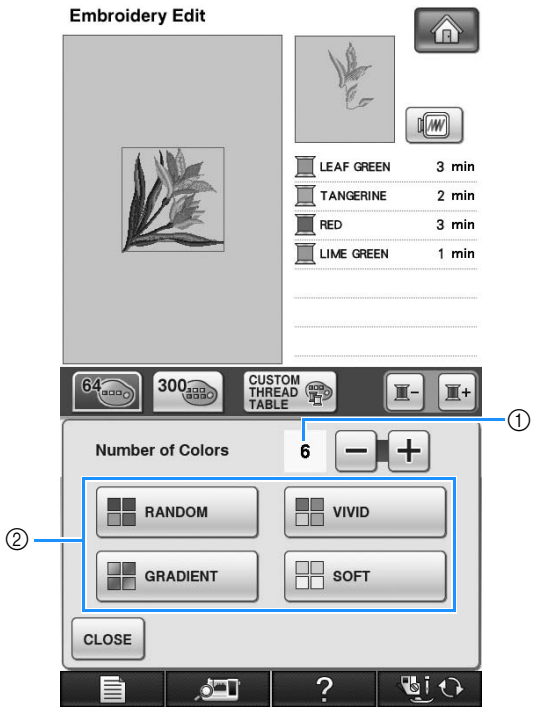
① Thread table (64 colors)

② Custom thread table (300 colors)

Note

- This function may not be available depending on the pattern you select (ex. a bordered embroidery pattern, a pattern which can not be flipped).
  If the color shuffling key is grayed out, select another pattern.
- If you have not set any color in the custom thread table, the color shuffling key will be grayed out. In that case, use the thread table (64 colors) instead or set some colors in the custom thread table. Refer to "Creating a Custom Thread Table" on the operation manual of the machine for the detail.

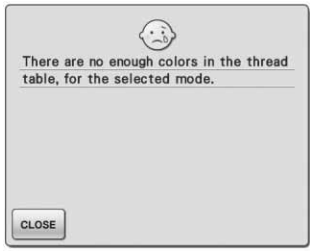
3 Select the number of colors you want to use and then select the desired effect.



① Number of colors to be used in the pattern
② Effects for schemes

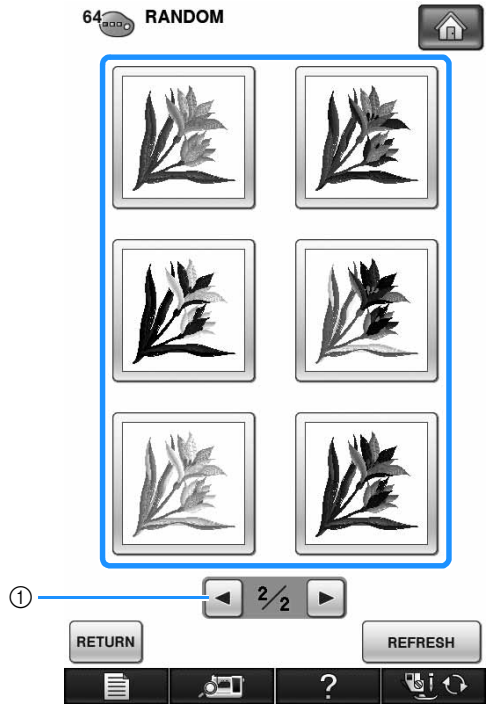
Note

- Selection for the desired number of colors must stay within the range for the number of thread changes for the pattern you selected.
- If an error message appears in this step, refer to page 349.



4 Press the desired color scheme from samples.

* Press REFRESH to display the new schemes.



① Press to review the previous schemes.

Note

- Maximum 10 pages of schemes can be reviewed. After 10 pages of schemes, the oldest page is deleted every time you press REFRESH.

5 **Press SET to select the displayed color scheme.**

* Press CLOSE to return to the previous screen.
* You can continue selecting color schemes from the selected page prior to pressing SET.
* Press ◄ or ► to display the other color schemes.

→ The embroidery edit screen will appear.

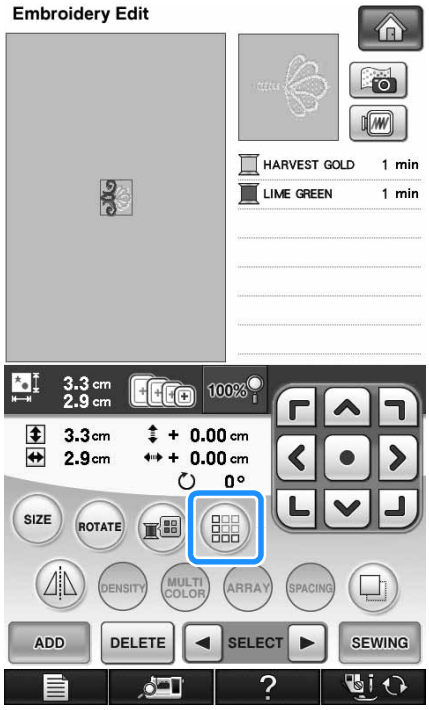
Designing Repeated Patterns

■ Sewing Repeated Patterns

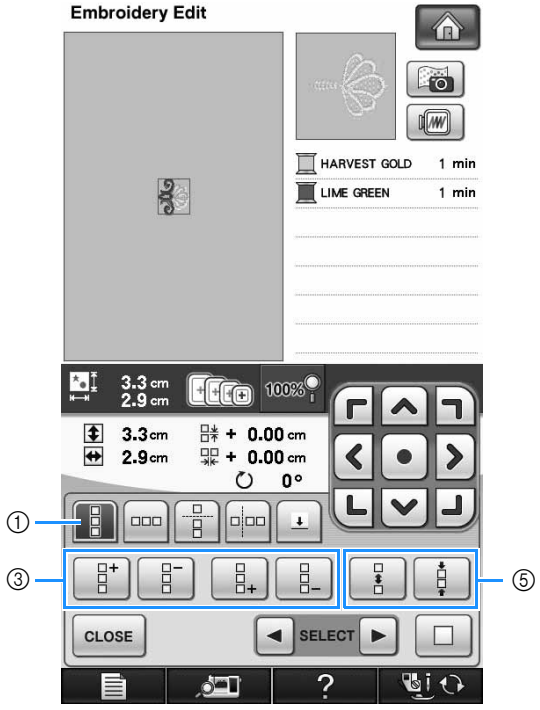
Using the border function, you can create stitches using repeated patterns. You can also adjust the spacing of the patterns within a repeated pattern stitch.

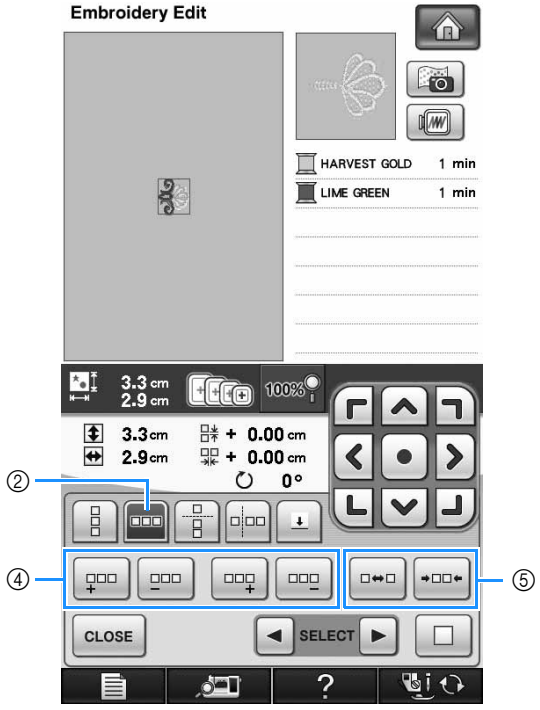
1 **Select a pattern, and then press SET.**

2 **Press .**



3 Select the direction in which the pattern will be repeated.





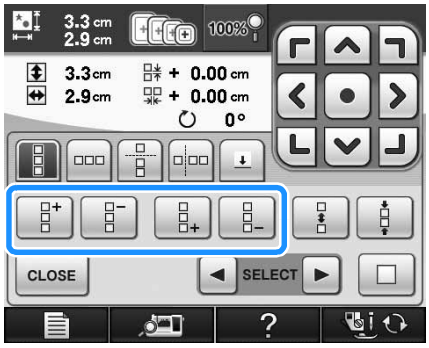
① Vertical direction
② Horizontal direction
③ Repeating and deleting vertical keys
④ Repeating and deleting horizontal keys
⑤ Spacing keys

→ The pattern direction indicator will change depending on the direction selected.

4 Use [+] to repeat the pattern on top and [+] to repeat the pattern at the bottom.

* To delete the top pattern, press [−].

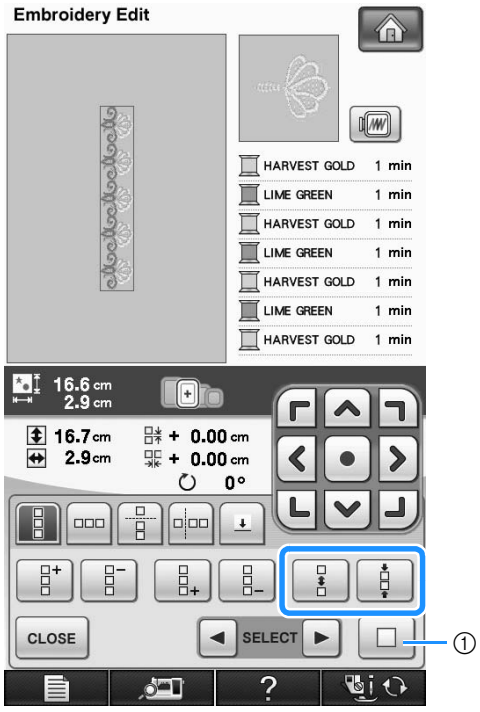
* To delete the bottom pattern, press [−].



5 Adjust the spacing of the repeated pattern.

* To widen spacing, press [⇕].

* To tighten spacing, press [⇕].



① Press [□] to change a repeated pattern back to one single pattern.

Memo

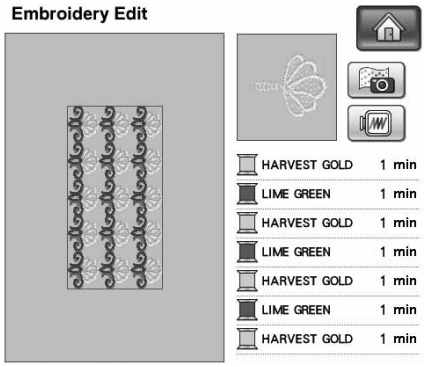
- You can only adjust the spacing of patterns included in the red frame.

6 Complete repeated patterns by repeating steps 3 through 5.

7 Press CLOSE to finish repeating.

Memo

- When there are two or more patterns, all patterns will be grouped together as one pattern in the red frame.



- When changing the direction in which the pattern will be repeated, all of the patterns in the red frame will automatically be grouped as one repeating unit. Press □ to change a repeated pattern back to one single pattern. See the following section on how to repeat one element of a repeated pattern.

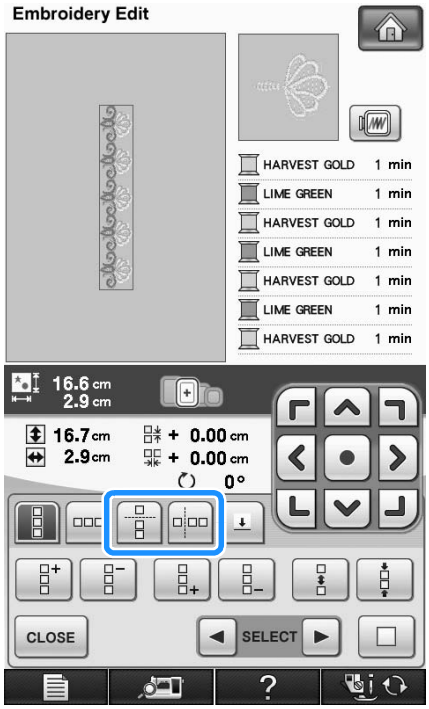
■ Repeating One Element of a Repeated Pattern

By using the Cut function, you can select one element of a repeated pattern and repeat only that single element. This function allows you to design complex repeated patterns.

1 **Choose the direction in which the repeated pattern will be cut.**

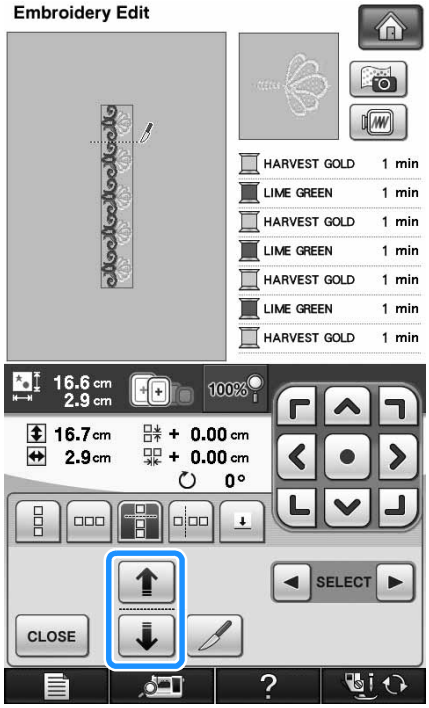
* Press ▦ to cut horizontally.

* Press ▦ to cut vertically.



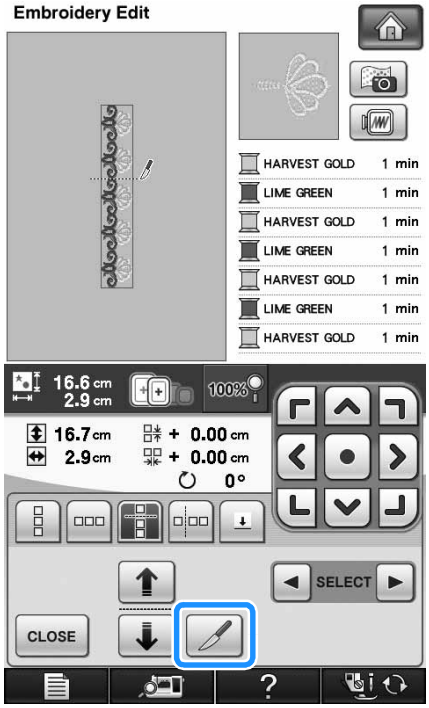
→ The pattern direction indicator will change depending on the direction selected.

2 Use [↑] and [↓] to select the cut line.



→ The cut line will move.

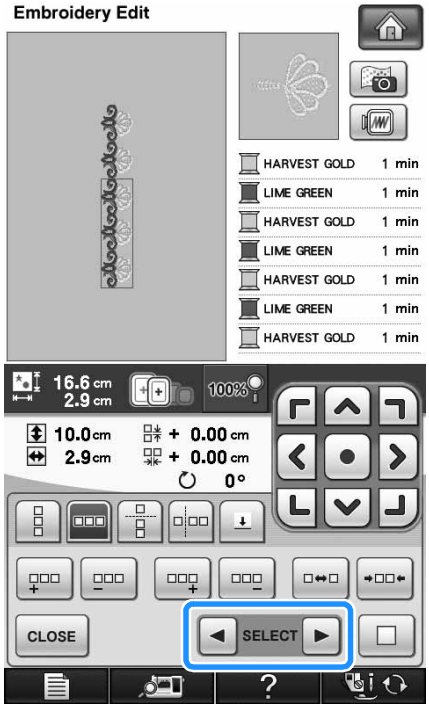
3 Press [✎].



→ The repeated pattern will be divided into separate elements.

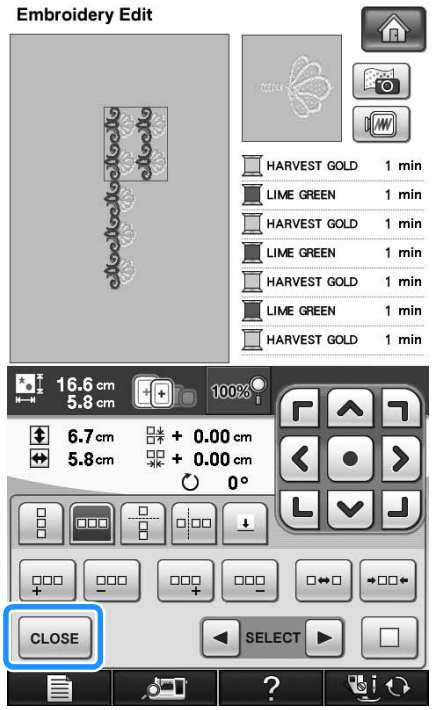
4 Press [▦].

5 Use [◄] and [►] to select the element to repeat.



6 **Repeat the selected element.**

7 **Press** CLOSE **to finish repeating.**



Note

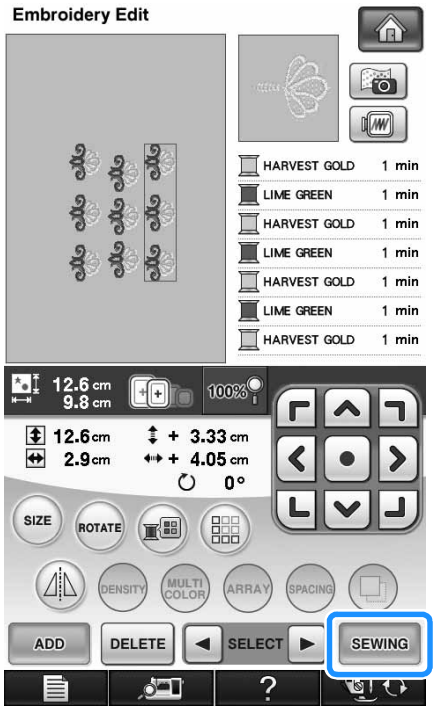
- Once you have cut a repeated pattern into separate elements, you cannot return to the original repeated pattern.
- Each element can be edited separately in the edit screen. See “Selecting combined embroidery patterns” on page 297.

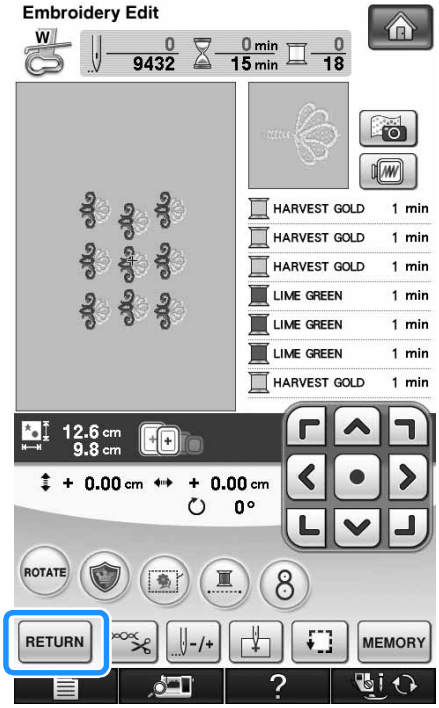
■ Color Sorting Repeated Patterns

Press SEWING to automatically change the sewing order of colors in combined border embroidery patterns so that the same color can be continuously sewn. This allows you to continue sewing without repeatedly changing the upper thread or changing the sewing order manually.

Memo

- In combined stitch patterns that contain two or more border patterns or other patterns combined with border patterns, the sewing order of only the border patterns is changed.
- When a group of two or more patterns using border patterns is repeated, the sewing order is changed so that the same color can be sewn continuously in each pattern.





■ Assigning Thread Marks

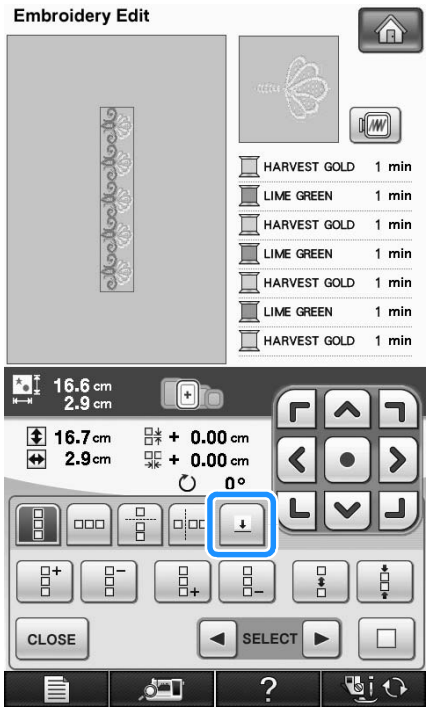
By sewing thread marks, you can easily align patterns when sewing a series. When sewing is finished on a pattern, a thread mark in the shape of an arrow will be sewn using the final thread. When sewing a series of patterns, use the point of this arrow for positioning the following designs to be sewn.

Memo

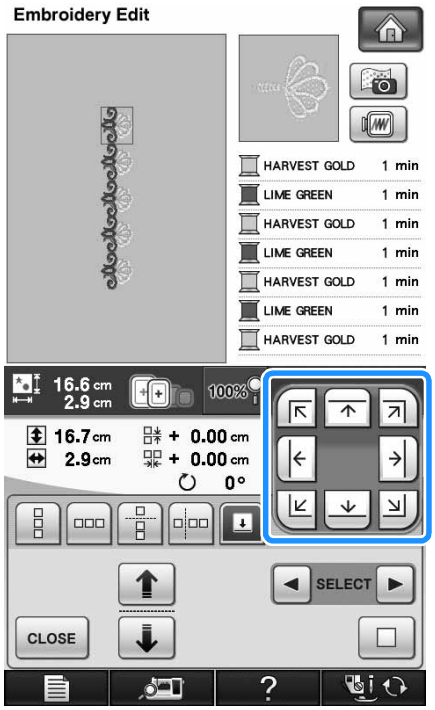
- When repeatedly sewing individual patterns, thread marks can be sewn around the perimeter of the pattern only.

1 **Press** .

2 **Press** .



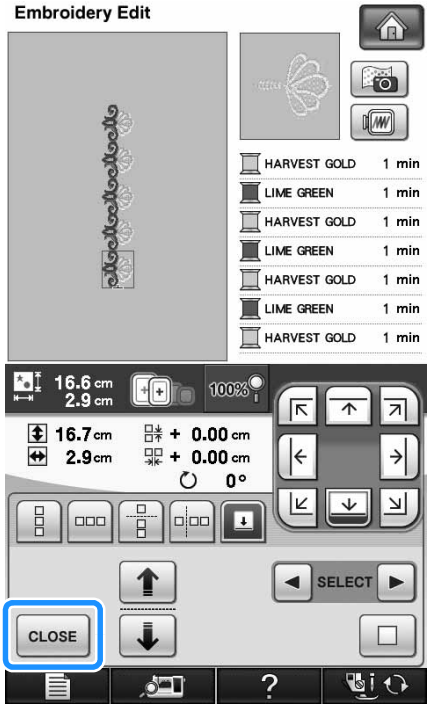
3 **Press** **to select the thread mark to be sewn.**



Memo

- When there are two or more elements, use ◄ and ► or ▲ and ▼ to select a pattern that you want to assign a thread mark(s) to.

4 **Press** CLOSE.

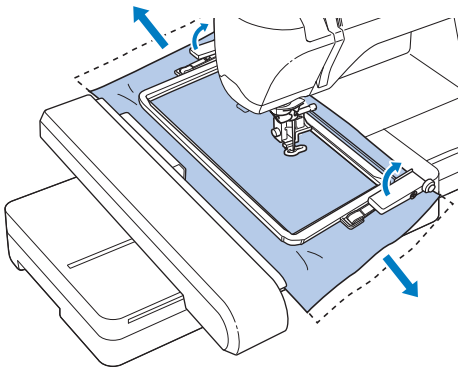


Embroidering the Pattern Repeatedly

After creating the repeated pattern, rehoop the embroidery frame and keep sewing for the next pattern.

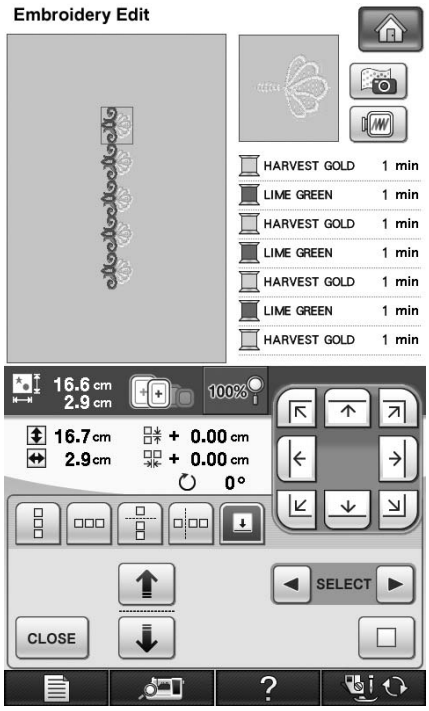
Memo

- The optional border frame allows you to easily rehoop the fabric without removing the embroidery frame from the machine.



1 Create the repeated pattern with the thread mark at the center of the end of the pattern.

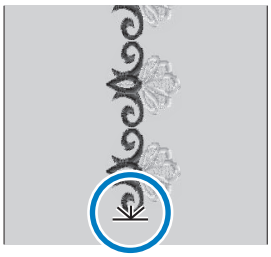
* Refer to “Assigning Thread Marks” on page 290.



2 Press CLOSE, then SEWING.

3 Press the “Start/Stop” button to begin embroidering.

→ When embroidering is finished, the thread mark is sewn with the last thread color.

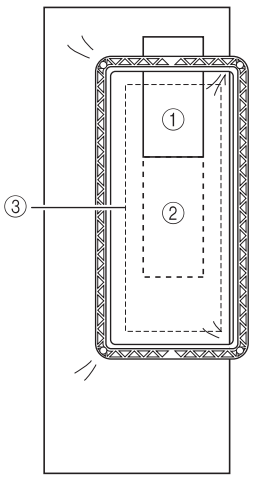


4 Remove the embroidery frame.

5 Rehoop the fabric in the embroidery frame.

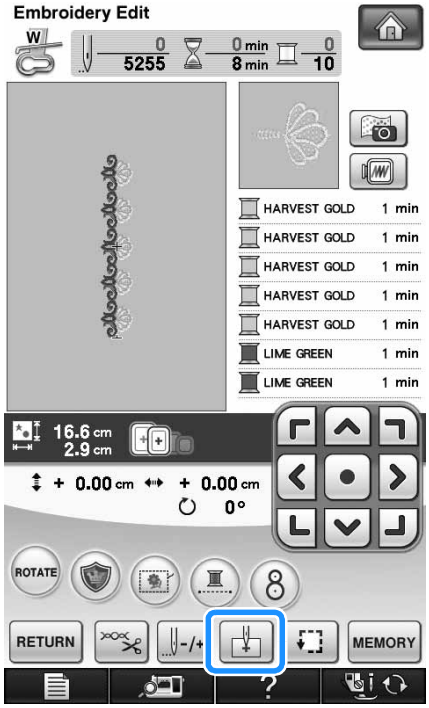
Note

- Adjust the position of the fabric so that the embroidering area for the next pattern is within the embroidering area of the embroidery sheet.

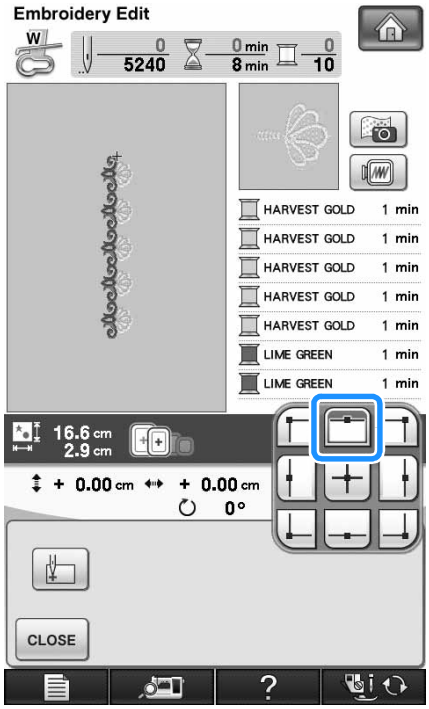


① Pattern embroidered first
② Position of pattern to be embroidered next
③ Embroidering area of embroidery sheet

6 **Attach the embroidery frame to the machine, and then touch [ ].**



7 **Touch [ ] to set the starting point to the left side of the pattern.**

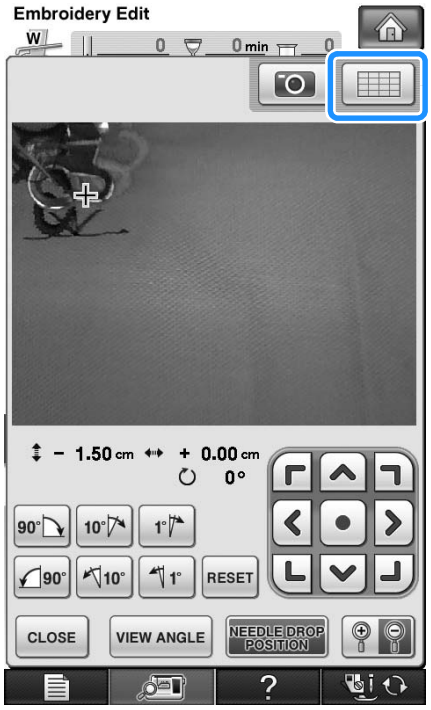


8 **Touch [CLOSE].**

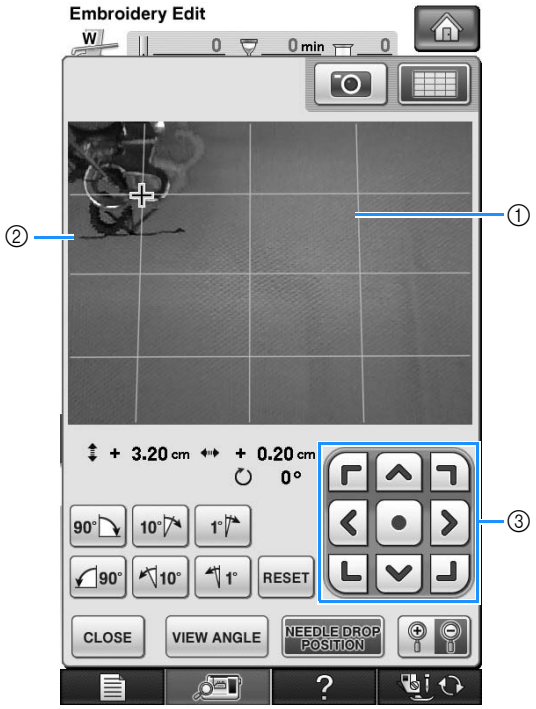
9 **Press the "Presser Foot Lifter" button to lower the presser foot.**

10 **Press [ ].**

11 **Press [ ].**



12 **Press the positioning keys to move the embroidery frame until the thread mark on the fabric is aligned on the starting point in the camera view window.**



① Grid lines
② Thread mark on the fabric
③ Positioning keys

* Press [ ] to check the embroidering position.

Memo

- Press to enlarge the camera view. By enlarging the camera view, you can make a close adjustment for the needle drop position moving the embroidery frame little by little.

13 **If the pattern position cannot be aligned using the positioning keys, rehoop the fabric, and then try again to align the position with the positioning keys.**

Note

- When embroidering the repeated pattern, you cannot rotate the pattern in the camera view window. If the pattern is rotated in the camera view window, you cannot sew the pattern properly aligned even if the thread mark and the starting point are aligned in the camera view window.

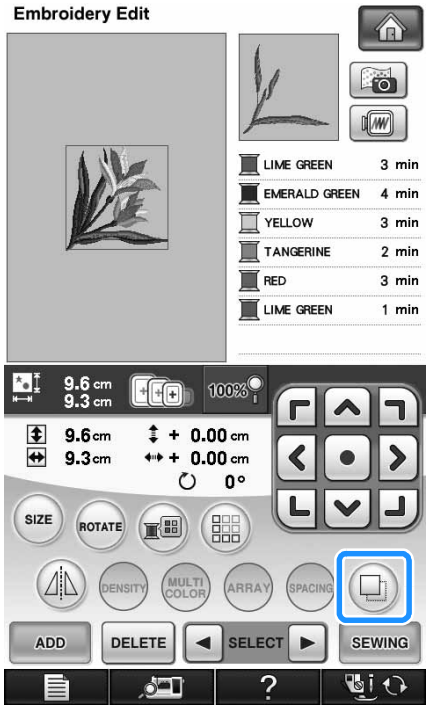
14 **Press** CLOSE **to return to the previous screen.**

15 **Remove the thread mark.**

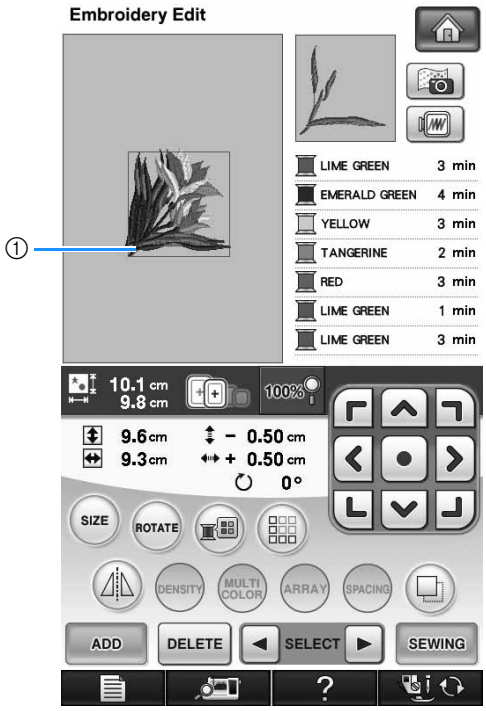
16 **Press the "Start/Stop" button to begin embroidering.**

Duplicating a Pattern

1 **Press** **.**



→ The duplicate is positioned over the original pattern.



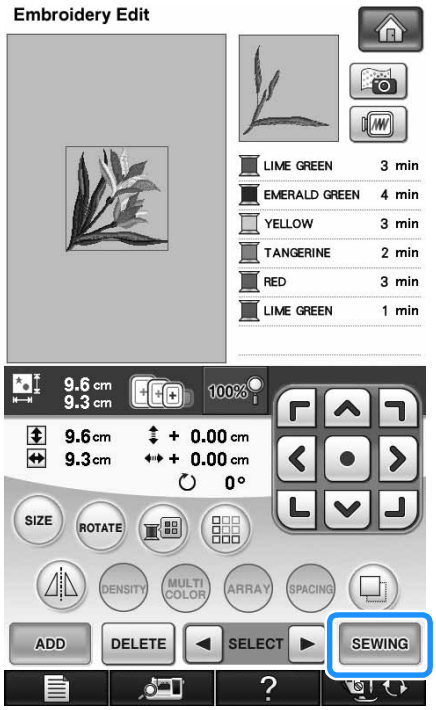
① Duplicated pattern

Note

- If multiple patterns are displayed in the screen, only the pattern selected using ◄ and ► is duplicated.
- Move and edit each duplicated pattern individually.

After Editing

1 **Press** SEWING .



* To combine the pattern with other patterns, select ADD (see page 295).

* See page 218 for more information about sewing patterns.

Memo

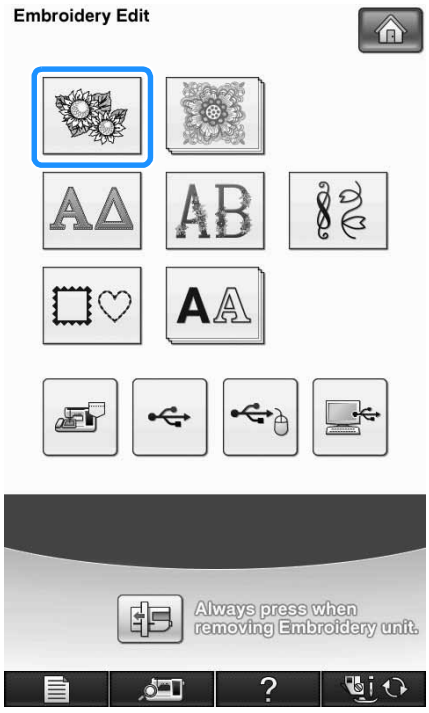
- If you want to return to the edit screen after pressing SEWING , press RETURN .

COMBINING PATTERNS

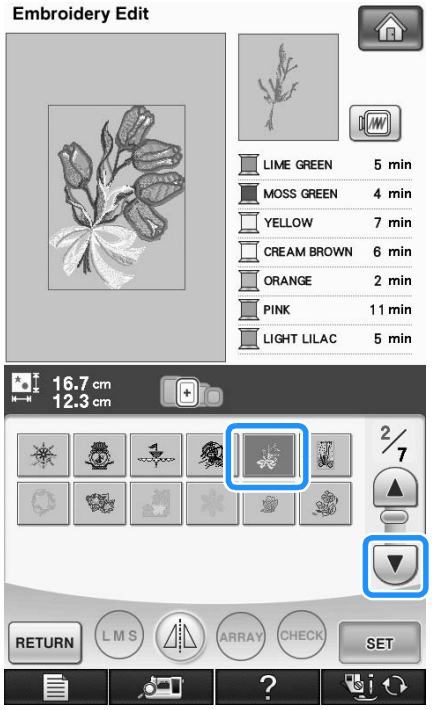
Editing Combined Patterns

Example: Combining alphabet characters with an embroidery pattern and editing

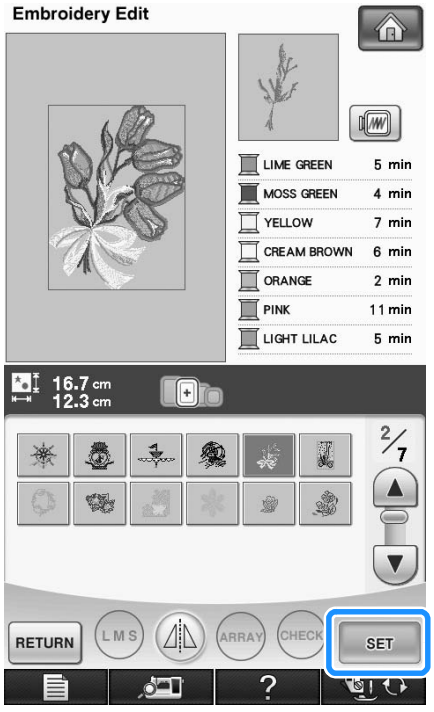
1 **Press** **to select an embroidery pattern.**



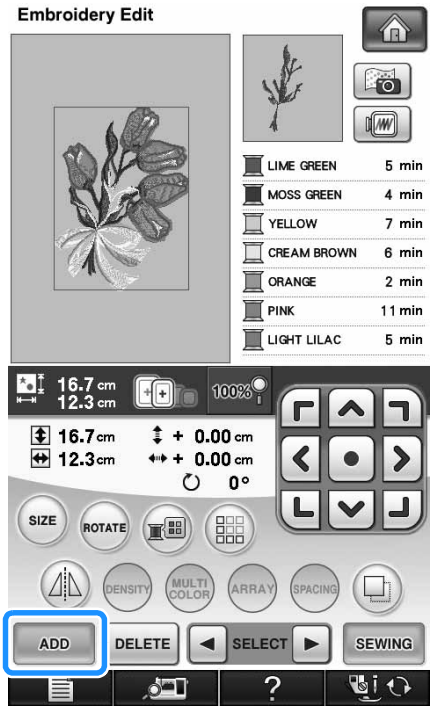
2 **Use** **to view 2/7, then select** **.**



3 **Press** **.**

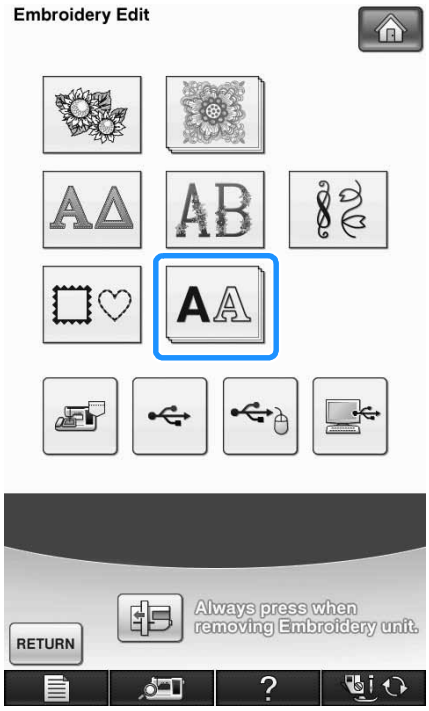


4 **Press** ADD **.**



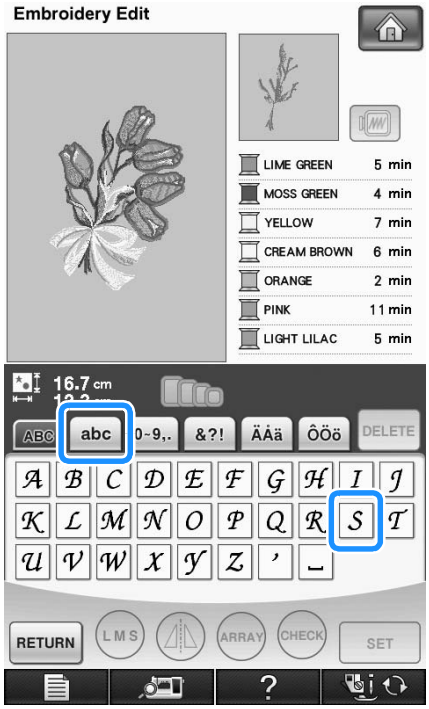
5 **Press** AA **to enter the alphabet characters.**

* Press RETURN to return to the previous screen.



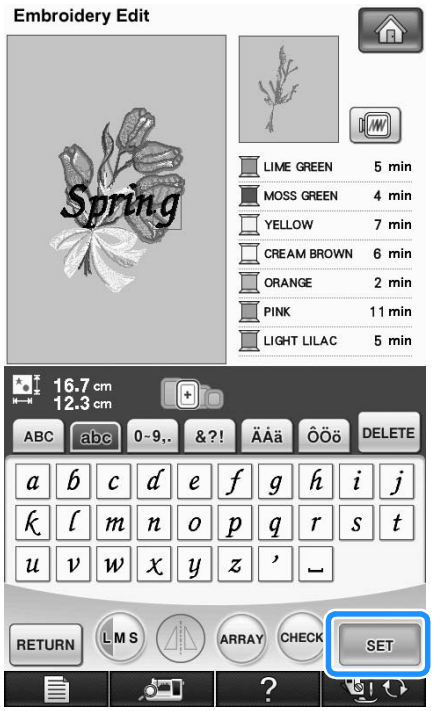
6 **Select** ABC **and enter "Spring".**

* After selecting S , press abc to change the character case, then enter the remaining characters.



→ The characters you enter will be displayed in the center of the display.

7 **Press** SET **.**



8 **Use** ◄ ▲ ► ▼ **to move the characters.**

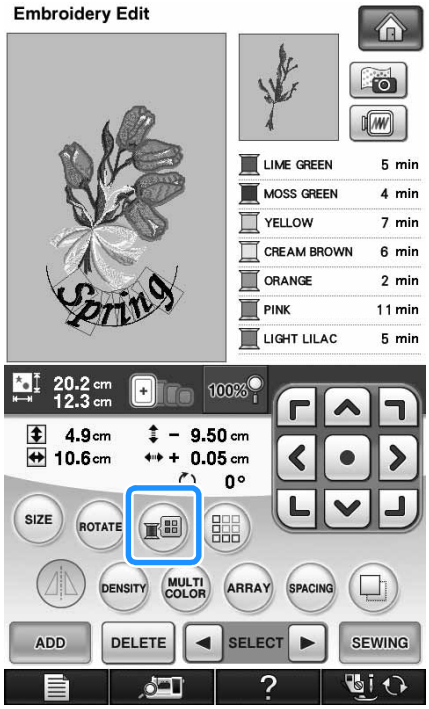
* With a USB mouse, your finger or the touch pen, drag the characters to move them.

9 **Press ARRAY to change the layout of the characters. Press CLOSE.**

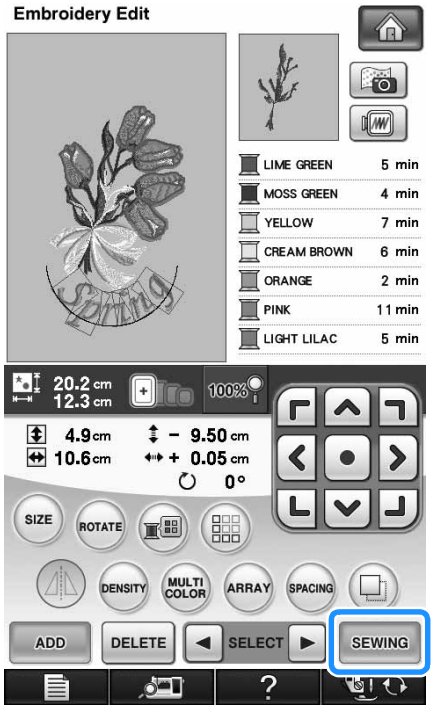
* See page 273 for more information about changing the layout.

10 **Press to change the color of the characters.**

* See page 277 for more information about changing the color.



11 **When all editing is finished, press SEWING.**

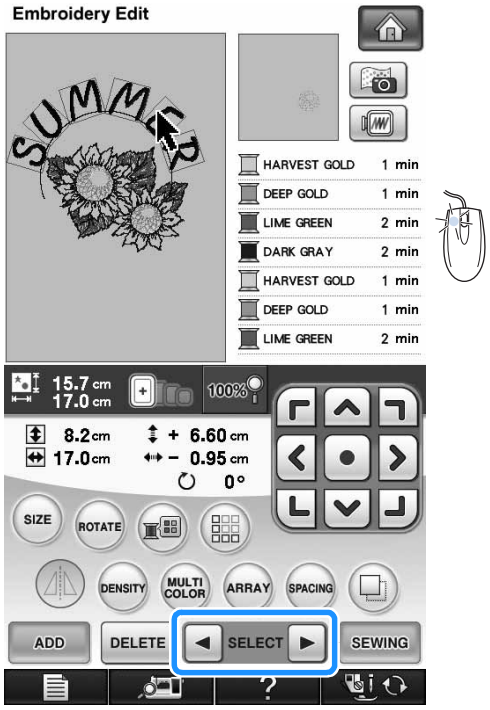


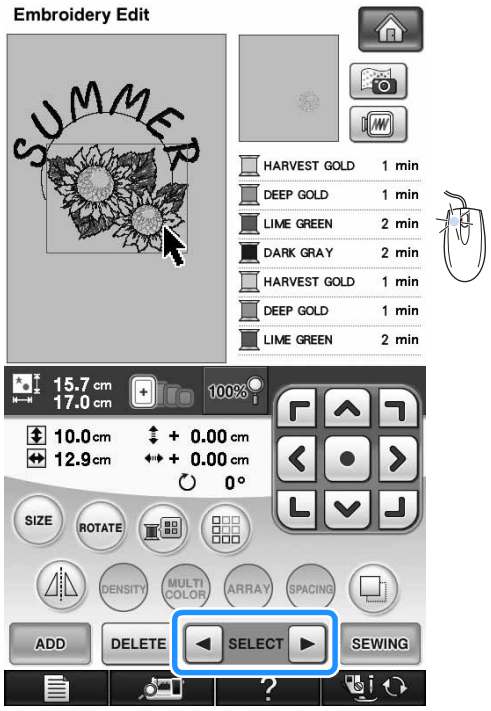
■ Selecting combined embroidery patterns

If multiple patterns have been combined, use SELECT to select the pattern to be edited. If a USB mouse is connected, the pattern can be selected by clicking it. Move the mouse to position the pointer over the desired pattern, and then click the left mouse button. In addition, patterns can be selected by directly touching the screen with your finger or touch pen.

Memo

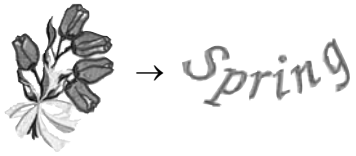
- Use SELECT to select patterns that are overlapping and cannot be selected by clicking them or by touching the screen.





Sewing Combined Patterns

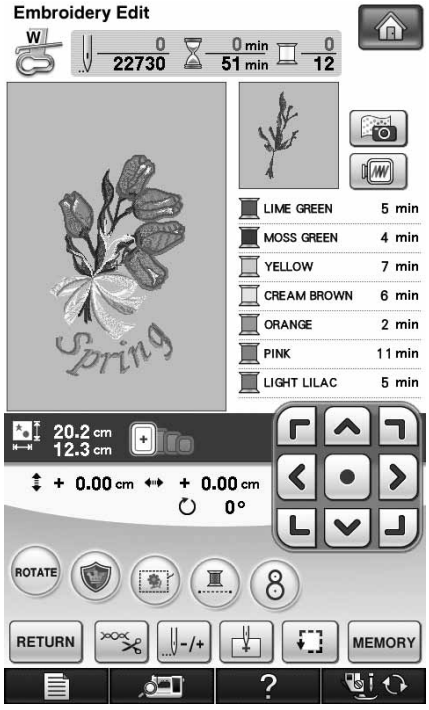
Combined patterns will be embroidered in the order they were entered. In this example, the embroidery order will be as follows:



Note

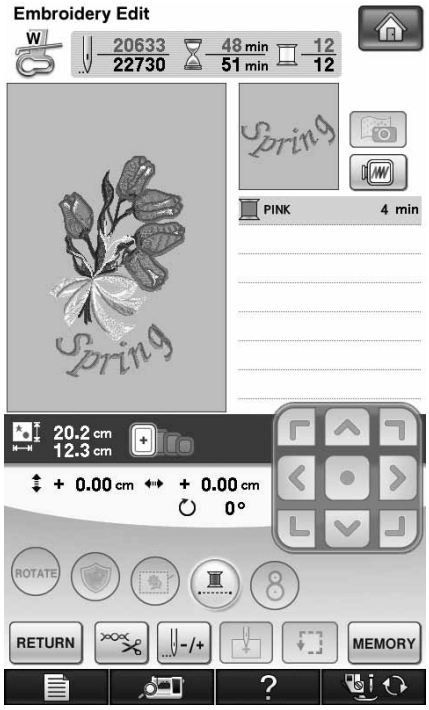
- Follow the directions in “Sewing Embroidery Patterns” on page 219.

1 **Embroider** **by following the color order on the right side of the display.**



→ After the flowers are embroidered, the [+] cursor will move to the “Spring” part of the pattern.

2 **Embroider** **.**

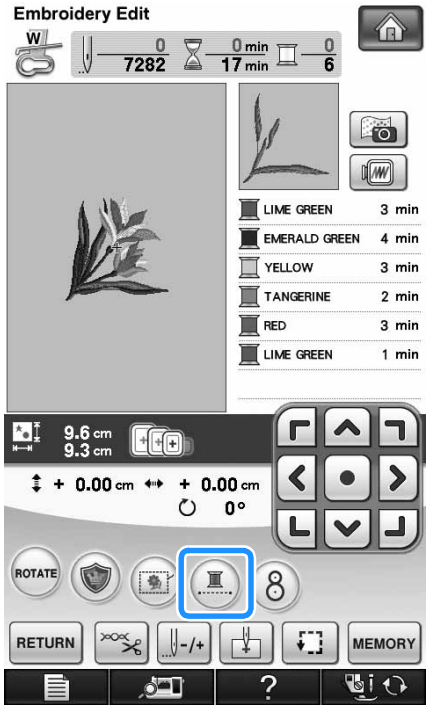


→ When “Spring” is embroidered, the display returns to the sewing screen.

VARIOUS EMBROIDERING FUNCTIONS

Uninterrupted Embroidering (Using a Single Color)

A selected pattern can be stitched out in one color instead of multicolor. The machine will hesitate but not stop between color steps, and then continue till the pattern is completed. Press for the multicolor steps to become shaded and the selected pattern will embroider in a single color, instead of changing the thread while embroidering. Press again to return to the pattern's original settings.



Basting Embroidery

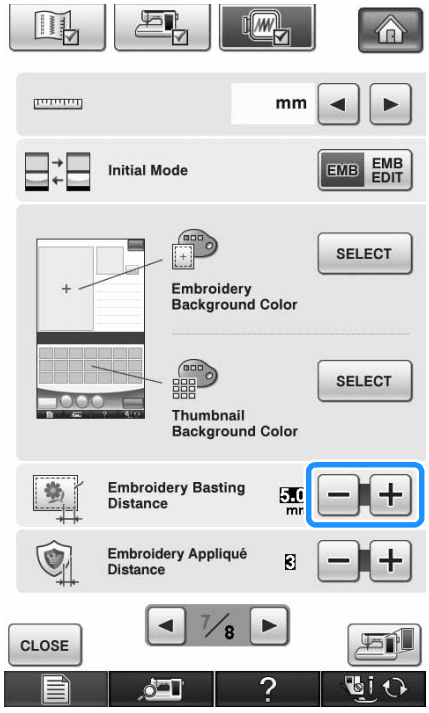
Before embroidering, basting stitches can be sewn along the outline of the pattern. This is useful for embroidering fabric that cannot have stabilizer material affixed with an iron or adhesive. By stitching stabilizer material to the fabric, shrinkage of the stitching or misaligned pattern can be minimized.

Note

- It is recommended to finish combining and editing the pattern before selecting the basting setting. If the pattern is edited after selecting the basting setting, the basting and pattern may become misaligned, and the basting under the pattern may be difficult to remove after embroidering is complete.

1. **Press , and then display 7/8 of the settings screen.**

2. **Use − and + to specify the distance from the pattern to the basting stitching.**



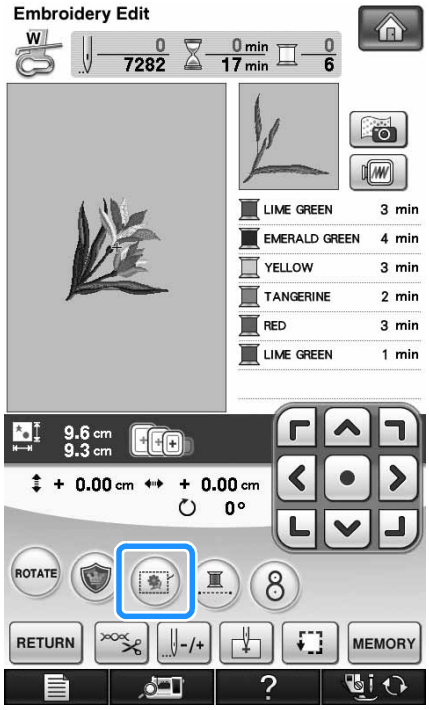
Memo

- The higher the setting, the farther the basting is from the pattern.
- The setting remains selected even if the machine is turned off.

3 **Press** CLOSE **to return to the previous screen.**

4 **Press** SEWING **.**

5 **Press** **to select the basting setting.**



Note

- When is pressed, the pattern is moved to the center. After selecting the basting setting, move the pattern to the desired position.

Memo

- To cancel the setting, press .
- If no pattern is selected, the key appears gray and cannot be selected.

→ Basting is added to the beginning of the sewing order.

6 **Press the "Start/Stop" button to begin embroidering.**

7 **When embroidering is finished, remove the basting stitching.**

Creating an Appliqué Piece

Appliqué pieces can be created from the built-in patterns and patterns on embroidery cards. This is convenient for fabrics that cannot be embroidered or when you wish to attach an appliqué to a garment.

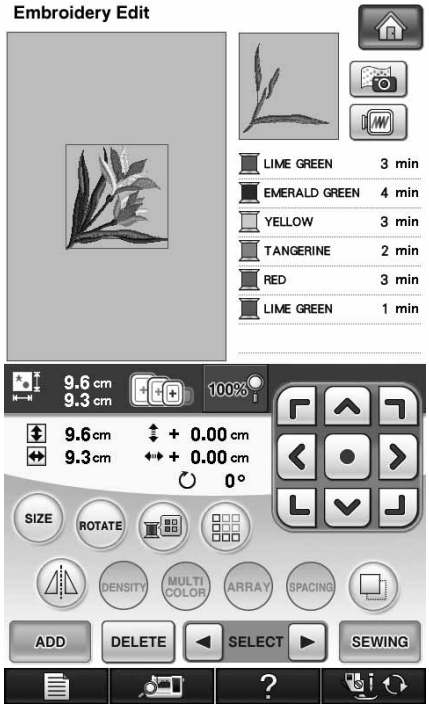
■ Creating an Appliqué Piece

The following pattern will be used to create an appliqué piece.

Note

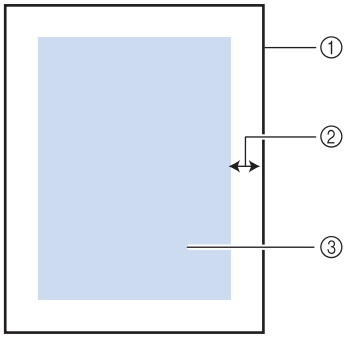
- Felt or denim fabrics are recommended to make the appliqué piece. Depending on the pattern and fabric used, lighter weight fabrics may cause the stitching to appear smaller.
- For best results, be sure to use stabilizer material for embroidering.
- Select a frame that matches the pattern size. Frame options are displayed on the LCD screen.
- When making appliqué pieces, do not use the border embroidery frame. Depending on the pattern density and fabric used, shrinkage of the stitching may occur.

1 **Select the pattern, and edit it if necessary.**



Note

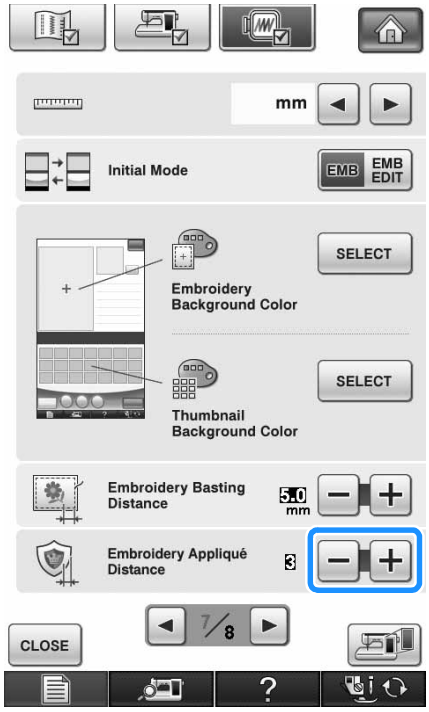
- Finish combining and editing the pattern before selecting the appliqué setting. If the pattern is edited after selecting the appliqué setting, the appliqué stitching and pattern may become misaligned.
- Since an outline is added, the pattern for an appliqué piece (when the appliqué setting is selected) will be larger than the original pattern. First, adjust the size and position of the pattern as shown below.



① Embroidering area
② Approx. 1 cm
③ Pattern size

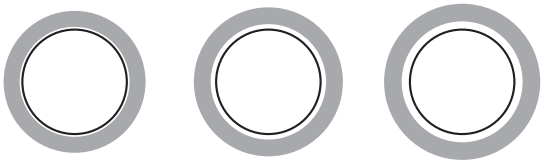
2 **Press [ ], and then display 7/8 of the settings screen.**

3 **Use [−] and [+] to specify the distance between the pattern and the appliqué outline.**



Memo

- Three settings are available: 1 (narrow), 2 (normal) and 3 (wide).

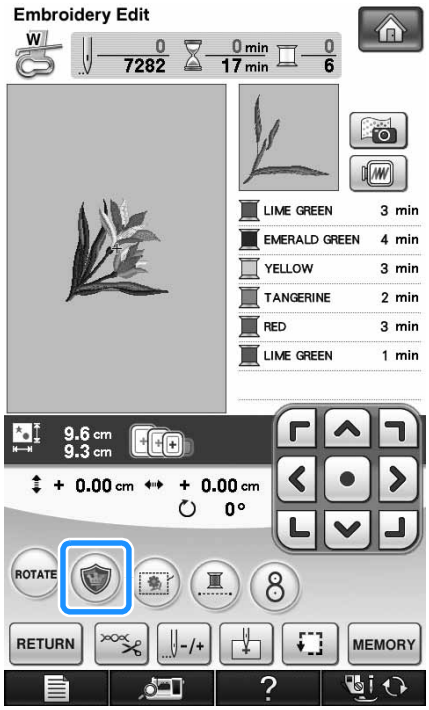


- The setting remains selected even if the machine is turned off.

4 **Press [CLOSE] to return to the previous screen.**

5 **Press [SEWING].**

6 **Press** **to select the appliqué setting.**



Note

- When is pressed, the pattern is moved to the center. After selecting the appliqué setting, move the pattern to the desired position.

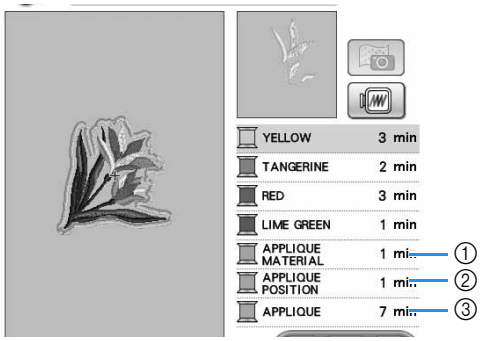
Memo

- To cancel the setting, press .
- If no pattern is selected, the key appears gray and cannot be selected.

→ The steps for creating the appliqué piece are added to the sewing order.

Memo

- Three steps are added to the sewing order: appliqué cutting line, position of pattern placement on the garment, and appliqué stitching.



① Cutting line for appliqué
② Position of pattern placement on garment
③ Appliqué stitching

Note

- An appliqué piece cannot be created if the pattern is too large or too complicated or a combined pattern is separated. Even if the selected pattern fits within the embroidering area, the entire appliqué pattern may exceed the embroidering area when the outline is added. If an error message appears, select a different pattern or edit it.

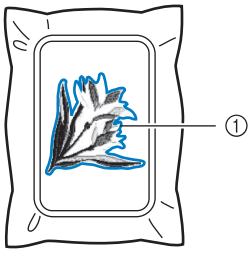
7 **Fuse or stick a piece of stabilizer to the back of the felt or denim fabric to be used as the appliqué piece.**

Note

- For best results, be sure to use stabilizer material for embroidering.

8 **Hoop the appliqué fabric in the embroidery frame, attach the embroidery frame to the machine, and then start embroidering.**

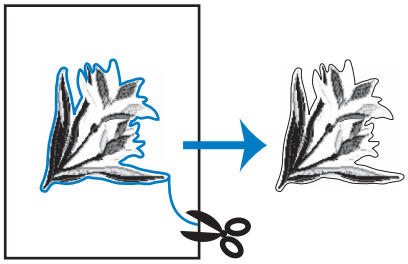
9 **After the pattern is embroidered, thread the machine with the thread for the cutting line, and then sew the cutting line (APPLIQUE MATERIAL).**



① Cutting line for appliqué

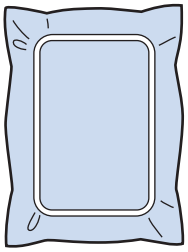
Memo
- We recommend using thread for the cutting line that is closest to the color of the fabric.

10 **Remove the appliqué material from the embroidery frame, and then carefully cut along the stitching. After cutting, carefully remove all of the cutting line thread.**



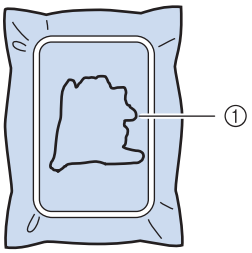
Note
- Depending on the pattern density and fabric used, there may be shrinking of the pattern or the appliqué may be misaligned with the placement line. We recommend cutting slightly outside of the cutting line.
- When using patterns that are vertically and horizontally symmetrical, use a chalk pencil to indicate the pattern orientation before cutting it out.
- Carefully cut out the pattern on the outline you just sewed. Do not cut inside the cutting line, otherwise the appliqué fabric will not be caught by the appliqué stitch.

11 **Use two layers of adhesive water-soluble stabilizer material with their sticky sides together, and then hoop them in the embroidery frame.**



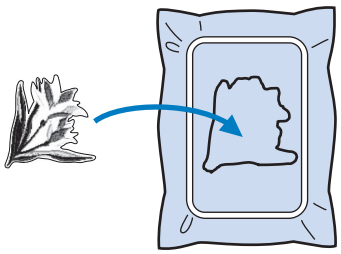
Note
- If water-soluble stabilizer is used, it is not necessary to remove the stabilizer material after sewing the appliqué outline. To reduce shrinkage of the pattern, we recommend using water-soluble stabilizer.
- Put together two layers of water-soluble stabilizer, otherwise the stabilizer material may tear during embroidering.

12 **Thread the machine with the thread for the outline from step 14, and then sew the placement line for the appliqué position (APPLIQUE POSITION).**



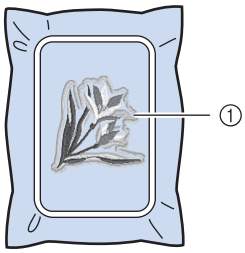
① Pattern placement line

13 **Lightly apply glue or spray adhesive, and paste the appliqué piece so that it aligns with the placement line.**



Note
- Before pasting the appliqué piece down, make sure the appliqué piece is positioned correctly within the placement line.

14 **With the machine threaded using the thread for the outline from step 12, sew the outline (APPLIQUE).**



① Outline of appliqué piece

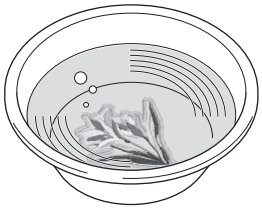
Memo

- The outline is sewn using satin stitching.
- Some glue may get onto the presser foot, needle, and needle plate at this time. Finish embroidering the appliqué pattern, and then clean off the glue.

15 **After embroidering is finished, remove the stabilizer material from the embroidery frame.**

16 **Use scissors to cut the excess water-soluble stabilizer from outside the appliqué outline.**

17 **Soak the appliqué piece in water to dissolve the water-soluble stabilizer.**



18 **Dry the appliqué piece, and then iron it if necessary.**

Note

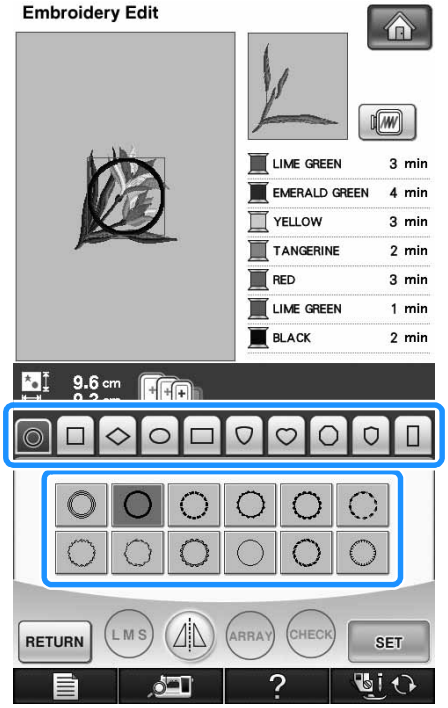
- Do not apply a strong force when ironing, otherwise the stitching may be damaged.

■ Using a Frame Pattern for the Outline

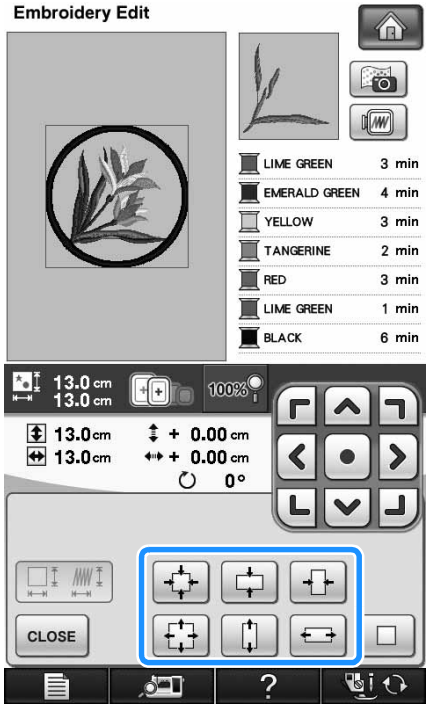
Using a frame pattern, the desired shape can be added as the outline of the appliqué.

1 **Perform the operations described in steps 1 through 4 of "Creating an Appliqué Piece" on page 300.**

2 **Select the desired frame shape and pattern, and add it to the appliqué pattern.**

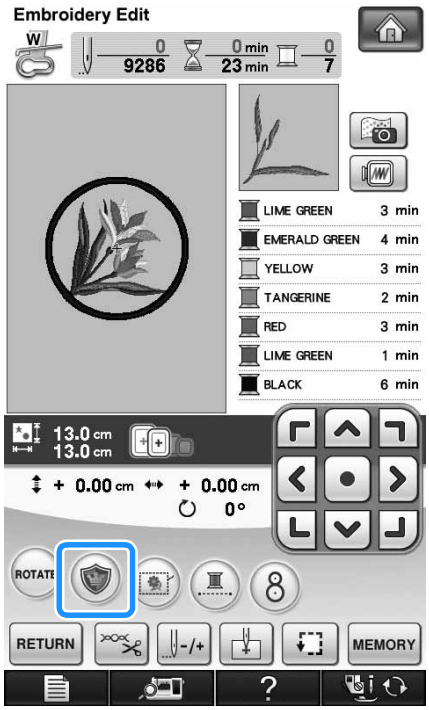


3 **Edit the frame pattern to fit the size of the appliqué pattern.**



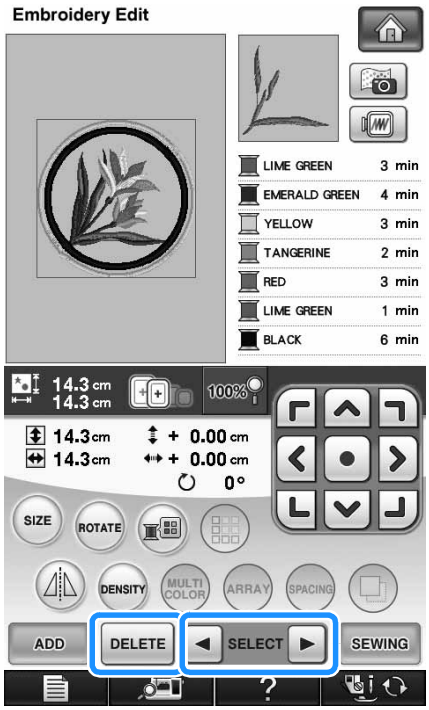
4 **Press** CLOSE **and then press** SEWING **.**

5 **Press** **to select the appliqué piece setting.**



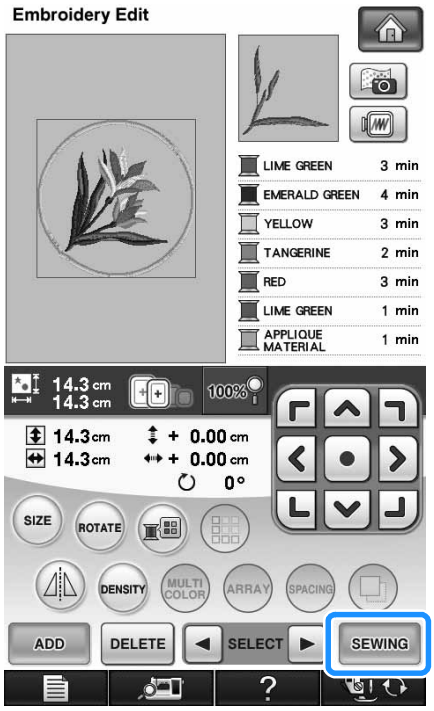
6 **Press** RETURN **.**

7 **Use** ◄ SELECT ► **to select the frame pattern, and then press** DELETE **and** OK **.**



→ The frame pattern is deleted.

8 **Press** SEWING **.**



9 **Continue with step 7 of "Creating an Appliqué Piece" on page 300 to complete the appliqué piece.**

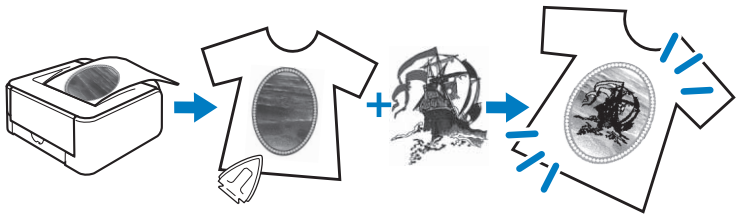
USING THE MEMORY FUNCTION

In the same way as embroidery patterns in Chapter 5, you can save and retrieve edited embroidery patterns to and from the machine's memory, a personal computer, or USB media. Refer to the relevant sections in Chapter 5 on saving and retrieving embroidery patterns and follow the same procedures in order to save and retrieve edited embroidery patterns.
See page 249 for more information about the MEMORY FUNCTION.

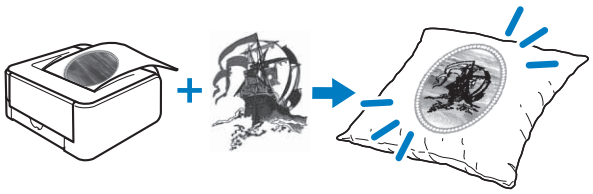
PRINT AND STITCH (COMBINING EMBROIDERY PATTERNS AND PRINTED DESIGNS)

Completed embroidery patterns combined with printed designs are built into this machine. Beautiful three-dimensional embroidered designs can be created by ironing a background onto fabric or printing it onto printable fabric, then sewing complementary embroidery on top of the background.
For details on Print and Stitch function, refer to "PRINT AND STITCH (COMBINING EMBROIDERY PATTERNS AND PRINTED DESIGNS)" on page 223.

Using iron-on paper



Using printable fabric



Chapter 7

How to Create Bobbin Work

ABOUT BOBBIN WORK 308

PREPARING FOR BOBBIN WORK 309

Required Materials 309
■ Bobbin case and bobbin cover 309
■ Lower thread 309
■ Upper thread 309
■ Needle 309
■ Presser foot 309
■ Fabric 309
Upper Threading 310
Preparing the Bobbin Thread 310
■ When tension is applied to the bobbin thread 312
■ When tension is not applied to the bobbin thread 312

CREATING BOBBIN WORK (SEWING) 314

Positioning the Fabric and Sewing 314
■ Finishing the thread ends 316
Bobbin Work Free Motion Sewing 317

CREATING BOBBIN WORK (EMBROIDERY) 318

Selecting the Pattern 318
Start Embroidering 320

ADJUSTING THE THREAD TENSION 322

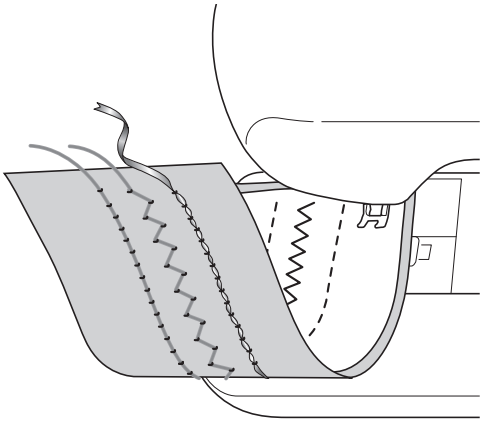
■ Adjusting the upper thread tension 322
■ Adjusting the tension of the bobbin thread 322

TROUBLESHOOTING 323

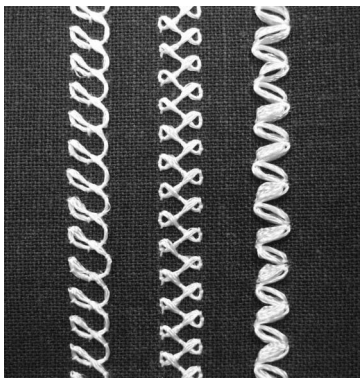
■ The thread was accidentally cut automatically and the bobbin thread is caught inside the machine 323
■ The pattern is misaligned 323
■ The bobbin thread catches on the tension spring of the bobbin case 323

ABOUT BOBBIN WORK

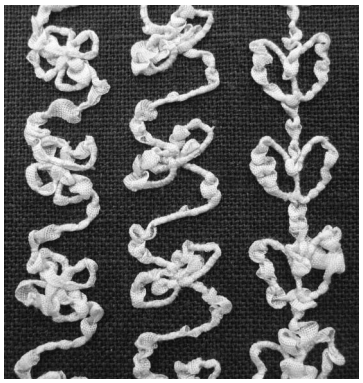
Beautiful embroidery work, with a three-dimensional appearance, can be created by winding the bobbin with heavy weight thread or ribbon, which is too thick to be threaded through the machine's needle. The decorative thread or ribbon will stitch out on the underneath side of fabric while sewing with the fabric wrong side facing up.



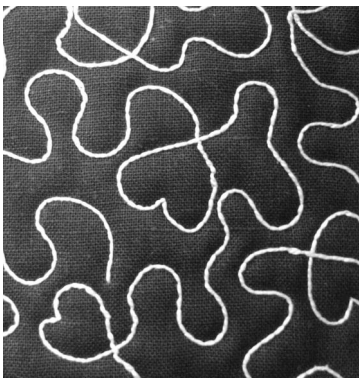
1. Utility stitches



2. Decorative stitches



3. Free motion sewing

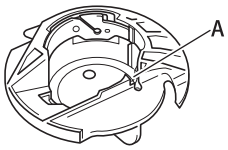


Bobbin work embroidery is sewn using the bobbin work patterns included with this product in addition to some of the utility stitches.

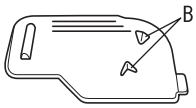
PREPARING FOR BOBBIN WORK

Required Materials

■ Bobbin case and bobbin cover



① Bobbin case (gray)
There is a notch at the location indicated by the letter “A”.



① Bobbin cover
There are two small v-shaped tabs on the back of the bobbin cover as indicated by the letter “B”. The tabs help hold the bobbin in place so it does not lift up while thick thread is being pulled through.

■ Lower thread

We recommend the following types of threads for bobbin work.

<Sewing/Embroidery>

No.5 or finer hand embroidery thread or decorative thread

Flexible woven ribbon
(When embroidering: approx. 2mm (approx. 5/64 inch) recommended)

<Sewing only>

Fine embroidery ribbon (silk or silk-like material) (3.5 mm (approx. 1/8 inch) or less, recommended)

* When wide ribbon or heavy weight threads are being used, we recommend test sewing with and without bobbin case tension being applied to see which gives the best stitching results. If wide ribbon such as 3.5mm (approx. 1/8 inch) is to be used, we recommend that bobbin case tension not be applied. Refer to page 312 for more detailed instructions.

Note
- Do not use thread heavier than No.5 hand embroidery thread.
- Some threads may not be appropriate for bobbin work. Be sure to sew trial stitches before sewing on your project.

■ Upper thread

Sewing machine embroidery thread (polyester thread) or monofilament (transparent nylon) thread. If you do not wish for the upper thread to be visible, we recommend using transparent nylon monofilament thread or polyester light weight thread (50wt. or above) that is the same color as the lower thread.

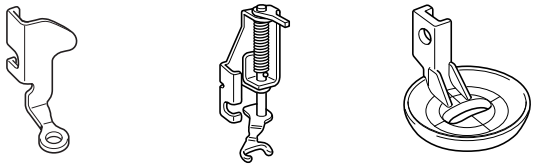
■ Needle

Use a needle appropriate for the upper thread and fabric being used. Refer to “Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations” on page 69 and “Embroidery Step by Step” on page 186.

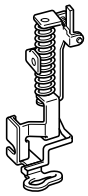
■ Presser foot

Utility stitches or decorative stitches:
Monogramming foot “N”

Free motion sewing: Free motion quilting foot “C”, Free motion open toe quilting foot “O” or Free motion echo quilting foot “E”



Embroidery: Embroidery foot “W”



■ Fabric

Be sure to sew trial stitches on a piece of scrap fabric, which includes the same threads and fabric as what is being used in your project.

Note
- The sewing results may be affected by the type of fabric used. Before sewing your project, be sure to sew trial stitches on a piece of scrap fabric that is the same as the fabric used in the project.

Upper Threading

1 **Install a needle appropriate for the upper thread and fabric to be used.**

For details on installing the needle, refer to "CHANGING THE NEEDLE" on page 67.

2 **Attach the presser foot.**

→ "CHANGING THE PRESSER FOOT" on page 65
→ "Using Free motion Quilting Foot "C"" on page 116
→ "Using free motion Open Toe Quilting Foot "O"" on page 118
→ "Echo Quilting Using the Free Motion Echo Quilting Foot "E"" on page 119
→ "Attaching Embroidery Foot "W"" on page 187

3 **Thread the machine with the upper thread.**

For details on threading the machine, refer to "Upper Threading" on page 57.

Preparing the Bobbin Thread

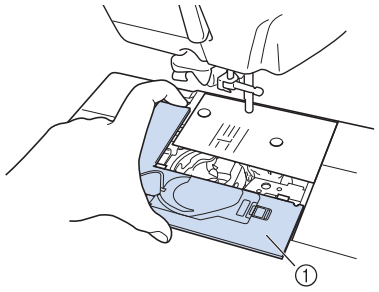
In order to create bobbin work, the bobbin case must be replaced with the one for bobbin work.

Before creating bobbin work, clean the bobbin case and the race.

1 **Raise the needle and presser foot, and then turn off the machine.**

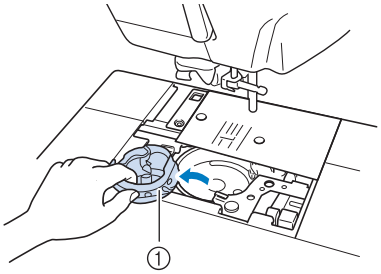
2 **Remove the flat bed attachment or embroidery unit.**

3 **Grasp both sides of the needle plate cover, and then slide it toward you to remove it.**



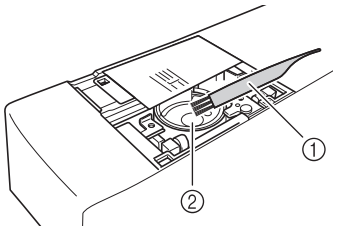
① Needle plate cover

4 **Remove the bobbin case.**



① Bobbin case

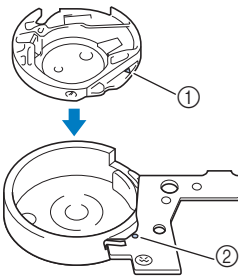
5 **Use the cleaning brush included with the machine or a vacuum cleaner to remove any lint and dust from the race and its surrounding area.**

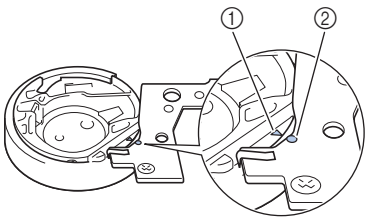


① Cleaning brush
② Race

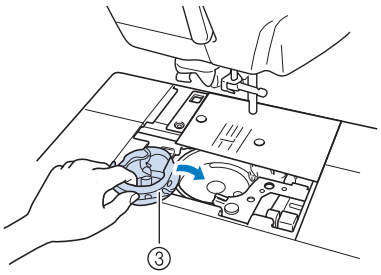
6 **Wipe the bobbin case (gray) with a soft lint free cloth to clean it.**

7 **Insert the bobbin case so that the ▲ mark on the bobbin case aligns with the ● mark on the machine.**





* Align the ▲ and ● marks.



① ▲ mark
② ● mark
③ Bobbin case

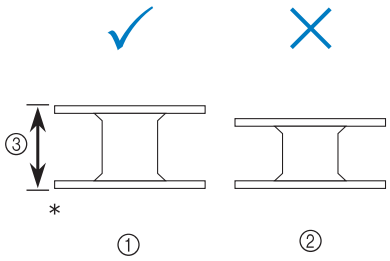
Note
- The bobbin case (gray) cannot be used for sewing in any way other than bobbin work. After sewing bobbin work, refer back to the steps in “Preparing the Bobbin Thread” on page 310 for removing and cleaning the bobbin case (gray), and then reinstall the standard bobbin case (black).

CAUTION
- **Be sure to use the bobbin case (gray) when creating bobbin work. Using any other bobbin case may result in the thread becoming tangled or damage to the machine.**
- **Make sure that the bobbin case is correctly installed. If the bobbin case is incorrectly installed, the thread may become tangled or the machine may be damaged.**

8 Wind a decorative thread around the bobbin by hand. After winding the bobbin so it is filled as shown below (about 80%), cut the thread.

For precautions on winding the bobbin for embroidering, refer to step 2 of “Selecting the Pattern” on page 318.

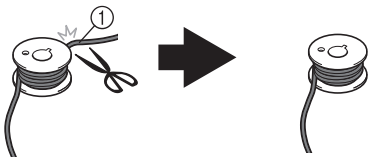
CAUTION
- **Be sure to use the machine’s included bobbin or one designed specifically for this machine. Using any other bobbin may result in damage or injuries.**



* Actual size
① This model
② Other models
③ 11.5 mm (approx. 7/16 inch)

Note
- Slowly and evenly wind the thread around the bobbin.
- For best results, wind the bobbin so the thread is snug and not twisted.

9 Using scissors carefully trim the thread tail as close to the bobbin as possible.



① Beginning of wound thread

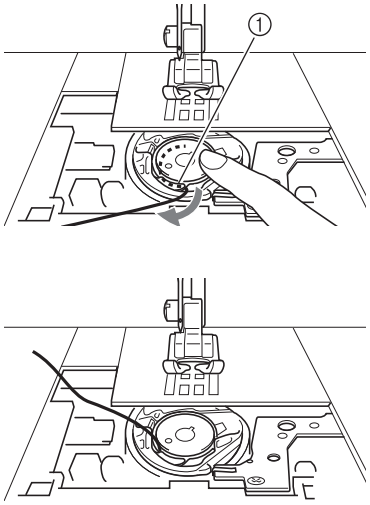
CAUTION
- **If thread extends beyond the top of the bobbin too much, the thread may become tangled or the needle may break.**

10 Install the bobbin wound with thread.

Whether or not tension should be applied to the bobbin thread depends on the type of thread being used.

■ When tension is applied to the bobbin thread

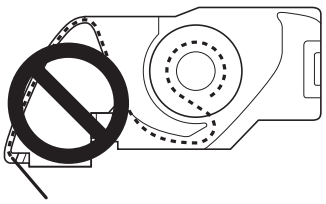
Insert bobbin into bobbin case so the thread unwinds from the left side.
Then correctly pass the thread through the tension spring as shown below.



① Tension spring

⚠ CAUTION

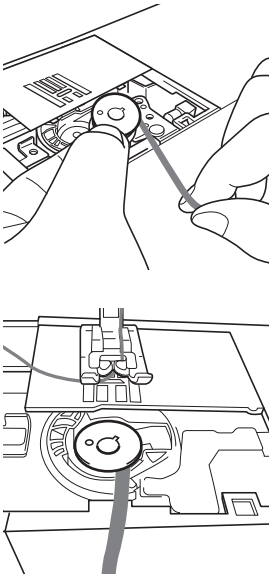
- **When winding the bobbin, make sure the thread is not frayed. Sewing with frayed thread may result in the thread catching on the tension spring of the bobbin case, the thread completely becoming tangled or damage to the machine.**
- **Do not guide the bobbin thread through the groove in the needle plate cover, otherwise the lower threading cannot be done correctly.**



■ When tension is not applied to the bobbin thread

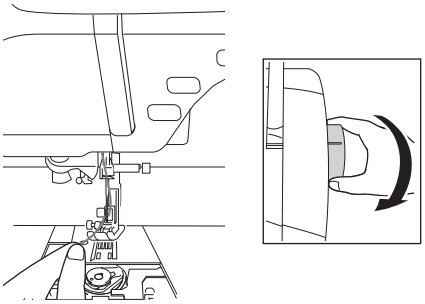
If the bobbin thread in the trial stitching is too tight and adjusting the bobbin case tension does not help, do not pass the thread through the tension spring.

Hold the bobbin with your left hand so the thread unwinds from the right side and hold the end of the thread with your right hand.

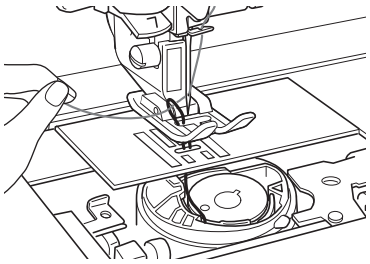


11 Pull out about 8 cm (approx. 3 inches) of bobbin thread.

12 Lightly hold the end of the upper thread while turning the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) until the mark on the handwheel aligns with the center top of machine.



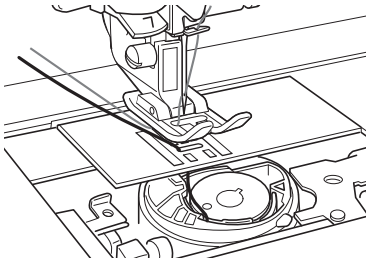
13 **Gently pull the upper thread to bring the bobbin thread up through the needle plate.**



→ A loop of the bobbin thread comes out through the hole in the needle plate.

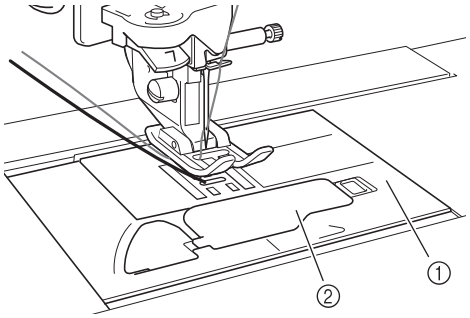
14 **Insert tweezers through bobbin thread loop and pull bobbin thread above the needle plate.**

15 **Align the upper thread and bobbin thread, and then pull out about 10 cm (approx. 4 inches) of the threads and pass them under the presser foot toward the rear of the machine.**



16 **Install the needle plate cover and bobbin cover with tabs.**

For details on installing the needle plate cover, refer to “Cleaning the Race” on page 338.



① Bobbin cover
② Bobbin cover with tabs

⚠ CAUTION

- **When creating bobbin work, use the bobbin cover with tabs, otherwise the thread may become tangled or the needle may break.**

Note

- When installing the needle plate cover, do not allow it to pinch the thread.

17 **Install the flat bed attachment or embroidery unit.**

Note

- When installing the flat bed attachment or embroidery unit, do not allow it to pinch the thread.
- When the bobbin thread is replaced with a new one, be sure to repeat the procedure from 1, otherwise the lower threading will not be done correctly.

→ This completes the upper and lower threading.

Note

- If utility stitches are to be used, refer to “CREATING BOBBIN WORK (SEWING)” on page 314. If embroidery patterns are to be used, refer to “CREATING BOBBIN WORK (EMBROIDERY)” on page 318.

CREATING BOBBIN WORK (SEWING)

Positioning the Fabric and Sewing

Note

- Recommended stitches for bobbin work are open “airy” type stitches.
- Be sure to sew trial stitches using same fabric and threads as project in order to check the sewing results.
- The bobbin thread may become tangled due to the type of pattern and thread that are being used. Since this may cause the needle to break, immediately stop sewing if this occurs. Turn off the machine and cut out the tangled thread with scissors. Then, clean the race and bobbin case as described in “Preparing the Bobbin Thread” on page 310.

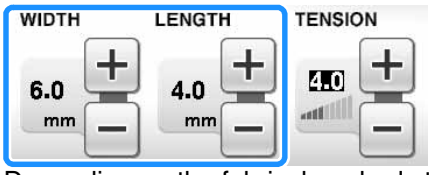
1 **Turn on the machine.**

2 **Select a stitch in the Utility and Decorative Stitches mode. For this example, press**

.

Memo

- For best results, select a longer stitch length and a wider stitch width. Depending on the selected stitch, it may not be possible to change the stitch length and stitch width settings.



- Depending on the fabric, bunched stitches may result. We recommend selecting a simple stitch and sewing trial stitches to check the sewing results.

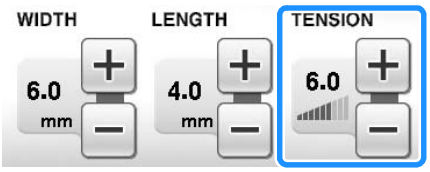
Examples of simple stitches:

,

,

3 **Adjust the upper thread tension.**

For details on adjusting the upper thread tension, refer to “Setting the Thread Tension” on page 79.



Memo

We recommend a setting between 6 and 8 for the upper thread tension.

4 **Make sure the automatic thread cutting ( ) and automatic reinforcement/ reverse stitching ( ) have been turned off.**

CAUTION

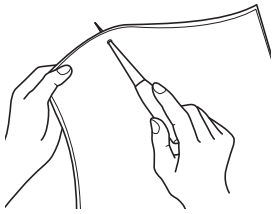
- **Before sewing, make sure the automatic thread cutting has been turned off. If sewing is started with automatic thread cutting turned on, the thread may become tangled or the machine may be damaged.**

5 **Place stabilizer on top (wrong side) of the fabric.**

Note

- Type and weight of stabilizer will depend on fabric and thread being used.

6 **If thread is too thick to pull through fabric to machine surface use an awl to punch a small hole in the fabric at the beginning of stitching so the bobbin thread can be fed through the opening.**

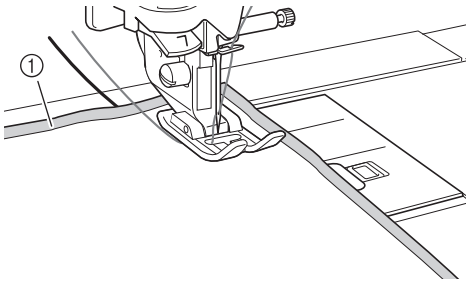


7 **Press** **.**

→ The screen changes, and all keys and operation buttons are locked.

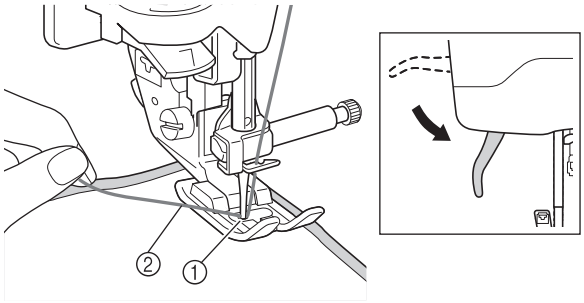
8 **Use the presser foot lever to raise the presser foot.**

9 **With the wrong side facing up, place the fabric under the presser foot.**



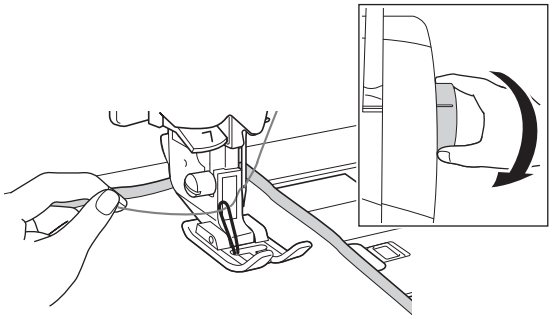
① Wrong side of fabric

10 **Turn the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) to feed the needle into the fabric or punched hole. Position the upper thread over the presser foot and lightly hold then, lower the presser foot lever.**



① Punched hole
② Upper thread over the presser foot

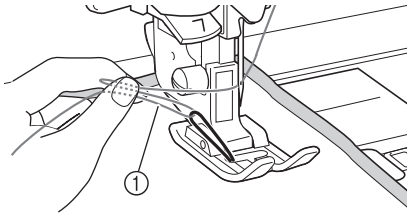
11 **Pulling the upper thread gently, turn the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) until the mark on the handwheel aligns with the center top of machine.**



→ A loop of the bobbin thread comes out through the hole in the fabric.

Note

- If the bobbin thread does not come up, hold the upper thread as shown below to pull up the bobbin thread.



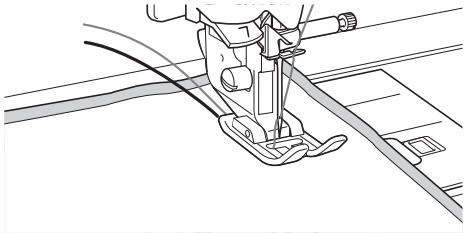
① Upper thread

12 **Raise the presser foot lever, and then use tweezers to pull up the bobbin thread and bring the end of the thread to the top of the fabric.**

Note

- Pull the thread while holding down the fabric so it does not move out of place.

13 **Align the upper thread and bobbin thread, and then pass them under the presser foot toward the rear of the machine.**

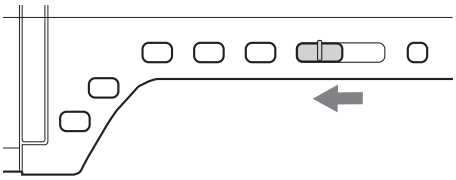


14 **While gently holding threads at the rear of the machine, turn the handwheel to feed the needle into the fabric or punched hole again, and then lower the presser foot lever.**

15 **Press** **at lower right of LCD screen.**

→ All keys and operation buttons are unlocked, and the previous screen is displayed.

16 **Select a low speed, gently hold the threads behind the presser foot and start sewing. Threads can be released after several stitches have been made.**



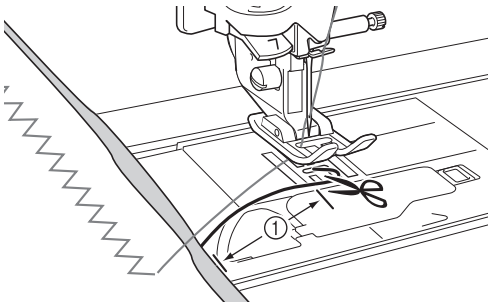
Note
- Before sewing, check that there is enough thread in the bobbin.

17 **When you have reached the end of the stitching area, stop the machine.**

Note
- Do not sew reinforcement/reverse stitches at the end of the stitching, otherwise the threads may become tangled or the needle may break. In addition, it will be difficult to pull the bobbin thread up to the wrong side of the fabric.

18 **Raise the needle and presser foot.**

19 **Leaving about 10 cm (approx. 4 inches) of thread at the ends, use scissors to cut the threads.**

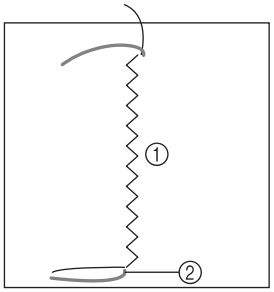


① 10 cm (approx. 4 inches)

Note
- Do not press the “Thread Cutter” button to cut the threads, otherwise the machine may be damaged.

■ Finishing the thread ends

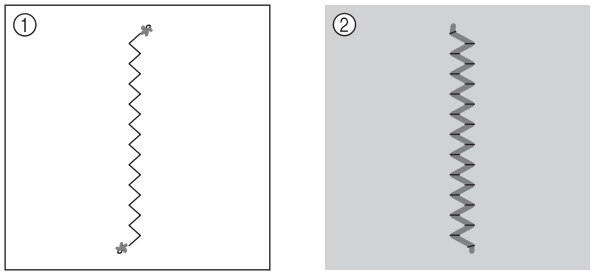
1 **At the end of the stitching, use a hand sewing needle to bring the bobbin thread up to the wrong side of the fabric.**



① Wrong side of fabric
② Bobbin thread

Note
- If it is difficult to place bobbin thread through the eye of a hand sewing needle, use a ribbon embroidery needle to pull the thread up to the wrong side of the fabric. Otherwise, use an awl to pull up the bobbin thread.

2 **Working from the wrong side of the fabric, tie the bobbin and upper threads together by hand. Cut away excess threads with scissors.**



① Wrong side of fabric
② Right side of fabric

Note
- To ensure threads do not come undone after being tied place a drop of fabric glue on knots.

3 **If the desired results could not be achieved, adjust the tension of the bobbin thread and of the upper thread, and then try sewing the stitching again.**

For more details, refer to “ADJUSTING THE THREAD TENSION” on page 322.

Bobbin Work Free Motion Sewing

If so desired, use a template or draw your design on the stabilizer to allow for ease of stitching. Remember, your stitches with your decorative thread will be on the underneath side of your fabric and the stabilizer will be on the top of the wrong side of your fabric.

* For bobbin work free motion sewing use the instructions for “CREATING BOBBIN WORK (SEWING)” on page 314.
* For information about using the free motion quilting foot “C”, free motion open toe quilting foot “O”, or free motion echo quilting foot “E” refer to “Free Motion Quilting” on page 116.

CREATING BOBBIN WORK (EMBROIDERY)

Selecting the Pattern

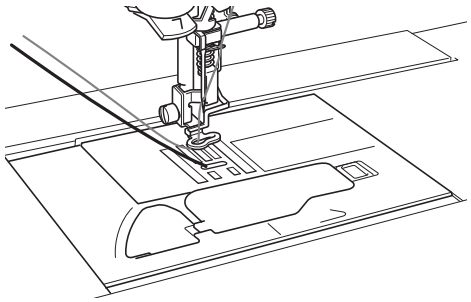
Note
- Prepare the machine for bobbin work as described in “PREPARING FOR BOBBIN WORK” on page 309.

1 **Attach the embroidery foot “W” and the embroidery unit.**

2 **Install a bobbin wound with an adequate amount of thread for pattern.**

Note
- For an estimated length of bobbin thread required for each pattern, refer to the Quick Reference Guide included with the machine. Be sure to use a bobbin wound with enough thread. If the bobbin runs out of thread while sewing, the embroidery cannot be completed.
- Depending on the thread thickness, it may not be possible to wind the bobbin with the necessary length of thread. In this case, try winding the bobbin again, or use a lighter weight thread.

3 **Pull up the bobbin thread above the needle plate.**



4 **Turn on the machine.**

5 **Press** OK **.**

→ The carriage will move to the initialization position.

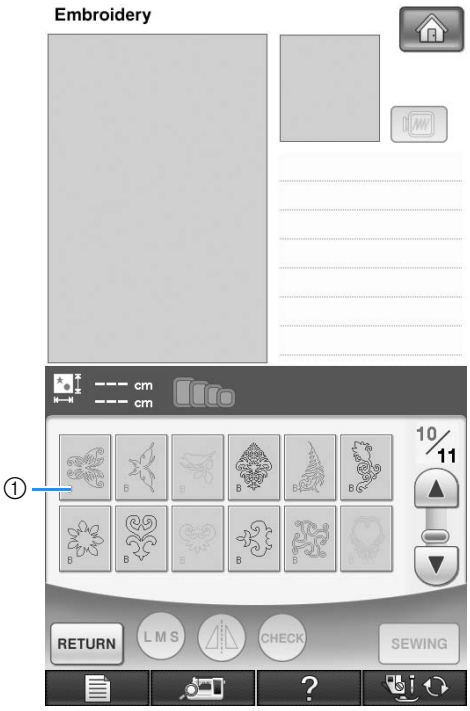
6 **To select a bobbin work embroidery pattern, press** **(Embroidery).**

Note
- Embroidery patterns for bobbin work cannot be used in the embroidery edit screen ( ).

7 **Press** **, then advance to page 10 or 11 (page numbers are for small thumbnail size) of the pattern selection screen for bobbin work patterns.**

8 **Select one of the bobbin work embroidery patterns.**

Embroidery patterns for bobbin work appear with the letter “B” in the lower-left corner of the key.



① “B” mark

→ Regardless of the setting that had been selected, the automatic thread cutting function is turned off.

→ When a bobbin work embroidery pattern is selected the embroidery sewing speed is automatically set at 350 spm.

Note
- The beginning and end of stitching are specified for bobbin work patterns. They cannot be used for normal embroidering.

⚠ CAUTION

- **When sewing bobbin work, be sure to select an embroidery pattern for bobbin work. If any other type of pattern is selected, the machine may be damaged.**

Note

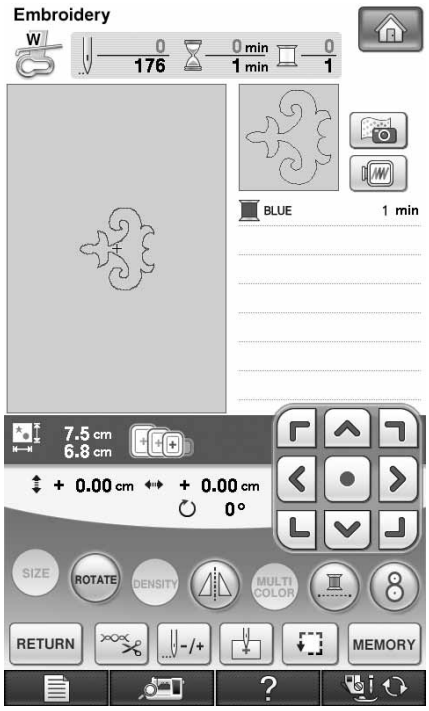
- Embroidery sewing speed defaults to 350 spm when a bobbin work embroidery pattern is selected. The Settings screen will not allow speed to be adjusted.

Memo

- When an embroidery pattern for bobbin work is selected, the automatic thread cutting function is turned off. Afterward, if a pattern other than one for bobbin work is selected, the automatic thread cutting function is returned to the setting that was selected before the embroidery pattern for bobbin work was chosen.

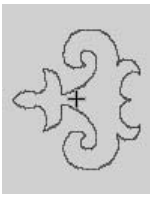
9 **Press** SEWING **.**

→ The sewing screen is displayed.

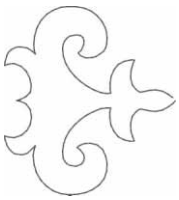


Note

- Since bobbin work is sewn from the wrong side of the fabric, the pattern shown in the screen appears as a mirror image of the final sewn embroidery. If necessary, flip the image to preview it. In addition, when sewing with the thread colors shown in the sewing screen, select a bobbin thread that matches what is shown in the screen.



① Image shown in screen



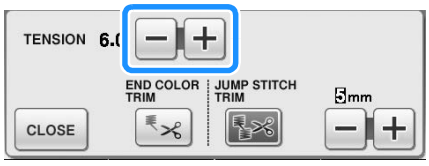
② Sewn embroidery (Right side of fabric)

Memo

- With embroidery patterns for bobbin work, the size and thread density cannot be changed. In addition, the automatic thread cutting function cannot be turned on.

10 **Press** ✂ **, and then adjust the tension of the upper thread.**

For details on adjusting the tension of the upper thread, refer to "Adjusting Thread Tension" on page 233.

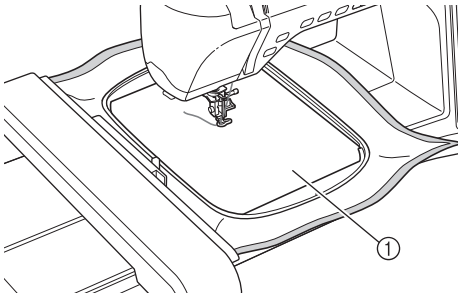


Memo

- We recommend a setting between 6 and 8 for the upper thread tension.

Start Embroidering

1 **Hoop the fabric so the right side of the fabric is facing down with the stabilizer lying on the top. Use an embroidery frame that fits the size of the pattern and then attach the frame to the machine. These patterns are embroidered from the wrong side of the fabric so technically you are working in "reverse" of normal embroidering.**

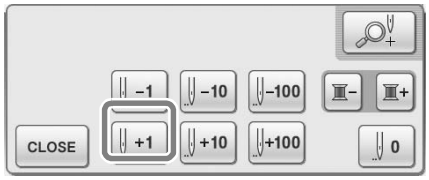


① Wrong side of fabric

⚠ CAUTION

- **Always use a stabilizer material for embroidery. Otherwise, the needle may break and cause injuries. Not using a stabilizer material may result in a poor finish to your project.**

2 **It is necessary to move to the beginning of stitching so press [-/+], and then press [+1].**



→ The embroidery frame moves to the beginning of stitching.

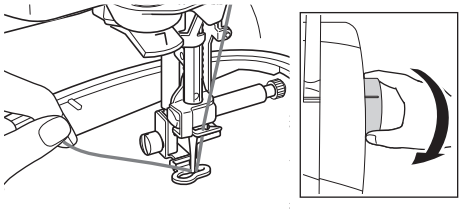
3 **Press [CLOSE].**

4 **Press [ ].**

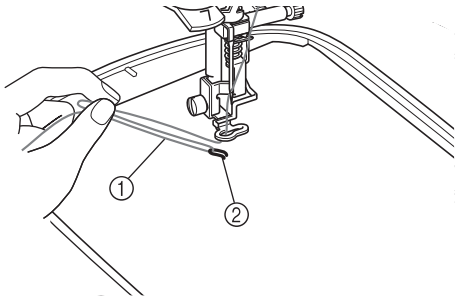
→ The screen changes, and all keys and operation buttons are locked.

5 **Using the presser foot lever, raise the presser foot.**

6 **To bring the bobbin thread above the fabric, rotate the handwheel counterclockwise while holding the upper thread.**



7 **As shown below, pull the upper thread to pull the bobbin thread up through the fabric.**



① Upper thread
② Bobbin thread

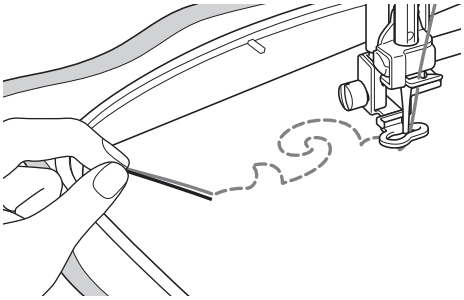
Memo

- If the bobbin thread cannot be pulled up, use an awl to create small hole to help pull bobbin thread to surface.

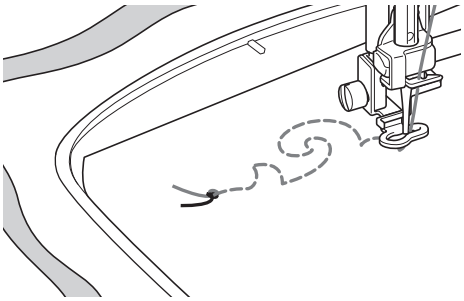
8 **Press to unlock all keys and buttons.**

9 **Lower the presser foot.**

10 **While holding both the upper thread and the bobbin thread, sew a section of the pattern.**



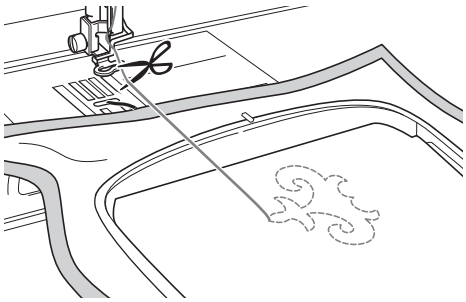
11 **Stop the machine, and then tie the upper thread and the bobbin thread together to secure the threads.**



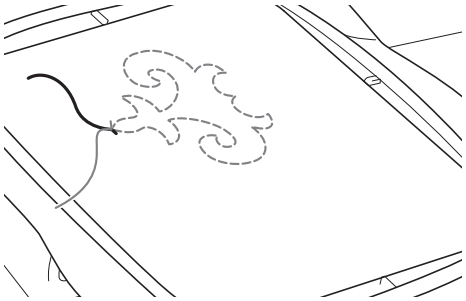
12 **Start sewing again to finish the pattern.**

13 **Raise the needle and presser foot, remove the embroidery frame, and then cut the upper thread and the bobbin thread.**

When cutting the threads, be sure to leave an adequate length of thread so they can be properly secured.



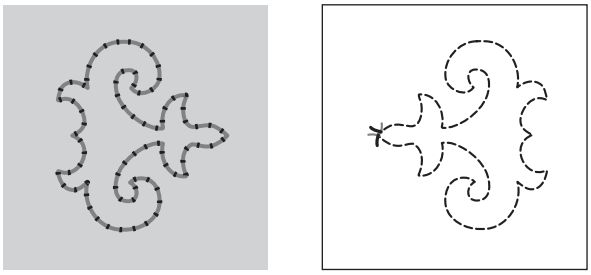
14 **Using a hand sewing needle such as a ribbon embroidering needle, pull the bobbin thread to the top (wrong side) of the fabric, and then tie the upper thread and the bobbin thread together.**



Memo

- If there is a gap between the start point and end point of the pattern, cut the threads, remove the fabric from the machine, and then use a ribbon embroidering needle to hand sew stitches to connect the starting and ending points.

15 **Remove the fabric from the embroidery frame, and check the finished embroidery.**



① Right side of fabric ② Wrong side of fabric

16 **If the desired results could not be achieved, adjust the tension of the bobbin thread and of the upper thread, and then try sewing the pattern again.**

For more details, refer to “ADJUSTING THE THREAD TENSION” on page 322.

Memo

- Check bobbin after each bobbin work embroidery pattern is sewn to make sure there is adequate bobbin thread for the next pattern.

ADJUSTING THE THREAD TENSION

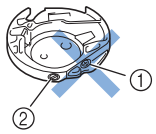
After sewing trial stitches and checking the sewing results, adjust the thread tensions if necessary. After adjusting the tensions, be sure to sew trial stitches again in order to check the sewing results.

■ Adjusting the upper thread tension

We recommend a setting between 6 and 8 for the upper thread tension.
If utility stitches are being used, refer to “Setting the Thread Tension” on page 79. If embroidery patterns are being used, refer to “Adjusting Thread Tension” on page 233.

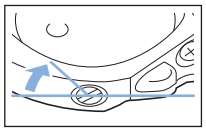
■ Adjusting the tension of the bobbin thread

If the desired stitching cannot be achieved after adjusting the upper thread tension, adjust the tension of the bobbin thread. The tension of the bobbin thread can be adjusted by turning the slotted-head (–) screw on the bobbin case (gray) for bobbin work.

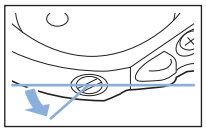


① Do not turn the phillips screw (+).
② Adjust with a small screwdriver.

To increase the tension of the bobbin thread, turn the slotted-head (–) screw 30° to 45° clockwise.

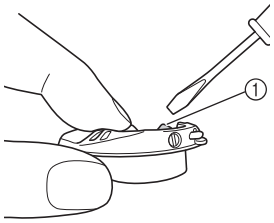


To decrease the tension of the bobbin thread, turn the slotted-head (–) screw 30° to 45° counterclockwise.



Note

- Turning the screw on the bobbin case (gray) may push up the spring plate, as shown below.
  If this occurs, gently press down the spring plate with a screwdriver so it is lower than the top surface of the bobbin case (gray), and then insert the bobbin case into the machine.



① Spring plate

⚠ CAUTION

- **DO NOT adjust the position of the phillips (+) screw on the bobbin case (gray) as this may result in damage to the bobbin case, rendering it useless.**
- **If the slotted screw (-) is difficult to turn, do not use force. Turning the screw too much or providing force in either (rotational) direction may cause damage to the bobbin case. Should damage occur, the bobbin case may not maintain proper tension.**

Note

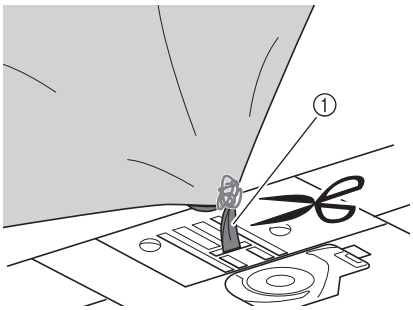
- If the bobbin thread tension is tight, the thread cannot be passed through the tension spring when the bobbin is installed in the bobbin case. (Refer to “When tension is not applied to the bobbin thread” on page 312.)

TROUBLESHOOTING

Several solutions for minor problems are described below. If the problem persists, contact your nearest authorized Brother dealer.

■ The thread was accidentally cut automatically and the bobbin thread is caught inside the machine

1 **Cut the thread near the fabric above the needle plate, and then remove the fabric.**

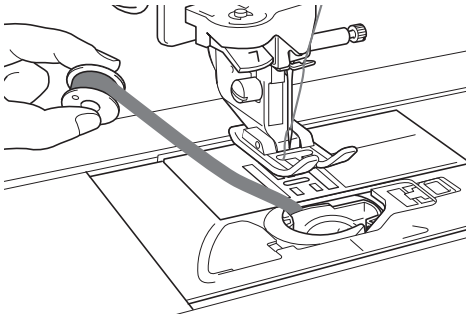


① Thread

Note

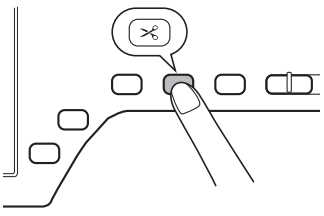
- If an embroidery pattern was sewn, remove the embroidery frame.

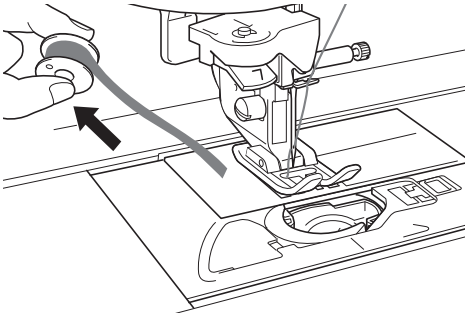
2 **Remove the bobbin, and then hold it out toward the left side of the machine.**



3 **Lower the presser foot.**

4 **Apply slight tension on bobbin thread by holding thread out to the left side of presser foot. Press the "Thread Cutter" button again.**





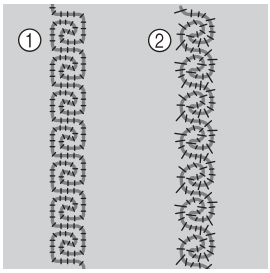
CAUTION

- **Do not pull on the thread with excessive force, otherwise the machine may be damaged.**

■ The pattern is misaligned

Refer to "ADJUSTING THE THREAD TENSION" and increase the upper thread tension. If the pattern is still misaligned, reduce the tension of the bobbin thread.

Example: Decorative Stitch



① Correct tension

② The upper thread tension is too loose, or the bobbin thread tension is too tight.

■ The bobbin thread catches on the tension spring of the bobbin case

Sew with no tension applied to the bobbin thread. (Refer to "When tension is not applied to the bobbin thread" on page 312.)

Chapter 8

MY CUSTOM STITCH

DESIGNING A STITCH 326

ENTERING STITCH DATA 328

■ Key Functions 328
■ Moving a Point 331
■ Moving Part or All of the Design 331
■ Inserting New Points 332

USING STORED CUSTOM STITCHES 334

Storing Custom Stitches in Your List 334
■ If the Memory is Full 334
Retrieving Stored Stitches 335

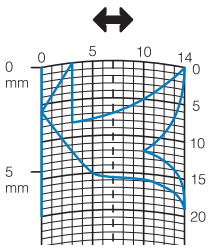
DESIGNING A STITCH

By using the MY CUSTOM STITCH function, you can register stitches you have created yourself. You can also sew designs combining MY CUSTOM STITCH creations with built-in characters (see page 170).

Memo

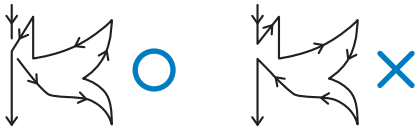
- Stitches that you create with MY CUSTOM STITCH can be a maximum of 7 mm (approx. 9/32 inch) wide and 37 mm (approx. 1-1/3 inches) long.
- Stitches can be designed more easily with MY CUSTOM STITCH if you first draw the stitch on the included grid sheet.

1 Draw the stitch design on the grid sheet (part code SA507, GS3:X81277-151).



Memo

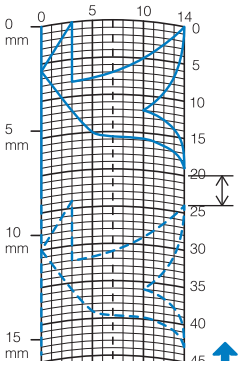
- Simplify the design so that it can be sewn as a continuous line. For a more attractive stitch, close the design by intersecting lines.

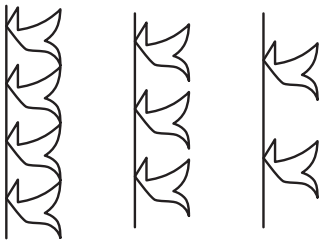


If the design is to be repeated and linked, the start point and end point of the design should be at the same height.

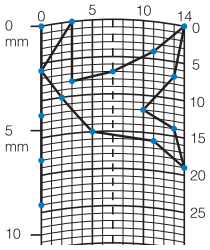
2 Decide the spacing of the stitch.

* By adjusting the spacing of a stitch, you can create various patterns with one stitch.

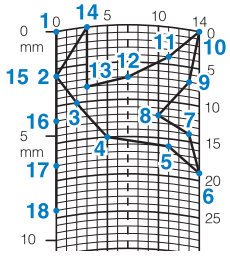




3 Place points where the pattern intersects with the grid, and connect all the points with a line.



4 Determine the x and y coordinates of each of the marked points.



Memo

- This will determine the stitch design that will be sewn.

Examples of Custom Stitches

Stitch	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
↕	0	12	18	22	23	21	17	14	12	9	6	3	1	3	6
↔	0	0	3	6	10	13	14	13	11	13	14	13	10	6	3
Stitch	**16**	**17**	**18**	**19**	**20**	**21**	**22**	**23**	**24**	**25**	**26**	**27**	**28**	**29**	**30**
↕	12	41	43	40	41	38	35	32	30	32	35	41	45	47	44
↔	0	0	4	7	11	13	14	13	10	6	3	0	0	4	7
Stitch	**31**	**32**	**33**	**34**	**35**	**36**	**37**	**38**	**39**	**40**	**41**	**42**	**43**	**44**	**45**
↕	45	47	50	54	56	55	51	45	70						
↔	11	13	14	13	10	6	3	0	0						

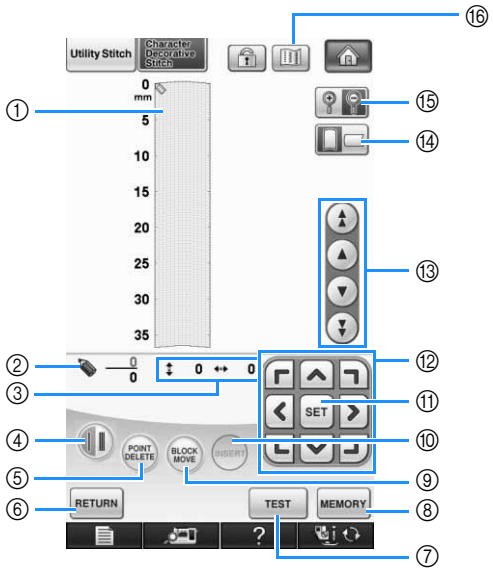
Stitch	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
↕	0	30	32	32	32	33	35	35	37	35	32	30	30	29	26
↔	0	0	1	7	10	12	11	8	12	14	14	11	5	3	8
Stitch	**16**	**17**	**18**	**19**	**20**	**21**	**22**	**23**	**24**	**25**	**26**	**27**	**28**	**29**	**30**
↕	24	18	13	12	13	10	12	8	12	7	12	6	10	5	10
↔	10	13	14	14	12	11	10	9	8	6	6	3	2	0	2
Stitch	**31**	**32**	**33**	**34**	**35**	**36**	**37**	**38**	**39**	**40**	**41**	**42**	**43**	**44**	**45**
↕	16	19	23	22	17	22	23	19	42						
↔	1	0	0	6	10	6	0	0	0						

Stitch	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
↕	0	3	5	8	12	17	20	24	27	29	31	32	30	27	24
↔	0	5	8	11	13	14	14	13	12	11	9	6	3	1	0
Stitch	**16**	**17**	**18**	**19**	**20**	**21**	**22**	**23**	**24**	**25**	**26**	**27**	**28**	**29**	**30**
↕	21	18	16	15	15	16	18	21	25	28	33	37	41	43	44
↔	0	1	3	5	8	10	12	13	14	14	13	11	8	5	0
Stitch	**31**	**32**	**33**	**34**	**35**	**36**	**37**	**38**	**39**	**40**	**41**	**42**	**43**	**44**	**45**
↕															
↔															

Stitch	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
↕	0	5	4	5	8	7	8	11	11	11	16	11	7	4	0
↔	7	7	3	7	7	0	7	7	3	7	7	3	0	3	7
Stitch	**16**	**17**	**18**	**19**	**20**	**21**	**22**	**23**	**24**	**25**	**26**	**27**	**28**	**29**	**30**
↕	4	7	11	16	21	20	21	24	23	24	27	27	27	32	27
↔	11	14	11	7	7	11	7	7	14	7	7	11	7	7	11
Stitch	**31**	**32**	**33**	**34**	**35**	**36**	**37**	**38**	**39**	**40**	**41**	**42**	**43**	**44**	**45**
↕	23	20	16	20	23	27	32								
↔	14	11	7	3	0	3	7								

ENTERING STITCH DATA

■ Key Functions

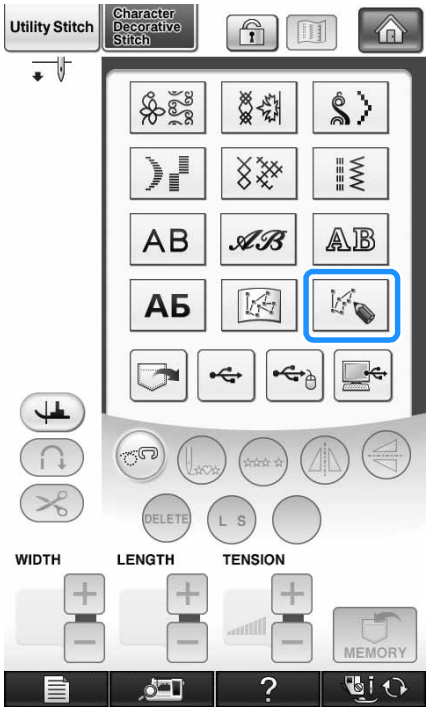


① This area displays the stitch being created.
② Displays the number of the present set point over the total number of points in the stitch.
③ Displays the y-coordinate of over the x-coordinate of .

No.	Display	Key Name	Explanation	Page
④		Single/triple stitching key	Press this key to select whether one or three stitches will be sewn between two points.	330
⑤	POINT DELETE	Point delete key	Press this key to delete a selected point.	330
⑥	RETURN	Return key	Press this key to exit the entering stitch data screen.	—
⑦	TEST	Test key	Press this key to sew a test of the stitch.	330, 334
⑧	MEMORY	MY CUSTOM STITCH memory key	Press this key to store the stitch being created.	334
⑨	BLOCK MOVE	Block move key	Press this key to group points together and move them together.	331
⑩	INSERT	Insert key	Press this key to insert new points on the stitch design.	332
⑪	SET	Set key	Press this key to set a point on the stitch design.	329-331
⑫		Arrow keys	Use these keys to move over the display area.	329-333
⑬		Point-to-point key	Use these keys to move from point to point on the stitch, or to the first or last point entered on the stitch.	331-332
⑭		Grid direction key	Press this key to change the direction of the grid sheet.	329
⑮		Enlarger key	Press this key to see an enlarged version of the stitch being created.	329
⑯		Image key	Press this key to view an image of the stitch.	330

1 **Press** **and then** Character Decorative Stitch **.**

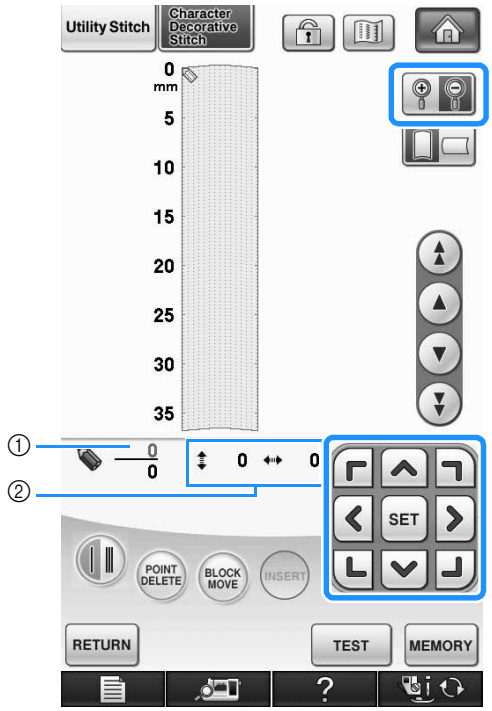
2 **Press** **.**



3 **Use** **to move** **to the coordinates of the first point on the grid sheet.**

* Press to change the direction of the grid sheet.

* Press to enlarge the image of the stitch being created.

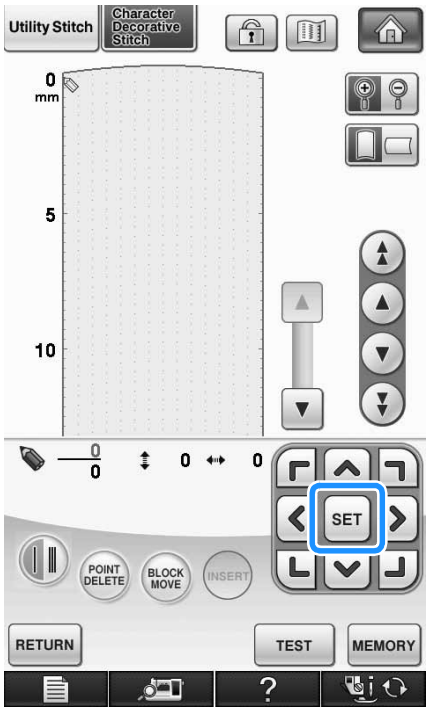


① Currently selected point/Total number of points

② Coordinates of

4 **Press** SET **to add the point indicated by** **.**

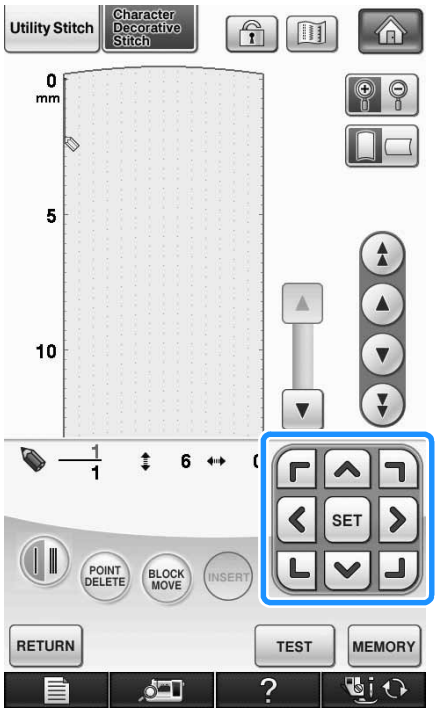
* To insert coordinates with the touch pen, move the tip of the pen to a desired point. Once you release the pen from the screen a point will be entered into the graph at those coordinates. The number of the currently selected points along with the total number of points will be displayed.



5 **Select whether one stitch or three stitches will be sewn between the first two points.**

* To sew three stitches, press the key so that it appears as .

6 **Use to move to the second point and press SET .**



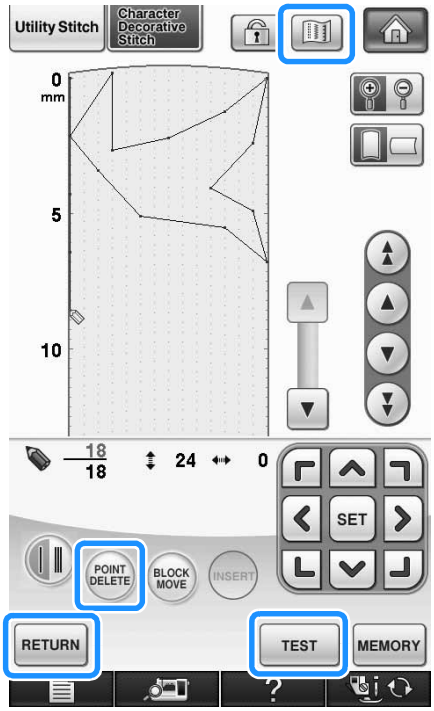
7 **Repeat the steps above for each point that you have drawn on the grid sheet until the stitch design is drawn on the screen as a continuous line.**

* Press POINT DELETE to delete a selected point entered.

* Press TEST to sew a test-run of the stitch.

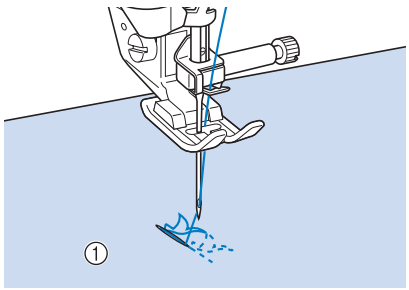
* Press RETURN to return to the original screen.

* Press to view an image of the stitch.



Memo

- If you have entered points that are too close together, the fabric may not feed properly. Edit the stitch data to leave a larger space between points.
- If the stitch design is to be repeated and linked, make sure that linking stitches are added so that the stitch designs will not overlap.



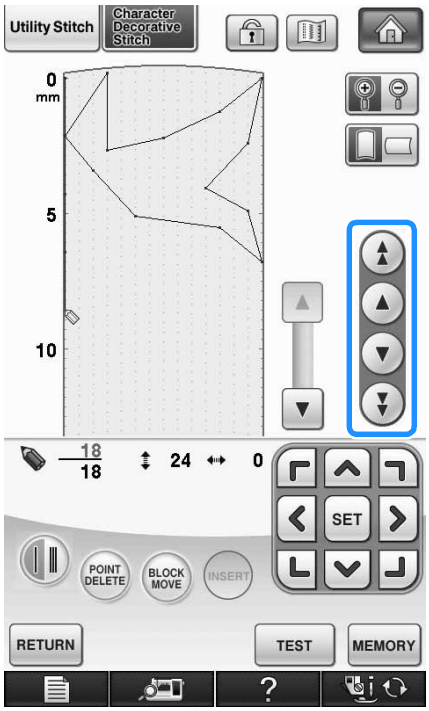
① Linking stitches

- You can touch on the grid sheet to set the point, or you can also use a USB mouse.

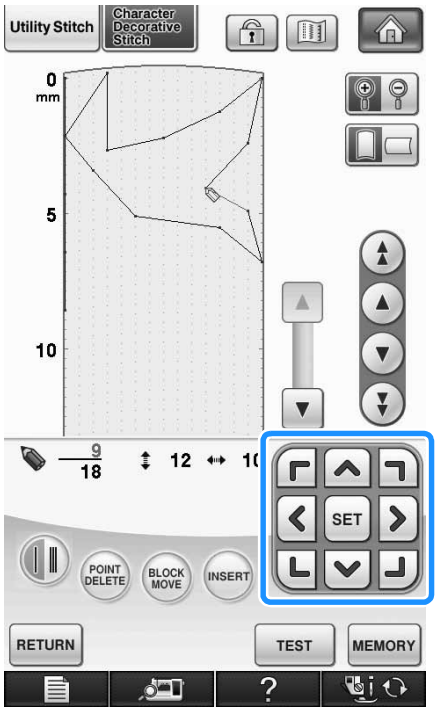
■ Moving a Point

1 **Press ▲ or ▼ to move to the point that you want to move.**

* To move to the first point, press ▲▲.
* To move to the last point, press ▼▼.
* You can also move by using the touch pen.



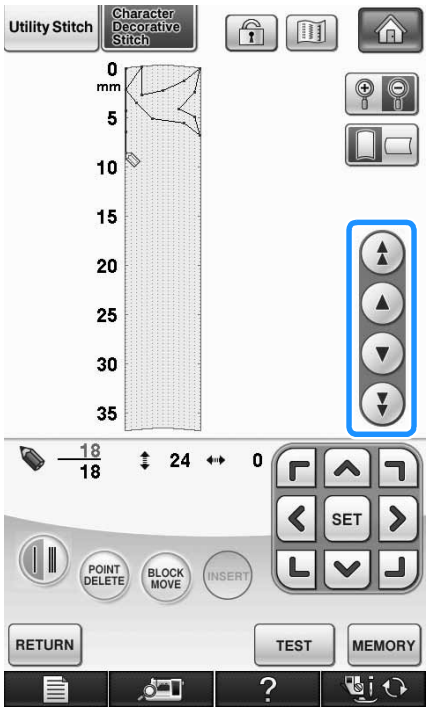
2 **Use ◄►▲▼ to move the point.**



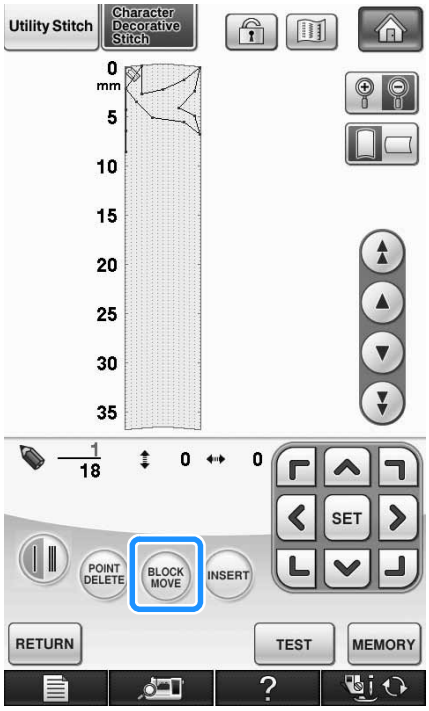
■ Moving Part or All of the Design

1 **Press ▲ or ▼ to move to the first point of the section that you want to move.**

* To move to the first point, press ▲▲.
* To move to the last point, press ▼▼.
* You can also move by using the touch pen.

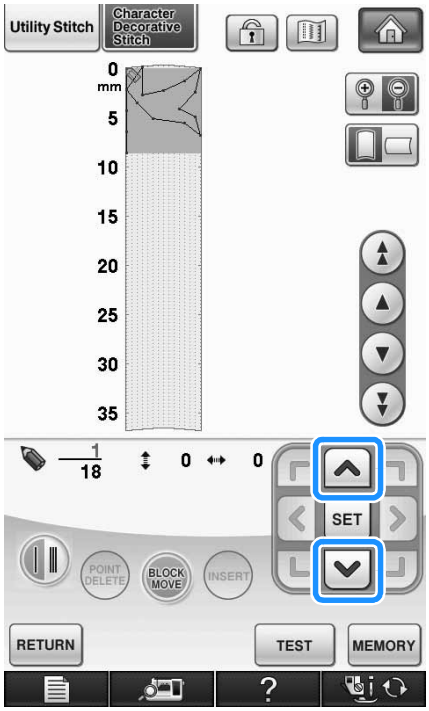


2 **Press BLOCK MOVE.**

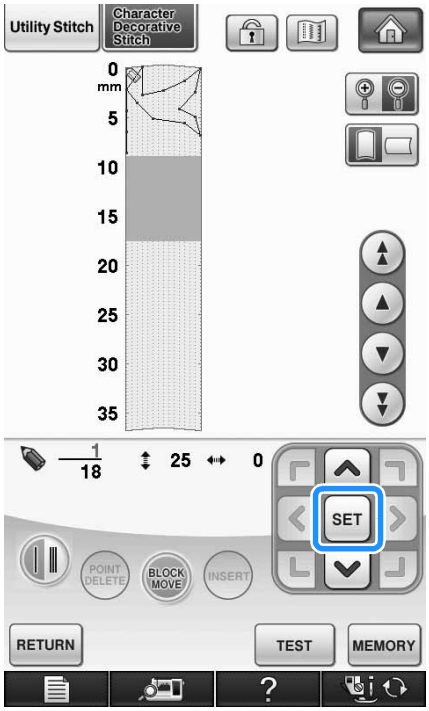


→ The selected point and all points that were entered after it are selected.

3 **Press ▲ or ▼ to move the section.**



4 **Press SET.**



→ The section will be moved.

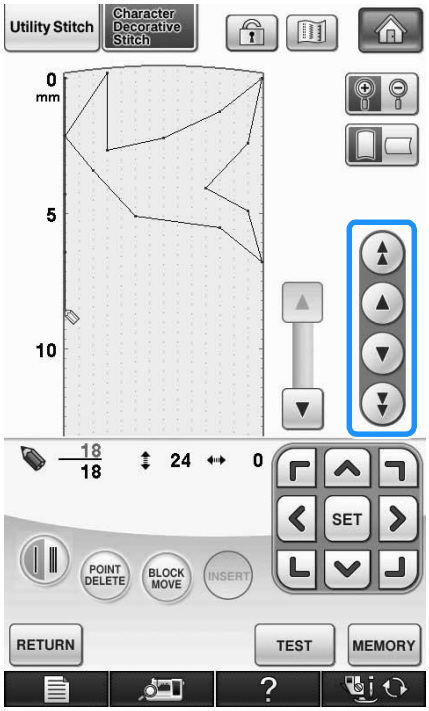
■ Inserting New Points

1 **Press ▲ or ▼ to move to a place on the design where you want to add a new point.**

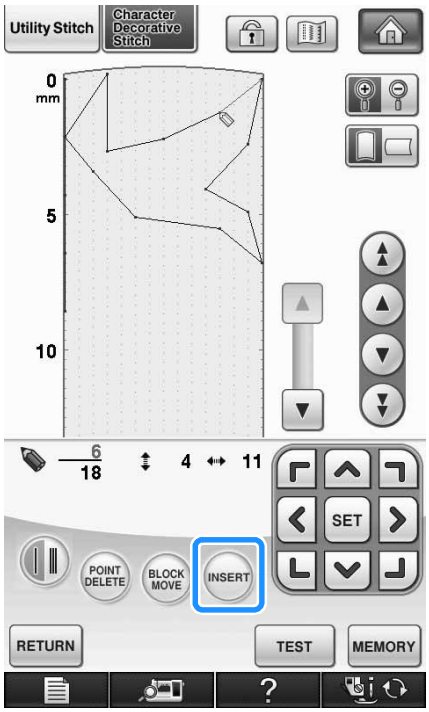
* To move to the first point, press ⏫.

* To move to the last point, press ⏬.

* You can also move by using the touch pen.

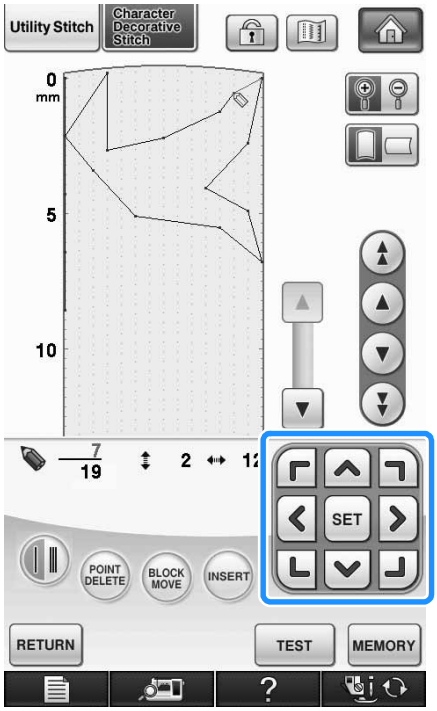


2 **Press INSERT.**



→ A new point is entered and moves to it.

3 Use to move the point.

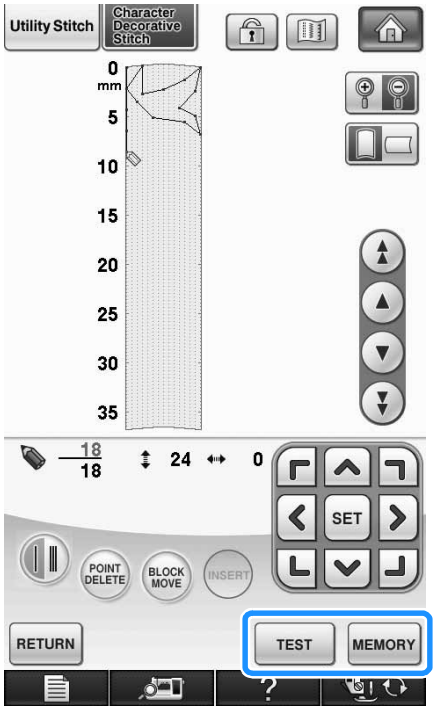


USING STORED CUSTOM STITCHES

Storing Custom Stitches in Your List

Stitch patterns created using the MY CUSTOM STITCH function can be stored for later use. Once you finish entering the stitch data, press MEMORY. The "Saving" message appears and the stitch will be stored.

Before storing a stitch, press TEST to sew a test-run of the stitch.



Memo

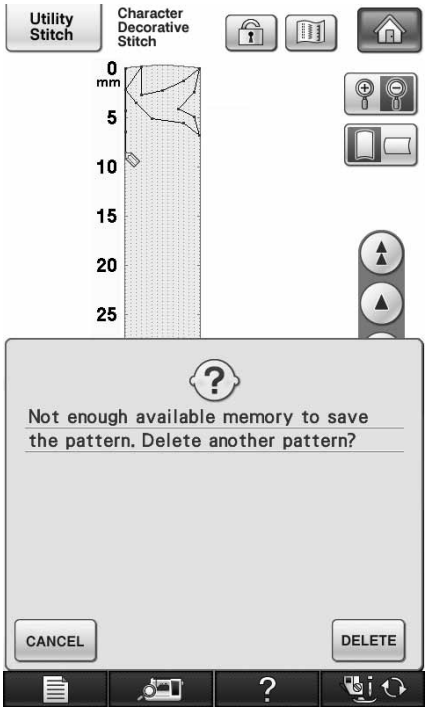
- Storing a stitch pattern takes a few seconds.
- For details on retrieving a stored stitch pattern, see page 335.

Note

- Do not turn off the machine while the "Saving" message is displayed, otherwise the stitch pattern data being saved may be lost.

■ If the Memory is Full

If the following message appears after MEMORY is pressed, the stitch pattern cannot be stored because either the machine's memory is full or the stitch pattern being stored is larger than the amount of space available in the memory. To be able to store the stitch pattern in the machine's memory, a previously stored stitch pattern must be deleted.

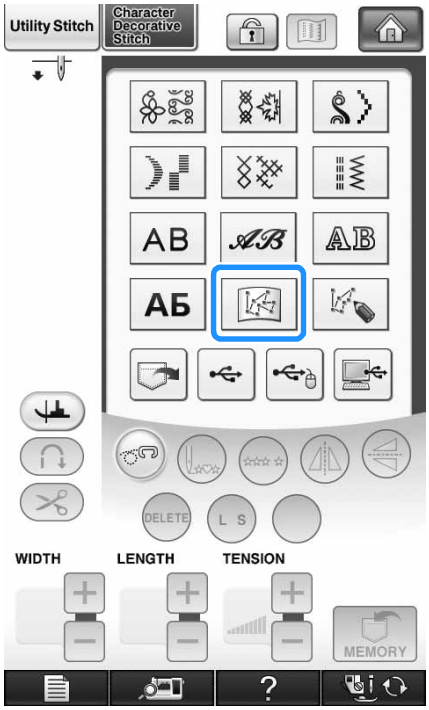


Note

- To save custom stitches to USB media or in the computer, follow the previously described procedure to store the custom stitch, and then press to select the stitch (see the following "Retrieving Stored Stitches" section). Press MEMORY to save the stitch to USB media or in the computer. (For details, "Saving Stitch Patterns to USB Media" on page 178 or "Saving Stitch Patterns in the Computer" on page 179.)

Retrieving Stored Stitches

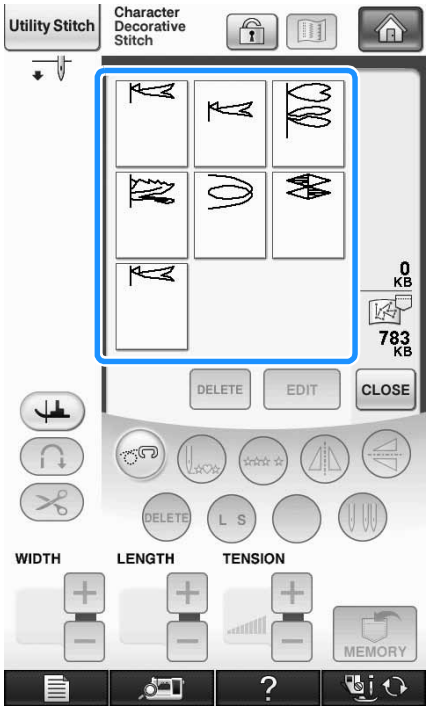
1 **Press** [ ].



→ A list of stored stitch patterns is displayed.

2 **Select the stitch pattern.**

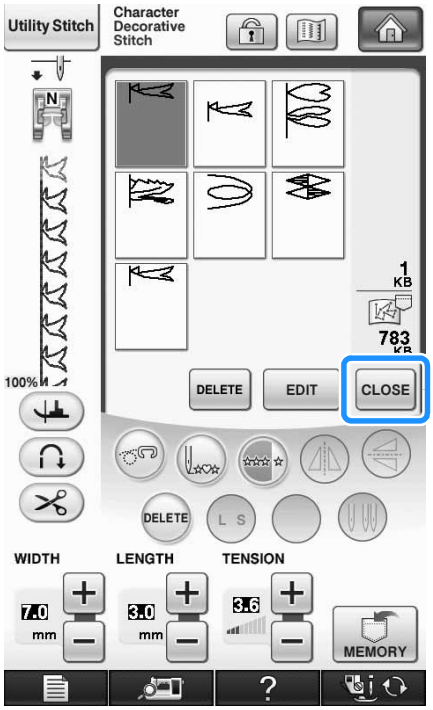
* Press [CLOSE] to return to the previous screen without retrieving.



3 **Press** [CLOSE].

* To delete the stored stitch pattern, press [DELETE].

* To edit the stored stitch pattern, press [EDIT].



Chapter 9

Appendix

CARE AND MAINTENANCE 338

Restrictions on oiling 338
Precautions on storing the machine 338
Cleaning the LCD Screen 338
Cleaning the Machine Casing 338
Cleaning the Race 338
Cleaning the Cutter in the Bobbin Case Area 340
About the Maintenance Message 341

ADJUSTING THE SCREEN 342

Adjusting the Brightness of the Screen Display 342
Touch Panel is Malfunctioning 342

TROUBLESHOOTING 343

ERROR MESSAGES 348

■ Alarm Sounds 355

SPECIFICATIONS 356

UPGRADING YOUR MACHINE'S SOFTWARE 357

Upgrade Procedure Using USB Media 357
Upgrade Procedure Using Computer 358

STITCH SETTING CHART 359

INDEX 368

CARE AND MAINTENANCE

⚠ CAUTION

- **Be sure to unplug the machine before cleaning it. Otherwise, electric shock or injury may result.**

Restrictions on oiling

In order to prevent damaging this machine, it must not be oiled by the user. This machine was manufactured with the necessary amount of oil applied to ensure correct operation, making periodic oiling unnecessary.

If problems occur, such as difficulty turning the handwheel or an unusual noise, immediately stop using the machine, and contact your authorized dealer or the nearest authorized service center.

Precautions on storing the machine

Do not store the machine in any of the locations described below, otherwise damage to the machine may result, for example, rust caused by condensation.

* Exposed to extremely high temperatures
* Exposed to extremely low temperatures
* Exposed to extreme temperature changes
* Exposed to high humidity or steam
* Near a flame, heater or air conditioner
* Outdoors or exposed to direct sunlight
* Exposed to extremely dusty or oily environments

Note

- In order to extend the life of this machine, periodically turn it on and use it. Storing this machine for an extended period of time without using it may reduce its efficiency.

Cleaning the LCD Screen

If the screen is dirty, gently wipe it with the included LCD cleaning cloth or a soft, dry cloth. Do not use organic solvents or detergents.

Note

- Do not wipe the LCD screen with a damp cloth.

Memo

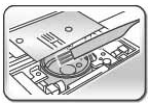
- Occasionally, condensation may form on the LCD screen or it may become fogged up; however, this is not a malfunction. After a while, the cloudiness will disappear.

Cleaning the Machine Casing

If the surface of the machine is dirty, lightly soak a cloth in a neutral detergent, squeeze it out firmly, and then wipe the surface. Then wipe again with a dry cloth.

Cleaning the Race

If dust or bits of dirt collect in the race or bobbin case, the machine will not run well, and the bobbin thread detection function may not operate. Keep the machine clean for best results.

Press [?] → [Operation Guide] → [Maintenance] →  → [📹] in this order to display a video example of cleaning the race (see page 46). Follow the steps explained below to complete the operation.

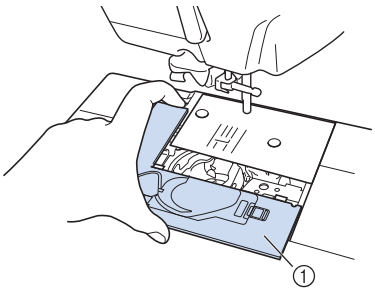
1 **Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle.**

2 **Turn the main power to OFF.**

3 **Remove the needle and the presser foot holder (see pages 66 through 67).**

4 **Remove the flat bed attachment or the embroidery unit if either is attached.**

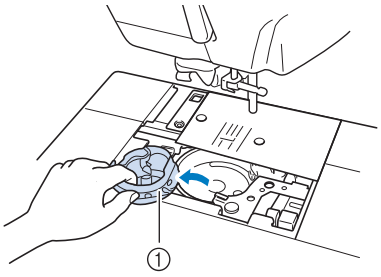
5 **Grasp both sides of the needle plate cover, and then slide it toward you.**



① Needle plate cover

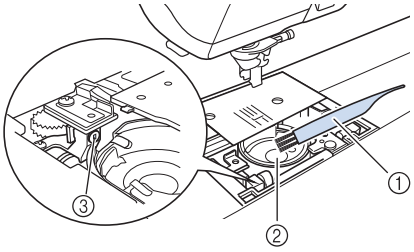
→ The needle plate cover is removed.

6 **Grasp the bobbin case, and then pull it out.**



① Bobbin case

7 **Use the cleaning brush or a vacuum cleaner to remove any lint and dust from the race and bobbin thread sensor and the surrounding area.**

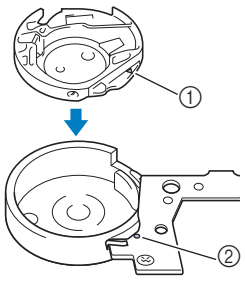


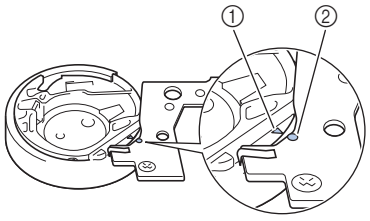
① Cleaning brush
② Race
③ Bobbin thread sensor

Note

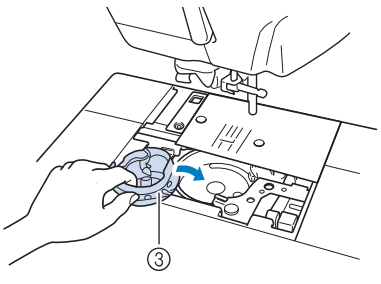
- Do not apply oil to the bobbin case.
- If lint or dust collects on the bobbin thread sensor, the sensor may not operate correctly.

8 **Insert the bobbin case so that the ▲ mark on the bobbin case aligns with the ● mark on the machine.**





* Align the ▲ and ● marks.



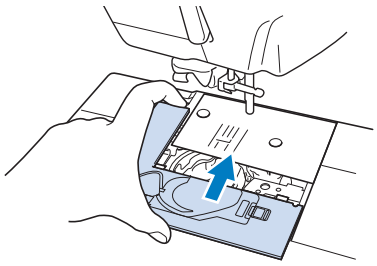
① ▲ mark
② ● mark
③ Bobbin case

* Make sure that the indicated points are aligned before installing the bobbin case.

⚠ CAUTION

- Never use a bobbin case that is scratched; otherwise, the upper thread may become tangled, the needle may break, or sewing performance may suffer. For a new bobbin case (part code: XE5342-101 (green marking on the screw), XC8167-551 (no color on the screw), XE8298-001 (gray, for bobbin work)), contact your nearest authorized dealer.
- Make sure that you fit the bobbin case properly, otherwise the needle may break.

9 Insert the tabs on the needle plate cover into the needle plate, and then slide the cover back on.



Note

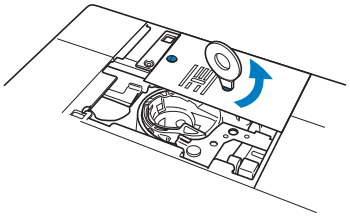
- If the needle plate has been removed it is especially important to reinstall the needle plate and tighten the screws prior to installing the bobbin case.

Cleaning the Cutter in the Bobbin Case Area

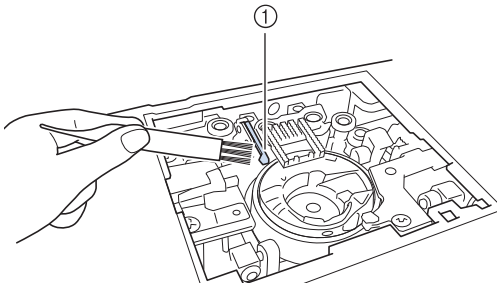
The cutter below the needle plate should be cleaned. If dust or lint accumulate on the cutter, it will be difficult to cut the thread when the "Thread Cutter" button is pressed or the automatic thread cutting function is used. Clean the cutter when the thread is not easily cut.

1 Follow steps 1 through 5 in "Cleaning the Race" to remove the needle plate cover.

2 Use the screwdriver included with the machine to unscrew and remove the needle plate.



3 Use the cleaning brush or a vacuum cleaner to remove any lint and dust from the cutter in the bobbin case area.

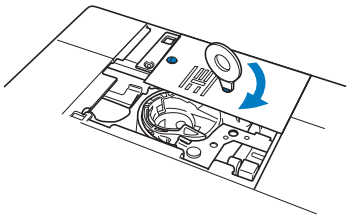


① Cutter

⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not touch the cutter, otherwise injuries may result.**

4 **Use the screwdriver included with the machine to screw and attach the needle plate.**



5 **Insert the tabs on the needle plate cover into the needle plate, and then slide the cover back on.**

About the Maintenance Message

Once this message appears, it is recommended to take your machine to an authorized dealer or nearest authorized service center for a regular maintenance check. Although this message will disappear and the machine will continue to function once you press OK, the message will display several more times until the appropriate maintenance is performed.
Please take the time to arrange the maintenance your machine requires once this message appears. Such steps will help to ensure you receive continued, uninterrupted hours of machine operation for the future.

ADJUSTING THE SCREEN

Adjusting the Brightness of the Screen Display

If the screen is not looks very clear under certain situation, you can adjust the brightness of the screen display.

1. **Press** **.**

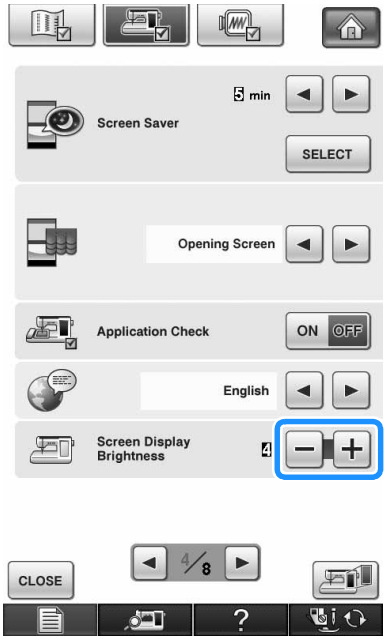
   → The Sewing settings screen appears.

2. **Press** **.**

   → The General settings screen appears.

3. **Display 4/8 (page 4 of 8) of the General settings screen.**

4. **Press** **or** **to adjust the brightness of the screen display.**

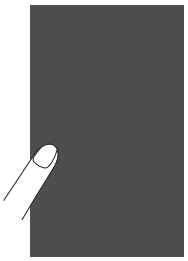


* The screen appears dim as the number on the settings screen decreases. The screen appears brighter as the number increases.

Touch Panel is Malfunctioning

If the screen does not respond correctly when you touch a key (the machine does not perform the operation or performs a different operation), follow the steps below to make the proper adjustments.

1. **Holding your finger on the screen, turn the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.**

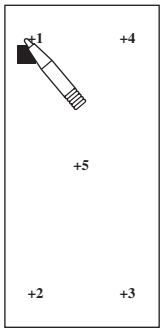


→ The touch panel adjustment screen is displayed.

2. **Using the included touch pen, lightly touch the center of each +, in order from 1 to 5.**

Note

- Only use the included touch pen to touch the screen. Do not use a mechanical pencil, pin, or other sharp object. Do not press too hard on the screen. Otherwise, damage may result.



3. **Turn the main power to OFF, then turn it back to ON.**

Note

- If you finish the screen adjustment and the screen still does not respond, or if you cannot do the adjustment, contact your authorized dealer.

TROUBLESHOOTING

If you have a minor problem with your sewing machine, check the following solutions. If the solutions suggested do not correct the problem, contact your authorized dealer. Press ? → Operation Guide → Troubleshooting for advice about minor sewing problems during sewing. Press CLOSE at any time to return to the original screen.
If you need additional help, the Brother Solutions Center offers the latest FAQs and troubleshooting tips. Visit us at " http://solutions.brother.com ".
If the problem persists, contact your dealer or the nearest authorized service center.

Problem	Cause	Solution	Page
The thread is tangled on the wrong side of the fabric.	Upper threading is incorrect.	Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread the machine.	57
	Using improper needle or thread for the selected fabric.	Check the "Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations" chart.	69
The upper thread is too tight.	The bobbin thread is incorrectly installed.	Correctly install the bobbin thread.	54
Cannot thread the needle	Needle is not in the correct position.	Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle.	15
	Needle is installed incorrectly.	Reinstall the needle correctly.	67
	Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull.	Replace the needle.	67
Cannot lower the presser foot with the presser foot lever	Presser foot was raised using the "Presser Foot Lifter" button.	Press the "Presser Foot Lifter" button to lower the presser foot.	15
Thread tension is incorrect	Upper threading is incorrect.	Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread the machine.	57
	Bobbin is set incorrectly.	Reset the bobbin. (If needle plate was removed, reinstall needle plate and tighten screws prior to installing bobbin case.)	54
	Using improper needle or thread for the selected fabric.	Check the "Fabric/Thread/Needle Combination" chart.	69
	Presser foot holder is not attached correctly.	Reattach the presser foot holder correctly.	66
	Thread tension is set incorrectly.	Adjust the thread tension.	79, 233
	Bobbin thread is incorrectly wound.	Use a correctly wound bobbin.	48
	Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull.	Replace the needle.	67
Upper thread breaks	Machine is not threaded correctly (used the wrong spool cap, spool cap is loose, the thread did not catch the needle bar threader, etc.)	Rethread the machine correctly.	57
	Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull.	Replace the needle.	67
	There are scratches on the race.	Replace the race, or consult your authorized dealer.	338
	Upper thread tension is too strong.	Adjust the thread tension.	79, 233
	Using improper needle or thread for the selected fabric.	Check the "Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations" chart.	69
	Thread is twisted.	Use scissors, etc., to cut the twisted thread and remove it from the race, etc.	—
	There are scratches near the hole of the needle plate.	Replace the needle plate, or consult your authorized dealer.	97
	There are scratches near the hole in the presser foot.	Replace the presser foot, or consult your authorized dealer.	65
	Needle is installed incorrectly.	Reinstall the needle correctly.	67
	Thread is knotted or tangled.	Rethread upper and lower thread.	54, 57
	A bobbin designed specifically for this machine is not used.	Incorrect bobbins will not work properly. Only use a bobbin designed specifically for this machine.	54

Problem	Cause	Solution	Page
Bobbin thread breaks	Bobbin is set incorrectly.	Reset the bobbin thread correctly.	54
	There are scratches on the bobbin or it doesn't rotate properly.	Replace the bobbin.	54
	Thread is twisted.	Use scissors, etc. to cut the twisted thread and remove it from the race, etc.	—
	A bobbin designed specifically for this machine is not used.	Incorrect bobbins will not work properly. Only use a bobbin designed specifically for this machine.	54
Bobbin thread does not wind neatly on the bobbin.	The thread is not passed through the bobbin winding thread guide correctly.	Correctly pass the thread through the bobbin winding thread guide.	49
	Bobbin spins slowly.	Press [+] in the bobbin winding window to increase the bobbin winding speed.	50
	The thread that was pulled out was not wound onto the bobbin correctly.	Wind the thread that was pulled off around the bobbin 5 or 6 times clockwise.	50
Skipped stitches	Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull.	Replace the needle.	67
	Using improper needle or thread for the selected fabric.	Check the "Fabric/Thread/Needle Combination" chart.	69
	Machine is threaded incorrectly.	Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread it correctly.	57
	Dust or lint has collected under the needle plate.	Remove the dust or lint with the brush.	338
	Needle is installed incorrectly.	Reinstall the needle correctly.	67
	Needle is defective.	Replace the needle.	67
	Thin or stretch fabrics are being sewn.	Sew with one sheet of thin paper under the fabric.	76
Needle breaks	Needle is installed incorrectly.	Reinstall the needle correctly.	67
	Needle clamp screw is not tightened.	Tighten the needle clamp screw.	68
	Needle is turned or bent.	Replace the needle.	67
	Using improper needle or thread for the selected fabric.	Check the "Fabric/Thread/Needle Combination" chart.	69
	Wrong presser foot was used.	Use the recommended presser foot.	"STITCH SETTING CHART"
	Upper thread tension is too strong.	Adjust the thread tension setting.	79, 233
	Fabric is pulled during sewing.	Do not pull the fabric during sewing.	—
	Spool cap is set incorrectly.	Check the method for attaching the spool cap, then reattach the spool cap.	57
	There are scratches around the holes in the needle plate.	Replace the needle plate, or consult your authorized dealer.	97
	There are scratches around the hole(s) in the presser foot.	Replace the presser foot, or consult your authorized dealer.	65
	There are scratches on the race.	Replace the race, or consult your authorized dealer.	338
	Needle is defective.	Replace the needle.	67
	Upper threading is incorrect.	Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread the machine.	57
	Bobbin is set incorrectly.	Reset the bobbin thread correctly.	54
	Presser foot is attached incorrectly.	Attach the presser foot correctly.	65
	Screw of the presser foot holder is loose.	Securely tighten the screw of the presser foot.	66
	Fabric is too thick.	Use fabric that the needle can pierce when the handwheel is turned.	75
	Fabric is fed forcefully when sewing thick fabric or thick seams.	Allow the fabric to be fed without being forcefully pushed.	
	Stitch length is too short.	Adjust the stitch length.	79
	Stabilizer is not attached to fabric being embroidered.	Attach stabilizer.	161, 200
	Bobbin thread is incorrectly wound.	Use a correctly wound bobbin.	48

Problem	Cause	Solution	Page
Fabric does not feed through the machine	Feed dogs are set in the down position.	Press , and then turn the handwheel to raise the feed dogs.	116
	Stitches are too close together.	Lengthen the stitch length setting.	79
	Wrong presser foot was used.	Use the correct presser foot.	“STITCH SETTING CHART”
	Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull.	Replace the needle.	67
	Thread is entangled.	Cut the entangled thread and remove it from the race.	—
Fabric puckers	There is a mistake in the upper or bobbin threading.	Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread it correctly.	54, 57
	Using improper needle or thread for the selected fabric.	Check the “Fabric/Thread/Needle Combination” chart.	69
	Thread tension is set incorrectly.	Adjust the thread tension.	79, 233
	Stitches are too long when sewing thin fabrics.	Shorten the stitch length.	79
	Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull.	Replace the needle.	67
	Spool cap is set incorrectly.	Check the method for attaching the spool cap, then reattach the spool cap.	57
	Wrong presser foot.	Use the correct presser foot.	“STITCH SETTING CHART”
High-pitched sound while sewing	Dust or lint is caught in the feed dogs.	Remove the dust or lint.	338
	Pieces of thread are caught in the race.	Clean the race.	338
	Upper threading is incorrect.	Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread the machine.	57
	There are scratches on the race.	Replace the race, or consult your authorized dealer.	338
	A bobbin designed specifically for this machine is not used.	Incorrect bobbins will not work properly. Only use a bobbin designed specifically for this machine.	54
Character pattern does not turn out	Wrong presser foot was used.	Attach the correct presser foot.	“STITCH SETTING CHART”
	Pattern adjustment settings were set incorrectly.	Revise the pattern adjustment settings.	162
	Did not use a stabilizer material on thin fabrics or stretch fabrics.	Attach a stabilizer material.	161
	Thread tension is set incorrectly.	Adjust the thread tension.	79, 233
	Fabric was pulled, pushed or fed at an angle while it was being sewn.	Sew while guiding the fabric with your hands so that the fabric is fed in a straight line.	72

Problem	Cause	Solution	Page
Embroidery pattern does not sew out correctly	Thread is twisted.	Use scissors, etc., to cut the twisted thread and remove it from the race, etc.	—
	Fabric was not inserted into the frame correctly (fabric was loose, etc.).	If the fabric is not stretched tight in the frame, the pattern may turn out poorly or there may be shrinkage of the pattern. Set the fabric into the frame correctly.	203
	Stabilizing material was not attached.	Always use stabilizing material, especially with stretch fabrics, lightweight fabrics, fabrics with a coarse weave, or fabrics that often cause pattern shrinkage. See your authorized dealer for the proper stabilizer.	200
	There was an object placed near the machine, and the carriage or embroidery frame hit the object during sewing.	If the frame bumps something during sewing, the pattern will turn out poorly. Do not place anything in the area where the frame may bump it during sewing.	218
	Fabric outside the frame edges interferes with the sewing arm, so the embroidery unit cannot move.	Reinsert the fabric in the embroidery frame so that the excess fabric is away from the sewing arm, and rotate the pattern 180 degrees.	203
	Fabric is too heavy, so the embroidery unit cannot move freely.	Place a large thick book or similar object under the arm head to lightly lift the heavy side and keep it level.	—
	Fabric is hanging off the table.	If the fabric is hanging off the table during embroidery, the embroidery unit will not move freely. Place the fabric so that it does not hang off the table or hold the fabric to keep it from dragging.	218
	Fabric is snagged or caught on something.	Stop the machine and place the fabric so that it does not get caught or snagged.	—
	Embroidery frame was removed during sewing (for example, to reset the bobbin). The presser foot was bumped or moved while removing or attaching the embroidery frame, or the embroidery unit was moved.	If the presser foot is bumped or the embroidery unit is moved during sewing, the pattern will not turn out. Be careful when removing or reattaching the embroidery frame during sewing.	229
	Stabilizer is incorrectly attached, for example, it is smaller than the embroidery frame.	Attach the stabilizer correctly.	200
Loops appear on the surface of the fabric when embroidering	The thread tension is incorrectly set.	Adjust the thread tension.	233 - 235
	The tension of the upper thread is incorrectly set for the combination of the fabric, thread and pattern being used.	Use the embroidery needle plate cover.	219
	The combination of the bobbin case and bobbin thread is incorrect.	Change the bobbin case or bobbin thread so that the correct combination is used.	218
Machine does not operate	There is no pattern selected.	Select a pattern.	91, 156, 190, 265
	“Start/Stop” button was not pushed.	Press the “Start/Stop” button.	15
	Main power switch is not turned on.	Turn the main power to ON.	26
	Presser foot is not lowered.	Lower the presser foot.	15
	“Start/Stop” button was pushed with the foot controller attached.	Remove the foot controller, or use the foot controller to operate the machine.	73
	The “Start/Stop” button was pressed while the machine is set for the sewing speed controller to control the zigzag stitch width.	Use the foot controller instead of the “Start/Stop” button to operate the machine, or set the Width control to OFF in the Sewing settings.	35, 73
	All keys and buttons have been locked by .	Press to unlock all keys and buttons.	65, 67
Embroidery unit does not operate	There is no pattern selected.	Select a pattern.	190, 265
	Main power switch is not turned on.	Turn the main power to ON.	26
	Embroidery unit is not attached correctly.	Reattach the embroidery unit correctly.	188
	Embroidery frame was attached before the unit was initialized.	Perform the initialization process correctly.	188
Nothing happens, even if the LCD display is pressed	The screen has been locked.	Press either of the following keys to unlock the screen.	—
The fabric feeds in the opposite direction.	The feed mechanism is damaged.	Contact your dealer or the nearest authorized service center.	—
The LCD screen is fogged up.	Condensation has formed on the LCD screen.	After a while, the cloudiness will disappear.	—

⚠ CAUTION

- **This machine is equipped with a thread detection device. If the "Start/Stop" button is pushed before the upper threading is done, the machine will not operate properly. Also, depending on the pattern selected, the machine may feed the fabric even if the needle is raised. This is due to the needle bar release mechanism. At these times, the machine will make a sound different from what is made during normal sewing. This is not the sign of a malfunction.**
- **If the power is disconnected during sewing:**
  Turn the main power to OFF and unplug the machine.
  If you restart the machine, follow the instructions for operating the machine correctly.

ERROR MESSAGES

If the machine is not properly set and the “Start/Stop” button or the “Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch” button is pressed, or if the operation procedure is incorrect, the machine does not start. An alarm sounds and an error message is displayed on the LCD. If an error message displays, follow the instructions in the message.

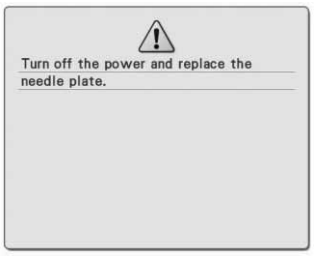
Below is an explanation of error messages. Refer to these when necessary (if you press CLOSE or do the operation correctly while the error message is displayed, the message disappears).

⚠ CAUTION

- **Be sure to rethread the machine. If you press the “Start/Stop” button without rethreading the machine, the thread tension may be wrong or the needle may break and cause injury.**

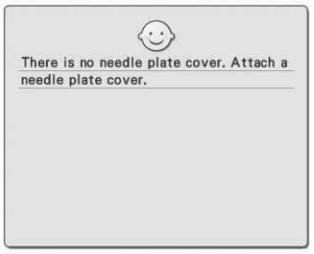
This message is displayed when the motor locks due to tangled thread or for other reasons related to thread delivery.

This message is displayed when the embroidery unit is initializing.

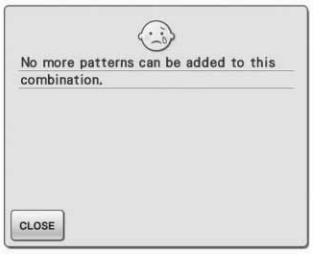


This message is displayed when you try to sew with a stitch other than a middle needle position stitch while the single-hole needle plate is installed.
This message is displayed when the needle plate is removed with the machine on or when the machine is turned on and embroidery or embroidery edit mode is selected (see page 54).

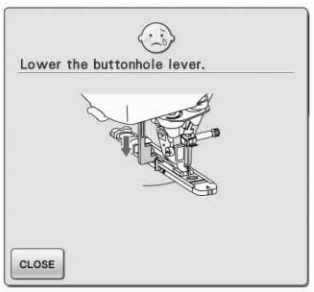
This message is displayed when the machine needs to be maintained. (see page 341)



This message is displayed when the needle plate cover is not attached.



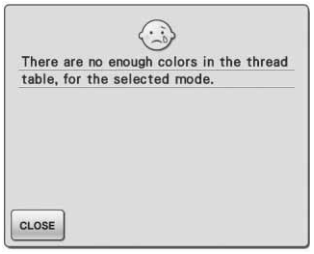
This message is displayed when you try to combine more than 71 patterns.



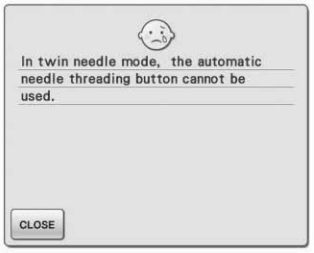
This message is displayed when the buttonhole lever is up, a buttonhole stitch is selected, and the “Start/Stop” button or “Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch” button is pushed.

This message is displayed when the speed control lever is set to control the zigzag stitch width, and the “Start/Stop” button is pushed. Use the foot controller to operate the machine.

This message appears when there are not enough colors in the custom thread table, to display the color scheme you have selected to display.
In this case, set more colors in the custom thread table (See page 278), or select less colors in the color shuffling function. (See page 283.)

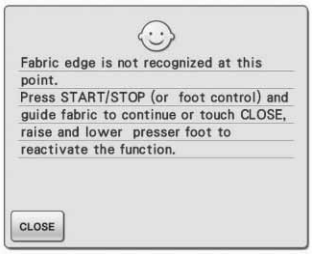


This message appears when there are not enough colors in the thread table, to display the color scheme effect you have selected.
In this case, select another effect or the custom thread table (300 color palette) or less colors in the Color Shuffling function. (See page 283.)
If there are not enough number of colors set in the custom thread table, set more colors in the table. (See page 278.)



This message is displayed when the automatic needle threading button is pushed while twin needle sewing is set.

This message is displayed when the “Start/Stop” button is pressed before the edge of the fabric is detected. To detect the edge of the fabric using the built-in camera, press CLOSE, raise the presser foot, and then perform the operation again. (see page 148)



This message is displayed when the built-in camera cannot detect the edge of the fabric.
If this message appeared after sewing has reached 1 to 2 cm (about 3/8 to 3/4 inch) from the edge of the fabric, refer to step 13 in “Edge Sewing” on page 154.
If this message appeared during edge sewing, the edge of the fabric cannot be detected by the built-in camera. Press CLOSE, raise the presser foot, raise the needle if it is lowered, and then perform the procedure described in “Edge Sewing” on page 150 starting from step 6.
If this error message appears again, sew without using edge sewing function.

This message appears when you try to save more than 100 camera image or settings screen image files in the USB media. In this case, delete a file from the USB media or use different USB media. (See page 39 and 87)

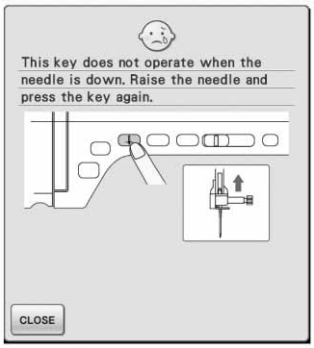
This message appears when DELETE or ALL DELETE is pressed to delete the settings for a utility stitch. To delete the selected settings, press OK.

This message is displayed when an unusable embroidery card is inserted.

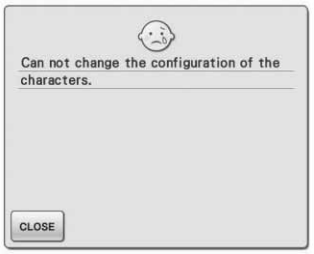
This message is displayed when the “Reverse/ Reinforcement Stitch” button is pushed while the embroidery unit is attached.

This message is displayed when the foot controller is pressed while the embroidery unit is attached and machine is set up for embroidering.

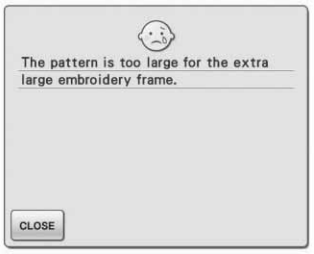
This message is displayed when the patterns you are editing take up too much memory, or if you are editing too many patterns for the memory.



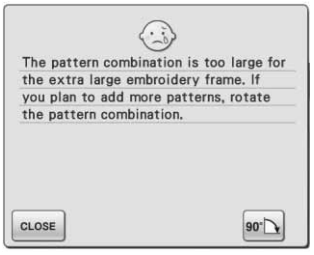
This message is displayed when a key on the LCD display is touched while the needle is in the down position.



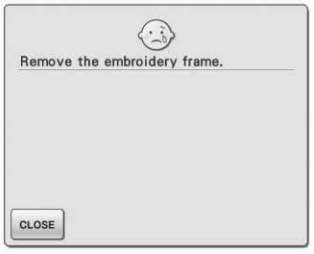
This message is displayed when there are too many characters and the curved character configuration is impossible.



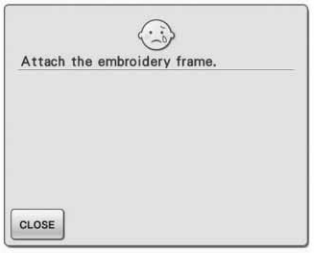
This message is displayed when the machine is in embroidery mode, and the character pattern combination is too large to fit in the embroidery frame.



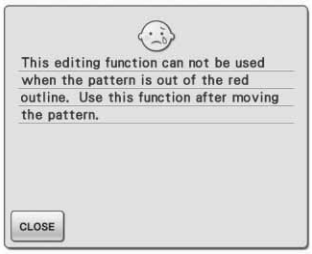
This message is displayed when the machine is in embroidery mode and the combined character pattern is too large for the embroidery frame. You can rotate the pattern 90 degrees and continue combining characters.



This message is displayed when the machine is in embroidery mode and the embroidery unit tries to initialize while the embroidery frame is attached.

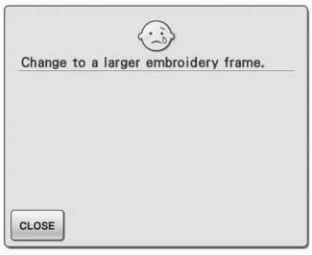


This message is displayed when the machine is ready to sew an embroidery pattern, and the “Start/Stop” button is pushed while the embroidery frame is not attached.



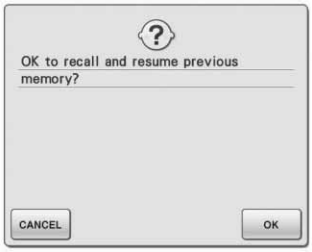
This message is displayed when the machine is in embroidery edit mode, and you try to use an editing function when the pattern is not completely within the red outline.

This message is displayed when you try to save a copyright protected pattern to USB media/Computer. According to copyright laws, patterns that are illegal to reproduce or edit cannot be saved to USB media or computer. If this message displays, save the pattern in the machine's memory.



This message is displayed when the machine is in embroidery mode and the small frame is attached, and the selected pattern does not fit in the small frame.
This message appears when embroidery frame (small) is attached while aligning the embroidery position using the built-in camera.

This message is displayed when RESET is pressed when changing thread colors.

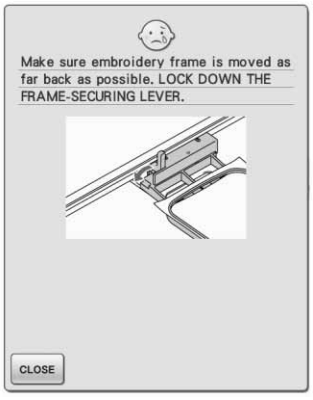


This message appears if the machine is turned off while sewing, then turned on again. Press OK to return the machine to the condition (pattern position and number of stitches) when it was turned off. Follow the procedure described in "If the Thread Breaks During Sewing" on page 230 to align the needle position and sew the remainder of the pattern.

This message is displayed when the "Start/Stop" button is pushed and the machine is in embroidery mode, but the embroidery unit is not attached.

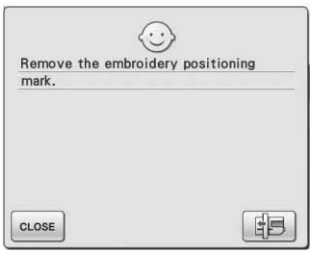
This message is displayed when replacing the embroidering bobbin thread.

This message is displayed when rotating a saved combined pattern in the Embroidery screen.

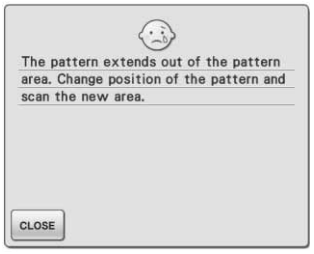


This message is displayed when the embroidery frame is attached.

This message is displayed when the machine failed to recognize the embroidery positioning mark.
- Confirm that the embroidery positioning mark is in the selected area. If problem persists, see page 215 to reposition mark.
- Machine failed to recognize printed positioning mark. Set “Page Scaling” to “None (100%)”, and try printing the embroidery positioning mark again. (see page 226)

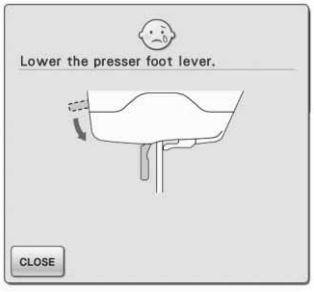


This message is displayed when the machine has recognized the embroidery position mark. Remove the embroidery positioning sticker and press CLOSE to continue. To remove the embroidery positioning sticker more easily, press . (see page 215)



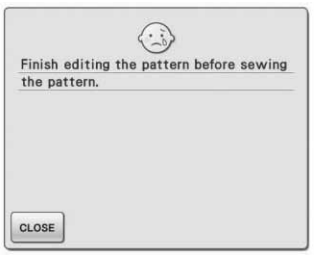
This message appears when the built-in camera is being used to align the embroidery position, but the embroidery positioning sticker is too near an edge or the pattern extends from the embroidery frame. Change the positioning of the embroidery position sticker, and then try aligning the position again. See page 208.

This message is displayed when the upper thread is broken or not threaded correctly, and the “Start/Stop” button or the “Reverse/ Reinforcement Stitch” button is pressed.



This message is displayed when the “Presser Foot Lifter” button is pushed while the presser foot lever is raised/ the needle is lowered.

This message is displayed when the “Start/Stop” button is pushed to sew Utility stitches or Character/ Decorative stitches while the foot controller is connected. (This message does not appear when embroidering).



This message is displayed when the “Start/ Stop” button is pushed while the machine is in embroidery edit mode and a pattern is being edited.

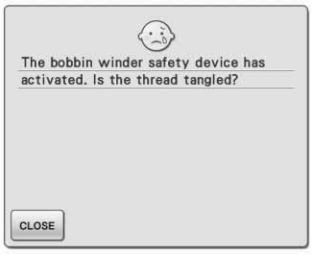
This message is displayed when there is no stitch or embroidery pattern selected and the “Start/Stop” button or the “Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch” button is pressed.

This message is displayed when the bobbin thread is running out.

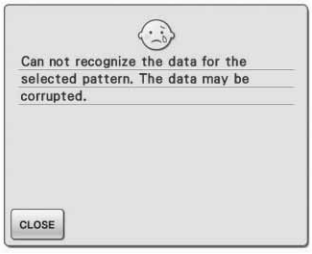
This message is displayed when the memory is full and the stitch or pattern cannot be saved.

This message is displayed when the machine is retrieving a previously saved pattern while in embroidery edit mode.

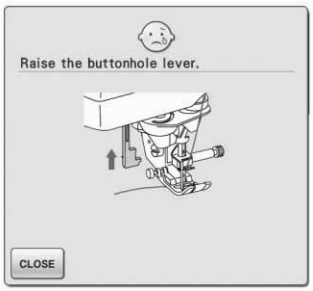
This message is displayed when, after selecting a pattern, Utility Stitch, Character Decorative Stitch, or is pressed and the pattern is about to be deleted.



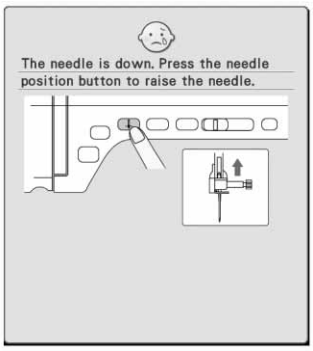
This message is displayed when the bobbin is being wound, and the motor locks because the thread is tangled, etc.



This message is displayed when there is a possibility that the data for the selected pattern is corrupted.



This message is displayed when the buttonhole lever is down, a stitch other than a buttonhole is selected, and the “Start/ Stop” button or the “Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch” button is pushed.



This message is displayed when the embroidery unit is attached and the power is turned on with the needle in the down position.

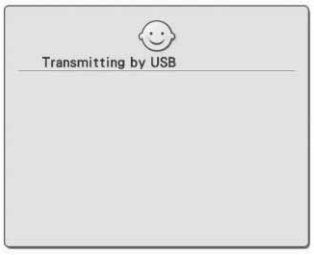
This message is displayed when the selected stitch is not available for the specific function.

This message is displayed when you try to recall or save a pattern while no USB media is loaded.

This message is displayed when you try to use incompatible media.

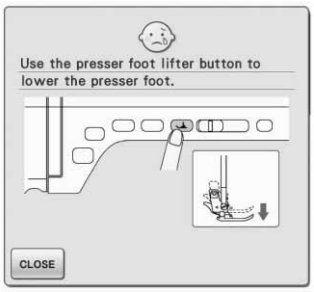
This message is displayed when you attempt to select a pattern after the USB media in which the pattern is saved has been changed.

This message is displayed when an error occurs with the USB media.

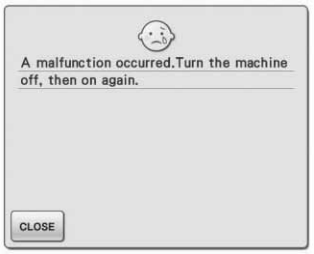


This message is displayed while the USB media is transmitting.

This message is displayed when the memory is full and a pattern must be deleted.



This message is displayed when a button, such as the “Start/Stop” button, is pushed while the presser foot is raised.



This message is displayed if some malfunction occurs.

This message is displayed when you try to use incompatible USB media. For a list of compatible USB media, visit “ http:// solutions.brother.com ”.

This message is displayed when it seems that the upper thread has not been threaded correctly.

This message is displayed when is pressed (the presser foot is raised).

This message is displayed when the file size exceeds the data capacity of the machine.
Confirm the file size and format. (see page 40.)

This message appears if the file format is incompatible with this machine. Check the list of compatible file formats. (see page 40.)

This message is displayed when the image is deleted.

This message is displayed when you press Sewing Guide in the screen other than the Utility Stitch, or press Pattern Explanation in the screen other than the Utility Stitch or Character/ Decorative Stitch.

■ Alarm Sounds

If the operation was performed incorrectly, an alarm sounds to indicate that an error occurred. If the operation was performed correctly, the machine beeps to confirm the operation.

Memo

- To cancel the operation beep or to change the volume, press , display screen 3/8, and then change the setting for “Speaker”. See page 36 for more details.

SPECIFICATIONS

	Item	Specification
Sewing Machine (Box 1 of 3)	Dimensions of machine	Approx. 61.5 cm (W) × 33.2 cm (H) × 27.0 cm (D) (approx. 24-7/32 inches (W) × 13-5/64 inches (H) × 10-5/8 inches (D))
	Dimensions of box	Approx. 68.5 cm (W) × 47.0 cm (H) × 39.0 cm (D) (approx. 26-31/32 inches (W) × 18-1/2 inches (H) × 15-11/32 inches (D))
	Weight of machine	Approx. 15 kg (approx. 33 lb)
	Weight of box (for shipping)	Approx. 19 kg (approx. 42 lb)
	Sewing speed	70 to 1000 stitches per minute
	Needles	Home sewing machine needles (HA × 130)
Accessory Box (Box 2 of 3)	Dimensions of box	Approx. 68.5 cm (W) × 15.2 cm (H) × 39.4 cm (D) (approx. 26-31/32 inches (W) × 6 inches (H) × 15-33/64 inches (D))
	Weight of box (for shipping)	Approx. 5 kg (approx. 11 lb)
Embroidery Unit (Box 3 of 3)	Dimensions of embroidery unit	Approx. 51.0 cm (W) × 13.9 cm (H) × 46.2 cm (D) (approx. 20-5/64 inches (W) × 5-15/32 inch (H) × 18-3/16 inches (D))
	Dimensions of machine with embroidery unit attached	Approx. 81.6 cm (W) × 33.2 cm (H) × 46.2 cm (D) (approx. 32-1/8 inches (W) × 13-5/64 inches (H) × 18-3/16 inches (D))
	Dimensions of box	Approx. 68.5 cm (W) × 62.2 cm (H) × 23.6 cm (D) (approx. 26-31/32 inches (W) × 24-31/64 inches (H) × 9-19/64 inches (D))
	Weight of embroidery unit	Approx. 4 kg (approx. 9 lb)
	Weight of box (for shipping)	Approx. 13 kg (approx. 29 lb)
Total Shipping Weight (Combination of all 3 boxes complete)		Approx. 41 kg (approx. 90 lb)

* Please be aware that some specifications may change without notice.

UPGRADING YOUR MACHINE'S SOFTWARE

You can use USB media or a computer to upgrade software for your sewing machine.
When an upgrade program is available on " http://solutions.brother.com ", please download the files following the instructions on the website and steps below.

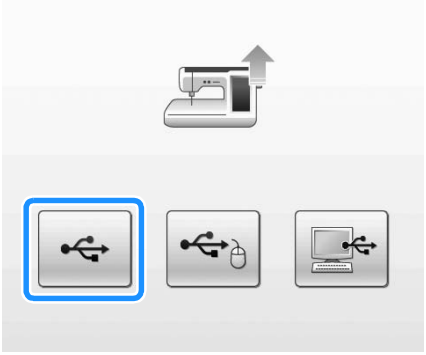
Note
- When using USB media to upgrade the software, check that no data other than the upgrade file is saved on the USB media being used before starting to upgrade.

Upgrade Procedure Using USB Media

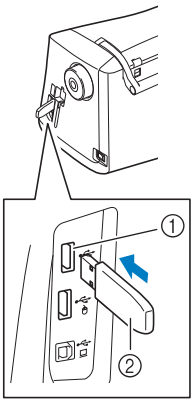
1 **While pressing the "Automatic Threading" button, turn the main power to ON.**

→ The following screen will appear on the LCD.

2 **Press** **.**



3 **Insert the USB media into the primary (top) USB port on the machine. The media device should only contain the upgrade file.**



① Primary (top) USB port for media
② USB media

Note
- The access lamp will begin blinking after inserting USB media, and it will take about 5 to 6 seconds to recognize the media. (Time will differ depending on the USB media).

4 **Press** **.**

→ The upgrade file is loaded.

Note
- If an error occurs, a red text error message will appear. When the installation is performed successfully, following message will appear.

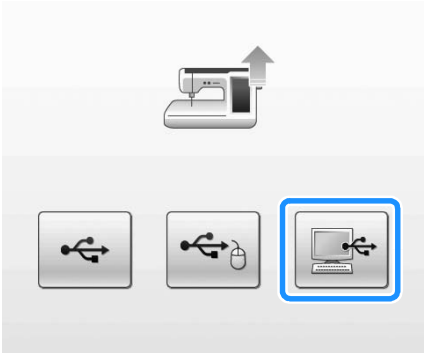
5 **Remove the USB media, and turn the machine off and on again.**

Upgrade Procedure Using Computer

1 **While pressing the "Automatic Threading" button, turn the main power to ON.**

→ The following screen will appear on the LCD.

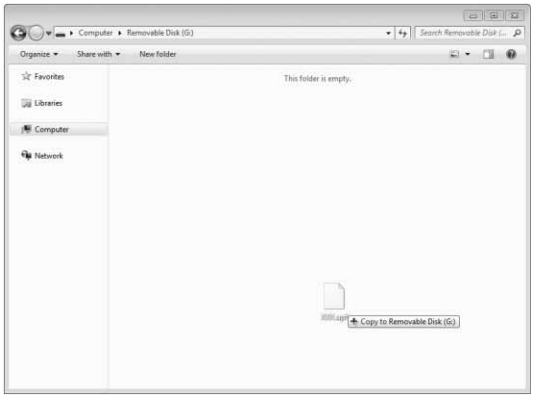
2 **Press** **.**



3 **Plug the USB cable connector into the corresponding USB ports for the computer and for the machine.**

→ "Removable Disk" will appear in "Computer (My computer)".

4 **Copy the upgrade file to "Removable Disk".**



→ The following message will appear.

5 **When the message disappears, press**

.

→ The upgrade file is loaded.

Note

- If an error occurs, a red text error message will appear. When the installation is performed successfully, following message will appear.

6 **Unplug the USB cable, and turn the machine off and on again.**

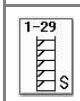
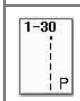
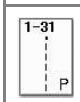
STITCH SETTING CHART

The following chart shows information for each utility stitch concerning applications, stitch lengths, stitch widths, and whether or not the twin needle mode can be used.

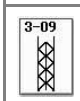
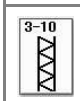
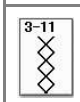
Note

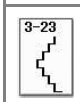
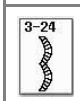
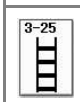
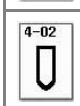
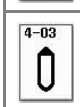
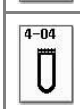
- Quilting foot “C” is used when the straight stitch needle plate is attached to the machine. Refer to “Using Free motion Quilting Foot “C”” on page 116.

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot		Applications	Stitch width [mm (inch)]		Stitch length [mm (inch)]		Twin needle
					Auto.	Manual	Auto.	Manual	
	Straight stitch (Left)			General sewing, gather, pintuck, etc. Reverse stitch is sewn while pressing “Reverse/ Reinforcement Stitch” button.	**0.0 (0)**	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	**2.5 (3/32)**	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	OK (J)
	Straight stitch (Left)			General sewing, gather, pintuck, etc. Reinforcement stitch is sewn while pressing “Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch” button.	**0.0 (0)**	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	**2.5 (3/32)**	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	OK (J)
	Straight stitch (Middle)			General sewing, gather, pintuck, etc. Reverse stitch is sewn while pressing “Reverse/ Reinforcement Stitch” button.	**3.5 (1/8)**	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	**2.5 (3/32)**	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	OK (J)
	Straight stitch (Middle)			General sewing, gather, pintuck, etc. Reinforcement stitch is sewn while pressing “Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch” button.	**3.5 (1/8)**	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	**2.5 (3/32)**	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	OK (J)
	Triple stretch stitch			General sewing for reinforcement and decorative topstitching	**0.0 (0)**	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	**2.5 (3/32)**	1.5 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
	Stem stitch			Reinforced stitching, sewing and decorative applications	**1.0 (1/16)**	1.0 - 3.0 (1/16 - 1/8)	**2.5 (3/32)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
	Decorative stitch			Decorative stitching, top stitching	**0.0 (0)**	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	**2.5 (3/32)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
	Basting stitch			Basting	**0.0 (0)**	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	**20 (3/4)**	5 - 30 (3/16 - 1-3/ 16)	NO
	Zigzag stitch			For overcasting, mending. Reverse stitch is sewn while pressing “Reverse/ Reinforcement Stitch” button.	**3.5 (1/8)**	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	**1.4 (1/16)**	0.0 - 4.0 (0 - 3/16)	OK (J)
	Zigzag stitch			For overcasting, mending. Reinforcement stitch is sewn while pressing “Reverse/ Reinforcement Stitch” button.	**3.5 (1/8)**	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	**1.4 (1/16)**	0.0 - 4.0 (0 - 3/16)	OK (J)
	Zigzag stitch (right)			Start from right needle position, zigzag sew at left.	**3.5 (1/8)**	2.5 - 5.0 (3/32 - 3/16)	**1.4 (1/16)**	0.3 - 4.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	OK (J)
	Zigzag stitch (left)			Start from left needle position, zigzag sew at right.	**3.5 (1/8)**	2.5 - 5.0 (3/32 - 3/16)	**1.4 (1/16)**	0.3 - 4.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	OK (J)
	2 steps elastic zigzag			Overcasting (medium weight and stretch fabrics), tape and elastic	**5.0 (3/16)**	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	**1.0 (1/16)**	0.2 - 4.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	OK (J)

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot		Applications	Stitch width [mm (inch)]		Stitch length [mm (inch)]		Twin needle
					Auto.	Manual	Auto.	Manual	
	2 steps elastic zigzag			Overcasting (medium weight and stretch fabrics), tape and elastic	**5.0 (3/16)**	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	**1.0 (1/16)**	0.2 - 4.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	OK (J)
	3 steps elastic zigzag			Overcasting (medium, heavyweight and stretch fabrics), tape and elastic	**5.0 (3/16)**	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	**1.0 (1/16)**	0.2 - 4.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	OK (J)
	Overcasting stitch			Reinforcing of light and medium weight fabrics	**3.5 (1/8)**	2.5 - 5.0 (3/32 - 3/16)	**2.0 (1/16)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	Overcasting stitch			Reinforcing of heavyweight fabric	**5.0 (3/16)**	2.5 - 5.0 (3/32 - 3/16)	**2.5 (3/32)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	Overcasting stitch			Reinforcing of medium, heavyweight and easily friable fabrics or decorative stitching.	**5.0 (3/16)**	3.5 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	**2.5 (3/32)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	Overcasting stitch			Reinforced seaming of stretch fabric	**5.0 (3/16)**	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 9/32)	**2.5 (3/32)**	0.5 - 4.0 (1/32 - 3/16)	OK (J)
	Overcasting stitch			Reinforcing of medium stretch fabric and heavyweight fabric, decorative stitching	**5.0 (3/16)**	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 9/32)	**2.5 (3/32)**	0.5 - 4.0 (1/32 - 3/16)	OK (J)
	Overcasting stitch			Reinforcement of stretch fabric or decorative stitching	**4.0 (3/16)**	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	**4.0 (3/16)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
	Overcasting stitch			Stretch knit seam	**5.0 (3/16)**	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	**4.0 (3/16)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	Single diamond overcast			Reinforcement and seaming stretch fabric	**6.0 (15/64)**	1.0 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	**3.0 (1/8)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
	Single diamond overcast			Reinforcement of stretch fabric	**6.0 (15/64)**	1.0 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	**1.8 (1/16)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
	With side cutter			Straight stitch while cutting fabrics	**0.0 (0)**	0.0 - 2.5 (0 - 3/32)	**2.5 (3/32)**	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
	With side cutter			Zigzag stitch while cutting fabrics	**3.5 (1/8)**	3.5 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	**1.4 (1/16)**	0.0 - 4.0 (0 - 3/16)	NO
	With side cutter			Overcasting stitch while cutting fabrics	**3.5 (1/8)**	3.5 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	**2.0 (1/16)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	With side cutter			Overcasting stitch while cutting fabrics	**5.0 (3/16)**	3.5 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	**2.5 (3/32)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	**With side cutter**			Overcasting stitch while cutting fabrics	**5.0 (3/16)**	3.5 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	**2.5 (3/32)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	**Piecing stitch (Right)**			Piecework/patchwork 6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch) left seam allowance	**5.5 (7/32)**	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	**2.0 (1/16)**	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
	**Piecing stitch (Middle)**			Piecework/patchwork	—	—	**2.0 (1/16)**	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO

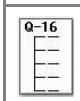
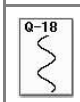
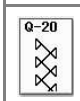
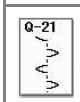
Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot		Applications	Stitch width [mm (inch)]		Stitch length [mm (inch)]		Twin needle
					Auto.	Manual	Auto.	Manual	
	Piecing stitch (Left)			Piecework/patchwork 6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch) left seam allowance	**1.5 (1/16)**	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	**2.0 (1/16)**	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
	Hand-look quilting			Quilting stitch made to look like hand quilting stitch	**0.0 (0)**	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	**2.5 (3/32)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	Quilting appliqué zigzag stitch			Zigzag stitch for quilting and sewing on appliqué quilt pieces	**3.5 (1/8)**	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	**1.4 (1/16)**	0.0 - 4.0 (0 - 3/16)	NO
	Quilting appliqué stitch			Quilting stitch for invisible appliqué or attaching binding	**1.5 (1/16)**	0.5 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	**1.8 (1/16)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	Quilting stippling			Background quilting	**7.0 (1/4)**	1.0 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	**1.6 (1/16)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	Blind hem stitch			Hemming woven fabrics	**0.0 (0)**	+3.0 - -3.0 (+1/8 - -1/8)	**2.0 (1/16)**	1.0 - 3.5 (1/16 - 1/8)	NO
	Blind hem stitch stretch			Hemming stretch fabric	**0.0 (0)**	+3.0 - -3.0 (+1/8 - -1/8)	**2.0 (1/16)**	1.0 - 3.5 (1/16 - 1/8)	NO
	Blanket stitch			Appliqués, decorative blanket stitch	**3.5 (1/8)**	2.5 - 7.0 (3/32 - 1/4)	**2.5 (3/32)**	1.6 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
	Shell tuck edge			Shell tuck edge finish on fabrics	**4.0 (3/16)**	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	**2.5 (3/32)**	0.2 - 4.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	OK (J)
	Satin scallop stitch			Decorating collar of blouse, edge of handkerchief	**5.0 (3/16)**	2.5 - 7.0 (3/32 - 1/4)	**0.5 (1/32)**	0.1 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	OK (J)
	Scallop stitch			Decorating collar of blouse, edge of handkerchief	**7.0 (1/4)**	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	**1.4 (1/16)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	Patchwork join stitch			Patchwork stitches, decorative stitching	**4.0 (1/16)**	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	**1.2 (1/16)**	0.2 - 4.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	OK (J)
	Patchwork double overlock stitch			Patchwork stitches, decorative stitching	**5.0 (3/16)**	2.5 - 7.0 (3/32 - 1/4)	**2.5 (3/32)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
	Couching stitch			Decorative stitching, attaching cord and couching	**5.0 (3/16)**	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	**1.2 (1/16)**	0.2 - 4.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	OK (J)
	Smocking stitch			Smocking, decorative stitching	**5.0 (3/16)**	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	**1.6 (1/16)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
	Feather stitch			Fagoting, decorative stitching	**5.0 (3/16)**	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	**2.5 (3/32)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
	Fagoting cross stitch			Fagoting, bridging and decorative stitching	**5.0 (3/16)**	2.5 - 7.0 (3/32 - 1/4)	**2.5 (3/32)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
	Tape attaching			Attaching tape to seam in stretch fabric	**4.0 (3/16)**	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	**1.0 (1/16)**	0.2 - 4.0 (1/61 - 3/16)	OK (J)

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot		Applications	Stitch width [mm (inch)]		Stitch length [mm (inch)]		Twin needle
					Auto.	Manual	Auto.	Manual	
	Ladder stitch			Decorative stitching	**4.0 (3/16)**	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	**3.0 (1/8)**	2.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	Rick-rack stitch			Decorative top stitching	**4.0 (3/16)**	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	**2.5 (3/32)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
	Decorative stitch			Decorative stitching	**1.0 (1/16)**	1.0 - 3.0 (1/16 - 1/8)	**2.5 (3/32)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
	Decorative stitch			Decorative stitching	**5.5 (7/32)**	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	**1.6 (1/16)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
	Serpentine stitch			Decorative stitching and attaching elastic	**5.0 (3/16)**	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	**1.0 (1/16)**	0.2 - 4.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	OK (J)
	Decorative stitch			Decorative stitching and appliqué	**6.0 (15/64)**	1.0 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	**1.0 (1/16)**	0.2 - 4.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	OK (J)
	Decorative stippling stitch			Decorative stitching	**7.0 (1/4)**	1.0 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	**1.6 (1/16)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	Hemstitching			Decorative hems, triple straight at left	**1.0 (1/16)**	1.0 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	**2.5 (3/32)**	1.5 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
	Hemstitching			Decorative hems, triple straight at center	**3.5 (1/8)**	1.0 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	**2.5 (3/32)**	1.5 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
	Hemstitching zigzag			Decorative hems, top stitching	**6.0 (15/64)**	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	**3.0 (1/8)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
	Hemstitching			Decorative hems, lace attaching pin stitch	**3.5 (1/8)**	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	**2.5 (3/32)**	1.6 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	Hemstitching			Decorative hems	**3.0 (1/8)**	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	**3.5 (1/8)**	1.6 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	Hemstitching			Decorative hems daisy stitch	**6.0 (15/64)**	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	**3.0 (1/8)**	1.5 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	Hemstitching			Heirloom, decorative hems	**5.0 (3/16)**	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	**3.5 (1/8)**	1.6 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	Hemstitching			Heirloom, decorative hems	**5.0 (3/16)**	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	**3.5 (1/8)**	1.5 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	**Hemstitching**			Heirloom, decorative hems	**5.0 (3/16)**	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	**3.5 (1/8)**	1.6 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
	**Hemstitching**			Heirloom, decorative hems	**5.0 (3/16)**	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	**4.0 (3/16)**	1.5 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
	**Hemstitching**			Heirloom, decorative hems	**4.0 (3/16)**	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	**2.5 (3/32)**	1.5 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot		Applications	Stitch width [mm (inch)]		Stitch length [mm (inch)]		Twin needle
					Auto.	Manual	Auto.	Manual	
	Honeycomb stitch			Heirloom, decorative hems	**5.0 (3/64)**	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	**2.5 (3/32)**	1.5 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
	Honeycomb stitch			Heirloom, decorative hems	**6.0 (15/64)**	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	**3.5 (1/8)**	1.5 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
	Hemstitching			Heirloom, decorative hems	**6.0 (15/64)**	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	**1.6 (1/16)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
	Hemstitching			Heirloom, decorative hems	**6.0 (15/64)**	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	**3.0 (1/8)**	1.5 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	Hemstitching			Heirloom, decorative hems	**6.0 (15/64)**	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	**4.0 (3/16)**	1.5 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
	Hemstitching			Heirloom, decorative hems	**4.0 (3/16)**	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	**2.5 (3/32)**	1.6 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	Hemstitching			Heirloom, decorative hems	**5.0 (3/16)**	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	**2.0 (1/16)**	1.5 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
	Hemstitching			Decorative hems and bridging stitch	**6.0 (15/64)**	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	**2.0 (1/16)**	1.5 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
	Hemstitching			Decorative hems. Fagoting, attaching ribbon	**5.0 (3/16)**	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	**3.0 (1/8)**	1.5 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
	Hemstitching			Decorative hems, smocking	**6.0 (15/64)**	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	**1.6 (1/16)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	Hemstitching			Decorative hems, smocking	**5.0 (3/16)**	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	**1.6 (1/16)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	**Hemstitching**			Decorative hems, smocking	**5.0 (3/16)**	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	**1.6 (1/16)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	**Hemstitching**			Decorative hems	**5.0 (3/16)**	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	**1.6 (1/16)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	**Ladder stitch**			Decorative hems. Fagoting, attaching ribbon	**7.0 (1/4)**	5.0 - 7.0 (3/16 - 1/4)	**1.6 (1/16)**	1.0 - 2.5 (1/16 - 3/32)	NO
	Narrow rounded buttonhole			Buttonhole on light to medium weight fabrics	**5.0 (3/16)**	3.0 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	**0.4 (1/64)**	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
	**Wide round ended buttonhole**			Buttonholes with extra space for larger buttons	**5.5 (7/32)**	3.5 - 5.5 (1/8 - 7/32)	**0.4 (1/64)**	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
	**Tapered round ended buttonhole**			Reinforced waist tapered buttonholes	**5.0 (3/16)**	3.0 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	**0.4 (1/64)**	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
	**Round ended buttonhole**			Buttonholes with vertical bar tack in heavyweight fabrics	**5.0 (3/16)**	3.0 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	**0.4 (1/64)**	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot		Applications	Stitch width [mm (inch)]		Stitch length [mm (inch)]		Twin needle
					Auto.	Manual	Auto.	Manual	
4-05	**Round ended buttonhole**	A		Buttonholes with bar tack	**5.0 (3/16)**	3.0 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	**0.4 (1/64)**	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-06	**Round double ended buttonhole**	A		Buttonholes for fine, medium to heavyweight fabrics	**5.0 (3/16)**	3.0 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	**0.4 (1/64)**	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-07	**Narrow squared buttonhole**	A		Buttonholes for light to medium weight fabrics	**5.0 (3/16)**	3.0 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	**0.4 (1/64)**	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-08	**Wide squared buttonhole**	A		Buttonholes with extra space for larger decorative buttons	**5.5 (7/32)**	3.5 - 5.5 (1/8 - 7/32)	**0.4 (1/64)**	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-09	**Squared buttonhole**	A		Heavy-duty buttonholes with vertical bar tacks	**5.0 (3/16)**	3.0 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	**0.4 (1/64)**	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-10	**Stretch buttonhole**	A		Buttonholes for stretch or woven fabrics	**6.0 (15/64)**	3.0 - 6.0 (1/8 - 15/64)	**1.0 (1/16)**	0.5 - 2.0 (1/32 - 1/16)	NO
4-11	**Heirloom buttonhole**	A		Buttonholes for heirloom and stretch fabrics	**6.0 (15/64)**	3.0 - 6.0 (1/8 - 15/64)	**1.5 (1/16)**	1.0 - 3.0 (1/1 - 1/8)	NO
4-12	**Bound buttonhole**	A		The first step in making bound buttonholes	**5.0 (3/16)**	0.0 - 6.0 (0 - 15/64)	**2.0 (1/16)**	0.2 - 4.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
4-13	**Keyhole buttonhole**	A		Buttonholes in heavyweight or thick fabrics for larger flat buttons	**7.0 (1/4)**	3.0 - 7.0 (1/8 - 1/4)	**0.5 (1/32)**	0.3 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-14	**Tapered keyhole buttonhole**	A		Buttonholes in medium to heavy weight fabrics for larger flat buttons	**7.0 (1/4)**	3.0 - 7.0 (1/8 - 1/4)	**0.5 (1/32)**	0.3 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-15	**Keyhole buttonhole**	A		Buttonholes with vertical bar tack for reinforcement in heavyweight or thick fabrics	**7.0 (1/4)**	3.0 - 7.0 (1/8 - 1/4)	**0.5 (1/32)**	0.3 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-16	**4 steps buttonhole 1**	N	O	Left side of 4 step buttonhole	**5.0 (7/32)**	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	**0.4 (1/64)**	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-17	**4 steps buttonhole 2**	N	O	Bar tack of 4 step buttonhole	**5.0 (7/32)**	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	**0.4 (1/64)**	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-18	**4 steps buttonhole 3**	N	O	Right side of 4 step buttonhole	**5.0 (7/32)**	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	**0.4 (1/64)**	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-19	**4 steps buttonhole 4**	N	O	Bar tack of 4 step buttonhole	**5.0 (7/32)**	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	**0.4 (1/64)**	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-20	**Darning**	A		Darning of medium weight fabric	**7.0 (1/4)**	2.5 - 7.0 (3/32 - 1/4)	**2.0 (1/16)**	0.4 - 2.5 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-21	**Darning**	A		Darning of heavyweight fabric	**7.0 (1/4)**	2.5 - 7.0 (3/32 - 1/4)	**2.0 (1/16)**	0.4 - 2.5 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-22	**Bar tack**	A		Reinforcement at opening of pocket, etc.	**2.0 (1/16)**	1.0 - 3.0 (1/16 - 1/8)	**0.4 (1/64)**	0.3 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot		Applications	Stitch width [mm (inch)]		Stitch length [mm (inch)]		Twin needle
					Auto.	Manual	Auto.	Manual	
4-23	**Button sewing**	M		Attaching buttons	**3.5 (1/8)**	2.5 - 4.5 (3/32 - 3/16)	—	—	NO
4-24	**Eyelet**	N	O	For making eyelets, holes on belts, etc.	**7.0 (1/4)**	7.0 6.0 5.0 (1/4 15/64 3/16)	**7.0 (1/4)**	7.0 6.0 5.0 (1/4 15/64 3/16)	NO
4-25	**Star eyelet**	N	O	For making star-shaped eyelets on holes.	—	—	—	—	NO
5-01	**Diagonally left up (Straight)**	N	O	For attaching appliqué on tubular pieces of fabric and mitering corners	—	—	—	—	NO
5-02	**Reverse (Straight)**	N	O	For attaching appliqué on tubular pieces of fabric and mitering corners	—	—	—	—	NO
5-03	**Diagonally right up (Straight)**	N	O	For attaching appliqué on tubular pieces of fabric and mitering corners	—	—	—	—	NO
5-04	**Sideways to left (Straight)**	N	O	For attaching appliqué on tubular pieces of fabric	—	—	—	—	NO
5-05	**Sideways to right (Straight)**	N	O	For attaching appliqué on tubular pieces of fabric	—	—	—	—	NO
5-06	**Diagonally left down (Straight)**	N	O	For attaching appliqué on tubular pieces of fabric and mitering corners	—	—	—	—	NO
5-07	**Forward (Straight)**	N	O	For attaching appliqué on tubular pieces of fabric and mitering corners	—	—	—	—	NO
5-08	**Diagonally right down (Straight)**	N	O	For attaching appliqué on tubular pieces of fabric and mitering corners	—	—	—	—	NO
5-09	**Sideways to left (Zigzag)**	N	O	For attaching appliqué on tubular pieces of fabric	—	—	—	—	NO
5-10	**Sideways to right (Zigzag)**	N	O	For attaching appliqué on tubular pieces of fabric	—	—	—	—	NO
5-11	**Forward (Zigzag)**	N	O	For attaching appliqué on tubular pieces of fabric and mitering corners	—	—	—	—	NO
5-12	**Reverse (Zigzag)**	N	O	For attaching appliqué on tubular pieces of fabric and mitering corners	—	—	—	—	NO
Q-01	**Piecing stitch (Middle)**	J	C	Piecework/patchwork	—	—	**2.0 (1/16)**	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
Q-02	**Piecing stitch (Right)**	J	O	Piecework/patchwork 6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch) right seam allowance	**5.50 (7/32)**	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	**2.0 (1/16)**	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
Q-03	**Piecing stitch (Left)**	J	O	Piecework/patchwork 6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch) left seam allowance	**1.50 (1/16)**	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	**2.0 (1/16)**	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot		Applications	Stitch width [mm (inch)]		Stitch length [mm (inch)]		Twin needle
					Auto.	Manual	Auto.	Manual	
	Hand-look quilting			Quilting stitch made to look like hand quilting stitch	**3.50**	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	**2.5 (3/32)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	Basting stitch			Basting	**3.50**	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	**20 (3/4)**	5 - 30 (3/16 - 1-3/16)	NO
	Stem stitch			Reinforced stitching, sewing and decorative applications	**1.00 (1/16)**	1.00 - 3.00 (1/16 - 1/8)	**2.5 (3/32)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	Quilting appliqué zigzag stitch			Zigzag stitch for quilting and sewing on appliqué quilt pieces	**3.50 (1/8)**	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	**1.6**	0.0 - 4.0 (0 - 3/16)	NO
	Zigzag stitch (Right)			Start from right needle position, zigzag sew at left	**3.50 (1/8)**	2.50 - 5.00 (3/32 - 3/16)	**1.6**	0.3 - 4.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
	Zigzag stitch (Left)			Start from left needle position, zigzag sew at right	**3.50 (1/8)**	2.50 - 5.00 (3/32 - 3/16)	**1.6**	0.3 - 4.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
	2 steps elastic zigzag			Overcasting (medium weight and stretch fabrics), tape and elastic	**5.00 (3/16)**	1.50 - 7.00 (1/16 - 1/4)	**1.0 (1/16)**	0.2 - 4.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
	3 steps elastic zigzag			Overcasting (medium, heavyweight and stretch fabrics), tape and elastic	**5.00 (3/16)**	1.50 - 7.00 (1/16 - 1/4)	**1.0 (1/16)**	0.2 - 4.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
	Quilting appliqué stitch			Quilting stitch for invisible appliqué or attaching binding	**2.00**	0.50 - 5.00 (1/64 - 3/16)	**2.0**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	Shell tuck edge			Shell tuck edge finish on fabrics	**4.00 (3/16)**	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	**2.5 (3/32)**	0.2 - 4.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
	Blanket stitch			Appliqués, decorative blanket stitch	**3.50 (1/8)**	2.50 - 7.00 (3/32 - 1/4)	**2.5 (3/32)**	1.6 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	Quilting stippling			Background quilting	**7.00 (1/4)**	1.00 - 7.00 (1/16 - 1/4)	**1.6 (1/16)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	**Overcasting stitch**			Stretch knit seam	**5.00 (3/16)**	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	**4.0 (3/16)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	Tape attaching			Attaching tape to seam in stretch fabric	**5.50**	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	**1.4**	0.2 - 4.0 (1/61 - 3/16)	NO
	**Serpentine stitch**			Decorative stitching and attaching elastic	**5.00 (3/16)**	1.50 - 7.00 (1/16 - 1/4)	**2.0**	0.2 - 4.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
	Feather stitch			Fagoting, decorative stitching	**5.00 (3/16)**	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	**2.5 (3/32)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	**Fagoting cross stitch**			Fagoting, bridging and decorative stitching	**5.00 (3/16)**	2.50 - 7.00 (3/32 - 1/4)	**2.5 (3/32)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	**Couching stitch**			Decorative stitching, attaching cord and couching	**5.00 (3/16)**	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	**1.2 (1/16)**	0.2 - 4.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot		Applications	Stitch width [mm (inch)]		Stitch length [mm (inch)]		Twin needle
					Auto.	Manual	Auto.	Manual	
	Patchwork double overlock stitch			Patchwork stitches, decorative stitching	**5.00 (3/16)**	2.50 - 7.00 (3/32 - 1/4)	**2.5 (3/32)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	Smocking stitch			Smocking, decorative stitching	**5.00 (3/16)**	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	**1.6 (1/16)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	Rick-rack stitch			Decorative top stitching	**4.00 (3/16)**	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	**2.5 (3/32)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	Decorative stitch			Decorative stitching and appliqué	**6.00 (15/64)**	1.00 - 7.00 (1/16 - 1/4)	**1.0 (1/16)**	0.2 - 4.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
	Decorative stitch			Decorative stitching	**5.50 (3/16)**	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	**1.6 (1/16)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	Hemstitching			Heirloom, decorative hems	**5.00 (3/16)**	1.50 - 7.00 (1/16 - 1/4)	**2.0 (1/16)**	1.5 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	Hemstitching			Decorative hems and bridging stitch	**6.00 (15/64)**	1.50 - 7.00 (1/16 - 1/4)	**2.0 (1/16)**	1.5 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	Single diamond overcast			Reinforcement and seaming stretch fabric	**6.00 (15/64)**	1.00 - 7.00 (1/16 - 1/4)	**3.0 (1/8)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
	Overcasting stitch			Reinforcement of stretch fabric or decorative stitching	**4.00 (3/16)**	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	**4.0 (3/16)**	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO

INDEX

A

Accessories
- included accessories 16
- options 20

Accessory case 16
Accessory compartment 16
Adjustments
- screen 342

Air vent 13
Alarm sounds 355
Aligning the position 208, 211, 213
Alphabet characters
- character/decorative stitches 158
- embroidery 194
- embroidery edit 266

Alternate bobbin case 218
Appliqué 125
- embroidery patterns 221
- quilting 114
- using a zigzag stitch 102
- using an embroidery frame pattern 258

Array key 266, 273
Arrow keys 240, 296, 329
Automatic fabric sensor system 85
Automatic reinforcement stitch key 81
Automatic thread cutting key 82
Automatic Threading button 15, 57

B

Back to beginning key 168
Ball point needle 75/107 ....69, 236
Bar tacks 140
Basting 98
Blind hem stitches 122
Block move key 331
Bobbin
- pulling up the bobbin thread 55
- runs out of thread 229
- setting 54
- winding 48

Bobbin case
- alternate bobbin case (no color on the screw) 218
- cleaning 338

Bobbin clip 17
Bobbin cover 14, 54
Bobbin holder (switch) 50
Bobbin winder 13
Bobbin work 307
Border key 285, 290
Built-in camera 6, 87, 148, 213
Button sewing 142
- 4 hole buttons 143
- shank 143

Buttonhole lever 14, 134, 139
Buttonholes
- four-step 136
- odd-shaped/buttons that do not fit the button holder plate 135
- one-step 132

C

Character spacing key 273
Character/Decorative Stitches
- adjustments 162
- combining 170
- editing 164
- key functions 164
- retrieving 180, 181
- saving 177, 178, 179
- selecting 156
- sewing 161
- stitch selection screens 157

Cleaning
- LCD screen 338
- machine casing 338
- race 338

Color shuffling function 283
Combining Patterns
- character/decorative stitches 170
- embroidery edit 295

Cord guide bobbin cover 103
Crazy quilt 103
Custom Thread Table 278, 282
Cut/Tension key 233

D

Darning 138
Dart seam 99
Density key 244

E

Echo quilting 119
Edge sewing
- edge sewing using the built-in camera 6, 148

Editing
- character/decorative stitches 164
- embroidery 240
- embroidery edit 268
- MY CUSTOM STITCH 328

Elastic zigzag stitches 104
Elongation key 166
Embroidery
- adjusting the speed 237
- automatic thread cutting function (END COLOR TRIM) 235
- edges or corners 205
- key functions 199
- restarting from the beginning 231
- resuming embroidery after turning off the power 231
- ribbons or tape 205
- selecting patterns 190
- small fabrics 205
- thread color display 237
- thread trimming function (JUMP STITCH TRIM) 236

Embroidery card 197
Embroidery card reader 197
Embroidery edit
- changing the thread color 277
- combined patterns 295, 298
- custom thread table 278, 282
- explanation of functions 264
- key functions 269
- repeated patterns 285

Embroidery foot “W” 187
Embroidery frame display 238
Embroidery frames
- attaching 206
- inserting fabric 203
- removing 207
- types 202
- using the embroidery sheet 204

Embroidery needle plate cover 219
Embroidery patterns
- aligning the position 211
- checking the position 216
- combining 295
- duplicating 293

editing 268
linked characters 245
pattern selection screens 191
patterns which use appliqué 221
retrieving 254, 255
revising 240
saving 251, 252, 253
selecting 190, 265
sewing 218
using a frame pattern to make an appliqué 258, 259
Embroidery positioning sticker 213
Embroidery sheet 204
Embroidery unit 15, 188
carriage 15
carrying case 17
Enlarger key 329
Error messages 348
Eyelet 144

F

Fabrics
fabric/thread/needle combinations 69
sewing heavyweight fabrics 75
sewing lightweight fabrics 76
sewing stretch fabrics 77, 135
Fagoting 128
Feed dogs 14, 116
Flat bed attachment 13, 188
Flat fell Seam 100
Foot controller 13, 73
Forward/Back key 230, 231
Free motion quilting
free motion echo quilting foot "E" 119
free motion open toe quilting foot "O" 118
free motion quilting foot "C" 116
Free motion sewing mode 116

G

Gathering 99
Grid direction key 329

H

Handle 13
Handwheel 13
Heirloom 130
Hemstitching
daisy stitch 130
drawn work 131
Home page screen 28

I

Image key 92, 168, 217, 330
Insert key 332

K

Key functions
character/decorative stitches 164
embroidery 199
embroidery edit 269
MY CUSTOM STITCH 328
utility stitches 30
Knee lifter 13, 83

L

LCD screen 13, 28
cleaning 338
light 36
locking 86
Lower threading
pulling up the bobbin thread 55
setting the bobbin 54
winding the bobbin 48

M

Machine operation mode key 343
Main power switch 13, 26
Mirror image key 91, 167, 243
Multi color key 245, 276
Multi-directional sewing 145
My Custom Design 7
MY CUSTOM STITCH
designing 326
entering data 328
key functions 328
retrieving 335
saving 334
storing in your list 334

N

Needle
changing the needle 67
changing the needle position 96
checking the needle location 6, 87
fabric/thread/needle combinations 69
mode 28
twin needle 60
Needle bar thread guides 14, 61
Needle clamp screw 14
Needle mode selection key 60
Needle plate 14
Needle position 86, 96
Needle Position button 15

O

Operation buttons 13, 15
Overcasting 102, 104, 105

P

Patchwork 103
Pen tablet 23, 34
Piecing 113
Pintuck 101
Pivoting 84
Point delete key 330
Power cord 27
Power cord receptacle 13
Presser foot
attaching 65
pressure 85
removing 65
types 359
Presser foot code 29, 198
Presser foot holder 14, 65
Presser foot holder screw 14
Presser foot lever 13, 75
Presser Foot Lifter button 15
Presser foot/Needle exchange key 61, 65, 66, 67, 187
Pre-tension disk 13, 49, 52
Print and stitch 223, 306

Q

Quilting 110
free motion 116
with satin stitches 115

R

Race 338
Repeated patterns 285

Retrieving
character/decorative stitch patterns 180
computer 182, 256
embroidery patterns 254
machine's memory 180, 254
MY CUSTOM STITCH designs 335
stitch settings 93
USB media 181, 255
utility stitches 93
Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch button 15, 74, 81
Reverse/Reinforcement stitches 74, 81
Rotate key 242, 270

S

Satin stitches 115, 167
Saving
character/decorative stitches 177
computer 179, 253
embroidery patterns 251
machine's memory 177, 251
MY CUSTOM STITCH designs 334
stitch settings 92
USB media 178, 252
utility stitches 92
Scallop stitches 127
Screen saver 40
Set key 329
Settings
automatic reinforcement stitching 81
automatic thread cutting 82, 235
display language 41
embroidery settings 37
general settings 36
machine setting mode key 35, 237, 278
sewing settings 35
stitch length 79
stitch width 78
thread tension 79, 233
thread trimming 236
Sewing key 294
Sewing machine help key 44
Sewing speed controller (speed control slide) 13, 15, 72
Sewing type selection key 46
Shelltuck stitches 126
Side cutter 107
Single/Repeat sewing key 167
Single/Triple stitching key 330
Size key 241, 270
Size selection key 166
Smocking stitches 128
Soft cover case 20
Speaker 36
Specifications 356
Spool cap 13
Spool net 64
Spool pin 13
Spool stand 52, 63
Stabilizer 200
Start/Stop button 15
Starting point key 241
Step stitch patterns 174
Stitch recalculator 270
Stitch setting chart 359
Straight stitch foot 97
Straight stitch needle plate 97
Straight stitches 94
Supplemental spool pin 13, 48, 61

T

Tape attaching 104
Tape or elastic attaching 129
Test key 330, 334
Thread
fabric/thread/needle combinations 69
thread tension 79, 233
Thread color display 237
Thread cutter 13, 73
Thread Cutter button 15
Thread density key 167
Thread guide 13, 49, 51, 61
Thread guide plate 13, 51, 57
Thread marks 290
Thread palette key 276, 277, 282
Top cover 13
Top stitching 127
Touch pen 277, 329, 342
holder 13
Trial key 216
Troubleshooting 343
Twin needle 60

U

Uninterrupted embroidering 248
Upgrading 357
Upper threading
twin needle mode 60
using the "Automatic Threading" button 57
using the spool net 64
USB cable 33, 179, 226, 253, 256, 358
USB media
recalling 181, 255
saving 178, 252
usable 176, 249
USB mouse 33, 39
USB port connector
for computer 13, 179, 253
for media 13, 178, 252
Utility stitches
key functions 30
pattern explanation key 47
retrieving 93
saving 92
selecting 90
sewing type selection key 46
stitch selection screens 90
stitch setting chart 359

V

Vertical stitch alignment foot "V" 149

W

Walking foot 66

Z

Zigzag stitches 102
Zipper insertion
centered 146
side 147

English
882-W04/W05
XF0228-001①
Printed in Taiwan